COMPENDIUMS

OF

GENERAL HISTORY,

THE

HISTORY OF CANADA,

AND THE OTHER

BRITISH NORTH AMERICAN PROVINCES,

TO WHICH ARE ADDED

Chronological and Synoptical Tables of the Principal events recorded in the Compendium of the History of Canada, together with the most important Synchronisms of the Histories of the great European Powers, the United States of America, and the Church.

By B. C. S.

Approved by the Council of Public Instruction.

QUEBEC:
C. DARVEAU, PRINTER AND PUBLISHER,
No. 8, Mountain Hill.

1875.

ENTERED, according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand eight hundred and seventy five, by J. F. N. DUBOIS, in the Office of the Minister of Agriculture.

PREFACE.

If we had to prove here the utility of History, we would confine ourselves to recalling what Bossuet himself has said at the commencement of his admirable "*Discours sur l'Histoire Universelle*," or *Treatise on Universal History*, and that would amply suffice; but of what avail to endeavor proving a truth which no one doubts? We will only say that, taken in its largest acceptation, History is nothing more than an exhibition of human nature on a large scale, and that, consequently, it offers a vast field from which the mind and the heart may gather in a rich harvest. We will add, that it is never too early to commence instilling into young people the love and taste for serious things, and that there is no profane study which tends more to this excellent end, than that of History. It is also worthy of remark, that a young man, who has been early habituated to read instructive and moral works, rarely addicts himself to light or pernicious reading. This truth is so generally acknowledged, that many of the novel-writers of the present day, endeavor to make use of some historical scaffolding as a foundation for their unsafe and frivolous works. Without intending it, perhaps, they thus render the most glorious homage to History.

As for the order to be observed in the study of History, it is traced beforehand by the very nature of things. The People of God, being the only one of antiquity which faithfully preserved, till the coming of the Missiah, the sacred deposit of the true principles of morality, the basis of all real education, it is undoubtedly fitting that to its history the place of honor should be assigned. Then follows National History, which is, to a certain degree, inseparable from the preceding, forming its logical sequel and indispensable adjunct. If the one shows us the hand of

Providence conducting a people of predilection, step by step, through the perils of their way; chastising them sometimes with rigor, but always bountifully rewarding them as soon as they return to the worship of the true God with bitter repentance of their errors; finally, making the salvation of the human race spring from their midst in the form of Our Savior Jesus Christ: the other equally shows us with what solicitude God watched over the cradle of the Canadian nation; with what paternal care and merciful goodness He has unceasingly protected this rising nation, so deeply tried by war and by its political vicissitudes, yet, nevertheless, always so firmly attached to the Faith, Language, and Customs of its forefathers.

We must, however, here remark, that in a course of General History, we could not separate the History of the People of God from Ancient History, as the former is a part of the latter; we had, therefore, to place our National History, after Modern History.

Ancient History.—"The ancient empires, says Bossuet, have, for the most part, a necessary connection with the History of the People of God. The Lord made use of the Assyrians and Babylonians to chastise His People; of the Persians, to restore them; of Alexander and his immediate successors, to protect them; of Antiochus Epiphanes and his successors, to put them to the proof; of the Romans, to maintain their liberty against the Kings of Syria, who only sought to destroy them." It shows us these famous empires falling, one after another, under the weight of their own errors and crimes, leaving to exist after them, amidst all these ruins, but the one Empire to which eternity was promised: the Empire of Jesus Christ.

The History of the Middle Ages.—This period, of about ten centuries, presents the double spectacle of the fall of the old world, and the reconstruction of the new: Polytheism, which had taken such deep roots in the pagan and barbaric world, receives its death-blow from Christianity; the reign of the Savior tramples the Empire of Satan beneath its feet; the most cruel and insupportable tyranny makes way for a Christian and comparatively gentle government; lastly, the intimate union of religion and government, gives birth to a new force, which, energetically attacking those bad passions fostered by the corruption of the age, finally comes out victorious from the gigantic struggle.

Modern History.—The period included between the invasion of Europe by the Turks, and the times in which we live, counts but four centuries; however, they are of the busiest and

most important. For a long time, enlightened by the most sublime truths of Christianity, and generally observing the laws and morality dictated by the Gospel, the various nations had been opening out new roads and shaping for themselves fresh careers; but, as they had not all equally applied themselves to seeking "first the Kingdom of God and His Righteousness," they had not all escaped falling into the abyss of error, as regards religion, philosophy, and government.

The period of *Regeneration of Arts and Litterature* coïncided with that of the so-called Reformation which brought about the *Religious Wars*. Next, the Protestant nations were recognized and received as European governments by the famous Treaty of Westphalia. Then, a materialistic *Philosophy* helped along those false ideas of government, which sprang from the absence of religious principles, and, the *Revolutionary Erea* set in, only to cease when the nations shall have made up their minds to return to the narrow but sure path which God has traced for them.

During this period, comparatively speaking, a restricted one, there are, doubtless, many striking and glorious deeds which cannot be overlooked: faith, hope, and charity, are still working wonders; but, if sometimes there is room for admiration, too often also, unfortunately, deeds are to be met with, which deeply grieve the devout Christian.

Unquestionably, all the fruits which we have just hastily indicated, cannot be gathered from the study of a simple manual of history; for, after all, an *abridgment* is no more a *course* than a *summary* is a *science*, or a *plan*, an *edifice*; however, it is necessary,—in history as in everything else,—to proceed from the simple to the more intricate, from the easy to the more difficult. Undoubtedly, for want of considering this, certain persons of limited acquirements look down disdainfully on all abridgements in general, and of history in particular. Of what use, they say, to cram children's heads with so many facts which they do not understand, and so many dates, forgotten as soon as learned? According to this reasoning, they would require nothing less, than doing away with all elementary works. Perhaps, for example, it would be well to commence studying history in *Ségur* and *Rollin*, taking *Rohrbacher* on the way. To be logical, one might as well place in the hands of children the *Grammar of Grammars*, the *Universal Dictionary of the English Language*, the *Cosmos* of Humboldt, or the *Arithmetical Machine* of Pascal.

If we only look at the answer, sometimes very short, which is to be formed in this Abridgement, and which the pupil should, as

much as possible, learn by heart, it is certainly a mere trifle ; but, do we not know that a good teaaher always takes care to throw light on the text of each lesson by suitable explanations ? At any rate, it is thus that we understand teaching history, indeed, all branches of education. To sum up, whilst children's intelligence remains what it is, we must still have recourse to abridgements.

For reasons which can easily be understood, without our enlarging upon them here, we have placed the History of the United States of America in this work ; it seemed as if something essential would be wanting if we had not done so. Thus completed, we believe that it contains about all that is of most consequence to be known in history. We are also certain that the many questions placed at the bottom of the pages referring to the numbered paragraphs, will greatly aid the memory of the pupils. The masters themselves will find a great advantage, and a powerful aid in the method we have adopted. Not always having time to prepare a series of interrogations on the text that is under study, they will here find copious questions for examination, which can easily be still further developed if found necessary.

This work may also well be used as a Reading Book in the higher classes of Model Schools and in Academies : it is partly with this view that we have compiled it, and that we have not mingled the questions and answers in the text. Far from suffering through this arrangement, the connection between the facts related is strengthened, since nothing intervenes to break the thread of the narrative. May this work be accepted as a proof of the lively interest we take in the instruction of the youth of our country !

CONTENTS.

GENERAL HISTORY.

ANCIENT HISTORY.

	Page.
Sec. I. From the Creation to the Call of Abraham	13
" II. History of the Hebrews. From the Call of Abraham to the Separation of the Ten Tribes	16
" III. The Kingdom of Israel	20
" IV. The Kingdom of Juda	21
" V. The Captivity of Babylon	23
" VI. From the Return of the Jewish people from Captivity, to the Conquest of the country by the Romans	25
Egyptians	28
New kingdom of Egypt	32
The Phenicians	35
The Arabs	36
The Syrians	36
The Indians	39
The Chinese and Japanese	39
The Scythians	40
The Assyrians	40
The Medes and Persians	45
The Macedonians	49
The Greeks.—	Page.
Primitive Times	51
The fabulous and heroic Ages	53
Legislative Ages	55
Legislation of Lycurgus in Sparta	56
Legislation of Solon in Athens	56
The Median Wars	58
Peloponnesian War	62
Power of Sparta	64
The Carthaginians	66
The Romans.—	
From the Foundation of Rome, to the Expulsion of Tarquin the Proud, the last King of Rome	67
The Roman Republic.—	
Sec. I. From the Abolition of Royalty, to the First Punic War	70
" II. From the First Punic War, to the Conquest of Greece	74
" III. From the Conquest of Greece, and the Tribuneship of the Gracchi, to the First Triumvirate	82
" IV. From the First Triumvirate, to the es-	

tablishment of the Empire..... 87
THE ROMAN EMPIRE.—
SEC. I. From the Battle of Actium, to the Accession of Constantine. 90
SEC. II. From the Accession of Constantine, to the Extinction of the Western Empire... 101

HISTORY OF THE MIDDLE AGES.

FIRST PERIOD.

From the Fall of the Western Empire, to the Accession of the Carlovingians.

SEC. I. Italy..... 108
" II. The Franks under the Merovingians.. 110
" III. Spain and Great Britain..... 114
SEC IV. Eastern Empire... 116
" V. The Arabs..... 119

SECOND PERIOD.

From the Accession of the Carlovingians, to St. Gregory VII.

SEC. I. Pepin, Charlemagne, Louis the Debonnaire, and the dismemberment of Charlemagne's Empire..... 123
" II. Principal Kingdoms made out of the dismemberment of Charlemagne's Empire: France, Italy, and Germany..... 126
SEC. III. Kingdoms outside the Empire of Charlemagne: England and Spain..... 129
" IV. Eastern Empire, from the extinction of the Heraclidæ, to the Accession of the Comneni..... 130

THIRD PERIOD.

From St. Gregory VII, to the Death of Boniface VIII.

SEC. I. The Papacy and the Empire. Investitures. Guelphs and Ghibellines..... 132
" II. Crusades and Chivalry..... 136
SEC. III. France..... 145
" IV. England..... 150
" V. Spain, Portugal, and the Two Sicilies. 153

FOURTH PERIOD.

From the Death of Boniface VIII, to the Taking of Constantinople by the Turks.

Sec. I. Empire of Germany. 156
" II. Italy 159
" III. France 163
" IV. England 166
Sec. V. Spain and Portugal. 169
" VI. Greeks and Turks. 171
" VII. Scandinavian and Slavonic States... 173

MODERN HISTORY.

From the Taking of Constantinople, to the Present time.

FRANCE.—

Sec. I. From the Expulsion of the English, under Charles VI., to the Accession of Francis I., Head of the second Branch of Valois..... 177
" II. From Francis I., to the Bourbon Dynasty begun by Henry IV..... 180
" III. From the Bourbon Dynasty, begun by Henry IV., to the French Revolution. 184
" IV. From the French Revolution, to the Fall of the First Empire..... 188
" V. The Restoration; the Government of July; the Second Republic; the Second Empire; and the Third Republic. 196

ENGLAND.—

Sec. I. *House of Lancaster*—Henry VI.; *House of York*—Edward IV., Edward V., Richard III..... 201
Sec. II. *The Tudor Family*—Henry VII., Henry VIII., Edward VI., Mary, Elizabeth..... 203
" III. *Dynasty of the Stuarts*—James I. and Charles I., *Republic*—Oliver and Richard Cromwell. *Restoration of the Stuarts*—Charles II., James II., William III. and Mary, Anne..... 207
" IV. *House of Brunswick*—George I., George II., George III., George IV., William IV., Victoria 212

SCOTLAND..... 215

IRELAND.—

Sec. I. 217
" II. From the Invasion of Ireland by Henry II., King of England, in 1171, to the year 1848..... 221

SPAIN.—From the 15th Century to the year 1870..... 232
PORTUGAL.—From the 15th Century to 1860..... 237
GERMANY.—From the 15th Century to 1871..... 239
SWITZERLAND..... 246
ITALY..... 248
TURKEY..... 250
HOLLAND..... 253
BELGIUM..... 255
DENMARK..... 256
SWEDEN AND NORWAY..... 257
POLAND..... 259
RUSSIA..... 262
HUNGARY..... 263
PRUSSIA..... 264
UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.—
SEC. I. From the establishment of the first English Colonies, to their War with the French Canadian Colonies, in 1754..... 267
" II. From the War with the French Canadian Colonies, 1754, to the Revolution, 1775..... 272
" III. American Revolution. — From the commencement of hostilities, 1775, to the Recognition of of the Independence of the United States, 1783..... 274
SEC. IV. From the Recognition of American Independence, 1783, to the war of 1812. 284
" V. From the War against England, 1812, to the War against Mexico, 1846..... 287
" VI. From the war against Mexico, 1846, to the end of the Civil War, in 1865..... 291
DOMINION OF CANADA..... 294
MEXICO..... 297
PERU..... 299
BOLIVIA..... 300
CHILI..... 300
NEW GRANADA..... 301
EQUADOR..... 301
VENEZUELA..... 301
CONFEDERATION OF LA PLATA, OR THE ARGENTINE REPUBLIC..... 301
PARAGUAY..... 302

GENERAL HISTORY.

1. History is the narrative of the principal events that have taken place from the Creation down to the present time. It points out the origin of nations, the establishments they formed, their greatness and downfall, their religion, laws, and nature of their governments.

2. General History is divided into *Sacred* and *Profane*. Sacred History comprises the *Old Testament*, which contains the history of religion, from the Creation to the time of Jesus Christ; and the *New Testament*, that is to say, the *Life of Jesus Christ* and the *Acts* and *Epistles of the Apostles*. Ecclesiastical History may be regarded as its continuation.

3. Profane History is divided into *Ancient History*, *History of the Middle Ages*, and *Modern History*.

4. Ancient History begins with the world and terminates with the fall of the Empire of the West, B. C. 476. It may be subdivided into three periods: that of the *Primitive Ages*, from the Creation to the establishment of the first empires; the *Fabulous Ages*, from the establishment of the first empires to the building of Rome, B. C. 753; and the *Historic Ages*, from the building of Rome to the fall of the Roman Empire.

5. The principal nations of Ancient History, were: the Hebrews, Egyptians, Phenicians, Indians, Assyrians, Persians, Medes, Greeks, Macedonians, Romans, Carthaginians, Gauls, &c.

6. The History of the *Middle Ages* begins with the Fall of the Western Empire, in 476, and terminates with the Capture of Constantinople by the Turks, in 1453. It may be divided into four periods: the first, from the Fall of the Roman Empire to the Car-

1. What is History? What does it point out?—2. How is General History divided? What does Sacred History comprise?—3. How is Profane History divided?—4. When does Ancient History begin and terminate? How is it subdivided?—5. What were the principal nations of Ancient History?—6. When does the History of the Middle Ages begin and terminate? How may it be divided?

lovingians, in 752 ; the second, from the Carlovingians to St. Gregory VII., in 1073 ; the third, from St. Gregory VII. to the Death of Pope Boniface VIII., in 1303 ; and the fourth, from Boniface VIII. to the Taking of Constantinople, in 1453.

7. The principal nations of this period, are : the Heruli, Huns, Goths (Visigoths and Ostrogoths), Alani, Suevi, Vandals, Burgundians, Germans, Franks, Lombards, Poles, Russians, Danes, Hungarians, Bohemians, Swiss, Spaniards, Portuguese, Saracens and Turks.

8. Modern History begins with the Fall of Constantinople, in 1453, and comes down to our own days. It may be divided into five periods : the first, from the Fall of Constantinople to the so-called Reformation, in 1517 ; the second, from the so-called Reformation, to the beginning of the Politico-Religious Wars, in 1559 ; the third, from the beginning of the Religious Wars to the Peace of Westphalia, in 1648 ; the fourth, from the Peace of Westphalia to the French Revolution ; and the fifth, from the French Revolution to the present time. This last period might be called *Contemporary History*.

9. The principal nations that first appeared during this period, are : the European Turks, the Americans, the Dutch, the Prussians, the Sardinians, the Bavarians, the Saxons, and the Modern Greeks.

---

7. What are the principal nations of this period ?—8. When does Modern History begin ? How may it be divided ? How might this last period be called ?—9. Name the principal nations that first appeared during this period.

ANCIENT HISTORY.

SECTION I.

From the Creation, B. C. 4004, to the Call of Abraham, B. C. 1921.

1. We learn from the Holy Scriptures that God, by an act of His all-powerful Will, out of nothing, called into existence the world and all that which it contains.

He created the light and the vault of heaven; He hollowed out the bed of the ocean and endowed the earth with inexhaustible fertility; He launched the sun, moon, and stars into space; He filled the seas with fish, the air with birds, the earth with animals of every kind, and terminated His work by creating man to His own image and likeness.

2. God, after having created the first man, whom he called *Adam*, placed him in a delightful garden, the *Terrestrial Paradise.* Having cast him into a deep sleep, God took one of his ribs out of which He formed a woman whom He named Eve, and gave her to Adam to be his companion. He thus, from the very beginning of the world, instituted marriage and that union into families, which is the model of all other unions, and the foundation of all society.

3. The Almighty, in order to impress on the mind of man that he had a master, and also to put his obedience to the test, forbade him, under pain of death, to eat of the fruit of "The tree of knowledge of good and evil." But Eve allowed herself to be seduced by the demon, who had taken the form of a serpent, and she afterwards tempted her husband. Adam and Eve were then sent forth from the Terrestrial Paradise, and they, with all their posterity, were subjected unto death, and condemned to earn their bread at the sweat of their brow.

4. Adam's disobedience opened the door to all other crimes. Cain, the first-born son of this guilty father, jealous of the su-

1. How did God create the universe?—2. What name did the first man receive, and where was he placed?—3. What did God forbid Adam? How did He punish him?—4. How did the first children of Adam behave? Who built the first city, and how was it named?

perior virtue of his brother Abel, put him to death. Forthwith, stung by remorse, he fled far from his native land; and, after having wandered for a long time on the face of the earth, he built a city called by the name of his son Henoch. His descendants inherited his frowardness.

5. Adam was consoled for the loss of Abel by the birth of Seth, who remained virtuous in the midst of the general corruption. Ten patriarchs or heads of families may be reckoned before the deluge. These were: Adam, Seth, Enos, Cainan, Malaleel, Jared, Henoch who was miraculously taken up to Heaven, Mathusala, Lamech, and Noe. Mathusala was 969 years old when he died; Adam himself was 930. This was the most favorable epoch for length of life in man. The holy lives of these patriarchs and their descendants, whom the Holy Scriptures call the "*Sons of God*," contrasted favorably for a long time with the corrupt lives of the descendants of Cain, who are called by the name of "*Sons of Men*."

We know nothing as to the state of arts and sciences during this first period of history. All that we know is: that Jubal invented musical instruments; Tubalcain was the first artificer in brass and iron; and to Noema his sister, is attributed the discovery of the art of spinning hemp and wool, as well as of weaving stuffs.

6. THE DELUGE. The children of Seth having fallen into the same disosders as the children of Cain, God determined to annihilate the human race by a universal deluge. Noe alone, together with his family, having kept himself pure upon the earth, found grace before God. By the express order of the Almighty, he constructed an ark destined to float on the waters, and entered into it with his wife and children, and two of each sort of living creatures. And immediately the fountains of the great deep were broken up, and the flood-gates of heaven were opened, and rain fell upon the earth for forty days and forty nights; the whole earth was covered with water, and all living things perished, except those that were with Noe in the ark, B. C. 2384.

7. According to the general opinion, the ark rested on Mount Ararat, in Armenia. Those who had been shut up in the ark, were able to come forth from it a year after the commencement of the deluge. Noe and his sons Sem, Cham, and Japheth,

5. How many patriarchs were there before the deluge? How does the Scriptures call the descendants of the patriarchs? Those of Cain?—6. What order did God give Noe? How did He punish mankind?—7. Where did the ark stop? What was the occupation of Noe and his children after the deluge?

applied themselves to tilling the ground. Noe planted a vineyard and discovered the use that might be made of the fruit of the vine; but not being aware of the strength of wine, he became intoxicated and fell asleep beneath his tent. Cham, having perceived his father in this pitiful state, called his brothers to jest at him. This undutiful conduct could not remain unpunished, and the father's curse, was laid on Cham and his posterity. But Noe blessed Sem and Japheth, and disigned the former as the inheritor of the blessings of Heaven.

8. After the Deluge, the people lived collected together in the vast plains of Sennaar, to the south of Mesopotamia. Their families soon became so numerous, that they feared exhausting the resources of the country, and determined on separating. But, wishing to perpetuate their memory, and perhaps to secure themselves from another deluge, they undertook to build a tower of prodigious height. God, in order to punish their pride, confounded their language, so that they no longer understood one another, and were obliged to abandon their edifice. This building was called the "*Tower of Babel*," that is to say, of *confusion*.

9. The impossibility of their understanding one another hastened the dispersion of the different families.

1. *White race or Japhethic race.*—The race of Japheth turned their steps towards the north of Asia, which it peopled, as well as the whole of Europe. The Medes, the Scythians mentioned in Holy Scripture under the name of Gog and Magog, the Greeks, the Gauls, and the Germans, are descended from the sons of Japheth.

2. *Yellow race or Semitic race.*—The family of Sem spread in the East. Heber, grandson of Sem, was the father of the Hebrews. The Persians are descended from his son Elam; the Assyrians, from Assur; the Lydians, from Lud; and the Syrians, from Aram.

3. *Black race or race of Cham.*—From Cham, the father of the negro race, are also descended the Phenicians, the Egyptians, the Ethiopians, and the ancient nations of Palestine, which were nearly destroyed by the Hebrews.

---

8. What became of mankind after the Deluge?—9. To which country did Japheth's race go? What nations sprang from Sem? What people were of the race of Cham?

SECTION II.

HISTORY OF THE HEBREWS OR JEWS.

From the Call of Abraham, B. C. 1921, to the Separation of the Ten Tribes, B. C. 962.

1. When the people had wandered far away from the East, their cradle-land, in order to lay the foundations of the first empires in various parts of the world, not only did they soon forget their primitive traditions, but they corrupted them by gross fables, and idolatry became universal. There were however some just men, who still practised virtue and followed the true religion. From amongst them, God chose Abraham, the son of Thare, a descendant of Heber, to be the Father of a people destined to perpetuate His worship. To Abraham, God promised a numerous posterity, from which should spring forth the Savior of the world. Noe, who was still living, and whose father, Lamech, had seen Adam, was enabled to instruct the son of Thare and prepare him for his noble mission, B. C. 1921.

2. Abraham, with his wife Sara and Lot, his nephew, left Chaldea and went to settle in the land of Canaan. This holy patriarch dwelt in tents, like a traveller, in the land which was later to belong to his posterity. He delivered Lot from the captivity to which he had been reduced by Chodorlahomor. By Agar, whom, according to the Oriental custom, he had taken as wife of an inferior degree, he had a son whom he called Ismael; and, by his wife Sara, another son whom he called Isaac, who was the inheritor of all his possessions and of all the benedictions of Heaven, B. C. 1896.

3. The race from which the Messiah was to spring forth, had to be kept pure. Abraham, therefore, fearing to mix his blood with that of idolatrous nations amidst which he lived, sent his servant Eleazer into Mesopotamia, to seek a wife for his son from among his own kindred, and Eleazer brought back Rebecca the grand daughter of Nachor, Abraham's brother. Rebecca bore Isaac two twin sons, Esau and Jacob. The father preferred his first-born son Esau, but Jacob who had found favor before God, received the paternal blessing which was destined for the eldest son.

---

1. At what period did God choose Abraham? What promise did He make him?—2. Whence was Abraham, and what country was he to inhabit? Who were his children?—3. Who was Isaac's spouse? What children had he? Which was the eldest? Which received the paternal benediction?

4. Jacob, in order to escape from Esau's anger, went into Mesopotamia, where, for a long time, he served his uncle Laban, whose two daughters, Lia and Rachel, he successively espoused. On his return, during a mysterious vision, he wrestled with an angel and received the name of *Israel*, that is to say, *strong against God ;* and from that, his descendants were named *Israelites.* The sons of Jacob were the twelve patriarchs, the heads of the twelve tribes of Israel.

5. But Jacob's preference for Joseph, excited the jealousy of his brothers. They sold him to some merchants who brought him to Egypt. There, his chastity, patience, and knowledge of the future, were made to shine forth in an admirable manner. Being unjustly accused by the wife of his master, Putiphar, he was put in prison. There, he interpreted the dreams of two of the King's officers, and was very soon summoned to court, to interpret Pharao's dreams. He predicted seven years of plenty, which were to be followed by seven years of famine. Having become minister to the King, he laid up immense stores of provisions during the years of abundance, and thus preserved Egypt from the famine which desolated the other countries. The sons of Jacob came to Egypt to buy corn. Joseph received them kindly and made himself known to them. He sent for his father and all his family, and made them dwell in the land of Gessen, B. C. 1706.

6. In a short time, the Israelites multiplied prodigiously in Egypt, and became a great people. A new Pharao, *who knew not Joseph,* fearing them on account of their numbers, treated them most cruelly, overwhelmed them with hard labor, and ordered all their new born male children to be thrown into the Nile. But, at this juncture, God sent into the world their deliverer, Moses, son of Amram and Jochabed of the tribe of Levi, B. C. 1571. After having hidden the infant three months, his mother laid him by the river's brink in a basket made of bulrushes. A daughter of the King saved his life, and had him instructed in all the sciences of the Egyptian priests.

7. Obedient to the voice of God, Moses, at eighty years of age, presented himself before Pharao, and sommoned him to let the Israelites depart. The King refused. God punished him by inflicting various plagues on his kingdom, called the *ten plagues of Egypt.* The tenth plague was the death of all the first-born among the Egyptians. The Israelites alone were preserved from this misfortune, and the Feast of the Passover was instituted in remembrance thereof.

---

4. What did Jacob do to escape from his brother's anger ? How many children had he ?—5. What is known of Joseph —6. ? How did the Egyptians treat the Israelites after Joseph's death ? What deliverer did God raise up for them ?—7. What did Moses do when he was eighty ?

8. Pharao at length permitted the children of Israel to depart. They were numbering 600,000 men capable of bearing arms. They set out on the fifteenth day of the month Nizan (March), which became the first day of the year in remembrance of their deliverance, B. C. 1491. The King soon pursued them with a powerful army in order to stop them, and overtook them on the borders of the Red Sea. God opened a dry passage for the children of Israel through the waters of the sea ; and as Pharao ventured into the open passage in pursuit, the waters rolled back and engulfed the entire Egyptian hosts.

9. When the people of Israel had gained their freedom, Moses, before leading them into Palestine, or the Promised Land, kept them for some time in the desert, that they might lose the degrading habits they had acquired during their servitude. The law of God was given to Moses on Mount Sinai, amidst thunder and lightning, and he promulgated it to all the people. He particularly labored to inspire them with horror for all strange forms of worship, and strove, by means of reiterated miracles, to show them the infinite power of the God they ought to adore. But this stubborn and stiff-necked people repaid the mercies of the Lord with murmurs and revolt only. Even Moses himself, on one occasion, was wanting in faith and courage ; and to punish him, God did not allow him to enter the Promised Land.

10. In Palestine, the Israelites found numerous warlike tribes, such as the *Amalekites* and *Canaanites* to the South ; the *Moabites*, the *Medianites*, and the *Ammonites*, to the East ; the *Philistines*, to the West ; the *Jebusites*, in the centre. But God gave them Josue, a valiant chief ; and He performed also great miracles in their favor; for, Josue passed over the Jordan on dry land, destroyed Jericho, the walls of which fell down, after having borne the Ark round them seven times ; and obtained from God that the sun should stand still, whilst he completed his victory over the Canaanites. Josue established the Israelites in the Promised Land, which he divided among the twelve tribes.

11. Josue had no successor to inherit his autority ; for, the Israelites, knowing no other master than God Himself, were more usually governed by Judges. As long as they remained faithful to the Lord, they were free and happy. As soon as they abandoned the right way, God gave them up to the oppression of their enemies, until they testified their repentance. Then, He raised up to them just men, who delivered them and became their Judges.

8, What happened at the passage of the Red Sea?—9. Where did the children of Israel dwell before entering the Promised Land? What happened on Mount Sinai ?—10. Who was the successor of Moses ? What did Josue do ?—11. How were the Israelites governed after Josue ?

12. Othoniel delivered them from the hands of Chusan, King of Mesopotamia. Samgar delivered them from the Philistines. Barac, stirred up by Debbora, the prophetess, conquered Sisara, the general of Jabin's army. Gedeon, with three hundred men, destroyed a large army of Madianites. Jephte conquered the Ammonites. Samson made de Philistines tremble by his prodigious strength. After this last, there came Heli, who was rejected by God, for having indulged his sons in their disobedience. Lastly, Samuel, whom God ordered to consecrate Saul and invest him with sovereign power.

13. Saul, B. C. 1095, the first King of Israel, was the son of Cis, of the tribe of Benjamin. At first, he fulfilled the will of God, and triumphed over the enemies of Israel. He conquered the Ammonites at Jabes Galaad, and the Philistines at Machmas; but, falling away from his first obedience, he did not hesitate to usurp the priestly functions, and even spared the life of Agag, King of the Amalekites, whom Samuel had condemned to death by the order of God, This filled up the measure of his offences; the Lord took away His spirit from Saul, and told the Prophet to anoint a young shepherd, David, son of Jesse, B. C. 1070. The battle of Gelboe ended the life and misfortunes of the old King.

14. David by his courage showed himself worthy of the high position in which God had placed him. In a war with the Philistines, he ventured to try his strength against the giant Goliath and overthrew him. He formed an intimate friendship with Jonathan, the son of Saul, who, having received him at his court, gave him the hand of his daughter Michol. But Saul soon conceived a violent jealousy of David, and he pursued him from desert to desert in order to kill him. This unjust persecution brought to light the courage and generosity of David; and, when Saul and Jonathan had fallen, the tribe of Juda recognized him as their King, B. C. 1055. The other tribes attached themselves to Isboseth, one of the sons of Saul; but, seven years afterwards, Isboseth, having been put to death, all Israel with one voice called David to be King over them.

15. During the reign of David, there were continual wars that ended gloriously. This Prince conquered successively the Philistines, the Moabites, the Amalekites, the Idumeans, the Ammonites and the Syrians; so that, he extended his Empire from

12. What were the exploits of Othoniel? Of Samgar? Of Barac? Of Gedeon? Of Jephte? What is known of Samson? Of Heli? Of Samuel —13. How did Saul signalize his reign? Why was he rejected by God? —14. By what exploits did David shew himself worthy of the throne? What was his conduct towards Saul?—15. What wars had David to carry on? How is David particularly celebrated?

the Mediterranean to the Euphrates, and from Phenicia to the Red Sea. He built Jerusalem and had a palace erected for himself on Mount Sion. David is particularly celebrated for his penitence, his piety, and his sublime hymns known by the name of Psalms, which are 150 in number. In order to finish his reign gloriously, he formed the design of raising in Jerusalem a temple to the glory of God, but the Lord sent word to him by His prophet, that this honor was reserved for him who should succeed to the throne.

16. David was succeeded by his son Solomon, B. C. 1015. God granted to this young Prince, great wisdom, riches, glory, and a long reign. His dominion extended far and wide. His vessels went even to Tharsis and Ophir, and returned laden with gold and precious merchandise. But the wonder of his reign was the Temple which he caused to be built at Jerusalem by the most skilful workmen from Sidon. This edifice took seven years in building; gold and precious stones shone forth from its every part. Unhappily, this son of David, whose renown had spread throughout the whole East, allowed himself to be led away by pride, and he fell into the most shameful excesses.

17. The Lord, being displeased, announced to Solomon that his kingdom should be divided after his death. This threat was fulfilled in his son Roboam. This Prince, rendered himself odious by his tyranny and exactions. Ten tribes revolted against him, and proclaimed Jeroboam King, forming another kingdom under the name of the Kingdom of Israel, of which Samaria afterwards became the capital. The tribes of Juda and Benjamin remained faithful to Roboam, and were designated the Kingdom of Juda.

SECTION III.

The Kingdom of Israel, B. C. 975.

1. The Kingdom of Israel was governed only by ungodly princes, who, both by their examples and their edicts, encouraged the worship of false gods. Elias, Eliseus, and other prophets, severely reproached them for their perversion, but they turned a deaf ear to all such remonstrances. Therefore, to punish them for their misdeeds, God often visited them with His righteous wrath.

---

16. Who was David's successor? What is known of Solomon's reign? —17. What happened after Solomon's death?

1. What was the character of the Kings of Israel? In what manner were they punished?

2. For fear that the Israelites should return to their allegiance to the Kings of Juda, Jeroboam forbade them to go and offer sacrifice to the Temple of Jerusalem. He set up golden calves, to which he gave the name of gods of Israel, but he retained the law as well as the civil and religious regulations of Moses.

3. Almost all the Kings of Israel were wicked. The most remarkable amongst them were : Amri, who built Samaria and made it the capital of his kingdom ; Achab, his son and successor, whose wife Jezabel, the Syrian, persecuted the Prophet Elias for having rebuked her for idolatry ; Ochoziah, Joram, Jehu, who punished the crimes of Achab by exterminating his family.

4. Jehu abolished the worship of Baal, without however re-establishing that of the true God. He experienced great reverses, as did also Joachaz, his successor. But Jeroboam II. gained some brilliant victories, and extended his States to their former limits. After his death, great disorders troubled Israel until the reign of Zachariah, the last of Jehu's descendants, B. C. 771 ; and, from that time until the destruction of the kingdom by Salmanasar, B. C. 721, the most deplorable anarchy warned this unhappy nation of its approaching ruin.

SECTION IV.

Kingdom of Juda, B. C. 975.

1. The Kingdom of Juda was hardly more fortunate than that of Israel ; still, as the Temple of the Lord and the true Priesthood were preserved there, error was not so easily introduced among the people. The nation had often cause to lament the impiety of those who sat on the throne ; but, as a compensation, God, from time to time, sent them princes who were models of justice and piety.

2. Roboam had allowed the worship of idols to be introduced into Juda, and God, to punish him, permitted Sesac, King of Egypt, to take and pillage Jerusalem. Nevertheless, Abiam, his successor, followed in his footsteps ; but Asa, who reigned next afterwards, destroyed the idols, forbade the worship of

2. How did Jeroboam act with regard to religion, at the commencement of his reign ?—3. Who were the most remarkable kings of Israel ?—4. How did Jehu act ? What became of the Kingdom of Israel after the extinction of the family of Jehu ?

1. What was the character of the princes who reigned over Juda ?—2. Who were the predecessors of Josaphat ? What is shown us by the history of this Prince ?

strange gods, and was victorious over all his enemies. Josaphat followed this good example; he stirred up the fervor of his subjects, and triumphed over the Moabites, the Ammonites, and the Edomites. But the alliance which he made with the Kings of Israel was fatal to his family.

3. Joram, the son of Josaphat, having married Athalia, the daughter of Achab and Jezabel, became as cruel and unbelieving as his wife, and perished miserably. Ochoziah, son of Joram, succeeded his father, and was killed by Jehu. On hearing of his death, Athalia took possession of the throne, and caused all the children of Ochoziah to be put to death. Joas alone was saved from this massacre by Josaba, spouse of the High-Priest Joiada. He was hidden in the Temple for many years, and eventually regained the crown.

4. After Joas, the throne of Juda was, for more than a century, occupied by princes who were for the most part reprobate, B. C. 839 to 726. The most culpable of all, the unbelieving Achaz, was the father of Hezekiah, who was as celebrated for his wisdom and holiness, as had been his father for his vices and impiety. This pious monarch destroyed idolatry; and, through the whole extent of his kingdom, restored the worship of the true God. Under his reign there appeared the prophets Isaiah, Osee, and Amos, who sustained his courage when Jerusalem was besieged by Sennacherib, King of Assyria. The sword of the exterminating Angel delivered him from the infidel army, and he died full of glory, after having repaired the evils which the war had brought on his people.

5. Manasses, son of Hezekiah did not take example by his father. He, together with a great number of Jews, was taken prisoner by the Assyrians, and led captive to Babylon. After returning from captivity, he repented of his evil course. During his reign, Holofernes, a General of the King of Assyria, laid siege to Bethulia, threatening the Jews with entire destruction; but he was killed by Judith, B. C. 656.

6. Amon, son and successor of Manasses, was assassinated after an impious reign of two years' duration, and was succeeded by his son Josiah. This prince did his utmost to put down the impiety that was prevalent in his kingdom, and tried to re-establish the worship of the true God; he met with his death at Mageddo in giving battle to the Egyptians. Joachaz, his son, who

3. Who was Joram's wife? How did Joas escape from Athalia's fury? —4. What is known of Hezekiah? What prophets appeared during his reign?—5. What is known of Manasses? By whom was the country invaded during his reign?—6. Who was Amon? Where did Josiah die? What became of Joachaz? What was the issue of the expedition of Nabuchodonosor II. against Jerusalem?

succeeded him, was overthrown at the end of a reign of three months, by Pharao Nechao, King of Egypt, when returning from an expedition into Assyria. Joakim, his brother and successor, gave himself up to impiety, and incurred the wrath of the Most High. But chastisement was not long in overtaking him; Nabuchodonosor II., King of Babylon, took Jerusalem and led away captive the greater number of its inhabitants among whom was the Prophet Daniel. Then, began the seventy years' captivity that had been predicted by Jeremiah, B. C. 606.

7. The Kingdom of Juda, however, did not finish yet. Joakim was replaced on the throne, but subjected to a heavy tribute. He was not long however before revolting. Nabuchodonosor, being then enraged, took Jerusalem a second time, and put Joakim to death. Joachin, the son of the last King, reigned three months, and died a captive to the King of Assyria, B. C. 591. The Prophet Ezekiel was also led away captive with him to Babylon. Sedekiah, the uncle and successor of Joachin, displeased Nabuchodonosor by his alliances; and hence, a fourth time, Jerusalem fell into the power of the Assyrian. The conqueror plucked out the eyes of Sedekiah, after having made him witness the murder of his own children. The Holy City being given up to the flames, the Temple and other marvellous productions of King Solomon's reign, were destroyed. The Israelites were carried away to Babylon, and Nabuzardan, one of Nabuchodonosor's generals, consummated the destruction of Jerusalem, B. C. 588. Jeremiah, seated amidst the ruins, sang his immortal lamentations.

SECTION V.

The Captivity of Babylon, B. C. 606 to 536.

1. Nabuchodonosor treated his captives humanely; for, although dispersed in the provinces of the Empire, they never ceased to exist as a nation. The conqueror allowed them the use of their laws and customs, and even brought up several of the young men of the blood royal in his own palace. Daniel, being one of these, and endowed with the gift of prophecy, interpreted a dream of Nabuchodonosor wherein there figured the successive domination of the four great Empires of the Assyrians, Medes or

7. What was the result of Nabuchodonosor's new expedition against Jerusalem? How was the Holy City finally dealt with? Who was the Prophet that sang the misfortunes of Jerusalem?

1. How did Nabuchodonosor treat the captives? What was the interpretation of the dream which Daniel gave the King? What trial did the Prophet Daniel meet with afterwards?

Persians, Greeks, Romans, and lastly, the universal and eternal reign of the Church. The greatest honors were heaped upon Daniel, and three other young men shared with him the royal favor. These three, having refused to adore a gigantic statue of Bell or Baal, were, by the King's order, thrown into a fiery furnace; and, when they came forth from it unharmed, the King's heart was so touched by the miracle, that he confided to Daniel the greater part of the administration of the government. The Prophet again foretold the state of mental alienation into which the King of Babylon would afterwards fall.

2. Daniel did not enjoy quite so high a repute under the successors of Nabuchodonosor; but ere long, he was called for to interpret the terrible destinies of Babylon. In the midst of orgies in which the impious Baltassar was profaning the sacred vessels, an invisible hand traced upon the wall three words, signifying his approaching destruction: MANE, THEKEL, PHARES. Daniel announced the peril which menaced the guilty town: that same night, Cyrus entered Babylon with his army, after having turned the River Euphrates from its course, B. C. 538.

3. Having become master of Assyria, Cyrus, during the first year of his reign, published the celebrated edict by which he granted the Jews permission to return to their own country and rebuild the Temple of Jerusalem. He put an end to the captivity of the Israelites precisely at the time which had been marked out by the Prophet, B. C. 536.

4. However, a great number of Jews remained in Persia, as is proved by the history of Esther who lived under one of the successors of Cyrus. The Jews, having been condemned on the accusation of Aman, must inevitably have perished but for the energy of Mardochai, and the touching grace of his niece Esther, who managed to soften the heart of Assuerus (Darius or Xerxes.) The punishment prepared for Mardochai was inflicted on the cruel minister, and the Jews continued to live peaceably under the law of the Persians, some, in the various towns of the kingdom, others, in their own country.

---

2. What did Daniel announce to King Baltassar? By whom was Babylon taken?—3. What did Cyrus do when he became master of Syria?—4. Did all the Jews return to their own country? What is known about Esther?

SECTION VI.

From the Return of the Jewish people from Captivity, B. C. 536, to the Conquest of the country by the Romans, B. C. 40.

1. Forty-two thousand Jews set out for their own country under Zorobabel, and hastened to lay the foundations of a new Temple. The jealousy and hatred of the Samaritans impeded this glorious enterprise in every possible manner, and hence, the building was not completed till the reign of Darius, son of Hystaspes. This second Temple was much less beautiful than that of Solomon, but two of the last prophets, Aggeus and Malachi, predicted that it would have the glory of opening its gates to the DESIRED of Nations. The dedication of this Temple took place in the year 516, after the discovery of the sacred fire which had been buried by Jeremiah.

2. The Jews were treated with kindness by the successors of Cyrus. Artaxerxes Longimanus, B. C. 472, gave permission to Esdras, a descendant of Aaron, to return to Jerusalem in order to direct the affairs of state and religion. In the year 454, yielding to the entreaties of Nehemiah, who was also of the Jewish priestly race, he published an edict authorizing the reconstruction of the walls of Jerusalem.

It is from the publication of this edict, that are dated the seventy weeks of years, which, according to the prophecy of Daniel, were to elapse before the coming of Jesus Christ. In spite of many obstacles and aggressions, the Jews, holding the sword in one hand and the trowel in the other, had soon built up the new walls of the Holy City.

3. The Samaritans, the enemies of the Jews, not having been able to prevent the reconstruction of the Temple of Jerusalem, built a similar one on Mount Garizim, and by so doing, perpetuated that hatred and discord which caused the final ruin of the nation.

4. Under the authority of the kings of Persia, Judea gradually recovered from its misfortune, under the government of its High-Priests and the counsel of 72 elders. The towns were restored and repeopled, and prosperity reigned everywhere. Un-

1. To what number did the Jews return into their own country? What did Aggeus and Malachi prophesy about the new Temple?—2. How were the Jews treated by Cyrus' descendants? Who was Esdras? What did Nehemiah do?—3. What did the Samaritans do when they could not hinder the building of the Temple?—4. What was then passing in the Priesthood?

fortunately, the office of high-priest awoke a fatal ambition, and gave rise to a deplorable rivalry.

5. In the meantime, Alexander the Great, King of Macedonia, having invaded Persia, laid siege to Tyre, and sent to the Jews for subsidies. These latter, filled with gratitude to the Kings of Persia, sent a refusal, alleging in their excuse the oath of fealty which bound them to those princes. The conqueror being enraged, threatened Jerusalem with his vengeance. But the High-Priest Jaddus caused the streets of the town to be strewed with flowers, and the gates to be opened; and, clothed in his pontical robes, he, with all the people, went forth to meet the hero, and showed him, in the Book of Daniel, the account of his victories which had been written beforehand by that Prophet. Alexander, in astonishment, gave proofs of his respect and veneration for the High-Priest, by heaping benefits on the Holy City. Jerusalem, thus left in peace, awaited anxiously her promised Liberator.

6. After the death of Alexander, B. C. 323, Judea fell to the lot of Laomedon, one of his lieutenants; but Ptomely I., *Soter*, King of Egypt, having become master of the country, led away 100000 Jews to Alexandria to increase the population of that town. This Prince treated the captives with so much kindness, that very soon a great number of their fellow-countrymen came to join them and founded colonies, in one direction, as far as Ethiopia, in the other, as far as Cyrene. When the degenerate race of the Lagides no longer produced any but despicable and reckless princes, the Jews grew tired of submitting to them, and took advantage of the war carried on by Antiochus the Great against Egypt, to give their allegiance to Syria.

7. Antiochus granted great privileges to the Jews, but his successors were far from imitating his example. Seleucus Philopator sent his minister Heliodorus to pillage the Temple. This impious officer having been repulsed from the Holy Place by the Angels of the Lord, took vengeance on the High-Priest Onias. By the order of the King, the Pontiff was deposed from his high dignity, which, from that time forward, was sold for a sum of money.

8. Antiochus Epiphanes went still further: he desired to annihilate the religion of the Jews, so as to efface their nationality, and to blend them entirely with the Syrians. He took Jerusalem, which he partly burned; pillaged and profaned the

5. What was it that irritated Alexander against Jerusalem? How was his anger appeased?—6. Who took possession of Judea after Alexander's death?—7. How did Seleucus Philopator act towards the Jews?—8. What is known of Antiochus Epiphanes? What persecution did he instigate? Who were its most celebrated victims?

Temple; and then, having built another temple to Jupiter Olympus, he commenced a rigorous persecution against the Jews who remained faithful to their laws and religion. Under his reign, the martyrdom of the holy and aged Eleazar took place, as also that of a mother with her seven sons. At last, a priest, named Mathathias, commenced that heroic struggle in which his five sons afterwards made themselves so famous. These sons were named John, Simon, Judas Maccabeus, Eleazar, and Jonathan.

9. Judas, the third son of Mathathias, had written on his standard "Who is like to Thee among the strong, O Lord." From the abbreviation of this inscription, in Hebrew, may be formed the word Maccabeus, which is used to designate this hero and all his race. Judas restored the independence of his nation, re-established the worship of the Lord in all its purity, and formed an alliance with the Romans. After having won renown by a great number of victories, he perished in a battle in which his troops were defeated by those of Demetrius Soter, B. C. 161.

10. His brother Jonathan, who succeeded him, skilfully profited by the dissensions of the Syrian princes, but ended by falling a victim to the perfidy of one of the usurpers of the throne of Syria. Simon, who succeeded Jonathan, was recognized by Demetrius II. and by the Romans. He distinguished himself by many glorious exploits; but his son-in-law, Ptolemy, assassinated him and all his children, with the exception of Hircanus, who succeeded his father.

11. John Hircanus, was acknowledged High-Priest and Prince of the Jews, B. C., 135. His son, Aristobulus I., took the title of King, but he dishonored the heroic race from which he sprang by every sort of crimes. From that time forward, there are recorded but intestine struggles, treasons, and assassinations, between the princes of the Jews and those of Syria. Hircanus II. and Aristobulus II., the son of Alexander Janneus, disputed for the throne; but Pompey, having taken possession of Jerusalem, pronounced in favor of Hircanus, B. C. 64. In the mean time, civil wars did not cease raging until the Idumœan Herod had been recognized King of Judea by the Romans, B. C. 40. Then were fulfilled the destinies of the Jewish nation; CHRIST came into the word, and, by dying on the Cross, gave birth to a new order of things.

---

9. What is known of Judas Maccabeus?—10. Of his brother Jonathan and Simon?—11. Which of the descendants of Mathathias took the title of King? On what occasion did Pompey interfere in the affairs of the Jews? When did the sceptre depart from the House of Juda?

EGYPTIANS.

1. Egypt, bound by the Red Sea on the east, Ethiopia on the south, Lybia on the west, the Mediterranean Sea on the north, is, strictly speaking, merely the valley of the Nile. Beyond the Libyan Mountains and the Arabian Chain, which enclose the bed of the river, there is no trace of vegetation; nothing can be seen but sands and deserts. Egypt then is, as Herodotus expresses it, a *present from the Nile.* This river constitutes Egypt, and indeed, from it was derived the primitive name of the country, *Egyptos.* Egypt is also called the land of the river, *Potamia.* Were the Nile not existing, nothing would break the barren uniformity of the desert; if the upper course of the river were turned aside, Egypt would cease to exist. This idea occurred to an Emperor of Abyssinia, who lived in the 13th century, and later to the Portuguese Albuquerque. In fact, the Nile, through all the lower part of its course, offers the remarkable peculiarity of not receiving any affluent; and, contrary to all other rivers, instead of increasing as it advances, its bulk of water diminishes by feeding the lateral canals.

The Nile is subject to periodical overflows, which last for about three months in the year. This period is passed in feasting and amusement, particularly if the waters rise to the desired height,—the fertility of the country being due to that alone. The slime deposited by the water fertilizes the land, so that husbandmen have merely to sow their seeds, and afterwards reap the crops.

2. That the land may attain its full fertility, the waters of the Nile must rise sixteen cubits; if they do not rise as high, there is prospect of famine; but if they rise higher, they become dangerous. To obviate these two calamities, the Lake Mœris was hollowed out. When the inundation was not sufficient, the waters of the lake were let out to increase those of the Nile; but if, on the contrary, the rains were too abundant, the sluice-gates of the lake were opened, so that the superabundant water might flow into it. Canals were also dug in order to conduct the fertilizing waters over the face of the country.

3. The origin of the Egyptians is not accurately known. Some authors think they came from Asia, others assert that the whole of Egypt was colonized by the Ethiopians. However,

1. What is the general aspect of Egypt?—2. How were the inundations of the Nile regulated?—3. Whence came the first inhabitants of Egypt? By whom was Egypt governed? How many dynasties of kings may be counted? At what period does the history of Egypt become more authentic?

though it is difficult to define the dates of various events on account of these differences of opinion, yet a certain number of facts may be incontestably established. Kings of the nation, known under the name of Pharaos, governed Egypt until its conquest by Cambyses, B. C. 525. They formed thirty dynasties, which were at first simultaneous, afterwards successive. Their reign was interrupted by the incursion of an Asiatic people known as Hyksos or Shepherds. After the Shepherd Kings, Egyptian History becomes far less uncertain. For guides, we have the monuments of the country itself, the sacred books of the Hebrews, and the testimony of the best accredited Greek historians.

4. *Ancient Pharaos*, B. C. 2188–2082. In Upper Egypt, *Menes* or *Misraim*, of the race of Cham, embellished the town of Thebes, and was the first King of the country which, until then, had been governed by the priests. He laid the foundations of Memphis, and executed the works which regularized the course of the Nile. After his death, the Egyptians rendered him divine honors. Between Menes and Mœris, there may be counted 332 Kings or Pharaos, divided into sixteen dynasties, which, according to all appearances, must have reigned simultaneously.

5. Among the kings who succeeded Menes, the three most spoken of are *Busiris*, *Osymandias*, and *Mœris*. Busiris reigned in Thebes about the year 2120 B. C. It is said that the population of that town was at that time so considerable, that, by each of its hundred gates, two hundred war-chariots and ten thousand combattants could issue forth at the same time. According to some historians, Osymandias, the contemporary of Abraham, made war against the Bactrians. He is mentioned as the first who collected a public library. According to other authors, his reign should only come after those of the Shepherd Kings. To Mœris is attributed the Lake which bears his name.

6. *Hyksos Kings*, B. C. 2084–1825. The incursion of the Hyksos is generally supposed to have taken place towards the time of Mœris. Under the name of Hyksos, or more usually under that of Shepherds, historians designate a foreign people to whom Egypt was subjected for more than three centuries. The origin of the Shepherds is not known with certainty. It is supposed they were Arabs and Phenicians. They chose themselves a King *Salatis*, and fortified the town of Pelusium in the Delta;

4. Who was the first king of the Egyptians?—5. Who were the principal successors of Menes up to the time of the Hyksos Kings? Where did Busiris reign? What remarkable events happened in the reign of Osymandias? of Mœris?—6. By whom was Egypt invaded? What is meant by Hyksos?

but they were finally driven out of the country by a King of Thebes named *Thoutmosis*. It was in the time of the Hyksos that Abraham went to Egypt, B. C. 1920.

7. *The second race of Pharaos*, B. C. 1825-525. The Kings of Thebes, on expelling the Hyksos, reigned over the whole of Egypt. The history of Joseph, who was minister to one of these Kings or Pharaos, demonstrates that they governed with absolute authority, that they had a rich and powerful court, that agriculture was flourishing in their dominions, and that the arts and sciences were successfully cultivated. After the death of Joseph, a new King, named *Rameses*, known in the Scriptures as Pharao, made the Israelites suffer severely. *Amenophis*, his eldest son and successor, is that Pharao who allowed the Israelites to leave Egypt, and who was overwhelmed by the waters of the Red Sea, B. C. 1491.

8. *Sesostris*, son and successor of Amenophis, was the most powerful and renowned of all the Kings of Egypt; he overran Lybia, Ethiopia, and Arabia with his victorious arms, penetrated into India as far as the Ganges, and Europe as far as the Danube; but he did not retain under his own dominion all the countries he had conquered.

On returning to his own States, he applied himself to rendering his subjects happy; he executed many useful works, dug canals and built towns, which he raised on causeways to preserve them from the inundations of the Nile. He also built several monuments which have transmitted to posterity the record of his exploits, and whose remains are still greatly admired. The obelisk of Luxor, or Louqsor, in Paris, was found in a temple built by this great King, and bears several inscriptions in his honor. Some historians attribute the invention of maps to Sesostris, and they say he invented them in order to show his vast possessions and the countries he had visited.

9. After Sesostris, the History of Egypt becomes very uncertain until the reign of Pharao, Solomon's ally. His son, Sesac, waged war against Roboam, King of Juda, took possession of all his treasures, pillaged the Temple and Palace, and made the kingdom tributary, B. C. 971.

10. The successors of Sesac were almost always allies of the

7. By whom was Egypt governed after the expulsion of the Hyksos? How were they governed in the time of the patriarch Joseph? What is known of Rameses? Under which Pharao did the departure of the children of Israel from Egypt take place?—8. What was the reign of Sesostris? What were his great exploits? How did he try to immortalize his memory? What invention is ascribed to him?—9. What is offered by the History of Egypt after Sesostris? What is known of Sesac?—10. How did the successors of of Sesac act with regard to the Kings of Juda and Israel? By whom was Egypt invaded towards the year 707?

Kings of Juda and Israel. They even tried to protect them from the attacks of the Assyrian Kings, but they could neither succeed in defending their allies, nor in protecting themselves against such powerful enemies. Towards the year 707, B. C., Hezekiah being King of Juda, the Assyrians, led by Sennacherib, spread themselves over Egypt, filling the country with blood and carnage. About the same period, the Ethiopians also invaded Egypt several times, and succeeded in throwing it in a frightful state of anarchy.

11. Twelve of the principal lords of the country undertook to re-establish order, and restore Egypt to its former glory. They divided the country into twelve provinces, each taking the government of one. As a monument of their union, they built the celebrated Labyrinth. One of these twelve princes, however, named *Psammitichus*, wished to reign alone. He made an alliance with the Greeks, set his rivals at defiance, and made himself master of all Egypt, B. C, 670.

12. *Nechao*, B. C. 615, his successor, wishing to make war on the Assyrians, demanded of Josiah, King of Juda, the permission to pass through his realm. Josiah, fearing treachery, refused him this permission. Nechao, enraged at this refusal, attacked the King of Juda, conquered him, took possession of his States, and continued his march, B. C. 610. He took from the Assyrians all that they possessed as far as the Euphrates, and laid waste their country; but he was afterwards conquered by Nabuchodonosor II. and compelled to confine himself to the ancient limits of Egypt. He commenced a canal from the Nile to the Red Sea, in order to unite that sea to the Mediterranean.

13. *The last Kings of Egypt.—Amasis*, an officer of obscure birth, was placed on the throne by a revolt of the army; he governed wisely, and took great pains to establish order in his States. He opened his court to foreigners, and particularly to the Greeks. It is said that Pythagoras made a journey there. *Psammenit*, son of Amasis, was conquered and put to death by Cambyses, King of Persia, who added Egypt to his own empire, B. C. 525. The Egyptians revolted several times, but they could not recover their independence, and it was only after the death of Alexander the Great, that they again formed a separate empire from the Persians. This was at the end of the fourth century before the Birth of Jesus Christ.

---

11. What was the end of the anarchy that laid waste Egypt? What monument did the twelve lords leave of their alliance? By what means did Psammitichus obtain sole possession of the power?—12. What was the reign of Nechao?—13. Who were the last kings of Egypt? How did Amasis and Psammenit distinguish themselves? By whom was Egypt conquered? At what period did it again become an independent kingdom?

NEW KINGDOM OF EGYPT.

1. PTOLEMY I. SOTER.—After the death of Alexander, Ptolemy, the son of Lagus, one of his lieutenants whom he loved and esteemed most, obtained the Kingdom of Egypt as his share, after the battle of Ipsus, B. C. 301. At a former division, he had received the administration of that country, and made himself loved by the Egyptians through his respect for their ancient superstitions, and, he showed so much zeal for the development of the industry and commerce of this country, that he made Alexandria the metropolis of the East. A friend to letters and sciences, he founded the celebrated Alexandrian library, which contained as many as 40,000 volumes. With him commenced the dynasty of the Lagides, which reigned in Egypt for three centuries. He abdicated in 235, in favor of his second son Ptolemy Philadelphus.

2. PTOLEMY II. PHILADELPHUS, B. C. 235–248.—This Prince pursued the same skilful policy of his father, and like him, rendered Egypt prosperous. He established two forts on the Red Sea, built up a light-house on the Island of Pharos, and offered his court as a refuge to the poets and sages of Greece. Alexandria then became a new Tyre for commerce, and a new Athens for study. The translation of the Bible, known under the name of the *Septuagint* was undertaken at the cost of Ptolemy Philadelphus. The glory of this Prince would have been complete, had he not tarnished it by the murder of his two brothers.

3. PTOLEMY III. EVERGETES, B. C. 247–222.—Having succeeded his father Philadelphus, this Prince passed into Syria to revenge the death of his sister Berenice. He conquered the whole country and carried away immense treasures. On passing through Jerusalem, he made valuable presents to the Temple. His expeditions into Arabia Felix and Ethiopia, extended his own power, as well as the trade of his subjects. The death of Evergetes was a misfortune for Egypt, as the reigns of his successors offer only a long catalogue of crimes and humiliations.

4. DECAY AND FALL OF THE LAGIDES, B. C. 222–30.—*Ptolemy IV. Philopator*, the murderer of his father and the perse-

1. Who was the first King of Egypt after Alexander? At what period was the possession of Egypt confirmed to Ptolemy Soter? In what way was his reign remarkable?—2. What memorable events took place under the reign of Ptolemy II.?—3. What did Ptolemy III. do at the commencement of his reign? At his passing through Jerusalem? What expeditions did he undertake on his return from Syria?—4. When did the decay of the Lagides commence? What was the character of these last princes in general? What summons did the Roman envoy make to Antiochus?

cutor of the Jews died of his excesses, B. C. 205. His son *Ptolemy V. Epiphanes* had a stormy minority, and died a victim of his own disorders at the age of 29, B. C. 181. *Ptolemy VI. Philometor*, his son, was besieged in Alexandria by Antiochus Epiphanes. This Prince being unable to defend himself demanded succor of the Romans. Popilius, the envoy from that proud Republic, had a conference with Antiochus, and, seeing that he hesitated to grant peace, drew a circle around him on the sand, saying: *You must give an answer before stepping over that.* Antiochus, intimidated, promised every thing and set out again for Syria, B. C. 172.

5. The Romans also restored *Ptolemy XI. Auletes*, whom the Egyptian people had sent away for having increased the taxes. From that time forward, Roman influence was all-powerful in Egypt. However, a roman soldier having killed a cat, the outrage offered to this pretended divinity excited a revolt, which was nearly causing the Romans to lose the fruits of their victory. Shortly afterwards, Pompey, being overcome by Cæsar, took refuge in Egypt, and was there assassinated by the order of *Ptolemy XII. Denis*, the brother of the celebrated Cleopatra, B. C. 48.

6. Cæsar showed great indignation at the outrage committed on Pompey, and made use of this crime as a pretext to dispose of the throne of Egypt in favor of *Cleopatra*, notwithstanding the rights of Ptolemy XII, who perished in his struggle to assert his rights against Cæsar. Cleopatra had soon her second brother *Ptolemy XIII. Neoteros* put to death and still further increased her power by means of the protection of the Roman Antony. However, after the overthrow of the latter by Octavius, she deprived herself of life rather than fall into the hands of the conqueror, and Egypt became a Roman Province, in the year 30 B. C.

7. The Romans kept possession of Egypt until the establishment of the Vandals in Africa, where the latter were called by Count Boniface, A. C. 427; the Eastern Empire regained that country under Belisarius, in 534. Then came the Saracens sent by the Caliph Omar, who burned the celebrated library of Alexandria, in 638. The Turks, having defeated the

5. For what motive had the Egyptians expelled Ptolemy Auletes? What incident nearly caused the Romans to lose their influence? What was the end of Pompey?—6. What pretext had Cæsar, for interfering in the affairs of Egypt? Who succeeded Ptolemy XII.? Relate the history of Cleopatra.—7. How long did the Romans possess Egypt? When did Egypt fall under the power of the Saracens? To what nation did it belong afterwards? Who succeeded the Turks? Who overthrew the power of the Mamelukes? Did not the French take Egypt?

Saracens, took possession of Egypt, but they did not occupy the country for a long time.

The Mamelukes, a military force composed of slaves, which had been organized by the Turkish Sultans, soon became very powerful; and, revolting against their masters, conquered them, and formed an independent kingdom. It was the Mamelukes who, for a great ransom, restored Saint Louis to liberty. They occupied the throne until the time of Selim I., who took it from them, in 1517. The French, under Bonaparte, took Egypt in 1795, but were soon after obliged to abandon it to the Turks, its former masters. At the present day, the Viceroy or Pascha of Egypt has broken the chains that bound him to the Sultan of Constantinople.

8. *Manners and customs of the ancient Egyptians.* Egypt is looked upon as the birth-place of the arts and sciences, and as one of the most ancient centres of civilization. A great number of monuments, several of which have been already mentioned, the Pyramids, the Obelisks, the Sphinx, the Statue of Memnon, Lake Mœris, are the results of the gigantic undertakings of the Egyptians.

9. The government of the Egyptians has been much admired; the kings were subjected to the laws as much as the people. No one was allowed to be useless to the State, and once a year, every inhabitant was obliged to declare his means of existence. Justice was administered by thirty judges chosen in the three capitals, Thebes, Memphis, and Heliopolis. Affairs were transacted in writing, in order to guard the judges against the charms of eloquence.

10. The immortality of the soul was one of the principal dogmas of their religion, and they believed in Metempsychosis. The other points of their religious belief, being founded on idolatry, were nothing but most absurd superstitions. Among the gods of the Egyptians, were the vilest things; even animals and vegetables had altars erected to them. Their principal divinity was the ox Apis. This ox, which was black, spotted with white, was most carefully fed in a temple, and worshipped with most devout homages. At its death, all Egypt wore mourning until an exactly similar ox had been found to succeed to its dignity.

8. In what light is Egypt looked upon? What monuments did the Egyptians raise?—9. What is known of the government of the Egyptians?—10. What was the religion of the Egyptians? What gods did they adore?

THE PHENICIANS.

1. Phenicia, the country inhabited by the descendants of Canaan, formed a neck of land of about fifty leagues in length by ten in breadth, situated on the coast of the Mediterranean to the west of Syria. The numerous ports, and the wood for building purposes found in the mountains, gave the Phenicians the greatest advantages for navigation. They therefore turned their whole attention towards the sea, and became the first and the most skilful navigators of antiquity. Their principal towns were Tyre and Sidon, which were founded at a very remote period, about 1835 B. C.

2. On Josue's arrival in Palestine, many tribes of that country took refuge in Phenicia, and a great number of Phenicians passed over into Africa. Phenicia preserved her independence for a long time, but was finally forced to submit first to the Persians and then to the Greeks. Ochus, King of Persia, laid Sidon in ruins, and Alexander the Great destroyed Tyre after a seven months' siege, which was rendered memorable by the immense works of the besiegers, and the intrepid defence of the besieged. Alexander had a dike built which joined the mainland to the island on which the town was situated, B. C. 332. Phenicia afterwards became part of the Kingdom of Syria, whose destiny she shared, and, like her, belonging by turns of the Romans, the Saracens, and lastly, to the Turks.

3. Having very soon understood the value of colonies and settlements, the Phenicians founded a great many of them on the most fertile coasts of the Mediterranean, such as Palermo in Sicily; Malaga, Seville, Cadix in Spain; Utica and Carthage in Africa. On the southern coasts of Gaul, there were some of their settlements, and they even went as far as the British Isles and the shores of the Baltic. Their wide-spread maritime commerce, for a long time, gave them the superiority over the other nations of the earth. They were well versed in sciences, particularly in Geography and Astronomy which are so useful in navigation. To them is ascribed the invention of writing. The arts also were carefully cultivated among them. It is well known how celebrated were their purple and Tyrian stuffs.

---

1. What was the geographical position of Phenicia? What were her most important towns?—2. By what nations were the Phenicians subjugated? By whom was Tyre destroyed? To whom has Phenicia belonged since?—3. Where did the Phenicians establish colonies? To what were they indebted for their riches? In what state were the arts and sciences among them? What invention is ascribed to them?

THE ARABS.

1. Arabia is a vast Peninsula situated on the east of Egypt, and surrounded, on the west, south, and east, by the Red Sea, the Arabian Sea, and the Persian Gulf, and separated from Palestine by arid sands. The primitive Arabs called themselves the issue of Yarib, son of Jectan, one of the descendants of Sem. In early times, they distinguished themselves by their conquests of Babylon and Egypt, and by their incursions into Persia and India. But these invasions led to nothing stable, and the Arabs soon renounced these adventurous expeditions. They then fixed themselves in Arabia Felix, where they dwelt in the most profound peace until the coming of Mahomet, who stirred up Arabia against the rest of the world.

2. The second race of Arabs descend from Ismael, the son of Abraham and Agar. These Arabs are known by the name of Saracens. With the exception of the inhabitants of a few towns, such as Mecca and Medina, they had no other care but that of their flocks and herds, and were always a nomade race. Divided into independent tribes, they braved the most illustrious conquerors of the old world, as well as the powerful kings of Assyria. The veneration in which the Arabs held their ancestors, the patriarchs, degenerated into idolatry. When Ismael fixed his residence in Arabia, he retained the wholesome traditions of Abraham; but his descendants soon forgot them.

THE SYRIANS.

1. Syria is situated on the north-west of Arabia and north of Palestine, between the Euphrates and the Mediterranean. This was a very fertile country. Its first inhabitants were descendants of Aram, the son of Sem. In their traditions, they preserved a remembrance thereof, and a celebrated geographer of antiquity, Strabo, calls them Arameans. Enervated by the mildness of the climate and the fertility of the land, and separated from one another by the numerous chains of mountains which traversed their country, the Syrians had never either the energy or the unity of purpose necessary for playing an important part.

---

1. How is the Arabian Peninsula bounded? What exploits were performed by the descendants of Jectan?—2. Who was the father of the second race of Arabs?—Did this race always manage to retain its independence? Into what errors of religion did the Arabs fall?

1. How is Syria bounded? Whence came its first inhabitants? What prevented their prospering as a nation?

2. This country was originally divided into a great number of small kingdoms, of which, that of Damascus was the only one that ever had any importance. In the time of Achab, Benadad II., King of Damascus, led numerous armies several times to attack Samaria, but they were annihilated. Some time afterwards, however, God, wishing to punish Achab, who had filled up the measure of his crimes by the murder of Naboth, Benadad conquered the united forces of Achab and Josaphat, King of Juda. In 736, the Kingdom of Syria was overcome by the combined efforts of Achaz, King of Juda, and Theglathphalasar, King of Assyria, who annexed it to his own kingdom.

3. Alexander the Great conquered Syria (see *History of the Macedonians*); and, after the battle of Ipsus, B. C. 304, Seleucus Nicator, one of his generals, to whose lot this country had fallen, built Antioch on the Orontes, so as to make it the capital not only of Syria, but also of all his possessions in Asia. A rupture between Seleucus and another general of Alexander, Lysimachus, King of Thrace, was followed by a war which cost Lysimachus his life, and united his estates to those of his rival, B. C. 282. Later, several provinces, which were then under subjection, separated themselves from the empire of the Seleucides and formed the Kingdoms of Bithynia and Pergamos.

4. Antiochus II., one of the successors of Seleucus, was defeated by Ptolemy Evergetes, King of Egypt, B. C. 247; the latter had declared war against him, in order to avenge the death of his sister who had been assassinated by Laodice, the first wife of Antiochus. Some time before, B. C. 251, Arsaces had revolted at the head of the Parthians; he was the chief of that famous dynasty of the Arsacides, which made the empire of Syria tremble to its very foundations, and caused the downfall of the Roman Empire itself.

5. The most celebrated among the successors of Seleucus, was Antiochus III. called *the Great*, B. C. 222. He at first experienced some reverses, but afterwards regained all the former possessions of his predecessors, and considerably extended the limits of his States. He was arrested in his career through Asia Minor by the Romans, the allies of the King of Pergamos. Antiochus, having refused to follow the advice of Hannibal, who had taken refuge at his court, was overcome by Lucius Scipio, and reduced to

2. Which was the principal kingdom of Syria? By what exploits did the Kings of Damascus distinguish themselves?—3. To whom did Syria fall after the battle of Ipsus? What town was its capital? What did Seleucus Nicator do that was remarkable?—4. What was the cause of the war between Antiochus II. and Ptolemy Evergetes?—Who were the Arsacides?—5. What were the principal wars of Antiochus the Great? How did he die?

accept peace under hard conditions, B. C. 190. Willing to pillage the Temple of Persepolis of its treasures in order to repair his finances, the exasperated citizens put him to death.

6. From the time of Antiochus the Great, the Empire of the Seleucides declined rapidly. Seleucus IV. Philopator sent his minister Heliodorus to take vengeance on the Jews, by despoiling the Temple of the true God; but the sacrilegious minister was severely chastised by the Angel of the Lord; and on returning, he assassinated the Prince who had sent him.

7. Antiochus IV. Epiphanes, son of Seleucus IV., undertook the conquest of Egypt; furious at having been obliged to relinquish his design at the command of Rome, he turned his anger against the Jews, and attempted by means of persecution to make them abandon the worship of the true God. It was under him that the pious Eleazar, the seven Maccabee brothers, their mother, and a great number of other faithful Israelites suffered a glorious death for their faith, B. C. 168.

8. But God raised up a hero for the defence of his people. In Sacred History we have seen the marvellous triumphs of Judas Maccabeus. Antiochus wished to fight him in person; but that impious prince, whilst on his way, was struck by a frightful malady. In this state, he had recourse to the God of the Jews; but, as his heart was not changed, his prayer was not heard, and, as the Scriptures say, he died in his sins, B. C. 164.

9. The history of the Seleucides is no longer anything but a series of the most abominable crimes. Cleopatra successively murdered two husbands and her son in order to reign alone. She wished to get rid of the only remaining obstacle by poisoning her second son, Antiochus Gryphus; but the latter put an end to her crimes by making her swallow the fatal draught she had prepared for him, B. C. 121.

10. Soon after, Syria, tired with her civil wars, gave herself to Tigranes, King of Armenia, B. C. 85; and, in 64, Pompey, the conqueror of Tigranes, declared Syria a Roman Province.

---

6. What happened to Heliodorus, the minister of Seleucus?—7. How did Antiochus Epiphanes act towards the Jews? Mention some of the pious Israelites who died for the worship of the true God.—8. What was Judas Maccabeus? What was the end of Antiochus Epiphanes?—9. What is the history of the Seleucides from that time?—10. How did the Empire of the Seleucides end?

THE INDIANS.

1. India, peopled by the descendants of Sem, formed one of the most ancient empires of the world; but her history is involved in obscurity. The riches of this country are spoken of in the Book of Job. Later, Solomon, in league with the Phenicians, sent ships to the land of Ophir, which is generally supposed to be India. Semiramis, having attempted to invade India, was repulsed; later again, Sesostris, King of Egypt, turned his arms against that country; the Kings of Persia united a part of India to their own empire; Alexander led his victorious troops beyond the Indus. Pythagoras and many other Grecian Philosophers, consulted the Brahmins of India, and spoke with the greatest admiration of their science and wisdom.

2. India freed herself under the successors of Alexander, and, for a long time, ceased all relations with the nations of the West. The Mussulmans subdued the Indians under their dominion, and won them partly to their faith. The famous Tamerlane united the northern part of India to the Mongolian Empire; but, on the fall of that Empire, India became independent, and divided into numerous Principalities, which the Europeans successively conquered, after the discovery of the Cape of Good Hope. Hyder Ali and Tippoo-Sahib, the last champions of the independence of India, could not prevent her falling almost entirely into the hands of the English, who are still her masters. The greater part of the population is still given over to idolatry. It is said that the Indians adore thousands of gods.

THE CHINESE AND JAPANESE.

1. The History of China is nearly as obscure as that of India; however, some personages are said to have made themselves famous in that country. Fo-Hi is looked upon as the founder of the Chinese Empire; Tsin-Chi, one of his successors, caused a wall twenty-five feet high and five hundred leagues in length to be built, so as to protect his States against the incursions of the

1. By whom was India peopled? Who were the first people that had intercourse with India? Which people successively made war against her? By what philosophers was India visited?—2. By whom was India conquerred after the coming of Jesus Christ? What did Tamerlane do? When did the Europeans begin to conquer her? Under whose domination is India now?

1. What is known about the History of China? What remarkable act did Tsin-Chi perform? What is known of Yao? Of Confucius? What form of worship do the Chinese practise?

Tartars (inhabitants of the centre of Asia). Yao gave laws to his fellow-citizens, and Confucius, a Philosopher who lived in the sixth century before Christ, left them a moral code which has made his name universally celebrated. Almost divine honors are paid him. The Chinese are divided into several castes according to their dignities, riches, or employments. The greater number adore a divinity called Fo. The rest are divided into several sects, the most remarkable of which are the Confucians; their priests are called bonzes, and their magistrates, mandarins.

2. Japan was almost unknown to the ancients, and even to the moderns until the middle of the sixteenth century of the Christian era, when the Portuguese visited the country and carried on a profitable commerce; at the same time, Saint Francis Xavier went there to preach the Faith to the natives. Soon after, for a period of thirty years, a fearful persecution was raised against the Christians, in which 400000 faithful won the palm of martyrdom. From that time until 1854, the Dutch were the only Europeans admitted to land in Japan; but they had to submit to the strictest supervision. The head of the State is called *Kubo*, and that of religion, *Dairi*. The Japanese believe in the immortality of the soul, but they adore a multiplicity of gods.

THE SCYTHIANS.

This people, descended from the children of Japheth, gradually occupied the centre and north of Asia. They were never overcome by Persian, Greek, or Roman conquerors. From that part of Asia inhabited by the ancient Scythians, there issued, during the early centuries of the Christian era, the Avari, the Huns, &c; during the tenth, the Seljukian Turks; during the fourteenth, the Ottomans; and lastly, the Mongolians. Those countries are now inhabited by the Tartars and Mongolians.

THE ASSYRIANS.

1. After the dispersion of the human race, Nimrod, the great-grandson of Cham, settled on the banks of the Euphrates, and there founded a town near the unfinished tower of Babel, which

---

2. Since when has Japan been known? Who first preached the Faith there? How long did the persecution against the true believers last? Who were the only people allowed to land there before the year 1854?
What countries did the Scythians occupy? Whence came the Avari? the Huns? the Seljukian Turks? the Ottomans

1. Who was the founder of Babylon?

he called Babylon, B. C. 2204. The Holy Scriptures tell us that, after having made war on the animals, he waged it on man, and was the first who aspired to the title of conqueror.

2. About the same time, Assur a descendant of Sem, having established himself on the banks of the Tigris, there built the city, which, long afterwards, received the name of Ninive.

Some Arabian tribes, which are thought to have had some analogy with the Hyksos, harrassed by continual attacks the cities of Babylon and Ninive. The first of these being much weakened, Belus or Baal, King of Assyria, profited by the circumstance to unite under his own dominion the two rising states, which had, until then, been governed by their respective monarchs. This Prince and the greater number of his successors, were worshipped under the name of Baal or Bel.

3. Ninus, the son and successor of Belus was the real founder of the Assyrian monarchy, the seat of which he established in the town built by Assur. He so enlarged and embellished his capital, that it took and kept his name. Ninive became the largest and most magnificent city of the world. It is said that it was thirty-four miles in circumference ; its walls were a hundred feet high, and were so thick that three chariots could be driven abreast on them ; they were flanked by fifteen hundred towers two hundred feet high, B. C. 1834. Ninus overcame the Medes and Persians, and penetrated as far as the Indus. He even took possession of Bactriana, thanks to the courage of his wife Semiramis.

4. Ninus, at his death, left a young son named Ninyas. Semiramis, the mother of the young Prince, took possession of the supreme authority to the detriment of her son, but her great genius caused her usurpation to be overlooked. Several historians assert that she led her victorious armies from Ethiopia as far as India. This Princess strove to surpass all the preceding monarchs in magnificence. She enlarged Babylon, and employed more than two millions of slaves in the extraordinary constructions which she devised. This immense city, by the splendor, and richness of its monuments, appeared still more prodigious than Ninive.

5. Ninyas having conspired against his mother, she, not willing to turn her arms against this ungrateful son, resigned him

2. By whom was Assyria frequently harrassed ?—3. What is known of Ninus ? What town was his capital ? Describe the fortifications of Ninive. What were the conquests of Ninus ?—4. Who succeeded Ninus ? What were the exploits of Semiramis ? What did she do to embellish her States ?—5. What was the character of Ninyas ? What is known of his successors ? On what mission did Jonah go to Ninive ?

the throne after a reign of forty-two years. This Prince passed his days in pleasure and idleness. His successors, as despicable as himself, are very little known. What is known for certain is, that 825 years before Christ, Jonah went to preach repentance to the Ninivites. This city, which had already fallen from its former splendor, still counted two millions inhabitants. At the voice of the Prophet, and following the example of their King, they repented and were converted to the true God.

6. The Ninivites however were not long ere they returned to their former crimes, the kings setting them the most deplorable examples of profligacy. God punished them by a terrible catastrophe. Sardanapalus, the most effeminate of their kings, was overthrown by his principal officers who had revolted against him, and he burned himself and all his treasures in his palace, so as not to fall into the hands of his enemies, B. C. 759.

7. The empire of Assyria was divided anew. Arbaces, the governor of Media, made himself independent in that country. The kingdom of Babylon was separated from that of Ninive; but that powerful city was not long in overcoming its rival. After Phul, who is supposed to be the son of Sardanapalus, came Theglathphalasar, a warlike Prince, who made himself master of Syria and Galilee, and forced Achaz, King of Juda, to pay him tribute, B. C. 735. His son, Salmanasar, in 729, destroyed the Kingdom of Israel, and led the people away captive as well as their King Osee, B. C. 721. Tobias, one of the captives, having gained his confidence, made use of his influence to ameliorate the fate of his captive brethren. The victorious arms of Salmanasar rendered him master of Phenicia, Babylon, and Persia. The Medes alone successfully maintained their independence.

8. Sennacherib, his successor, entered Judea at the head of a powerful army, and penetrated as far as Jerusalem; but God defended the pious King Hezekiah; an Angel killed 180000 men of the Assyrian army in one single night. The following year, he besieged Tyre, having in view to punish its inhabitants for the succor they had given Jerusalem; but he failed in his attempt. On his return to Ninive, his children deprived him of his crown and life, as had been foretold by the Prophet Isaiah, B. C. 707.

---

6. What was the death of Sardanapalus? What became of the Kingdom of Assyria after the death of Sardanapalus? Who reigned at Ninive? What exploits did Theglathphalasar perform?—7. What did Salmanasar do? What did he do with the inhabitants of the Kingdom of Israel? Of what other countries did he become master?—8. What success did Sennacherib meet with in the Kingdom of Juda? Before Tyre? What was his end?

9. Asarhaddon, profiting by his brothers' crime of parricide, mounted the throne, and laid waste Phenicia, Arabia, and Egypt. He did not dare attack Hezekiah, King of Jerusalem; but the crimes of Manasses, son of this holy King, having drawn down the anger of Heaven, Asarhaddon brought him under subjection and shut him up in a dungeon. Manasses repented of his evil doings, and the Lord allowed him to be restored to his throne.

10. It was Asarhaddon who subjected Babylon, B. C. 689. The two kingdoms of Ninive and Babylon become one for thirty six years, and Nabuchodonosor I., son of Asarhaddon raised the Assyrian power to a still higher degree, and defied Phraortes, son of Dejoces, King of the Medes. He wished even to join Palestine to his States; but his General Holofernes was slain by Judith, and his troops were dispersed, B. C. 650.

11. This disaster was the signal for the fall of Ninive, by the revolt of the conquered governors and people. The last King, Sarac, recalled the effeminacy and vices of Sardanapalus. Nabopolassar, Governor of Babylon, forming an alliance with Cyaxares, King of the Medes, besieged and overthrew Ninive. This celebrated City fell to rise no more; its remains, together with the Kingdom of Babylon, formed the second Empire of Assyria of which Nabopolassar was the founder, B. C. 625.

12. Nabopolassar I. established the seat of his government Babylon. The latter part of his life was not happy; he could not maintain the Kingdom of Juda in due obedience, and was conquered by Nechao, King of Egypt. He died in 606. Nabuchodonosor II., who was even more illustrious than his father, Nabopolassar I. conquered all Western Asia, defeated Nechao's troops, overran Egypt, overcame Josiah, together with his son Joachaz, King of Juda, and caused several hostages to be delivered up to him, among whom were the young Daniel and his companions, Ananiah, Misael and Azariah.

13. A fresh revolt of Sedekiah brought Nabuchodonosor back to Judea, where he ravaged the country with fire and sword and led the people away captive. Nabuchodonosor, elated by his victories, caused a golden statue of himself to be set up, and commanded the people to adore it. The three companions of Daniel, were miraculously preserved alive in the flames of a fiery furnace into which they had been cast for having refused to obey

9. What were the celebrated acts of Asarhaddon?—10. Of Nabuchodonosor I.?—11. Under what prince was Ninive destroyed? Who conquered it?—12. Where did Nabuchodonosor establish the seat of his government? What were the principal expeditions of Nabuchodonosor II.?—13. What brought Nabuchodonosor back to Judea, in the time of Sedekiah? What did Nabuchodonosor do when elated by his victories? What edict did he publish?

the impious command. The King, astonished at this prodigy, published a decree in which he exalted the power of the true God, and by which he granted his favor to the young Israelites; but he continued to exact from his own subjects the honors which are due to God alone.

14. The sacrilegious pride of Nabuchodonosor drew upon him the wrath of God. He had a terrible dream which, being interpreted by the Prophet Daniel, foretold the King the chastisement that awaited him. Accordingly, God deprived him of reason for seven years, rendering him similar to the beasts of the fields. During this time, Queen Nitocris placed herself at the head of affairs, and, aided by the wise counsels of the Prophet Daniel, governed with great wisdom until the cure of Nabuchodonosor, who then resumed the sovereign power, and died in 561.

15. The tyranny, effeminacy, and incapacity of the successors of Semiramis had brought about the fall of the first empire; similar causes hastened the ruin of the second. Evilmerodach, son of Nabuchodonosor II., surnamed the Great, made himself odious, even to his own family, and was assassinated by his brother-in-law Neriglissor. Under the reign of Evilmerodach, Daniel, having been thrown into the lion's den, was saved by Divine protection. Neriglissor commenced the struggle of the Asiatic powers against the Medes and Persians; but he perished in a battle against Cyrus, grandson of Astyages, King of the Medes, B. C. 555.

16. Baltassar, a grandson of Neriglissor put the finishing-stroke to the impieties and abominations of his predecessors; but God, in His justice, had appointed a day for the punishment of Babylon. In the midst of a splendid feast, Baltassar saw a hand tracing mysterious characters on the wall announcing the fall of the Empire. The very night on which the Prophet Daniel explained to the King the signification of these mysterious characters, Cyrus entered the City at the head of the Medes and Persians. Baltassar was slain, and his kingdom became a Province of the Persian Empire, B. C. 538.

17. Observations on the Assyrians.—The Assyrians, and more particularly the Chaldees, the inhabitants of the country lying at the confluence of the Euphrates and Tigris, had made no less progress in the arts than the Egyptians. Babylon

14. By what dream was Nabuchodonosor disturbed? What punishment overtook him? Who ruled his States during his malady?—15. What causes brought about the fall of the second Assyrian Empire? What was the end of Evilmerodach? What happened to Daniel under this Prince?—16. Under what prince was the Kingdom of Babylon overthrown? How was Baltassar warned of his fall?—17. What progress had the Assyrians made in the arts? What were the embellishments of Babylon?

was an immense city, whose circumference is stated by many authors to have been twenty leagues, and the ruins, still to be seen, seem to prove that this extent is not exaggerated. It was surrounded by a wall 87 feet thick and 350 feet high, made of bricks cemented together with bitumen. There were hanging gardens on terraces over 303 feet in elevation. Two magnificent palaces on each bank of the Euphrates, were made to communicate by means of a passage constructed beneath the bed of the river. The tower of Belus, in the city, was 600 feet high, and supported a celebrated observatory, where the Chaldees determined the duration of the year. There is still a solid mass of ruin of this tower which is 200 feet high.

THE MEDES AND PERSIANS.

1. The Medes, who sprang from Madai, the son of Japheth, occupied the country between the Tigris and the Indus. Persia was only a Province of their vast Empire, and even one of the poorest and least civilized. It was only a short time before the birth of Cyrus, that Persia began to play a separate part, whose independence he afterwards secured by his sway over the Medes and part of Asia. As for the Medes, they only acquired importance after the dismemberment of the first Assyrian Empire, B. C. 759.

2. General Arbaces rendered Media independent by revolting against Sardanapalus; but, after his death, the Kingdom was a prey to anarchy. Dejoces, who was chosen to repair the misfortunes of the country, governed his subjects with severity, and made Ecbatana his capital. His successor, Phraortes, overpowered by Nabuchodonosor I., King of Ninive, was revenged by his son Cyaxares, who retook Ecbatana, and, by joining his forces with those of Nabopolassar, helped the latter to overthrow the Kingdom of Ninive, B. C. 625.

3. Cyaxares I. died after a reign of fifty-nine years. His son Astyages had two children: Cyaxares II. who succeeded him, and a daughter, Mandana, whose hand was given to Cambyses, King of Persia. From this marriage was born Cyrus, a Prince long foretold by prophecies, and destined by God to accomplish great designs. He was brought up at the court of the King of

1. In what state were the Medes before the time of Arbaces? In what state was Persia? 2. Who was the deliverer of the Medes? Whom did they choose for king? Who was the successor of Dejoces? What were the deeds of Cyaxares?—3. Who succeeded Cyaxares? To whom did Astyages marry his daughter Mandana? What prince was born of this marriage?

Media, and placed by this Prince, at the head of the army of the Medes and Persians.

4. Cyrus made war on Crœsus, King of Lydia, celebrated for his immense riches, conquered him on the plains of Thymbria, and took possession of Sardis, his capital, B. C. 547. Crœsus was treated with clemency. All the provinces of Asia Minor submitted to the Persian rule, the Greek colonies alone resisted successfully, owing it to their situation for escaping from the yoke of a conqueror who had no navy.

5. After having subjugated Lydia, Syria, and a part of Arabia, Cyrus laid siege to Babylon, where Baltassar had brought the remains of his army, which had been routed at Thymbria. This immense city, defended by its strong walls and by the Euphrates, for two years defied the efforts of the Persians. However, the hour of its fall was at hand, and the prophecies were about to be accomplished to the very letter. Whilst the impious Baltassar was profaning the sacred vessels of the Temple of Jerusalem, by making use of them during his orgies, the Persians, having turned the waters of the Euphrates from their course, entered the City by the dry bed of the River Euphrates, and penetrated as far as the palace. Baltassar and all his guards were slain. Assyria then became a Province of the Persian Empire, B. C. 538.

6. Cyrus, the conqueror of his enemies, found out that his name had been long inscribed in the prophecies of Isaiah. Struck by this Divine oracle, he gave glory to God, and published a solemn edict by which he gave permission to all the Jews to return to their own country, promising them his protection against whomsoever should oppose their undertakings. Thus ended the seventy years' captivity, B. C. 536.

7. The possessions of Cyrus extended from India to the Ægean Sea, and from Ethiopia and the Arabian Sea, as far as the Black and Caspian Seas. He divided them into a hundred and twenty governments or satrapies. He inhabited successively Babylon, Susa, and Ecbatana, the capitals of Assyria, Persia, and Media. When he felt his last hour approaching, he assembled the nobles of his Kingdom, and gave them useful counsels, after which, he had his children brought to him. Having thanked God for all the favors he had received from Him, he

4. On whom did Cyrus make war? What nations submitted to the Persians?—5. What did Cyrus do after having subjugated Lydia, Syria, and a part of Arabia?—6. What remarkable edict did Cyrus publish after the taking of Babylon?—7. What was the extent of Cyrus' possessions? What was there remarkable in the latter part of his reign? How did he die?

gave his children his hand to kiss, and in a failing voice pronounced these words: *Farewell, my dear children; may you lead a happy life. Bear a last farewell from me to your dear mother.* He then covered his face and expired, regretted by all his subjects.

8. Cyrus was succeeded by his son Cambyses, who commenced his reign by declaring war against Egypt. Having laid siege to Pelusium, in order to facilitate its capture, Cambyses placed in front of his army a great number of dogs, cats, and other animals which the Egyptians held sacred. As the latter did not dare shoot their arrows against these pretended divinities, they suffered their town to be taken. Inflated by this success, Cambyses wished to subdue Ethiopia; but he was obliged to retrace his footsteps, after having lost 300000 men. On arriving at Memphis, he found the people rejoicing, for they were celebrating the feast of Apis. Thinking they were making merry on account of his defeat, he got so furious, that, with his own hand, he killed their sacred ox, and overwhelmed the people with all kinds of vexations. He had already caused his brother Smerdis and one of his sisters to be put to death. The Persians, tired of his tyranny, revolted; but Cambyses died from the effects of a fall from his horse, whilst preparing to punish them, B. C. 522.

9. Then, a magian, impersonating Smerdis, mounted the throne; but his deceit was soon discovered. The usurper was overthrown by a conspiracy of the lords, and massacred together with a great number of magi, B. C. 521. Darius, son of Hystaspes, one of the conspirators, mounted the throne.

10. Darius had to subdue Babylon, which had revolted; he succeeded in this attempt only through the devotedness of one of his officers, B. C. 310. He afterwards attacked the European Scythians, a nomadic race, roaming in their chariots over the plains bordering the Don and the Danube, and who, by their frequent irruptions, molested the frontiers of the Persian Empire. Darius could never subdue these enemies who sent him word by their deputies: *Unless you soar into the air like a bird, unless you hide yourself in the ground like a mouse, unless you plunge into the water like a frog, you cannot escape our*

8. Who succeeded Cyrus? What country did Cambyses conquer? What stratagem did he employ to conquer the Egyptians? What expedition did he undertake? What was the result? By what action did he excite the indignation of the Egyptians? How did he die?—9. Who attempted to mount the throne after the death of Cambyses? What was the fate of the magian Smerdis? Who was raised to the throne after the death of Smerdis?—10. How did Darius make himself master of Babylon? What expedition did Darius next undertake? What was the result of this expedition?

arrows. The King returned into Asia, after having lost a great portion of his army.

11. Darius was more fortunate in his expedition against India. In a short time, he subjected a part of this immense Empire. The Persian Empire had then attained its greatest extent; Darius divided it unto twenty governments or satrapies, B. C. 505.

12. It was at this time that there broke out those continued wars between the Persians and the Greeks, which began by brilliant victories gained by the latter, and which were only to end by the fall of the Empire of Cyrus.

13. Darius wished to punish the Athenians for their having espoused the cause of the Ionians, who had revolted against the Persians and burned the town of Sardis; but the formidable army which he sent into Greece, was vanquished by Miltiades at the celebrated battle of Marathon, B. C. 490.

14. To wipe out the shame of this defeat, Xerxes, Darius' son, equipped a fleet which covered the Hellespont, and invaded Greece at the head of two millions of men; he also was beaten at Salamis and obliged to recross the sea in a fisherman's boat. Shortly afterwards, he was assassinated with his eldest son Darius; his third son, Artaxerxes Longimanus, succeeded him. It is supposed that this was the Assuerus who married Esther, Mardocai's niece. This Prince was not more fortunate than his father against the Greeks, for his armies were defeated by the son of Miltiades, the immortal Cimon.

15. Darius Nothus reigned after him, and died in 404, leaving the empire to his son Artaxerxes *Mnemon.* His brother, Cyrus the Younger, strove against him for his heritage. The Greeks, in order to foment the divisions between their former enemies, sent thirteen thousand men to Cyrus. This succor did not prevent the young Prince from being vanquished and slain at the battle of Cunaxa. After this battle, the Greek troops crossed through Western Asia, and, under the leadership of Xenophon, performed that famous retreat, which is known by the name of the *Retreat of the Ten Thousand.*

---

11. What was the result of Darius' expedition against India? How did he divide his States?—12. What was there remarkable between the Persians and Greeks at this period?—13. What was the result of the expedition of Darius against the Greeks?—14. What expedition did Xerxes undertake? What was the result? How did he die? Who was his successor? Was he fortunate in his war against the Greeks? —15. Who succeeded Artaxerxes? To whom did Darius Nothus leave the Empire? Who disputed the throne with him? Who gained the battle of Cunaxa? What did the Greek troops do after this battle?

16. The descendants of Nothus governed Persia until the destruction of this Empire by Alexander the Great, in 331 (See the *History of the Macedonians*) After the death of this conqueror, his Empire was divided. Antigone took possession of nearly all Asia; but, although seconded by the valor of Demetrius, his son, he gave way beneath the efforts of his colleagues, who were jealous of his power. Seleucus Nicator had part of his States, and took the title of King of Syria; the Parthians afterwards took possession of this territory, and sustained long and terrible wars against the Romans.

17. A SHORT ACCOUNT OF THE ORIENTAL NATIONS.—Before leaving the Oriental nations, some of the remarkable features of their character should be noticed. The great monarchies of which we have just sketched the history, have certain characteristics in common: the stability of their institutions, the system of castes, the privileges accorded to their priests and warriors, the absolute power of their kings. The latter trampled on immense multitudes whom servitude had brought to the same level of subjection. These multitudes were the instruments of so many fabulous conquests, who consumed their strength and lives in the gigantic constructions of Thebes, Ninive, Babylon, and Persipolis; covering them with mysterious inscriptions, with emblems and symbols of infinite variety, which modern science now strives to decipher. India and Ceylon Island also offer to the curiosity of the traveller, civil and religious monuments of wonderful architecture. Amongst these nations, there was neither public life, nor liberty, nor even any literature properly so called. They all had, nevertheless, attained a very high degree of civilization at quite an early period, when Europe was still desert and savage. At a certain epoch, however, progress stopped short, corruption overran these great kingdoms, which either perished, or, outliving their better existence, remained stationary as if petrified in their long decrepitude.

THE MACEDONIANS.

1. According to Mythology, the Macedonians owed their origin and their name to Macedon, son of Jupiter; but, according to historians, this people is a branch of the Greek Nation. Mac-

16. Who governed the Persian Empire until its destruction by Alexander the Great? What became of Alexander's Empire after his death? —17. Mention some characteristic features of the Oriental nations.

1. What was the origin of the Macedonian Nation? By whom was Macedonia erected into a kingdom? How did it become raised to the first rank?

edonia, erected into a Kingdom by Caranus, son of Hercules, nearly eight hundred years before the Christian era, was for a long time, without any influence in Greece; however, she suddenly rose up to the highest rank towards the middle of the fourth century B. C., through the political talents of Philip, a pupil of the celebrated Theban Epaminondas, and the father of Alexander the Great.

2. This ambitious Prince took advantage of the divisions among the Greeks to obtain a sway over the whole country. A good opportunity was furnished him by the Sacred War, declared against the Phocians, for their having tilled a piece of ground consecrated to Apollo, B. C. 355. He took possession of the Pass of Thermopylæ and of all the towns near Macedonia. After long and useless efforts, the eloquent orator Demosthenes succeeded in persuading his fellow-citizens to band themselves together for mutual defence. However, the Greeks were conquered at the great battle of Cheronea. Philip got himself appointed generalissimo of their army, when they were preparing for a war against the Persians; but he died before its commencement, B. C. 336.

3. His son, Alexander the Great, who was then hardly twenty years of age, succeeded him; he had been brought up by the celebrated Philosopher Aristotle. This Prince, having completed the subjection of those Greeks who had revolted, set out for Asia with only forty thousand men. He reduced Asia Minor after having overcome the troops of Darius Codomanus, King of Persia, advanced towards Syria, took Tyre in spite of the obstinate resistance offered by its inhabitants, and arrived before Jerusalem with the intention of destroying her; but the sight of the High-Priest Jaddus, inspired him with such respect, that he spared the Holy City, and worshipped God in His Temple. He turned his steps towards Egypt, which, together with Lybia, submitted to him without resistance. He founded Alexandria, which was destined to rival Tyre.

4. Not satisfied with these conquests, Alexander marched towards the Euphrates, overturned the power of Darius Codomanus at the battle of Arbela, and subjugated all Persia. He

---

2. What furnished Philip an opportunity of obtaining a sway over Greece? What orator excited the patriotism of his fellow-citizens? Were the Greeks fortunate against Philip?—3. Who was Philip's successor? Who was Alexander's preceptor? With what forces did he invade Asia? Whose troops did he overcome first? What large town in Syria did he take? What did he do with regard to Jerusalem? Against what country did he next turn his steps?—4. What battle did he gain over Darius Codomanus? How far did he carry his arms? What did he find on his return to Babylon? At what age did he die?

continued his triumphant course as far as India, and, on his return, he defeated the Scythians and all the neighboring nations. On arriving at Babylon, he found there ambassadors from all parts of the world, who came to pay him their respects. He was meditating the conquest of the whole world, when, in the midst of orgies, he was attacked with a mortal sickness, which carried him off in a few days, at the age of thirty-two years, B. C. 323.

5. Alexander is looked upon as the greatest of conquerors, on account of the brilliancy of his victories, and above all, on account of the moderation of his conduct towards the vanquished. He almost always treated them with the same kindness as the Macedonians themselves; gave them wise and just laws, sometimes lightened the tribute, which the kings of Persia had imposed on certain people, established colonies, made commerce flourish, and encouraged the fine arts. But he must ever be blamed for the disorders to which he gave himself up during the latter part of his reign. He wished to be worshipped as a god; he caused to be put to death, or slew with his own hand, many of his friends whom his pride had alienated from him, and among others, Clitus, who had saved his life at the battle of the Granicus.

6. After Alexander's death, his generals contended against one another for the different parts of the Empire, and distracted it by their disputes. All the hero's family perished either by poison, assassination, or torments; at length, after twenty-two years of war, Ptolemy, Seleucus Nicator, Cassander, and Lysimachus, overcame their rival Antigone and his son Demetrius at the battle of Ipsus, B. C. 301, and shared the Empire among themselves. Ptolemy kept Egypt, where his descendants reigned until the time of Augustus; Seleucus had Syria and Persia; Lysimachus, Thrace; and Cassander, Macedonia. All these States were successively overrun by the Romans, with the exception of Persia, where the Parthians founded an empire in 255.

THE GREEKS.

PRIMITIVE TIMES.

1. Greece is a Peninsula of no great extent, lying between the Ionian and Ægean Seas. It is composed of two distinct parts, the Peloponnesus, attached to the continent by the Isthmus of

5. What praise and what blame does Alexander deserve?—6. How was Alexander's Empire divided after his death?

1. Where is Greece situated? What has made this country so celebrated?

Corinth, and Hellas or Greece proper. This country is one of the best known of all profane antiquity; the great men she has produced, her military glory, the wisdom of her laws, the perfection to which she raised the arts and sciences, and above all, the talent of the writers who have related her history, have made her name forever illustrious.

2. It is commonly believed that Javan, son of Japheth, was the father of the families that established themselves in Greece towards the period of the dispersion of mankind. The most considerable tribes of these primitive families, were the Pelasgi and the Hellenes, who laid claim to being autochthonous, that is, aboriginal of the country itself. The Pelasgic race ended by subjugating all the others; the cyclopean constructions are assigned to the time of their domination. These gigantic masses, of which some vestiges still remain, consisted of enormous blocks of stone almost unhewn, held together by their own weight, without the aid of any cement.

3. The Pelasgi were an agricultural and trading people, skilful in exploiting mines; they had preserved the pure ideal of one only God. They gave Greece her first ideas of civilization, and built numerous towns and citadels; they also sent colonies to the Mediterranean isles and the coast of Italy. The Pelasgi were conquered and driven back after a long struggle, by the warlike tribes of the Hellenes; but Greece never lost the stamp the former had impressed upon her.

4. The most ancient cities of Greece, such as Sicyonia, Mycene, Argos, date from this first period. Soon, numerous colonies, the greater part of them from Egypt and Phenicia, arrived in this beautiful country; they brought there civilization, the institutions and religions of the East, and, in their turn, laid the foundations of several famous cities, such as Athens, Sparta, Thebes, Corinth, &c., and occupied the islands of the Ægean Sea.

5. *Cecrops*, a native of Sais, in Egypt, established himself in Attica, there founding the twelve villages of which Athens later became the capital. He introduced there, in addition to the gods and laws of his country, the culture of corn and the olive-tree. Cecrops instituted the Areopagus, the wisest of all the tribunals of antiquity.

6. *Cadmus* son of Agenor, King of Phenicia, landed in Bœotia and built Cadmea, which afterwards became the citadel of

2. Who were the first people that inhabited Greece?—3. Who were the Pelasgi? By what tribes were they conquered?—4. Which were the most ancient cities of Greece?—5. Whence came Cecrops, and where did he establish himself? What did he introduce into Greece?—6. Who was Cadmus? What art did he introduce?

Thebes. He introduced among the nations the art and use of alphabetic writing, and taught them the industrial arts in use among the Phenicians.

7. *Danaus*, obliged to leave Egypt, established himself at Argos, instituted religious feasts in honor of agriculture, and taught the Greeks the first elements of navigation, B. C. 1466.

8. *Pelops*, son of Tantalus, King of Phrygia, landed in Elide. His descendants established themselves at Argos and overthrew the family of Danaus, B. C. 1284.

9. *Deucalion*, son of Prometheus, is the father of the Hellenic race. Leaving the Caucasus, he stopped first in Thessaly, B. C. 534. Under his reign, a great inundation, which fable has confounded with some remembrance of the universal Deluge, submerged central Greece. Deucalion was the father of Hellen, who, through his children, was the head of four Hellenic tribes, *Æollians*, *Dorians*, *Ionians*, and *Achaians*.

It was from this mixture of Pelasgi, Egyptians, Phenicians, and Phrygians, that the Greek nation sprung. The race of Deucalion assimilated these different races with its own, absorbing them and giving them that Hellenic character, which alone prevailed and subsisted in the midst of so many heterogeneous elements.

THE FABULOUS AND HEROIC AGES OF GREECE.

1. When the Hellenes had established themselves in the different parts of Greece, they saw that it would be necessary for them to be united together, in order to prevent wars and promote the welfare of the country. Amphictyon, one of the sons of Deucalion, was the first to propose a league, which received the name of *Amphictyonic League*, and soon, several others were formed on a similar footing.

2. The spirit of union and fellowship to which these leagues gave birth among the Greeks, caused the establishment of the public games, to which all Greece was invited. The *Olympic Games*, instituted in honor of Apollo by Hercules, Pelops, and Pisus, were celebrated every fourth year at Olympia. The *Nemean Games*, instituted in remembrance of the victory gained by Hercules over the Nemean lion, were celebrated every fifth year. The *Isthmian Games*, instituted by Theseus in honor

7. Who was Danaus and what did he teach the Greeks?—8. What is known of Pelops?—9. Who was Deucalion? Who were his descendants?

1. What was the Amphictyonic League? Why did it receive this name? Were any others formed?—2. What was there worthy of remark during the Heroic Ages? What were the great enterprises of this period?

of Neptune, took place every second year in the Isthmus of Corinth. Among the great men of Greece at that period, we will particularly mention Hercules and Theseus, and amongst the heroic enterprises, the *Argonautic Expedition*, the *Theban* and *Trojan Wars*.

3. The first national enterprise of the Greeks, was the *Argonautic Expedition* (of the ship Argo). The leader was Jason, King of Thessaly; with him were Castor and Pollux, Orpheus, Theseus, and Hercules who left his companions on the way. Their object was to take, from the King of Colchis, those treasures which they typified as the golden Fleece. The imagination of the Greeks embellished this voyage, a very bold one for that time, with a crowd of marvellous adventures, B. C. 1226.

4. The second expedition which brought together the various tribes of Greece, was occasioned by the dispute between the two sons of Œdipus, King of Thebes. After the death of their father, Eteocles and Polynices agreed together to reign alternately each for one year. The older reigned first, but he refused to yield up the sovereignty to his brother. The whole of Greece was indignant at this violation of a sworn promise; Polynices went to the King of Argos and implored his help. A powerful army, commanded by seven intrepid chieftains, laid siege to Thebes. After a bloody and useless war, the two brothers met and slew each other with their own swords. Of the seven chiefs, all, except one, perished during this struggle; but their sons, called the Epigoni, renewed the siege of Thebes and consummated its destruction.

5. The third and most important heroic expedition of the Greeks, was the *Trojan War*. Paris, son of Priam, King of Troy, in Asia Minor, having carried off Helena, wife of Menelaus, King of Sparta, the outrage raised the indignation of the whole of Greece. At that time, Greece counted fifty one States of some importance, of which thirty four were governed by Hellenic Princes, and seventeen by the Pelasgi, or by the descendants of the foreign chiefs, of whom we have spoken as having established themselves in Greece. All these States seemed animated by the same zeal, and a fleet of sixty-four vessels, having on board an army nearly 100000 strong, sailed for the country where Priam was reigning. The leader of this expedition was Agamemnon, King of Argos, a descendant of Pelops; under him were Menelaus, King of Sparta; Ulysses, King of Ithaca; Achilles, the two Ajax, Diomedes, Nestor, Adrastes, Philoc-

What was the first national enterprise of the Greeks?—4. What was their second national enterprise?—5. What was the cause of the Trojan War? Relate the war.

tetes, Idomeneus, &c. To this invasion, Priam opposed a powerful league, composed of Carians, Lycians, and other auxiliaries. The siege lasted ten years. Notwithstanding the valor of Hector and Æneas, Troy fell into the hands of the Greeks, who reduced it to ashes, B. C. 1184.

6. The taking of Troy owes its celebrity, in a great measure, to the admirable poems of Homer, the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey*. The Greek Kings paid dear for the glory of having annihilated the City and Kingdom of Priam. Many, like Achilles, found their death beneath the walls of Troy; some, like Idomeneus, on their return, found themselves either unrecognized by their families, or refused by their subjects, or obliged to go and inhabit distant countries; others again, like Ulysses and Menelaus, wandered on the sea for a long time. Agamemnon, more unfortunate than any, on returning to his palace, perished by the hands of his faithless wife Clytemnestra and of his cousin Ægisthus. In short, the Trojan War was almost as fatal to the conquerors as to the conquered.

7. After the Trojan War, Greece became a prey to the violent rivalries of the Hellenic race. There were overthrows, changes, bloody wars, amid which civilization seemed to retrograde and return to deep obscurity. The people of Epirus took possession of Thessaly; the Æolians, of Bœotia; the Dorians joined the Heraclidæ, the descendants of Hercules, and with them established themselves in the Peloponnesus, B. C. 1104.

LEGISLATIVE AGES OF GREECE, B. C. 884-501.

1. During the Heroic period, and until the death of Codrus, King of Athens, all the States of Greece were monarchies. The king commanded the army, administered justice, and, with his own hand, immolated the sacrificial victims. He did not undertake anything important without the advice of the chiefs who formed his council; he, sometimes, convoked the assembly of the people. Although music and poetry were cultivated, yet the rude and savage customs of that country authorized human sacrifices. It is true that castes had disappeared; but slavery increased with the multiplicity of the wars, the prisoners being reduced to servitude.

2. On the whole, the state of the Greeks was one approach-

6. What is it that rendered the Trojan War so celebrated? Name Homer's poems. What was the end of the principal chiefs of the expedition?—7. What became of Greece after the Trojan War?

1. What was the form of government in the Grecian States during the Heroic Age? What did the kings do?—2. What legislators then appeared?

ing barbarism; there was no sure law but that of force. At length, two legislators appeared. *Lycurgus* in Sparta, and *Solon* in Athens, gave the Dorians and Ionians laws suitable to their habits and the bent of their genius.

LEGISLATION OF LYCURGUS IN SPARTA, B. C. 884.

1. *Lycurgus* was of the race of the Heraclidæ; he was entrusted with governing Sparta during the minority of his nephew Charilaus, whose rights he respected. Having conceived the project of reforming the whole government, he made several journeys through Egypt and Asia to consult the wisest men in those countries. Having returned to Sparta, he promulgated a new code of laws.

2. Wishing to banish cupidity from the country, he abolished the use of gold and silver money, and replaced it by such very bulky iron money, that a whole room could only contain a very moderate sum.

3. Lycurgus chiefly occupied himself in legislating for the physical education of the children; he employed every means to procure his country a healty and vigorous race of people.

4. The children were early habituated either to fatigue, cold, or heat, and to shun all daintiness in their food, as also to avoid anger, lying, and vanity. The whole people were subjected to the most rigid discipline, which even the kings could not evade. After having settled every thing, Lycurgus, pretending that he was obliged to undertake a long journey, made his fellow-citizens promise to obey his laws until his return, and then expatriated himself forever, B. C. 884.

SOLON'S LEGISLATION IN ATHENS, B. C. 595.

1. The government of Athens had to go through greater vicissitudes than that of Sparta, and received its legislation at a later period.

2. *Codrus*, King of Athens, having died, B. C. 1045, the archons or governors exercised the whole authority; but their powers being too limited, they were soon unable to repress grave

---

1. Who was Lycurgus? What project did he conceive? What did he do on returning from his travels?—2. Why did he abolish gold and silver money? With what did he replace it?—3. To what did Lycurgus chiefly apply himself?—4. How did he desire children to be brought up? What did he do after publishing his laws?

1. What had the Athenian government to undergo?—2. What were the archons? What mission did Draco receive?

disorders. The people were incensed at the abuse the nobles made of their privileges, and at the cruelty of creditors towards their debtors. The archon *Draco* was entrusted with establishing a fixed legislation, but the severity of his laws caused them to be rejected. It was time for Solon to appear and give a permanent constitution to the Athenians.

3. *Solon*, a descendant of Codrus, already renowned as a poet and warrior, conciliated all parties by setting the debtors at liberty, and indemnifying the nobles for their debts. His legislation was a skilful admixture of aristocracy and democracy. He divided the citizens into four orders, according to their riches. The archons were subjected to the supervision of the all-powerful tribunal of the *Areopagites*, charged with restraining the ambition of the rich, and resisting the encroachments of the people; the laws were to be discussed by a Senate composed of 400 members, and adopted by the people. By the most prudent measures, he encouraged labor, patriotism, and filial piety. Animated with better sentiments than Lycurgus, he respected the laws of nature and humanity; he particularly took care not to forbid the arts and literature to a people gifted with the livelest intelligence, the most fertile imagination, and the most delicate taste.

4. Solon made the Athenians swear to observe his laws; then, he abdicated his legislatorship, and made long journeys into Asia and Africa, leaving everywhere a remembrance of his virtues. He died at the age of eighty, at the court of the King of Egypt, to which he had retired.

5. Lycurgus and Solon were the two greatest legislators of Greece: the first laid the foundation of Sparta's glory, and rendered that city the most flourishing and the most civilized of the ancient world. But, as these two men of genius had to deal with people of very different manners and customs, their institutions offer the most curious and extraordinary contrast. Lycurgus saw that his country could suffice to the support of its inhabitants, and he banished thence all commerce and foreigners. Solon had to try and naturalize the arts and industry on the arid soil of Attica. Lycurgus, with a kingly government, could do what he would; Solon, with a democratic government, had to do as best he could. The first had to direct a people that was coarse and inured to patrician tyranny; the second, who had already passed through several revolutions, saw what

---

3. Who was Solon? What is to be said about his legislation? What was the tribunal of the Areopagites?—4. What was the end of Solon?—5. Draw a parallel between Lycurgus and Solon.

would be most advantageous, and considered by what means he could effect it. Lycurgus, of austere dispositions, made the customs and manners submit to the laws. Solon, of gentle dispositions, adapted his laws to customs and manners: the former trained the most warlike people; the latter, the most polished. The Spartans, ruled by a rod of Iron, experienced fewer internal dissensions, whilst the superficial knowledge in politics, of which all the Athenians had some notion, occasioned many intestine troubles. The Spartans preserved their independence a longer time; but the Athenians, in losing theirs, maintained the empire in letters, arts, and sciences; besides, these bore their misfortunes with dignity; whilst the Spartans, once conquered, fell into discouragement, like a nation having neither past nor future.

6. After the departure of Solon, the clever and ambitious *Pisistratus* profited by the ever recurring quarrels between the nobility and the people to seize on the absolute power, B. C. 560. Twice exiled, he maintained himself in power by the support of the popular party. Artfully flattering the taste of the Athenians, he collected the works of Homer into one volume; for, until then, they had been sung by the rhapsodists in detached fragments. He encouraged letters and charmed every one by his moderation, clemency, and liberality. His sons *Hippias* and *Hipparchus*, who succeeded him, did not imitate his conduct, and were driven away by the people who resumed the supreme power, B. C. 510.

THE MEDIAN WARS, B. C. 500-449.

1. The most terrible wars that Greece had to sustain against foreigners, were those against the Persians, in which they were only victorious through prodigies of heroism; the revolt of Ionia, a country peopled by the Greeks, but subjected to the Persians, was the cause of these memorable wars. The Athenians, who were already powerful by sea, hastened to the relief of their fellow-countrymen, and reduced to ashes the town of Sardis, the capital of Lydia, now Anatolia, where Crœsus had formerly reigned, B. C., 500.

2. *Darius*, son of Hystaspes, resolved to avenge this insult.

---

6. Who ruled Athens after Solon? What vicissitudes of fortune had Pisistratus? Who were his successors?

1. What wars did the Greeks have to sustain against foreigners? What was the cause of the Median Wars?—2. What did Darius do to revenge himself for the burning of Sardis? To whom did he entrust the first expedition against Greece? What was its result? How were Darius' ambassadors received by the Greeks?

He fitted out an expedition against Greece, and confided it to his son-in-law Mardonius. The fleet was overtaken by a violent tempest near Mount Athos, whilst the land army was exterminated by the Thracians. Without allowing himself to be discouraged by this sad reverse, Darius strove to repair his losses by means of a far more considerable expedition. Before renewing hostilities, he sent heralds who, according to an ancient custom, demanded *earth* and *water* of the Athenians. But these, for all answer, threw the messengers into a pit, telling them: *Take there some earth and water.*

3. At this news, Darius, enraged, sent against them an army of 100000 infantry and 10000 cavalry, under the command of the Mede Datis, and of his nephew Artaphernes; but 10000 Greeks, led by Miltiades, to whom Aristides the Athenian and his colleagues had given up their share of the command, cut them to pieces on the plains of Marathon, B. C. 490.

4. When saved, Greece was not grateful to him who had won her the victory; Miltiades, being falsely accused of treason, was condemned to pay an enormous fine; but, not being able to pay it, the conqueror of the Persians was thrown into prison, where he died of the wounds received in fighting for his country.

5. *Xerxes*, the son of Darius, after having subdued Egypt, which had revolted against him, for four years made immense preparations against the Greeks. He passed over the Hellespont on a bridge of boats, followed by over 2000000 of men, raised from all the countries of the East. Leonidas, King of Sparta, at the head of 300 men, was entrusted with the defence of the Pass of Thermopylæ. Xerxes sent to demand of him to lay down his arms: "Come and take them," replied Leonidas. The Greeks attaked the enemy under the cover of night, made a frightful havoc in the camp of the Persians, and overpowered by numbers, they perished only after having killed 20000 of the enemy, B. C. 480.

6. The defeat which the Greeks met with at Thermopylæ, was more useful to them than a victory. It showed them that, in fighting for their liberty, they were infinitely stronger and more courageous than those effeminate invaders, who had no other object in view but to extend the reign of slavery.

7. The King of Persia continued his march through Greece.

---

3. What did Darius do on hearing of the failure of his expedition against Greece? What did the Greeks do under Miltiades?—4. How did Greece behave towards Miltiades? Where did he die?—5. What were Xerxes' projects? Of what strength was Xerxes' expedition? What pass was confided to Leonidas? What did Leonidas and his companions do? How did they die?—6. What did the battle of Thermopylæ teach the Greeks?—7. What did the Greeks do after the destruction of Athens?

He entered Athens, which was deserted by her inhabitants, and gave her up to the flames. The Greeks held a council how they might best proceed. Euribiades of Lacedæmon thought they should avoid coming to an engagement, he even threatened to strike with his stick Themistocles the Athenian, if he continued to advise the contrary: *strike, but hear me,* said Themistocles, and his counsel prevailed.

8. Themistocles dexterously brought on Xerxes to give a decisive battle at Salamis. This proud King counted too much on the superiority of his forces; his 1200 vessels were destroyed by the 380 gallies of the Greeks. The Queen of Caria, an ally of Xerxes, for a time sustained the combat alone. The Persian monarch fled towards the Hellespont; but the bridge, which he had built across this arm of the sea, having been destroyed by a tempest, he was obliged to cross the straits in a fisherman's boat. To Themistocles were awarded the honors of victory.

9. Mardonius, however, who had remained in Greece with 300000 men, endeavored to retrieve the fortune of Xerxes; but the Generals Aristides and Pausanias, who commanded the Greeks, routed him completely near Platæa, in Bœotia, B. C. 479. The same day, the remains of the Persian fleet were burned at the promontory of Mycale, in Ionia. From that time forward, the Persians, weakened and discouraged, never dared again try their strength against this little nation, so invincible in their patriotism.

10. Delivered from their enemies, the Athenians began to repair their city and surround it with strong walls; but the Lacedæmonians opposed themselves thereto. Themistocles, having undertaken to mediate in this affair, went to Sparta, where he remained a long time without asking for an audience, saying that he awaited his colleagues; when the work was well advanced, he announced that the Athenians were in a position to defend themselves. The Lacedæmonians concealed their resentment, but they swore to be revenged. The ungrateful Athenians soon banished Themistocles, who withdrew to the court of Artaxerxes Longimanus, son and successor to Xerxes.

11. About ten years after the third Median War, the Greeks,

---

8. Who gained the battle of Salamis? What did the Queen of Caria do? To whom was ascribed the honor of having gained the battle of Salamis?—9. What hope still remain for Xerxes? What passed at Platæa and Mycale?—10. What did the Athenians do, when once delivered from their enemies? What mission did Themistocles undertake? What treatment did he receive at the hands of his fellow-countrymen?—11. To whom was entrusted the command of the Greek expedition against the Persians, after the third Median War? What was its result? Where did Cimon die? How long had the Median Wars lasted?

in their turn, went into Asia against the Persians, and confided the command of their army to Cimon the Athenian, son of Miltiades. This skilful General destroyed the enemy's fleet and army at the mouth of the River Eurymedon, and compelled Artaxerxes to sign a treaty which assured the independence of the Grecian colonies in Asia Minor, and closed the Ægean Sea to the vessels of the Persians, B. C. 449. Cimon died of a wound received at the siege of Citium in the Island of Cyprus: he had the glory of putting an end to the Median Wars, and of giving his name to one of the most remarkable treaties recorded in history. The struggle had lasted half a century.

Greece was at the height of her power; that rivalry between Sparta and Athens, which was to be the cause of so many evils, was now about to commence.

12. Attica was so fertile in producing great men, that, after Cimon, genius knew no interregnum during her history. After Miltiades, there appeared at the same time Aristides and Themistocles; after Aristides and Themistocles, Cimon; after Cimon came Pericles, the first man that ever gave his name to his age. He became the most eloquent man of his time, and acquired so much skill and facility in repartee and self-defence, that one of his adversaries used to say: *When I have confounded him, and that I hold him under me, he cries out that he is not worsted, and persuades every body that such is the case.*

13. Head of the republic, or rather, King of Athens during twenty years, B. C. 449-429, a distinguished General by sea and by land, a statesman, a powerful orator, Pericles knew how to flatter, lead, and captivate the people. Under his administration, Athens, which sought after every species of glory, filled Greece with the fame of her master-pieces. During the first half of the fifth century before Christ, the Ionian *Herodotus*, the Father of History, had immortalized the Median Wars, and *Pindar* the Theban, had given the sublimest flights to the Lyric Muse. Through her schools, festivals shows, and monuments, Athens became the place of resort for all Greece.

14. The Republic of Sparta, being exclusively warlike, was essentially aristocratic; whilst that of Athens, was exposed to the agitations of a democracy. The towns of Greece joined themselves to the one or the other, according to the bent of their own constitution, and thus were formed two hostile camps en-

12. After Cimon did the Athenians again find a great man for their leader? What was Pericles?—13. What did he become? What was his character? What was Athens at that time?—14. What was the distinctive character of the Republic of Sparta? Of that of Athens? Which of the two contributed the most to the overthrow of the Persians?

tirely opposed by race and customs. This rivalship increased still more after the Median Wars, of which the Athenians reapead all the glory; for, by the sacrifices they had made, and the skill of their generals, they had most contributed to the overthrow of the Persians.

PELOPONNESIAN WAR, B. C. 430–404.

1. Sparta sought by every means to recover her supremacy, and the faults of Athens furnished her a fair opportunity. Abusing the authority confided to them, as well as their moral supremacy, the Athenians interfered in the domestic affairs of their allies, and imposed on them taxes of which they made use to embellish and fortify their own cities. Under the direction of Pericles, they made open attempts to rule all Greece. There arose thence a general discontent, which was fostered by the jealous hatred of Sparta, as well as by the gold and intrigues of Persia.

2. Things were in this state when a quarrel arose between Corcyra and her metropolis, Corinth, an ally of Sparta. The Athenians, notwithstanding the law of nations, declared for the rebel city, and this was a signal for war in the Peloponnesus, B. C. 431. Archidamus, King of Sparta, entered Athens with a powerful army. Pericles, the chief of the Athenians, hastened on his side to lay waste the Peloponnesus in order to oblige the confederates to come to the succor of their country. Athens was attacked anew; but, the plague breaking out in both armies, they were almost entirely destroyed, and Pericles himself died of that terrible scourge, B. C. 429.

3. The Athenians tried to get a footing in the Peloponnesus, whilst the Spartans, to force them to leave the place, attacked their Macedonian colonies. A bloody engagement took place beneath the walls of Amphipolis, B. C. 421; the generals of the hostile armies perished at the same time, and their death gave the victory to the party that was for peace, represented by Nicias, who brought about the truce which is named after him, B. C. 421.

4. Alcibiades, having succeeded his uncle Pericles in the government of Athens, formed a new league against the Lace-

What were the causes of the Peloponnesian War?—2. What was the pretext for it? How did the war begin? Who was the principal victim of the plague?—3. What was the result of the battle of Amphipolis?—4. What did Alcibiades do when he had gained supreme power? What plans did he suggest to his fellow citizens? Were the Athenians more fortunate in their expedition against Sicily? Why did the Athenians recall Alcibiades? By whom was he replaced?

dæmonians, and persuaded his fellow-citizens to declare war at the same time against Syracuse in Sicily; but being accused of having mutilated the statues of Mercury, he was cited before the tribunal of the people, and obliged to take to flight. Shortly afterwards, he learned that the Athenians had condemned him to death: *I will one day make them aware that I am still alive*, said he; and he joined the Lacedæmonians, with whom he fought against his own country. Nicias who had succeeded him, was conquered by the Syracusans. 7000 Athenians were thrown into the stone quarries, where they died of exposure, after inexpressible sufferings. The Lacedæmonians, taking advantage of this disaster, attaked the Athenians, who were forced to recall Alcibiades. They soon, however, renewed his sentence of disgrace. The command was now confided to ten generals, among whom was Conon, who had already distinguished himself in different undertakings. The want of union among these generals, occasioned the defeat of the Athenians.

5. Athens, in despair, made a last effort, and gained the great naval victory of Arginusæ, B. C. 406; but she dishonored it by putting her generals to death, under pretext that it was through their negligence that the bodies of the warriors, which had fallen into the sea, had not been recovered and buried, notwithstanding the tempest which had dispersed their vessels.

6. Regret soon followed such unjust proceedings, and Lysander, having taken the command of the Lacedæmonians, undertook to punish the Athenians. He destroyed the Athenian fleet at the mouth of the River Ægos-Potamos, B. C. 405. This disaster made Athens lose the sovereignty of the seas, which had been hers for seventy-two years. Lysander went and laid siege to Athens, which, at the end of six months, was forced to capitulate, B. C. 404. The Lacedæmonians made a pitiless use of their victory. After having, at the sound of the flute, burned the Athenian vessels and demolished the walls of the city, they changed the form of government, and, under the name of archons, set over the unfortunate city thirty tyrants who were devoted to the Lacedæmonian interests. Thus terminated the fatal Peloponnesian War, which had lasted twenty-seven years.

7. Socrates, during this great national humiliation, endeavored to raise the courage of his fellow-citizens; he taught the youth, consoled the afflicted, and upheld the oppressed with such a cour-

5. What is known about the battle of Arginusæ?—6. By whom was the battle of Ægos-Potamos won? What were its consequence? How did Lysander treat Athens? How long did the Peloponnesian War last?—7. How did Socrates behave? What was his end?

age, that the menaces of the tyrants could never shake. Thrasybulus, having placed himself at the head of the exiles, succeeded in delivering Athens.

In the mean time, Socrates, having been accused of not recognizing the gods, was condemned to drink hemlock, B. C. 399. Hardly had this great man expired, when the people passed from injustice to remorse, punished the enemies of their benefactor, and raised statues to his memory.

POWER OF SPARTA, B. C. 400-387.

1. The decay of the Persian Empire became more and more perceptible. The checks and humiliations the Persian had experienced during the Median Wars, had made them lose all their prestiges, whilst interior dissensions had finished weakening this enervated empire. Xerxes I. was killed by Artabanus, Captain of his guards, B. C. 472. Xerxes II., the successor of Artaxerxes Longimanus, was assassinated by his brother Sogdianus. The latter was dethroned and put to death after six months' reign, by Darius Nothus, his brother, B. C. 423. Under this Prince, Egypt threw off the yoke, and the whole empire was distracted by civil wars. At his death, in 404, the sceptre passed into the hands of Artaxerxes II., surnamed Mnemon.

2. Cyrus the Younger, brother of Artaxerxes Mnemon, pretending that he had a right to the throne of Persia, raised a large army, and asked the Greeks for auxiliary troops. They sent him 13000 men under the command of Clearchus, the Lacedæmonian. Cyrus, having been slain at the battle of Cunaxa, near Babylon, the Greeks, reduced in number to 10000, took the road back to their country, and went more than six hundred leagues through an enemy's country, without either provisions, money, or even boats in which to cross rivers. After a march of six months, having triumphed over every obstacle, they arrived on the Grecian frontiers, B. C. 401. This famous retreat of the *Ten Thousand*, about which, the historian Xenophon, their leader, has transmitted us the most interesting details, is one of the most splendid feats of arms of antiquity.

3. The Spartans were the first to attempt the conquest of Asia. Their King Agesilaus overran a great part of Asia Minor, and made her great King tremble on his throne, just at the

1. Was the Empire of Persia always powerful?—2. Who took up arms against Artaxerxes Mnemon? By whom was Cyrus the Younger aided? What did the Greeks do after the battle of Cunaxa?—3. What expedition did Agesilaus undertake? What was the end of Lysander? What was the result of the expedition of Agesilaus?

very time when a part of his forces was occupied elsewhere by the revolt of Egypt and of the Island of Cyprus. The emissaries of Artaxerxes fomented a coalition between Corinth, Thebes, and Athens, which were exasperated against the proud and tyrannical supremacy of Sparta. A battle was fought beneath the walls of Haliartus; Lysander there met with his death, and the Spartans found themselves in so great a danger, that they immediately sent for Agesilaus. The victorious General, renouncing further conquests, started at once, and, rapidly traversing the Hellespont, Thrace, and Macedonia, blasted the hopes of the confederates at the battle of Coronea, where victory declared in favor of the Lacedæmonians, B. C. 394.

4. With the help of the Persians, Conon gained a naval battle off Cnidus; the Lacedæmonian fleet was nearly annihilated, and the Spartan governors were sent out of all the islands which they occupied. Iphicrates, at the head of an army of mercenaries, caused Thrace to return to her alliance with Athens: Conon even restored the fortifications of this city. These successes made Sparta very uneasy, for she did not wish, on any terms, to see her rival rise from her ruins. Artaxerxes himself feared he had gone too far, and well pleased with fostering discord between the two cities, he no longer held aloof from renewing a treaty of alliance with Sparta. A reconciliation having been effected, but on shameful conditions, Sparta regained the friendship of the Persians, and again took the lead in Greece. The Greek towns of Asia Minor, the Peninsula of Clazominæ, and the Island of Cyprus, were sacrificed to the great King, and became his tributaries, B. C. 387. This Treaty, stigmatized with the name of *Antalcidas*, the Lacedæmonian envoy, annulled the glorious treaty which Cimon had concluded. Greece, disunited and degraded by egotism, allowed conditions to be imposed upon her, instead of herself dictating them, as in her days of virtues and uprightness.

5. Once allied with the Persians by the treaty of Antalcidas, Sparta put no bounds to her ambition; her taking of Thebes, in times of peace, unveiled to the rest of Greece her projects for universal domination. The valor of two Thebans, Pelopidas and Epaminondas, frustrated her intentions. The former, issued from the ancient kings of Bœotia, had distinguished himself in the struggle for independence; the latter was one of the finest characters and most illustrious warriors of antiquity.

---

4. What were the respective positions of Athens and Sparta? How did the King of Persia profit by this state of affairs? What was effected by the Treaty of *Antalcidas*?—5. What did Sparta undertake after the Treaty of Antalcidas? Who were Pelopidas and Epaminondas?

6. These two great men undertook to restore their country to liberty: a spy warned the Lacedæmonian magistrates of their project in the midst of a banquet: *Business to-morrow*, replied the latter. The next day, Pelopidas had entered Thebes and driven away the foreigners. In vain did the Lacedæmonians try to re-establish their authority; Epaminondas gained over them the two celebrated victories of Leuctra, in 371, and Mantinea, in 362, B. C.

7. After this great man, Thebes returned to her former obscurity. The decline of Greece herself was rapid after the reign of Philip, King of Macedon, father of Alexander: although incessantly menaced by the kings of Macedonia, she was perpetually torn by intestine dissensions which completely exhausted her strength. Two great citizens, Aratus and Philopœmen, sought to bring about a certain unity by founding the Achæan League; but the Romans were already bearing their victorious arms into the East, the degenerate Greeks could not long resist them, and the country of such men as Leonidas and Themistocles, was reduced to being a Roman Province, under the name of Achaia.

8. Among the great men who rendered Greece illustrious in addition to those we have just mentioned, we should enumerate the philosophers Plato, Aristotle, Pythagoras, Heraclitus, Democritus, Diogenes, the historians Herodotus and Xenophon, the physician Hippocrates, the famous painter Appelles, the sculptor Phidias, and a number of men of genius, among whom must be mentioned the seven Wise Men: Thales, Solon, Bias, Chilon, Pittacus, Periander and Cleobulus.

THE CARTHAGINIANS.

1. Pygmalion, King of Tyre, having slain Sichæus, his brother, in order to possess himself of his treasures, Dido, wife of Sichæus, fled into Africa, where she built Carthage, B. C. 860. This city increased so rapidly, that in a short time, she was in a condition to rival the greatest empires by her riches, army, and commerce; before long, she extended her domination over Spain, and there worked advantageously the gold and silver mines.

2. The Carthaginians sustained long wars against Sicily; but

6. How was Thebes delivered? What victories did Epaminondas gain? —7. In what state was Thebes after the death of Epaminondas? In what state did Greece soon find herself?—8. Who were the great men that rendered Greece illustrious?

1. By whom was Carthage founded?—2. What was the issue of the first expeditions of the Carthaginians to Sicily?

their first expeditions to that Island were not fortunate. Gelon of Syracuse conquered them, and as the price of his victory, he is said to have imposed upon them the abolition of human sacrifices; this inhuman custom had been established at Carthage.

The war continued during several centuries with varying success on either part.

3. The Carthaginians were beaten by Dionysius the Elder, the tyrant of Syracuse, by Timoleon, who had dethroned Dionysius the Younger, and lastly, by Agathocles, an usurper at Syracuse, who carried the war into Africa to the very gates of Carthage, B. C. 289. However, through the continual division among the various smaller states of Sicily, they gradually got possession of a number of powerful towns, and when their wars against the Romans commenced, the Carthaginians were master of the greater part of the Island, B. C. 264.

THE ROMANS.

From the Foundation of Rome, B. C. 752, to the Expulsion of Tarquin the Proud, the last King of Rome, B. C. 509.

1. After the taking of Troy, Æneas, who, for ten years, had courageously defended that city against Greece, went to Italy, and there founded a new kingdom, of which Alba soon became the capital. Numitor, one of his successors, having been dethroned, was restored by his grandsons Romulus and Remus, who, at the head of a troop of shepherds and robbers, laid the foundations of Rome.

2. Romulus, having slain his brother Remus, found himself sole master of the new town, and, in order to people it, he offered an asylum to all who wished to take refuge there. Men loaded with debts, fugitive slaves, and robbers, were the first inhabitants of a city which afterwards became the mistress of the world.

3. Romulus made himself the head of religion, surrounded himself with a guard of three hundred young men, and appointed a Senate consisting of a hundred members, whose descendants were called Patricians; the other citizens were colled Plebeians.

---

3. By whom were the Carthaginians beaten? What was the extent of the Carthaginians' power in Sicily, at the time when they commenced their wars against the Romans?

1. Who was Æneas and what did he do? Who was Numitor, and by whom was he restored to the throne?—2. What did Romulus do to people the new city?—3. What institutions did Romulus establish?

4. During an entertainment, the Romans had carried away the daughters of the Sabines. These took up arms to avenge their daughters, and penetrated as far as Rome. The contest at first, was bloody and uncertain; but the weeping women threw themselves between the two armies, and, on one side beseeching their fathers, and on the other, their husbands, obtained peace, and the two nations were united into one.

A great number of wars having been honorably terminated, the power of Romulus increased; but the senators, uneasy at the progress of his ambition, put him to death.

5. After an interregnum of a year, Romulus was succeeded by the Sabine Numa Pompilius, who was raised to the throne against his own desire, B. C. 715. Wiser than Romulus, he applied himself to civilizing his people, and inspiring them with those religious sentiments with which he himself was penetrated. To him are ascribed the order of the ceremonies, the institution of Pontiffs, Priests, Augurs, and Vestals. He also reformed the calendar, and constructed the Temple of Janus, which was open during war, and closed during peace.

6. Tullus Hostilius succeeded him, B. C. 672. This warlike Prince declared war against the Albans. The armies were in sight of each other, when they agreed to submit the decision of the quarrel to three combattants on each side, on condition that the nation whose champions would be conquered, should submit to the other.

7. There were chosen three Romans who were brothers, named Horatii, and three Albans, also brothers, named Curiatii. At the first encounter, two Horatii were slain, and the three Curiatii were wounded. The young Roman, too weak to encounter three, took to flight so as to separate his enemies, knowing that they would pursue him more or less quickly, according to the gravity of their wounds. On seeing them sufficiently separated from one another, he turned back, and slew them one after the other. Rome, having triumphed by means of her champion, made Alba submit to her laws.

An attempt at revolt was punished by the complete destruction of the town; the inhabitants were transported to Rome. Tullus also triumphed over the Veientes, the Fidenates, and the Sabines; he also compelled several Latin towns to acknowledge the power of Rome.

---

4. How did the Romans behave towards the Sabines?—5. Who succeeded Romulus? How did Numa employ himself?—6. What is known about Tullus Hostilius?—7. Describe the fight between the Horatii and the Curiatii. Over what other people did Tullus triumph?

8. Ancus Martius, successor to Tullus, and grandson of Numa according to tradition, was both brave and religious, he awed his enemies into obedience, caused the laws and morals to be respected, founded Ostia and its port, and thus prepared the way for the maritime commerce of the Romans, B. C. 640.

9. Tarquin the Elder, having been named guardian of the children of Ancus, availed himself of their youth to usurp the crown; he commenced by winning the affection of the people, by means of useful public works; he had aqueducts constructed to bring water to Rome, and sewers that were still admired in the days of Augustus; but the children of Ancus, wishing to reclaim their rights, had him assassinated. They could not, however, seize the reins of government, for Tarquin's wife succeeded, by means of intrigues, to place the power in the hands of Servius Tullius, a slave brought up in the palace.

10. Servius Tullius, Tarquin's son-in-law, laid the foundation of the power of the Roman aristocracy; he annulled the authority of the people, substituting the vote by centuries for individual votes, which threw the whole influence in the hands of the rich, B. C. 578. In all other ways, he merited the love and admiration of his subjects by his useful institutions and victories. He is said to have died a violent death at the hand of his daughter Tullia, and his son-in-law Tarquin, grandson of Tarquin the Elder.

11. The reign of Tarquin, surnamed the Proud, B. C. 534, inaugurated by a parricide, could only be one of tyranny. Still, the talents and victories of this tyrant, greatly increased the power of Rome, whilst, at the same time, he finished the monuments commenced by his grandfather; but his arbitrary conduct greatly displeased the Patricians.

Collatinus, to revenge the insult offered to Lucretia, his wife, by Sextus, Tarquin's son, with the help of Brutus, hurled the tyrant from the throne. Tarquin's family was banished forever, and Rome became a Republic, B. C. 509. Thus vanished royalty, after having existed 244 years.

---

8. Who was the successor of Tullus Hostilius? What remarkable things did Ancus Martius do?—9. Who succeeded Ancus Martius on the throne? How was his reign remarkable? What did he cause to be constructed? How did he die?—10. Who was his successor on the throne? What did Servius Tullius institute? How was he looked upon by the people? How did he die?—11. Who was his successor? How did he behave on the throne? What is known of his son Sextus? By whom was Tarquin dethroned? What form of government was adopted after the fall of the monarchy? How long had this last existed?

THE ROMAN REPUBLIC.

SECTION I.

From the Abolition of Royalty, B. C. 509, to the first Punic War, B. C. 264.

1. The expulsion of the kings, so important a fact in Roman History, had not the same result for the people as they might have expected. The supreme power was confided to two magistrates elected annually and named *Consuls*. They were always chosen from among the patricians, and clothed with the power, and almost all the insignia of royalty. The aristocratic class alone profited by the fall of Tarquin, and a long struggle was necessary to establish the balance of the two orders. The two first Consuls were Junius Brutus and Tarquin Collatinus, who had instigated this revolution.

2. A conspiracy was formed in favor of the exiled King, and the sons of Brutus unfortunately took part in it. Their father, after having condemned them to death, assisted at their execution without betraying the least emotion. This was indeed the period of great deeds of self-devotion and heroic courage. Porsenna, the King of one of the countries of Etruria, embraced the cause of Tarquin. He met at first with great success; but, when he saw Horatius Cocles alone, at the head of a bridge, hold his army in check, and Mutius Scævola, who had penetrated into his camp with the intention of assassinating him, hold his hand in the fire without showing the slightest evidence of suffering, because that hand had failed by striking another instead of the King; when he heard that Clœlia, a young Roman virgin who had been given him as a hostage, had just swum across the Tiber amidst the arrows shot after her from every direction, he recognized the impossibility of ever subduing a people, that carried so far their attachment to courage and liberty. He, therefore, abandoned the cause of the Tarquins and sued for peace.

3. The Plebeians had gained nothing by the expulsion of their kings; in the place of one master, they had a crowd of tyrants in the senators and patricians who oppressed them in every pos-

1. What was the result of the abolition of Royalty? Who profited by it? Who were the two first Consuls?—2. What did Brutus do with regard to his sons? What sovereign embraced the cause of Tarquin? What deeds of self-sacrifice and heroism were then to be seen among the Romans?—3. Had the expulsion of the kings been of any profit to the plebeians? What did they do when tired out with the despotism of the aristocracy?

sible manner. Tired of this cruel despotism, they retired to the Sacred Mount, outside the walls of Rome; the alarmed patricians recalled them by making various concessions. The plebeians only re-entered Rome after having obtained the abolition of a great part of their debts, and the creation of tribunes, that is, popular magistrates whose powers placed them in a position of struggling, with some chance of success, against patrician influence.

4. Hardly had this sedition been appeased when a fresh storm burst out. A young politician, Marcius, who, at the siege of Corioli, had won the name Coriolanus, suggested to the Senate a means of taking the tribuneship from the plebeians, by availing themselves of a scarcity which left them at the mercy of the State. The tribunes were indignant at his suggestion, and ordered him into exile, B. C. 481. Coriolanus retired to the Volsci, but returned to besiege Rome, which, not being able to resist him, sent Veturia, the mother of the haughty exile, to sue for mercy. At the sight of his own mother down at his feet, Coriolanus had rejected the prayers of the ambassadors and even priests, exclaimed: *O Mother, you have conquered me!* He returned to the Volsci, where he died in obscurity.

5. After the exile of Coriolanus, Rome continued to be agitated by dissensions within and wars without, with a variation of successes and reverses. Minutius having been conquered by the Æqui, recourse was had to Quinctius Cincinnatus whom the deputies found at the plough. He left it to take the supreme command called the *dictatorship;* and, the very next day, he attacked the enemy, routed them, and made the prisoners pass under the yoke. Having returned to Rome in triumph, he hastened to abdicate the dictatorship in order to return to his plough, B. C. 454.

6. In 451, the Romans had not as yet any written law. For ten years, the Tribune Terentillus Arsa had been asking that the power of the consuls might be limited, and that the rights of the people might be guaranteed by legislation; the Senate was obliged to yield after long and stormy debates. Deputies were sent into Greece to report on the best constitutions. Ten magistrates or *Decemviri*, who united the authority of the consuls to that of the tribunes, were entrusted with preparing a code of laws. This code, known under the name of the *Code of the Twelve*

4. Who was Coriolanus? Why was he exiled? Where did he retire? What did he afterwards do?—5. What became of Rome after the exile of Coriolanus?—6. What had the tribune Terentillus Arsa been asking for ten years? For what purpose were deputies sent into Greece? What is known about the decemviri? What were the laws of the Twelve Tables?

Tables, because it was engraved upon twelve tables of brass, upheld nearly all the old customs : the separation of the two orders, the absolute authority of the father over the family, and the power of the creditor over the debtor; but it established the equality of all citizens in the eyes of the law, and rendered the popular assembly judge of all questions without appeal.

7. Their task accomplished, the decemviri attempted to keep the absolute power which had been confided to them, and they abused it in such a manner as to render themselves odious. The conduct of one of them, Appius Claudius, raised public indignation to its height. This tyrant having wished to dishonor the young Virginia, the daughter of a plebeian distinguished for his valor and probity, the unhappy father took away the life of his daughter to save her honor. The people and the army rose; the Decemvirate was abolished, and the consuls re-established, to be soon replaced by military tribunes.

8. One of the greatest Roman generals of this epoch, was the celebrated Camillus. He took the city of Veii after a ten years' siege, B. C. 405-395. From this time forward, the Roman soldiers received regular pay, and had no longer need fear that their families would die of hunger, whilst they themselves were making war at their own expense. Like so many illustrious Athenians, Camillus was recompensed for his services by exile.

9. In the meantime, a powerful army of Gauls, under the command of Brennus, their King, had descended into Italy. Brennus began by besieging Clusium, a city of Etruria, which, demanding succor of the Romans, these sent ambassadors to stop the progress of the enemy. One of them having insulted the Gauls, these determined to have vengeance, and marched on Rome. The Roman army advanced to meet them, but was routed, and could not prevent the capture of Rome, B. C. 490. The Capitol alone resisted their attacks; an invasion of their own country, which compelled the Gauls to return thither, alone saved the remains of the Roman nation.

This invasion left a great feeling of terror among the Romans. Afterwards, at the slightest rumor of the approach of the Gauls, they declared the *tumult,* that is to say, the extreme danger of the country.

---

7. What use did the decemviri make of their power? How did Appius Claudius behave? What did the father of Virginia do? What became afterwards of the Decemvirate?—8. What is known about Camillus? How did the Republic treat him?—9. What did the Gauls do in Italy? What part of Rome resisted them? What saved Rome from complete ruin?

10. Rome, when delivered from the Gauls, was still more exposed than before to the agitations of the different parties which aspired to supreme sway; by the help of their tribunes, the plebeians continued to increase in power. They ended by sharing in all the offices of the magistrature: those of consul, dictator, censor, appointed for the preservation of the public morals, pretor, charged with the administration of justice, edile, intrusted with the preservation and construction of public buildings, &c.

11. Finding herself menaced in her exclusive claims, Rome strenuously opposed the ambition of her allied neighbors. Her situation was very critical; she had to fight both the Latins and Samnites at the same time, and these were possessed with the same courage, discipline, and warlike habits as herself. In spite of their obstinate resistance, she successively subdued the Latins, Æqui, and Volsci, and succeeded in repressing their numerous revolts.

12. Among those that resisted longer the Roman power, were the Samnites, one of the bravest and most celebrated people.

Although the first campaigns had been signalized by many Roman victories, the Samnites had rendered their defence illustrious by many triumphs. The general Pontius Herennius made a Roman army pass under the yoke, at the Pass of Caudium, called the *Caudiae Forks*, and made them swear to a humiliating treaty, B. C. 322.

13. Rome violated her oath, recommenced the war, and, by means of fighting and laying waste, succeeded in crushing her enemies. It was only after forty-nine years of desperate fighting between two nations, which would neither give nor receive quarters, that the Samnites, being exhausted, demanded peace of Curius Dentatus. When the deputies arrived in Rome, they found this great man taking his frugal repast in a wooden platter; they offered him considerable sums, which he refused, saying: *I prefer commanding those who have gold to having it myself*, B. C. 282.

14. Having conquered the Samnites, the Romans next attacked Southern Italy; Tarentum, one of its principal cities, called Pyrrhus, King of Epirus, to her aid. Lævinus went to meet him, B. C. 280; but the Romans took to flight, being

10. What passed in Rome after the departure of the Gauls?—11. Whose ambition did Rome strenuously oppose?—12. Which were the bravest people among their enemies? Had the Samnites any success?—13. How was the treaty concluded with the Samnites received by the Romans? How long did this war last?—14. What other war did the Romans undertake? Were they successful at first? What was the end of this war?

frightened at the sight of the armed elephants which Pyrrhus had brought with him. Still, the victory cost Pyrrhus so many soldiers, that he replied to those who congratulated him on his success: *Another such victory and we are lost.* A second engagement had a most disastrous issue for Pyrrhus; the Romans, no longer fearing the elephants, cast flaming darts at them, and thus threw them in disorder. On Pyrrhus returning into Greece, the Tarentines were subdued, and compelled to submit to the Roman yoke, B. C. 275.

15. The conquest of the centre and south of Italy, imposed a sort of obligation on the Romans to attempt the overthrow of Carthage and the conquest of the world. A well arranged system of colonies kept the country submissive, and prudent concessions attached the tributaries to their conquerors. They formed no longer one nation, but several of their cities were enriched with privileges under the name of *municipalities, prefectures, allied cities.* They furnished soldiers to Rome, and sought their own glory in defending the Republic. The moment was now fast approaching, when Rome would show to the world the strength of her institutions and the immensity of her resources.

SECTION II.

From the First Punic War, B. C. 264, to the Conquest of Greece, B. C. 133.

1. Rome and Carthage, rivals in power and ambition, could not long live peaceably with each other: their wars, so well known under the name of Punic Wars, commenced when both disputed the possession of Sicily.

2. Among the Greek colonies settled in Sicily, Syracuse had held the first rank from the reign of Gelon, who defeated the Carthaginians in a great battle, on the very day when was fought the battle of Salamis, B. C. 480. Hiero, his brother and successor, distinguished himself for his love of letters, and also for calling to his court Pindar, Simonides, and Æschylus. Soon after, the democratic form of government prevailed in Syracuse. More powerful than ever after the unfortunate expedition of the Athenians, this city with her riches and her 500000 inhabitants, disputed the sovereignty of Sicily with the Carthaginians, who

15. To what were these wars a prelude?

1. What are the wars between the Romans and Carthaginians called? —2. What is known about Hiero? With whom did Syracuse dispute the sovereignty of Sicily?

had always been tempted to possess themselves of a prize so rich and so handy to them. Anarchy had often delivered Syracuse into the power of tyrants.

3. In 405, Dionysius, surnamed the Elder, usurped the sovereign power, and maintained himself in his position both by his crimes and talents. He often defeated the Carthaginians, and nearly succeeded in driving them out of Sicily. His son, Dionysius the Younger, not heeding the counsels of the Philosopher Plato, whom he had called to his court, showed himself more cruel and less skilful than his father. Having been expelled from Syracuse, he signalized his return by most horrible deeds of vengeance, but was again expelled by Timoleon, B. C. 346. He retired to Corinth, where he had to open a public school for his subsistence.

4. Timoleon restored Sicily to her former prosperity; he delivered her from the tyrants who where harassing her, and retook nearly all the possessions of the Carthaginians. Good fortune attended almost all his enterprises; he established wise laws, and abdicated in 337 B. C.

5. Later on, Agathocles, the son of a potter, took possession of the power and wielded it with the greatest tyranny. Bold even to rashness, just at the very time when the Carthaginians were besieging him in Syracuse, he embarked with his army, carried war into the very heart of Africa, and forced Carthage to sue for peace, B. C. 289.

6. Few years later, some help, given by the Romans to the Mamertines who had revolted against Hiero, King of Sicily, was the origin of the first Punic War, B. C. 264. Carthage, however, being a maritime power, could only be entirely conquered by sea. The Romans therefore built a fleet, and, notwithstanding the incompleteness of their vessels, their Consul Duillius, by a stratagem, gained the first naval battle.

7. Soon after, the Consul Regulus, after defeating a Carthaginian fleet near Ecnomus, made a descent in Africa, and besieged Carthage which sued for peace; but he tried to impose so severe and intolerable conditions on the Carthaginians, that these were roused to all their energy by his severity. The Lacedæmonian Xanthippus, commanding their troops, the Carthaginians, in their turn, defeated Regulus near Tunis, and took him prisoner. After

3. What is known about Dionysius the Elder? About Dionysius the Younger?—4. How did Timoleon govern Sicily?—5. What is known about Agathocles?—6. What was the origin of the first Punic War? What remarkable victory was gained by the Consul Duillius?—7. What is known about Regulus? What was his end? How were the Carthaginians forced to accept peace?

a few years, they set him at liberty on parole, that he might accompany a deputation entrusted with asking the Romans for an exchange of prisoners. Instead of supporting the proposal, he spoke in the Senate only to dissuade his fellow-citizens from accepting it. He then returned to Carthage to resume his fetters, where he was made to die in the most dreadful tortures, B. C. 250. The war lasted several years longer, until the great naval victory which the Consul Lutatius Catulus gained for the Romans, off the Ægates Islands, which victory forced the Carthaginians to submit to a disadvantageous peace, B. C. 241. It was about this period, that theatrical representations and the fights of gladiators, were introduced in Rome.

8. The Carthaginians sought to compensate for their losses by extending their conquests in Spain. Hamilcar Barca and his son Hannibal, rendered themselves illustrious by their victories. Rome soon grew uneasy, and wished to place bounds to the progress of her rival. The young Hannibal did not hesitate to rekindle the flames of war by destroying Saguntum, a city allied to the Romans; he then traversed Gaul with astonishing rapidity, and unexpectedly fell upon Italy at the head of 70,000 soldiers, B. C. 218.

9. The Consul Publius Scipio undertook to arrest his progress, but was defeated on the banks of the Ticinus, and Sempronius, his colleague, on the Trebia. The Carthaginians resumed their march. Caius Flaminius went to meet them; but his imprudence lost him: drawn on into a valley near lake Trasimenus, his army was encircled on all sides and almost entirely destroyed.

10. The Romans, exhausted by their repeated losses, placed the prudent Fabius at the head of their army; he, without risking the success of the war by giving battle, sought to exhaust Hannibal's forces by delays and stratagems. Once, he succeeded in shutting him into a defile, but the skilful Carthaginian imagined a device by which he got out of his predicament: he fastened faggots of dry wood to the horns of a great number of oxen, and setting fire to them, drove the animals during the night into the mountains occupied by the Romans; these got so frightened at this strange spectacle, that they took to flight, and left the way free to the Carthaginians.

11. The impetuous Varro, by his rashness, made the Romans

8. Who was Hamilcar Barca? What was the principal exploit performed by the young Hannibal in Spain? What did he next undertake? —8. What victories did Hannibal gain over Scipio? Over Sempronius? Over Flaminius?—10. Who afterwards receive the command of the Roman army?—11. By whom was the battle of Cannæ gained? Who was the Roman general? How many Romans perished in it?

lose the fruit of Fabius' skilful campaign; he was vanquished at the celebrated battle of Cannæ, fought against the advice of Paulus Æmilius, in which 50000 Romans perished, B. C. 216. Hannibal sent to Carthage three bushels of rings taken from the fingers of the Roman Knights killed in this battle. His army diminishing even by his victories, he was obliged to ask for fresh troops. The cowardly enmity of a rival faction caused Hannibal's being refused this indispensable succor, and, reduced to his own resources in the midst of an enemy's country, he found himself stopped short in his triumphal career.

12. Rome, on the contrary, redoubled her efforts, and her Senate, by their firmness, sustained the courage of the citizens. Whilst continuing to defend Italy energetically, she sent fresh troops into Spain against Asdrubal, Hannibal's elder brother, and entrusted Marcellus with attacking Syracuse, which had been in alliance with the Carthaginians since the death of Hiero.

13. Syracuse was, for a long time, defended by Archimedes, the most celebrated geometrician of antiquity, who invented machines for casting stones, large pieces of rock, and beams with such force and precision, that the besiegers could not approach the walls. Other machines, placed on the top of the ramparts, grappling the vessels, overturned and dragged them against reefs, on which they were dashed to pieces; burning-glasses also were several times used to set the Roman ships on fire. Marcellus was not disheartened by all these obstacles; but it was only after three years' siege, that the city was taken by assault. Archimedes, whom Marcellus wished to save alive, was killed during the sacking of the city by a soldier who did not know him.

14. Asdrubal was, at the same time, fighting against Publius Scipio in Spain; the latter was vanquished and slain, but his son Publius Cornelius Scipio, who was hardly twenty-three years of age, having received the command of the Roman legions, soon avenged his father's death. Rapid and brilliant successes marked the opening career of this young hero, and ruined the power of the Barcas in the Peninsula. Carthagena, their citadel and metropolis, did not dare to resist Scipio, B. C. 210. The vanquished, won by the moderate and generous behavior of the victors, soon laid down their arms. Asdrubal, seeing that all was lost on that side, got together 60000 men and made all

12. What attitude did Rome assume after these disasters? Whom did she send against Syracuse?—13. What celebrated person helped in the defence of Syracuse? How long did the siege last?—14. By whom was Publius Scipio vanquished? Who succeeded him? What town did Cornelius Scipio take from Asdrubal? What did the latter do on finding the Carthaginian cause lost in Spain?

haste to rejoin his brother in Italy, by the route which the latter had indicated. Rome had never been in more pressing danger.

15. Fortunately, the two consuls of that year were able to bear up under such a trial. Whilst Livius Salinator stopped the Carthaginians at the entrance of Italy, his colleague Claudius Nero, leaving Hannibal blockaded in his camp, hastened to join Livius, and, together, cut to pieces Asdrubal's on the banks of the Metaurus, B. C. 207. From that time, the issue of the war in Italy was decided: Hannibal continued to defend himself with as much skill as courage; but from that time forward, he despaired of victory.

16. Following the example of Regulus, Scipio went into Africa and attacked the Carthaginians. He punished the defection of Syphax, King of Numidia, by taking him prisoner near Cirtha (Constantina), his capital, and gave that king's dominions to another African Prince, Massinissa, who was devoted to the Roman interests, and a dangerous neighbor for Carthage. Hannibal's country then remembered that she possessed a general capable of contending against Scipio, and, in this urgent danger, she recalled from Italy the conqueror of Cannæ, who had now been long reduced to acting on the defensive. Hannibal, with the remains of his army, left that land, where, for sixteen years, he had held his ground by prodigies of genius; but he was defeated at Zama, B. C. 202, and Scipio dictated the conditions of a peace which was concluded the following year. This Peace gave Rome Spain and all the Mediterranean Islands. Scipio received the surname of *Africanus*. Through the intrigues of the Roman Senate, the great Hannibal was soon after driven from his country, whose power he had wished to restore.

17. The lapse of time, during the war against Pyrrhus and the Punic Wars, was the golden age of Rome. The wisdom of the Senate, the concord of the citizens, their disinterestedness, their universal attachment to their religion, their country, and their liberty; the simplicity of their manners, the honor paid to agriculture, which was pursued by the highest personages, all these gave the State an inexhaustible treasure of moral force; whilst the military organization, the discipline, the constant training in warlike exercises, to which every Roman was subjected from

15. By whom was Asdrubal's progress arrested on his entrance into Italy? Who gained the battle of Metaurus?—16. What were Scipio's first actions after his descent into Africa? By whom was the battle of Zama gained? What was its result? What surname did Scipio receive? What became of Hannibal?—17. Draw a parallel between Rome and Carthage?

infancy, rendered the legions invincible. Every citizen had, above all, unshaken faith in the high destinies of his country.

Inheriting the riches of Tyre, Carthage traded through the whole of Central Africa by means of caravans, and along the coasts of the Mediterranean by her vessels. Her Senate, presided over by two *suffetes*, directed the affairs. The high families were every thing; the people, almost nothing; but two factions, the one warlike, the other peaceful, divided and enfeebled the State. The Carthaginian government, harsh and distrustful, served by mercenaries, never gained faithful allies, not even in Africa, where towns that were tributary to them took the first opportunity of shaking off their yoke. They sacrificed children to their god Moloch in great numbers; they crucified unsuccessful generals. Is it then astonishing if Carthage fell, notwithstanding Hannibal's great genius?

18. The intervention of Philip III., King of Macedonia, in the Punic Wars, drew on that Prince the anger of the Romans. He was conquered first on the Aous, and some time afterwards, he also lost the battle of Cynocephalæ, where the Consul Flaminius commanded, B. C. 197. Philip, becoming powerless, was reduced to accept the hardest and most humiliating conditions.

19. Antiochus, King of Syria, received Hannibal into his States after the battle of Zama. The eternal enemy of Rome had not given up all hopes of final vengeance, and, driven from his country, he would have stirred up Asia and inspired her with his own implacable hatred. Antiochus, who was vain and ambitious, not having chosen to follow the counsels of Hannibal, was conquered first at Thermopylæ, B. C. 191, and afterwards at Magnesia, B. C. 190. The conqueror Lucius Scipio, brother of Africanus, received the surname of *Asiaticus*, and dictated most humiliating terms of peace to the King of Syria. Soon after this, Hannibal, the hero of Carthage, put an end to his life at the court of Prusias, King of Bithynia, to avoid being delivered up to the Romans, B. C. 183.

20. Perseus, son and successor of Philip III., tried to raise up enemies against Rome in every direction, but the Consul Paulus Æmilius was entrusted with carrying war into Macedonia. This skilful General forced Perseus to shut himself up in his kingdom, and completely overthrew him at Pydna,

18. What did Philip III. draw down on himself for his interference in the Punic Wars?—19. Where did Hannibal take refuge when he was exiled? Where and by whom was King Antiochus conquerred? What was the end of Hannibal?—20. Who was Perseus? and by whom was he defeated? What chastisement was inflicted on Epirus? By whom was Macedonia reduced to being a Roman Province?

by breaking through the phalanx with his own legionaries, B. C. 168. The Romans were so elated by this success, that the triumph of Paulus Æmilius surpassed in magnificence all others witnessed before. Perseus, having been made to grace the triumph of Æmilius, starved himself to death in prison. With him disappeared the Macedonian Kingdom. Epirus, allied to Perseus, was punished by the destruction of seventy towns and the public sale of 150000 of its inhabitants. Macedonia was then divided into four districts, and some years later was reduced to being a Roman Province by the Consul Metellus, the conqueror of the usurper Andriscus, at the second battle of Pydna, B. C. 148.

21. Greece did not meet with a better fate; the Ætolian and Achæan Leagues which had formed her strength, after having taken up arms against each other, allowed themselves to be ..uted by the policy of Rome.

A thousand Achaians, suspected of patriotism, were transported into Italy, and, at the end of seventeen years, obtained permission to return to their own country. Although only 300 survived their captivity, they once more excited Greece to vengeance. The Achæan League was reconstituted, and appointed two new commanders (*strategi.*) The Consul Metellus, surnamed the Macedonian, conquered one of these at Scarphea, and the Consul Mummius triumphed over the second at Leucopetra. Greek liberty had perished gloriously, but irrevocably. The Senate had no longer need to behave mercifully to the conquered. Corinth, one of the principal cities of the League, was given up to pillage, and its inhabitants became slaves; the whole of Greece became a Roman Province under the name of Achaia, B. C. 146.

22. Rome had sworn the ruin of Carthage, but a pretext was wanting. The King of Numidia soon furnished the Romans with an opportunity of interposing. Secretely encouraged by these, Massinissa had taken several provinces from the Carthaginians. Having in vain demanded arbitration and justice from the Senate, the latter, out of patience, took up arms. The last struggle of Carthage was terrible: men, women, and children, devoted themselves all to the defence of their country; all were manufacturing a fresh supply of arms. Even the palaces and public squares were turned to workshops; the supply of hemp for bow-strings being insufficient, the women gave up

21. Was Greece more fortunate than Macedonia? By whom was she conquered? In what year did she become a Roman Province?—22. What was the pretext for the third Punic War? How did the people of Carthage behave during this war?

their hair; all swore to perish beneath the ruins of the city, rather than surrender.

23. The siege of Carthage lasted two years, and more than once, the Romans had to repent their audacity. It needed all the talents and bravery of the young Scipio Æmilianus, son of Paulus Æmilius, and grandson of Scipio Africanus, to overcome the obstinate resistance of the besieged. The city was at length taken, and nearly all the inhabitants put to death; the carnage was most horrible, and ceased only on the seventh day. Thus perished Carthage; and her territory became a Roman Province, B. C. 146. Scipio was honored at Rome with a triumph worthy of his victory, and received the cognomen of Scipio *Africanus Minor*.

24. Although the Romans had driven the Carthaginians out of Spain, they were far from having subdued the rest of her inhabitants. Numantia, a city to the north of this country, immortalized herself by a desperate resistance. Three Roman armies had in vain stormed her ramparts; one of them had even capitulated, when Scipio Æmilianus, the destroyer of Carthage, arrived and laid siege to this new Saguntum. His first care was to restore discipline among the soldiers, to surround the city closely, and to frighten the auxiliaries by terrible executions. The greater number of the Numantines, then reduced to the greatest distress, set fire to the ramparts of the city, and threw themselves into the flames; the rest surrendered to the Romans. Scipio reserved fifty of them to grace his triumph, sold the others, and distributed the territory among the neighboring nations, the allies of Rome, B. C. 133.

25. Thus, every thing succeeded with the Romans, and their dominion spread with fearful rapidity. The year 148 had seen Macedonia become a Province of the Republic; in the year 146. Greece and Carthage underwent the same fate; and thirteen years later. Numantia was destroyed. In 133, Attalus, King of Pergamus, bequeathed his States to the Senate, and they were formed into a Province named Asia. Beyond the Alpes, the Allobroges (Savoy and Dauphine) and the Arverni (Auvergne) acknowledged themselves vanquished, and submitted to the Romans. Under pretext of succoring Marseilles, their ally, against the neighboring barbarians, the Romans established themselves in the country. Sextius founded the colony of Aix, in 123; Martius, in 118, founded Narbonne; this country, thence-

23. How long did the siege of Carthage last? By whom was this city taken? What was the fate of the inhabitants?—24. What was Numantia? By whom was she besieged? What was her end?—25. Over what countries did the Roman dominion extend?

forward called *Roman Province*, extended from the Pyrenees to the Alps, and from the Cevennes Mountains to the Mediterranean.

SECTION III.

From the Conquest of Greece and the Tribuneship of the Gracchi, B. C. 132, to the First Triumvirate, B. C. 60.

1. Rome, in robbing other nations of their liberty, rendered her own quite unsteady. If the distinctions between the patricians and the people had disappeared, a new aristocracy still more odious, had sprung up—that of money. For a long time, the popular passions had been smouldering in discontentment; suddenly, they burst forth, and the explosion placed Rome in the greatest peril. The *Gracchi* were the first promoters of this democratic movement, which was continued by Marius, and exposed to cruel vicissitudes before triumphing with Cæsar. The civil wars once commenced, terminated only with the Republic itself.

2. The people, ever oppressed by the patricians, incessantly claimed the liberty that had been promised them. It was then, that Tiberius Gracchus, and, some years later, his brother Caius, grandsons of Scipio Africanus on their mother's side, both ambitious and eloquent, took up their defence, and undertook a social reform. These two tribunes, one after the other, obtained immense power, and greatly alarmed the tyranny of the patricians; the latter, trembling for their unjustly acquired riches and usurped power, overcame their enemies by means of intrigues and violence. Tiberius, in 133, and ten years afterwards Caius, were assassinated on the public square by the patricians. But Marius soon appeared, who was to avenge them and restore the popular party. This illustrious man first began to be known during the war against Jugurtha.

3. Micipsa, King of Numidia, finding his death approaching, divided his States between his two children and Jugurtha, his nephew, and placed them under the Roman protection. Devoured by ambition, the infamous Jugurtha steeped his hands in the blood of his cousins, and invaded their heritage. Called to Rome to give an account of his conduct, he had the hardihood

1. What had Rome done for herself by robbing other nations of their liberty? What kind of aristocracy existed then in Rome? Who were the first promoters of the democratic movement which now manifested itself?—2. What did the people claim? Who were their defenders? What was the end of Tiberius and Caius Gracchus?—3. Who was Micipsa? What is known of Jugurtha?

to present himself there : he bribed the senators, committed a murder in Rome itself with impunity, and left exclaiming : *Oh city! thou wouldst be for sale, couldst thou find a purchaser.* The Senate however was forced to declare war against him, B. C. 112.

4. The first battles were decided in favor of Jugurtha, who had allied himself with Bocchus, King of Mauritania, and who bought his enemies as he had bought his judges ; but the Consul Metellus, a man commendable both by his valor and disinterestedness, soon reduced him to the last extremity ; Metellus was about reaping the fruits of his victory, when he was supplanted by the ambitious Marius, his lieutenant, who took the command of the Numidian army and continued the war. Bocchus, fearing for himself, demanded peace of the Romans ; Marius promised it him on condition that he would deliver up Jugurtha. Sylla, Marius' questor, was entrusted with this negotiation, and brought away Jugurtha captive ; he claimed for himself the honor of having terminated the war, an insult which Marius never forgave him. Such was the origin of the implacable hatred which broke out between these two Romans, and which was so disastrous in its consequences to the whole Republic.

5. Hardly was the African War terminated, when Rome was threatened with a fresh danger. The Teutons and the Cimbri, issuing from the north of Europe, advanced towards the Alps, after having several times defeated the Roman troops, and killed 80000 soldiers in a single battle.

6. Marius, being considered the only one capable of withstanding them, was for the fifth time raised to the consulate, and charged with the command of the army. He showed himself worthy of the confidence of the Republic ; he attacked the Teutons near Aix in Savoy, where he exterminated them in a bloody battle which lasted for three days, B. C. 102.

7. In the meanwhile, the Cimbri had already made a part of the Roman legions retreat as far as Vercellæ on the banks of the Po, when Marius joined them at the head of his victorious army. It was there that he received the ambassadors of the Cimbri, who asked for lands in which to establish themselves with their allies, and of whose defeat they knew nothing. *You*

4. With whom did Jugurtha ally himself in his war against the Romans? By whom was he defeated? What was his end?—5. Against what people did the Romans next turn their arms?—6. What general was sent against the Teutons and Cimbri?—7. What was the result of the expedition of Marius against these two nations? What honors did the Senate and people award to Marius?

allies have already received lands which they will ever keep, replied Marius. The fate of the Teutons was also reserved for the Cimbri.

The battle commenced soon afterwards; the Cimbri were in their turn exterminated, and Rome was delivered from one of the greatest dangers that had ever menaced her. The Senate and people awarded to Marius the title of Third Founder of Rome, after Romulus and Camillus.

8. To the claims of the people, supported by Marius, who incessantly stirred up fresh troubles in the city, were joined the claims of the different tribes of Italy, which, in place of the simple title of allies, claimed the title of Roman Citizens, as a reward for their long submission. The Senate rejected their demands. The Italians sought to obtain satisfaction by force of arms. Thus commenced the Social War, in which the greatest generals fought on either side. The victories of Sylla put an end to this war, so disastrous for the whole of Italy, and Rome sought to prevent similar insurrections by separating the interests of the various allied nations, B. C. 88. Soon afterwards, calm was restored; the Samnites alone continued the war for some time longer.

9. The glory which Sylla reaped during this war, still further increased the jealousy of Marius. The latter wished to deprive his rival of the command of the troops, which had been confided to him to fight against Mithridates, a powerful King in Asia; but Sylla, who had already left Rome, returned there with his army, and drove out Marius, who was reduced to hiding himself in the marshes, and fled into Africa, where, amidst the ruins of Carthage, the old soldier could meditate with sadness on the frailty of the greatest prosperity. But whilst Sylla, triumphant, was going into Asia to punish the King of Pontus, who had declared war by murdering 80000 Romans, Marius returned to Italy, and signalized his appearance by the most sanguinary vengeance. Sylla hastened to conclude a treaty with Mithridates, and returned to Rome, where, before his arrival, his antagonist had died amidst blood and scenes of debauchery, B. C. 85.

10. Sylla, notwithstanding the obstinate resistance offered by the Samnites and other Italian tribes, which had united togeth-

8. What claim was set up by the different tribes of Italy? What did the Italians do when they could not obtain satisfaction from the Senate? By whom was this war so disastrous for Italy terminated?—9. What sovereign of Asia rose against the Romans? What was the result of the expedition against Mithridates? What was the end of Marius?—10. How did Sylla treat Rome after having been named perpetual Dictator? What was the end of Sylla?

or in order to recover their independence, Sylla, the conqueror of all his enemies, by the aid of Crassus and the young Pompey, caused himself to be named perpetual Dictator, and showed himself still more cruel than Marius. The victims of his *proscriptions* were innumerable. By his order, Rome was turned into a field of carnage; the most illustrious citizens were sacrificed, and the soldiers enriched with their property. Thus was Sylla's tyranny upheld by terror. It was under such a master that Catiline served his apprenticeship to crime.

Sylla, however, ventured to abdicate his power, and retired into private life. Like Marius, he ended his career amidst the most shameful excesses, B. C. 79.

11. Notwithstanding Sylla's being all-powerful, the republican party had been sustained in Spain by the valor of Sertorius. This skilful and virtuous citizen, for ten years, struggled against the greatest generals and most formidable armies of Rome. He perished before having been conquered, through the treachery of a lieutenant. At the same time, a gladiator, Spartacus, put himself at the head of a revolt of slaves which menaced the existence of Rome. Twice he beat the Roman legions, but he was overcome by Crassus, through the insubordination of his soldiers, B. C. 71.

12. Mithridates, availing himself of the revolt of Spartacus, and of the war that was being carried on in Spain by the tribune Sertorius, took up arms again. He laid siege to Cyzicus, an important place in Asia Minor; Lucullus defeated him at the passage of the Granicus, and passed on to Armenia to attack Tigranes, the son-in-law and ally of Mithridates.

13. Mithridates, at the head of 300000 men, learning that the Roman army was only 15000 strong, began to laugh, saying: *If they are coming to us as ambassadors, they are too many; if to beat us, they are too few.* He had reasons to repent this boasting, for the Romans made a frightful havoc of his troops, B. C. 69. Pompey was entrusted with finishing the war.

14. Abandoned by Tigranes, Mithridates was also betrayed by his son Pharnaces, just as he was on the point of making a last and terrible effort against Rome. This unfortunate Prince tried to shorten his existence by poison; but, having been from childhood inured to it, he did not experience its fatal effects, and

11. Who was Sertorius? What was his end? What is known of Spartacus?—12. What did Mithridates do on hearing of the result of Spartacus and the war which the Romans had to carry on in Spain? What forces did he bring against the Romans?—13. What remark did he make on hearing that there were but fifteen thousand Romans?—14. What was the end of Mithridates?

had to despatch himself with his own sword, B. C. 65. With this barbarous genius, the independence of Asia ended.

15. Pompey overran Asia as a conqueror; he subjugated all the nations as far as the Euphrates, and rendered Tigranes and Pharnaces tributaries to Rome. On his return, he was given the title of Great, B. C. 64. His victories and conquests in Asia had increased his popularity. Complete master of the army, and bringing home immense riches, he might have played the same part as Sylla, if violence had not been foreign to his natural indecision of character; he carried his moderation so far as to remain at the gates of Rome, awaiting the day of his triumph, and the disbanding of his army.

16. During this time, Rome, by the patriotism of the great orator Tullius Cicero, escaped from the criminal attempts of Catiline. This young patrician, overwhelmed with debts and crimes, wished to re-establish his own fortune by the overthrow of his country. Cicero, who was named Consul in spite of Catiline's intrigues, baffled all his projects, which he disclosed to the Senate, and had the conspirator's accomplices, all young and debauched patricians like himself, put to death. Catiline, forced to flee, put himself at the head of his partisans, and marched against Rome arms in hand; but he was conquered and killed in a battle, near Pistoria, B. C. 62.

17. Pompey had not sufficient disinterestedness, nor Cicero enough resolution and firmness to save the State. The first already repented of having placed himself under the dependence of the Senate, by having disbanded his army; the second, could only admire the acts of his own consulate, and in his self-conceit, imagined that the Republic ran no danger, because the Senate had awarded him the title of *Father of his country*. Cato, an austere citizen of a melancholy disposition, saw that Rome was lost, unless she returned to her ancient manners and customs; whilst Crassus, the conqueror of Spartacus, was more pompous than liberal: all these could not become masters of the Republic. This good fortune was reserved for one who, with consummate ability, was noiselessly making his way towards the foremost place.

18. This new personage was no other than Julius Cæsar, the issue of an illustrious family allied to that of Marius; he was already renowned for his eloquence and military talents. Sylla

15. What did Pompey then do? What did he receive on his return to Rome?—16. What was passing in Rome during Pompey's expedition into Asia? Who was Catiline, and how did he end?—17. What was the state of Rome towards the year 60 B. C.?—18. How did Julius Cæsar commence his career?

had guessed his ambition, and had said of him *that he saw several Mariuses in him.* The excessive expense he had gone to during his edileship, and also in striving to get himself made High-Pontiff, made him contract enormous debts; for, the votes and favor of the people had now for a long time been purchasable with money. His boldness, and appropriate sayings drew upon him the attention of all. As for him, he made no secret of his immense ambition; when passing through a little village of the Gauls, on his way to fight against the Lusitanians, he said to those around him: *I would prefer being the first man here, than the second in Rome.*

SECTION IV.

From the first Triumvirate, B. C. 60, to the establishment of the Empire, B. C. 31.

1. From that time forward, at Rome, the authority fell to the share of the boldest and most skilful. The young Cæsar sought to exercise his influence by the help of the most powerful citizens: Pompey, celebrated by his victories, and Crassus, the richest man in Rome. The union of these three men was called the *Triumvirate.*

2. Cæsar, in order to create an army for himself, got the task confided to him of subjugating the Gauls. In the course of nine years of incredible efforts, he successively vanquished all the tribes of this vast country, struck terror among the Germans and Britons, and returned triumphant with an army devoted to his cause, B. C. 50. The conquest of Gaul was completed by means of depredation and massacres. In resisting the conqueror, 2000000 of men lost either their lives or liberties.

3. Crassus, who also was eager for glory, and insatiable in his thirst for riches, had managed to have the government of the opulent Province of Syria confided to him; he undertook an expedition against the Parthians, the formidable enemies of Rome. After having pillaged the temples of Syria and that of Jerusalem, he crossed the Euphrates with seven legions, and imprudently penetrated into the vast plains of Mesopotamia, where he soon found himself surrounded by the numberless horsemen of the Parthians; 30000 Romans remained on the field

1. Of whom was the Triumvirate composed?—2. How did Cæsar manage to create an army for himself? What people did he conquer during his Gaulish consulate?—3. Against what people did Crassus march? What was the result of his expedition?

of battle, at Carrhæ, B. C. 53; Crassus and his son were among the slain; the whole army would have perished had not questor Cassius saved its remnants.

4. Cæsar and Pompey, from that time, sole masters of the Republic, were too jealous of each other to continue a union which ambition alone had formed. The death of Crassus, having destroyed the balance of the Triumvirate, induced the rupture.

5. Uneasy at the honors granted to his rival, and being resolved to ruin him, even to sacrifice his country to his own ambition, Cæsar left the Gauls, and advanced towards Rome at the head of an invincible army which now recognized but him. Pompey, who had neglected putting himself in a state of defence, was forced to leave Italy; he went over to Illyria, and thence to Greece in order to raise an army.

6. Master of Italy, instead of pursuing Pompey, Cæsar hastened to Spain, according to his own expression: *first, to fight an army without a general, afterwards, to fight a general without an army.* He made his rival's best legions and lieutenants lay down their arms. On his return to Rome, he had himself named Dictator and afterwards Consul. He passed thence into Epirus where Pompey awaited him. Having met with a check before Dyrrachium, he advanced in Thessaly. Pompey followed him there, and, notwithstanding his superiority in numbers, lost the decisive battle of Pharsalia, B. C. 48. Pompey was obliged to flee into Egypt. Cæsar pursued him thither; but, on his arrival, Ptolemy presented him with Pompey's head.

7. Cæsar wept the death of his enemy, and seized this opportunity for punishing the murderer of Pompey by espousing the cause of Cleopatra (see the *History of Egypt*). After having vanquished Ptolemy, he passed into Asia, established Herod King of Judea, crossed the seas to subdue Africa, and thence went to Spain, where Pompey's sons had gained some partisans. The encounter was terrible; the victory was Cæsar's, who, finding no more enemies, took the way to Rome. The splendor of his victories dazzled Cæsar, who thought himself able to aspire to the diadem; but some republicans, among whom were Brutus and Cassius, formed a conspiracy against him, and assassinated him in the open Senate at the foot of Pompey's statue, B. C. 44.

4. Did Cæsar and Pompey remain united?—5. What did Pompey do on learning that Cæsar was marching against Rome?—6. Did Cæsar pursue Pompey? Whither did he go? When did he go over to Epirus? What was the result of the battle of Pharsalia? What was the end of Pompey?—7. What did Cæsar do on his arrival in Egypt? Where did he go thence? Why did he go over into Spain? What happened to him soon after his return to Rome?

8. The death of Cæsar profited neither to the Republic nor to his murderers; these had neither foreseen nor provided for any emergency. It is true that the patricians displayed their joy; but the people, in consternation, revolted when Antony, former Lieutenant to the Dictator, had increased their grief by solemnly parading the corpse of the great man. Their indignation was redoubled at the news that, by his will, Cæsar left to the people his riches and spacious gardens, and to his murderers, the best provinces of the republic. Cries of anger and vengeance greeted the conspirators on all sides, and they were obliged to take to flight and retire into their respective provinces.

9. On the death of Cæsar, many rival factions disputed for the supreme authority. In order to overthrow their rivals, Octavius, Cæsar's nephew, and Antony, master of the cavalry, formed a *second Triumvirate* by associating with them Lepidus, a rich man of no talents, from whom they had nothing to fear.

10. Before marching against Brutus and Cassius, the masters of Asia and Macedonia, the new rulers agreed to immolate all the enemies of one another; besides, they wished to satisfy their personal hatred against various citizens, and moreover, they required a good deal of money to pursue their enterprise. Proscriptions recommenced, and were more fearful than those in the times of Marius and Sylla. 300 senators, 2000 knights, the richest and most respected citizens, all fell beneath the strokes of the assassin's sword. No tie of friendship or relationship was respected. Lepidus delivered up his own brother; Antony, his uncle; and Octavius, Cicero, his friend and benefactor.

11. Satiated with blood and loaded with spoils, the three tyrants completed their preparations for war. Lepidus remained in Rome, Octavius and Antony passed into Greece, where the republican army awaited them. The two rival armies met at Philippi in Macedonia. Brutus and Cassius were defeated.

12. The conquerors divided the Empire among themselves. Antony took the East, and Octavius the West. Lepidus, being no longer needed, was forgotten. But Octavius was not satisfied; he wished to reign alone. By means of address and perseverance, he knew how to form himself a powerful party in Rome and Italy; whilst Antony went to the East to fight against the Parthians, but there, he idled his time in seeking

8. What effect had the death of Cæsar?—9. What government was formed after the death of Cæsar?—10. How did the new Triumvirs behave on their entrance into power?—11. Against whom did the Triumvirs march? Who commanded the Republican army?—12. How was the Empire divided?

pleasure in the company of Cleopatra, Queen of Egypt, thus outraging the Romans by his shameful passion for this stranger. Octavius declared war against him, and gained the famous naval battle of Actium, in which the fate of the Roman world was decided, B. C. 31. Antony fled disgracefully into Egypt with Cleopatra, who was the cause of his defeat and ruin. Despairing of ever being able to retrieve his fortune, Antony ran himself through with his sword, whilst Cleopatra caused herself to be stung by an asp.

AGE OF THE BIRTH OF JESUS CHRIST.

THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

SECTION I.

From the Battle of Actium, B. C. 31, to the Accession of Constantine, A. C. 306.

1. After the defeat of Antony, Octavius returned to Rome, where he was proclaimed *Augustus* and *Emperor*; he declared peace throughout the world and closed the Temple of Janus. Abundance, order, and prosperity succeeded to civil wars, proscriptions, and massacres. Literature, which had lost Sallust, Cornelius Nepos, and Cicero, found worthy successors in Titus Livy, Ovid, Horace, Virgil, &c. Mæcenas, the friend of Augustus, was the enlightened protector of all men of talent. Rome was embellished with magnificent monuments, and Augustus could say with just pride, *that he had found the city built of brick, and left it built of marble.* His power was respected without as well as within; notwithstanding the defeat which Varrus met with in Germany, Augustus received ambassadors in great numbers from barbarian kings; the Parthians themselves sent back to the Romans the standards they had taken.

2. The chief result of the Roman conquests, the unity of the greater part of the old world, was an accomplishment of the designs of the Almighty, who was thus preparing the way for the propagation of the Christian Faith; the time foretold by the prophets was accomplished; the whole world felt the immense need of truth in the midst of error, of liberty in the midst of slavery, of moral reform in the midst of corruption, in a word,

1. What was there remarkable during the reign of Augustus? By what men of letters was it rendered illustrious?—2. Why did God allow the unity of the greater part of the old world?

the world was in a state of expectancy.... The SAVIOR was born during the reign of Augustus in a little village of Judea, (see the Abridgment of Sacred History).

Henceforward, Christianity incessantly strove against tottering paganism, until it overthrew its opponent at the end of three centuries of persecutions and martyrdoms. For three centuries longer, the Roman Empire presents us with a hideous spectacle of vice, crime, and idolatry.

3. At the death of Augustus, the Empire's limits were: west, the Atlantic Ocean; north, the Rhine, the Danube, and the Black Sea; east, the Euphrates, the Tigris, and the Persian Gulf; south, the Arabian Sea, the Cataracts of the Nile, the Libyan Desert, and the chain of the Atlas Mountains.

4. Augustus was succeeded by Tiberius, his son-in-law, A. C. 14. He had thus described this ignoble and cruel character: *He is a lump of mud kneaded with blood.* With him, says Chateaubriand, commenced that series of monsters which sprang from Roman corruption. Tiberius maintained his power by dissimulation, perfidy, and cruelty. All possessed of talents or glory, drew on themselves his jealous vengeance; he even went so far as to imprison the celebrated Germanicus, his nephew, who had everywhere triumphed over the barbarians, and who had wiped out the shame of Varrus' defeat in the blood of the Germans.

5. The tyranny of Tiberius increased towards the end of his life. He found pleasure only in inflicting torments and in debauchery. The Roman institutions had fallen so low, and the servility of the Romans was so enormous that Tiberius himself, on witnessing the adulations of the Senate, could not refrain from expressing his scorn, exclaiming: *The cowards, they are going to meet slavery half-way!*

The end of Tiberius was the echo of his life; he plunged more and more into excesses and cruelties, without ever being able to dissipate the dejection which oppressed him, as he himself acknowledged. Few years previous to his death, he had taken his residence on the Island of Capreæ. One day, having indulged to excess in orgies, he lost his senses; Caligula took advantage of his state to have him smothered by Macro, a prefect of the pretorium, A. C. 37. It was in this reign that JESUS CHRIST, by HIS DEATH, accomplished the REDEMPTION of the human race, in the 33rd year of the Christian era.

3. What was the extent of the Roman Empire at the death of Augustus?—4. Who succeeded Augustus? Of what character was Tiberius? How did he maintain his power?—5. What was the end of Tiberius?

6. After Tiberius, Caligula, son of Germanicus, mounted the throne; but he inherited none of his father's virtues, and, by the crimes he committed, caused even Tiberius to be regretted. The latter had said of his successor: *I leave the Roman people a serpent to devour them; to the world, a Phaeton to set it on fire.* To furnish means for his prodigality, Caligula had himself adopted by rich inhabitants, and then put them to death; he wished the Romans had but one head, that he might sever it at a single blow; in his impious pride, he ordered his statue to be taken to Jerusalem and placed in the Temple. As a crowning folly, he was about to proclaim his horse *Incitatus*, consul, when the tribune Chæreas put him to death in 41.

7. On the death of Caligula, the Senate wished to restore the Republic. A soldier perceived a man hiding himself behind a door in the palace; it was Claudius, brother to Germanicus, weak in mind and body, who tremblingly received the title of Emperor, and attached the soldiers to his cause by distributing to each of them fifteen sesterces. This innovation afterwards became a custom, and this is what was called the *donativum*. Claudius put to death his wife Messalina, for her infamous conduct, and married Agrippina, daughter of Germanicus. Devoured by ambition, Agrippina gained sufficient influence over Claudius to make him disinherit his own son Britannicus, in favor of Nero, a child by her first marriage with Domitius; when the succession was settled, Claudius died, poisoned, it is said, by his wife Agrippina, in 54.

8. Nero, having attained the throne, inspired at first the liveliest hopes by his conduct; but very soon his character came out in its true light, and he was the most atrocious of tyrants: he put to death Burrhus and Seneca his preceptors, had his brother poisoned, as also his own mother, and Octavia his wife. The most illustrious citizens fell victims to his fury; he set the city on fire to enliven one of his festivals, and looked at the conflagration in singing the ruin of Troy.

9. As a pretext for molesting the Christians, Nero imputed to them the burning of Rome, and proclaimed the first persecution against them. St. Peter, St. Paul, and a multitude of other Christians, were victims of his cruelty. Nero passed whole nights in the streets and taverns, surrounded by the most wicked and

6. Who was the successor of Tiberius? What is known of Caligula? What was his end?—7. Who was next raised to the throne? What was the character of Claudius? What was his end?—8. Who succeeded Claudius? Who were Nero's preceptors? Who were the principal victims of his cruelty?—9. What pretext did Nero invent for persecuting the Christians? Who were the principal victims of this persecution? What was the general conduct of Nero? What was his end?

corrupt of men, in whose company he insulted the passers by; he even appeared on the stage in Rome and in Greece. At length, the Senate, disgusted with the government of this infamous stage-player, condemned him to an ignominious death; but Nero ran himself through with his own sword, not knowing, says an author, where to find a viler hand than his own to destroy such a monster, 68.

10. Galba, who was commanding the army in Spain, by the will of his soldiers, became Emperor at seventy-two years of age, and established a severe economy in the place of the prodigality of Nero, thus displeasing the masses and the pretorians. The Germanic legions revolted and proclaimed Vitellius; but Otho, Nero's former favorite, wove a plot against Galba, and took the place of the old man who had been assassinated. Any way, he only retarded the succession of Vitellius for three months; for, being defeated at Bedriacum in 69, Otho killed himself.

11. Vitellius, who succeeded him, was nothing else but a monster of gluttony, and it is from him that posterity has received this infamous saying: *The corpse of an enemy always smells sweet.* The Eastern legions in their turn wished to have an emperor of their own making, and elected Vespasian Emperor. Vitellius was put to death, after having undergone the most ignoble insults, 69.

12. Flavius Vespasian, son of an exceptionably honest publican, was a great man; he remedied the evils of anarchy, by a vigorous administration of affairs, and at the same time, dexterously faced the dangers from without. When called to the Empire, he was commanding in Syria, and had undertaken the siege of Jerusalem; he left the prosecution of the siege to his son Titus. The Jews had revolted on account of the exactions practised by the Roman pretors; and, on the faith of their false prophets, always flattering themselves that their expected Messiah would come and deliver them, they held out for six months, though reduced to the most frightful extremities. Titus razed the Holy City to the ground, and dispersed the Jews all over the Roman Empire, thus fulfilling what had been predicted. In this siege, one of the bloodiest recorded in history, 1100000 Jews are said to have perished. The reign of Vespasian was mild and peaceable.

13. Titus succeeded his father Vespasian in 79. During his

10. What is known of Galba? Of Otho?—11. What is known of Vitellius? What was his end?—12. Who was Vespasian? How did he govern? Where was he when raised to the Imperial throne? What great event took place during his reign?—13. Who succeeded Vespasian? What is known of Titus? What happened to the cities of Herculaneum and Pompeii under his reign?

too short reign, he endeared himself to his people by his virtue and beneficence; he considered that day as lost, if he had passed it without doing some good. Under his reign, the two cities of Herculaneum and Pompeii were buried in the ashes of an extraordinary eruption of Mount Vesuvius, of which Pliny, the naturalist, was also a victim.

14. Domitian, brother to Titus, reigned after him, 81, and was a worthy successor to Caligula and Nero. As foolish as the first, he gravely convoked the Senate to deliberate on the best sauce for turbot; as cruel as the second, he applied the law of high treason in all its rigor, and ordered the second persecution against the Christians, in 96. St. John the Evangelist was plunged into boiling oil, and afterwards banished to the Island of Patmos, where he wrote his Apocalypse. This wicked Prince was assassinated by his wife and officers just as he was about to have them all put to death, in 96. He is the last of the emperors called the *twelve Cæsars*.

15. After the death of Domitian, the conspirators and the Senate offered the supreme power to the ex-Consul Nerva, an old man of seventy, who knew, says Tacitus, how to reconcile the authority of one with the liberty of all. He put a stop to the persecution against the Christians, and diminished the taxes: but he had no longer the energy necessary for restraining the pretorian guards, who regretted the licence of the preceding reign, and forced Nerva to give them up the assassins of Domitian. The old Emperor then resolved to place the government in firmer hands, and, for the glory of the Empire, he adopted the Spaniard Ulpius Trajan.

16. Trajan was commanding the Roman legions in Germany, when called to replace Nerva. He made his entry into Rome with such simplicity as gained him all hearts. A Prince, as skilful in the art of government as he was a great captain, just and clement towards his subjects, Trajan was cruel only towards the Christians; and, notwithstanding the homage paid to their innocence by the pagan Governor, Pliny the Younger, he ordered the third persecution. Under him died St. Simeon, Bishop of Jerusalem; St. Ignatius, Bishop of Antioch; and a multitude of other Christians, 107.

17. The Empress Plotina hastened to proclaim Adrian, under

---

14. Who succeeded Titus? How did Domitian behave? What persecution did he order? What was his end?—15. Who succeeded Domitian? What is known of his reign? In whose favor did he abdicate?—16. Where was Trajan when raised to the throne? How did he govern? How did he treat the Christians?—17. Who succeeded Trajan? How did Adrian employ his time during his reign? What severity did he exercise towards the Jews?

the pretext that he had been adopted by Trajan, and no one raised any doubts when the new Emperor had doubled the *donativum*. Adrian pursued the policy of Augustus, rather than that of Trajan. He visited all parts of the Roman world, acting, he said, like the sun whose rays should shine on all. He had to repress a revolt of the Jews, in which 600000 of them perished; the rest of this unfortunate people, were dispersed and sold as slaves, 136.

18. Antoninus, 138, of a family which was originally of Nismes, had been adopted by Adrian, and in his person, virtue itself mounted the throne; but his fatherly reign of twenty-eight years has hardly drawn the attention of historians. He was surnamed the *Pious* on account of his love for his parents. Antoninus rendered fresh service to the Empire, by adopting his son-in-law Marcus Aurelius.

19. Marcus Aurelius shared the throne with his cousin Lucius Verus, in 161; but the latter, who had but little capacity, died in 169. Having early attached himself to the sect of the stoics, as his father-in-law had also done, Marcus Aurelius was the *Prince of philosopher and the Philosopher of princes.* During his reign, the *Thundering* Legion, composed of Christians, by their prayers, obtained that miraculous storm which saved the Roman army, which had been shut in among the Bohemian Mountains by the Marcomanni. This prodigy, for a time, arrested the fourth persecution which this philosophical Emperor had ordered, and in which there had already been martyred St. Polycarp, St. Pothin, St. Blandine, a young slave who, amidst her most dreadful sufferings, kept repeating: *I am a Christian, no crimes are committed amongst us.* Marcus Aurelius died at Vienna on the Danube, and was the last of those called *the five good emperors*, 180.

20. Commodus, son of Marcus Aurelius, commenced by purchasing peace from the Marcomanni, and went to Rome to display his vices. He entered the arena to combat as a gladiator; he set himself up as a rival to Hercules, and amused himself by massacring the most inoffensive citizens. This monster of cruelty was assassinated at the instigation of his wife, whose own death he was planning, 192.

21. Pertinax, an old man of seventy years of age, chosen by

18. What is known of Antoninus?—What surname did he receive?—19. What is known about Marcus Aurelius? What occurred during a war against the Marcomanni? What persecution did he order? Who were the most illustrious personages who perished during this persecution?—20. Who succeeded Marcus Aurelius? What is known of Commodus and what was his end?—21. Who succeeded Commodus? What was the end of Pertinax? What next became of the Empire? By whom was it bought? How many emperors were elected at once?

the murderers of Commodus, was the first victim of their fury, and perished for not having succeeded to fulfil their requirements. The Empire having no head, a spectacle was offered which until then had been unheard of; there was a real auction, and Didius Julianus, who offered the pretorians, a head, more than $1200 of our money, gained the day over his competitors, 193. This shameful election aroused the indignation of the legions, which, refusing to acknowledge Didius, named in Britain, Claudius Albinus; in Syria, Pescennius Niger; and in Illyria, Septimus Severus. Thus Rome had four emperors at the same time.

22. Septimus Severus, more active and skilful than his competitors, being the first to arrive in Rome, seized the power after Didius had been despatched by his soldiers. Having conquered his enemies, Severus forced the Senate to raise altars to Commodus, ordered frightful proscriptions, and decreed the fifth persecution against the Christians, in 202. It was then that St. Irenæus, Bishop of Lyons, and St. Leonidas, father to Origen, were martyred; and that Tertullian wrote his eloquent Apology. One day, having condemned a great number of victims, Septimus Severus said to his son Geta: *These are all enemies from which I am delivering you.—But,* said the boy to him, *these men must certainly have relations, and, in that case, there will be many citizens who will grieve at our victories.*

In other ways, this Prince showed great skill and energy; he carried on successful wars against the Parthians, and afterwards, against the Picts, driving these back into Scotland, and erecting a wall to prevent their return into England, 209.

23. Severus was succeeded in 211 by his son Caracalla, who had already attempted the life of his father, and later, assassinated his brother Geta in the very arms of their mother Julia. The murderer dared propose to the jurisconsult Papinianus, to pronounce an apology for his crime. The courageous refusal of this learned personage was punished with death. The reign of this Prince was one continued tissue of infamy and cruelty.

24. Macrinus, prefect of the pretorian guards, was the murderer and successor of Caracalla, 217. A defeat at the hands of the Parthians and a tragic death, signalized this ephemeral reign. The army then gave the throne to Heliogabalus, a priest of the sun at Emesa, cousin to Caracalla on the mother's side, 218. This

22. Which became sole master of the Empire?—How did Severus conduct himself on the throne? Against what people did he make war?—23. To whom did Severus leave the Empire? What is known of Caracalla? What was his end?—24. Who was his successor? Who was Heliogabalus? What was his end?

new Emperor went to the furthest extremes of cruelty and debauchery. He was assassinated after having defiled the throne of the Cæsars for a few months.

25. The Roman Empire had a respite from these horrors under the reign of Alexander Severus, who was one of the best of the emperors, 222. Gentleness and justice were his favorite virtues. He caused the following maxim to be engraved in large letters in his palace: *Do not do to others what you would not wish that they should do to you.* He showed great admiration for the doctrine of the Christians; Lampridius assures us that he adored Jesus Christ, whose statue he kept in his private oratory, after having tried in vain to have it placed in the Pantheon. He had just conquered Artaxerxes, King of Persia, who had overthrown the Empire of the Parthians, when Maximinus, in order to seize upon the power, assassinated him in the flower of his age.

26. The Thracian Maximinus was the first barbarian who mounted the throne, 235. With him began unbridled military anarchy. A herdsman in his youth, a sort of giant with herculean strength, Maximinus was rough and savage. He commenced by putting to death his friends and all who knew his low origin; he cherished every vice: his gluttony was unexampled; he eat more than forty pounds of meat a day. This brutal and ferocious Prince was the author of the sixth persecution against the Christians.

27. From the year 235 until Constantine in 306, more than fifty Cæsars appeared on the scene, disputing for the throne, supplanting one another, massacring each other. Civil wars, the murder of the most distinguished citizens, the invasions of the Franks, Burgundians, Goths, and other nations from the North, such was the spectacle which the Roman Empire presented. Among the principal sovereigns of this period, we may mention Decius and Valerian.

28. Decius had to repulse the first of the great invasions, that of the Goths into Mœsia. He ordered the seventh persecution, in 250, the rigor of which surpassed all that had been seen till then. Among the Confessors of Christ may be counted three Popes, St. Fabian, St. Cornelius, and St. Lucius. Decius perished in fighting against the Goths. His nephew Hostilian succeeded him conjointly with Gallus, who purchased peace upon

25. Who was chosen to replace Heliogabalus? What is known about Alexander Severus? When and how did he die?—26. Who was the successor of Alexander Severus? In what was Maximinus remarkable?—27. How many Cæsars appeared on the scene between 235 and 306?—28. What is known of Decius? What persecution did he order, and who were the principal Confessors of the Faith? What was the end of Decius? What other princes intervened between him and Valerian?

shameful conditions, 251. These princes were soon replaced by Æmilianus, who was put to death to make room for Valerian, in 253.

29. Valerian, already aged sixty, joined his son Gallienus with himself, and charged him with repulsing the Franks, Germans, Goths, and other barbarous nations ever ready to lay waste the frontiers of the Empire. He himself went to Asia to repulse Sapor, King of Persia, who had taken possession of Mesopotamia. Conquered and a prisoner, Valerian had to serve as a footstool to Sapor, when the latter mounted his horse, and, after Valerian's death, his skin, dyed red, was preserved in a temple, as if to perpetuate the remembrance of the shame of the army, 260. It was under this Prince that the eight persecution took place, in 257. Its principal martyrs were: Pope St. Sixtus, the Deacon St. Lawrence, and St. Cyprian, the elegant Carthaginian Doctor.

30. Gallienus, instead of taking up arms to deliver his father, was giving himself up to excess and debauchery in Rome. The invasions had become alarming. The Scythians and Goths penetrated simultaneously into Greece and Italy; the Heruli took possession of Byzantium, and the Franks ravaged Spain and Africa. On the other hand, the army knew no restraint; each legion thought they had a right to name an emperor: so great was the anarchy, that this epoch has been named that of the *thirty tyrants*. The usurpation of Aurelian, however, roused Gallienus from his apathy; the latter defeated the former near Milan, and perished at the siege of that city, after having appointed as his successor the Illyrian Claudius, 268.

31. Claudius II. commences the series of Illyrian princes or generals of the Danubian provinces, rude soldiers who, at any rate, restored the Empire to a certain vigor and caused it to be respected by the barbarians. Claudius drove the Goths from Mœsia, and thus gained the appellation of the *Goth*; he died of the plague at Sirmium.

32. The reign of Aurelian, the successor of Claudius, was a perpetual war between the barbarians and the usurpers. He drove out the Germans and Vandals, who had penetrated into Italy; he also dethroned the famous Zenobia, Queen of Palmyra, who had taken possession of a part of Asia. It is to be regretted

29. Whom did Valerian associate with himself in the government? What wars had he to carry on? What was his end? What persecution did he order and who were the principal victims?—30. How did Gallienus behave while his father was a prisoner? What nations were then menacing the invasion of the Empire? Where did Gallienus die?—31. What is known about Claudius II.? What was his end?—32. Who was the successor of Claudius? How did Aurelian behave? What was his end?

that the ninth persecution of the Christians tarnished a reign which was distinguished by so much military glory and such useful reforms. Aurelian was preparing to march against the Persians, when he was assassinated near Byzantium by his secretary Mnestheus, in 275.

33. After the death of Aurelian, the throne remained vacant. There arose then a singular and unprecedented contest, the Senate and the army, during the space of six months, kept offering each other the honor of making the election; at length, the Senate, obliged to yield, named Tacitus, a good old man, who repulsed the Alani, and died at the end of six months from the fatigues of that campaign, 275.

34. The army of the East, in 276, proclaimed Probus the son of a gardener at Sirmium, a soldier and captain worthy to be compared with the old heroes of the Republic. This old man, still full of energy and vigor, succeeded in driving from Italy all foreigners who sought to invade the country. Being at war with Persia, and, wishing to show the ambassadors what their King might expect from the Romans, he took off his cap, and, showing them his head, deprived as it was of all hair, he said: *In a month, Persia shall be as bare as my head.* Their King Varanes, being intimidated, came and sued for peace.

Probus, having had the glory of dictating to the Persians the conditions of peace, next turned his attention to useful works. He kept up the activity of his soldiers by making them drain marshes, build up towns that had been destroyed, and plant vineyards. But his soldiers, becoming discontented, assassinated him at Sirmium, his native country, 282.

35. Carus, prefect of the pretorian guards, chosen by the army, reigned only seventeen months; his sons Carinus and Numerianus succeeded him after he had been struck by lightning, 284. The first of these princes soon perished by a violent death, and the second, who showed the happiest dispositions, was assassinated by his father-in-law, Aper, Prefect of the Pretorium. This crime did not long remain unpunished; Diocletian killed the murderer and took his place, 284. A new period now commences and the empire takes a new face. The ancient Republican institutions, which had survived until then, at least exteriorly, now disappear. Nothing remains but imperial despotism with its attendants, servitude and growing misery. Soon now will Rome cease to be the centre of the civ-

33. Who succeeded Aurelian? What is known of Tacitus?—34. Who succeeded Tacitus? What is known of his reign? How did he end his life?—35. Who was Carus? Who were his successors? What was his end?

ilized world; a new capital will become necessary, as well as two emperors, to defend the East and the West simultaneously. Paganism is decrepit and powerless; the Christian Religion, which has so long been persecuted, is about being introduced into the laws and State. It is evident that this is a complete revolution, which is subverting the ancient world and preparing the transition of the Roman Empire, which is soon to be broken up into barbarous monarchies.

36. Diocletian, born of an obscure family, at Salona, in Dalmatia, was not wanting in either talents or political virtues. He introduced great reforms into the government; and, in order to ensure the defence of the Empire, he divided it into four parts, confiding them to two *Augusti* and two *Cæsars*. He associated with himself his former companion in arms, Maximian Hercules, to whom he gave the title of *Augustus*. The latter received orders to maintain peace in the West, whilst Diocletian, retiring to Nicomedia, overlooked the East. They proclaimed themselves gods during their own life-time, and had themselves honored under the name of Jupiter and Hercules.

37. Resolved to complete the imperial organization, Diocletian named two Cæsars who were to aid the Augusti in defending the frontiers. For this purpose, he chose Constantius Chlorus and Galerius. The four capitals were: Nicomedia and Sirmium, in the East; Milan and Treves, in the West.

38. Constantius Chlorus, who resided at Treves, repulsed the Germans and Batavi, and reduced Britain. Maximian, on his side, beat the African Moors; Diocletian retook Alexandria from the revolted Egyptians; Galerius, conquered at first by the Persians, redeemed his defeat by a brilliant victory, by which the limits of the Roman Empire were extended beyond the Tigris. But he abused his influence over Diocletian by getting him to sign an edict against the Christians. This tenth persecution, the longest and most cruel of all, is known by the name of the *Era of Martyrs*, 302. It was the last effort of expiring Paganism, and the last trial which the Church met with before her triumph.

39. Diocletian found himself forced by Galerius to abdicate the Imperial authority, in 305. Maximian was also deposed, but did not so easily conform. Galerius and Constantius Chlorus

36. What is known of Diocletian? Whom did he associate with himself? How did he divide the Empire? What mission did Maximian receive? What part of the Empire did Diocletian reserve to himself?—37. Who were the two Cæsars named by Diocletian? Which were the capitals of the four great divisions?—38. What is known of Constantius Chlorus? Of Maximian? Of Galerius? What is known of the tenth persecution?—39. What was the end of Diocletian? Of Maximian? Of Constantius Chlorus?

became Augusti; Severus and Maximin were named Cæsars. Then recommenced the rivalries which, for a moment, had been suspended under Diocletian. The Senate, displeased with Galerius, gave the purple to Maxentius, son of Maximian, who restored his father to power. In the mean time, Constantius Chlorus was fighting in Britain, beloved by the legions; he left, on dying, his authority and title to his son Constantine, 306. The latter, called to higher destinies, kept aloof from undignified disputes. Severus died in fighting against Maxentius, and was replaced by Licinius. Next, the ingratitude of his son reconciled Maximian to Constantine, and six emperors were to be seen at the same time.

SECTION II.

From the Accession of Constantine, 306, to the Extinction of the Western Empire, 476.

1. Fortunate circumstances delivered Constantine from his rivals. The persecutor Galerius, struck like his predecessors by the Divine wrath, died in the East of a horrible malady, the fruit of his debaucheries. Maximian was put to death by Constantine's own troops, because he had conspired against the life of their leader, and the young Emperor, advanced into Italy against the tyrant Maxentius, 312. He met his enemy's army on the banks of the Tiber. There, whilst he was preparing to give battle, a luminous cross appeared to him in the air with these words: *In this Sign, thou shalt conquer.* Maxentius, vanquished, perished during his flight; and Constantine, to show his gratitude, caused the standard of Christ, the *Labarum*, to be carried at the head of his army. By a solemn edict, Christianity was declared the Religion of the State, 313. Thus, the Faith of Jesus Christ, triumphing after three centuries of persecution, strengthened by its struggles, watered with the blood of martyrs, reigned throughout the universe.

2. In the mean time, the East was still belonging to Licinius, a persecutor of the Christians. He had been first beaten in 314; a new quarrel arose; Licinius was conquered at Adrianople in 323, then put to death the following year. Constantine, sole master of the whole Empire, openly manifested his predilection for Christianity, without however forcing any one

1. What was the end of Galerius and of Maximian? What is related about Constantine when he was marching against Maxentius? What effect had the vision on him afterwards? What did he publish?—2. What was the end of Licinius?

to embrace it. All his laws bore the impress of gentleness and humanity, the characteristics of the New Law.

3. As the Church was at that time torn by the heresy of Arius, the enemy of the Divinity of Jesus-Christ, Constantine gathered together 320 bishops to the Council of Nice, in 325, to define the Catholic dogmas. Never had the world beheld a Senate as august, nor an Assembly, as venerable. There were present Confessors of the Faith, whose glorious scars the Emperor kissed with religious respect. The Council condemned the error of Arius, and proclaimed the Word made flesh *consubstantial* with the Father.

4. Constantine did not sustain to the end the weight of his glory and immense authority; later in life, he allowed himself to be deceived by his secretaries, and even committed horrible crimes. His son Crispus, a young Prince of amiable dispositions, being falsely accused by his step-mother Fausta, was put to death; his innocence and the public misconduct of Fausta, were known but too late. Constantine, as violent in his repentance as in his anger, had his guilty spouse smothered, and put to death his nephew Licinian, a child twelve years of age.

5. Rome, which had been the theatre of these bloody scenes, became a dwelling place odious to the Emperor. Besides, that city hated in Constantine the enemy of the gods and the friend of the Christians. He therefore transferred the seat of the Empire to Byzantium, now Constantinople, which occupies a magnificent position, 326. An immense enclosure, which also shut in seven hills, surrounded the new city; a Senate was there instituted.

6. After the departure of this great Prince, who died in the deepest sentiments of piety, at Nicomedia, in 337, just as he was preparing to march against Sapor, King of Persia, his Empire was divided among his three sons, Constantine, Constans, and Constantius. Constantine had Gaul and the extreme West; Constans, Italy and Illyria with the adjacent countries; Constantius, the East. The first two having died, Constantius remained sole master of the Empire, and declared in favor of the Arians. Whilst this Prince was occupying himself in persecuting Saint Athanasius and the other Bishops of the Catholic Com-

3. What heresy then rent the Church? Why did Constantine gather the Bishops together to Nice? How did Constantine treat this vast Assembly?—4. Did not Constantine somewhat tarnish his glory? What examples of cruelty did he give?—5. To where did Constantine transfer the seat of government and why?—6. Where did Constantine die? What became of the Empire after his death? What did Constantius do, when he had become sole master of the Empire?

munion, Sapor took possession of the Roman provinces situated in Asia.

7. The successor of Constantius in 360, was Julian, his cousin, later surnamed the *Apostate*, whom he had associated with himself by sending him to command in Gaul. Julian, contrary to the hopes of Constantius, showed great talent; he drove out the Germans, and restored calm and prosperity to the Gauls, which, for a long time, had been the victims of anarchy and disorder. Julian, as ambitious as he was clever, had himself proclaimed Emperor by the troops; the unexpected death of Constantius probably saved him from a crime.

8. Once installed in power, Julian no longer dissimulated his leaning to idolatry; he abjured Christianity, and restored the worship of idols. He forbade the Christians frequenting the schools; he abandoned them to the hatred of the pagans, and, joining irony to cruelty, asked them whether their mission was not to suffer on the earth. This apostate Emperor tried to give the lie to the word of Christ, in willing to rebuild the walls of Jerusalem; but, according to the testimony of a pagan historian, after the old foundations had been dug up, fiery flames sprung from the earth, and prevented the laborers from continuing their impious work.

9. In the mean while, Sapor, King of Persia, was laying waste Mesopotamia and the other Asiatic provinces of the Empire. Julian advanced to fight against him, and at first gained a victory; he even penetrated as far as Ctesiphon, the capital of the Persians; but very soon, reduced to making a difficult retreat, he was wounded by an arrow in the Phrygian desert, and died at the age of thirty-two, blaspheming the God of the Christians, 363.

10. Jovian, a worthy man, succeeded Julian. He could only save the remnant of the army, by abandoning to the Persians a part of Mesopotamia: at this price, he was allowed to bring his troops to his own Empire. He died soon after.

11. The army hastened to proclaim Valentinian, an orthodox Christian, who joined with himself his Arian brother Valens, 364. From that time, there were two empires, that of the East, assigned to Valens, and that of the West, which Valentinian reserved to himself, and in the government of which, he showed great military and administrative capacity. He marched against

7. Who succeeded Constantius? What is known of Julian?—8. How did Julian behave when once installed? How did he treat the Christians?—9. What war did Julian undertake? What was his end?—10. Who succeeded Julian?—11. Who succeeded Jovian? What is known of Valentinian, and how did he die?

the Quadi, made a terrible carnage of them, and died in a fit of anger while replying to their ambassadors. This Prince, whose only fault was his violent temper, left two sons, Gratian and Valentinian II. The former succeded him in the West, 375.

12. While his brother was upholding the glory of the Empire, Valens occupied himself only with quarrels about religion, in which he interfered in order to persecute the orthodox Bishops of the East. Under his reign, the Visigoths, driven out by the Huns, asked permission to establish themselves in the Empire. Valens received them into one of his provinces, but he was imprudent enough to irritate them by the most vexatious molestations. The Visigoths took up arms, defeated and slew Valens near Adrianople, and made the whole Empire tremble, 378.

13. Gratian, who had been Emperor of the West from the death of his father, in 375, associated his brother Valentinian II. with himself in the government. This Prince was then but five years of age. Seeing that the Empire of the East was overrun by the Barbarians, Gratian recalled from Spain Theodosius, the son of the conqueror of the Picts, whom Valens had caused to be put to death on slight suspicion. Created Augustus and Prefect of the East, in 378, Theodosius displayed both great skill and vigor. Having defeated the Goths in several small encounters, he attached them to the Empire by giving them lands in Mœsia, and by entrusting them, under the name of Federates, with defending the Danube.

14. When the East was restored to peace, Theodosius learned the death of Gratian, whom the usurper Maximus had caused to be assassinated at Lyons. He flew to the succor of Valentinian II., re-established him in Italy, and forced Maximus to content himself with possessing Gaul. Fresh attacks drew on Maximus the wrath of Theodosius, who conquered him at Aquileia and had him beheaded. The death of Valentinian, who was shortly afterwards assassinated by the Frank Arbogastes, left Theodosius sole master of the Empire, 392.

15. Arbogastes, master of the soldiery, hastened to proclaim the rhetorician Eugenius, Emperor; and both sought to strengthen paganism, in order to oppose it to Theodosius, a zealous defender of the Christian Faith. At the end of two years, the latter marched against the usurpers, and was once more victorious at Aquileia, 392. He thus found himself

12. What was Valens' occupation? What was the end of this Emperor? —13. Who was Gratian? Whom did he associate with himself in the government?—14. On whom did Theodosius wage war?—15. What did Arbogastes do? What were the principal acts of Theodosius?

free to spread throughout the Empire the benefits of a reign in which piety walked hand in hand with glory. The principal acts of Theodosius were the stand he made against Arianism, and the mortal blow he dealt to Paganism by the closing of its temples.

16. However, the Emperor, notwithstanding the lights of Christianity, fell into the sad errors induced by absolute power; many illustrious Bishops of that time, and, amongst them, St. John Chrysostom, blamed in him a severity which amounted to cruelty. Irritated against the inhabitants of Thessalonica, because they had insulted his statues, he ordered the massacre of the whole population, and revoked this barbarous decree only when it was too late. Some days afterwards, St. Ambrose, Bishop of Milan, courageously stopped him on the very threshold of the church, and forbade him to enter. Obeying his voice as coming from Heaven, the all-powerful Emperor purified himself by a public penance, redeemed his crime by his tears, and published a law protecting all those who were under accusation.

17. After the death of Theodosius, the Empire was definitively divided, and governed by his two sons. Arcadius had the East, and Honorius, the West. The virtues and talents of Theodosius had, for a time, arrested the decay of the Empire, but they had not destroyed its causes. This decay was rapid under his successors, who, for the most part, were feeble and unskilful princes, mere puppets of the ambition of their ministers. The Vandal Stilico governed the West, for Honorius, the Goth Rufinus, the East, for Arcadius. Stilico vanquished and drove out of Italy, Alaric, King of the Visigoths, who were established in Illyria and Greece; but the suspicious Honorius had this great minister put to death just at the very time he had most need of his services.

18. Misery had then become universal, both morally and physically. In the place of the enervated Romans, rising nations, full of vigor, are about to fill the world's scene. The Empire of the East, which will soon become the Greek Empire of Byzantium, will drag itself through a long decline. But when exhausted Rome shall have lost its material power, the successors of Saint Peter will give it another Empire more extended, more durable, and more august than the dominion of the Cæsars.

16. What did Theodosius do with regard to the inhabitants of Thessalonica? What did St. Ambrose do?—17. What became of the Empire on the death of Theodosius? Who were the ministers of Arcadius and Honorius? What is known about Stilico?—18. In what state was the Roman Empire at that time? What movement took place under Honorius? Which were the barbarian nations?

19. Under the reign of Honorius, in fact, there took place that great movement of the barbaric nations of the North, which threw a crowd of new nationalities throughout the Roman Empire, and thus was commenced its entire dissolution.

20. Outside the Roman Empire, was the world of barbarians that may, for the sake of clearness, be divided into three principal races: 1. The barbarians of Europe, or Germans, which included the Franks, the Alemanni, the Goths, the Lombards, the Burgundians, the Vandals, the Suevi, the Heruli, the Quadi, the Marcomanni, the Angles, the Saxons, the Danes, and the Normans. 2. The central barbarians, or Sarmatians, which included the Sclavonians, the Venetians, the Bulgarians, the Bosneans, the Servians, the Croatians, the Poles, and the Russians. 3. The barbarians of Asia or Tartars, which comprised the Huns, the Alani, the Avari, the Hungarians, the Mongolians, and the Turks. As for the Arabs, they form a race apart.

21. In the year 407, the Burgundians, the Suevi, the Alani, and the Vandals crossed over the Rhine, and laid waste Gaul. Leaving behind them the Burgundians, who established themselves in Helvetia, the three other tribes invaded Spain, where most of them remained. Some, however, passed into Africa, and established the Empire of the Vandals in the ancient territory of Carthage.

22. Italy, deprived of her only defender, Stilicho, became the prey of the Visigoths. Alaric took and sacked Rome after having spared her twice. Honorius was reduced to allowing the successors of Alaric to establish themselves in the south of France, and to found a kingdom of barbarians in the neighborhood of the Garonne; he also had to abandon Great Britain, which was thus obliged to submit to the yoke of the Picts or Scots, which she could no longer repulse. Very soon, the pirates from the North, the Angles and the Saxons, were to subjugate all that country to a new domination. It was at that time that Pharamond, chief of the Franks, settled in the north of Gaul, 420.

23. After the death of Honorius, whilst Theodosius the Younger, son of Arcadius, was reigning in the East, the West was being governed by Valentinian III., a young child of six years of age, who had succeeded his uncle Honorius. In spite

19. What movement took place under Honorius?—20. Which were the barbarian nations?—21. What tribes governed Gaul? What others invaded Spain?—22. What barbarians invaded Italy? What is known of Alaric? Where did the Visigoths establish themselves? What people took possession of Great Britain?—23. By whom was the West governed after the death of Honorius? What happened about the patrician Aëtius and Count Boniface.

of the prudence of Placidia, the mother of the young Emperor, who had assumed the regency, a quarrel arose between the generals, which became a source of fresh misfortunes for the Empire. The patrician Aëtius, through jealousy, calumniated Count Boniface, Governor of Africa. Boniface, to revenge himself, invited the Vandals into Africa; his tardy repentance could not restore to the Empire one of its finest provinces.

24. Placidia perceived the perfidy of Aëtius; but the latter, too powerful to be punished, was all the same entrusted with marching against Attila, King of the Huns, who was invading Gaul at the head of 500000 warriors. Aëtius joined with Meroveus, King of the Franks, and with Theodoric, King of the Visigoths. Attila, defeated at Châlons-sur-Marne by the confederates, directed his steps towards Rome, which he would have pillaged, had it not been for the intervention of Pope St. Leo, 476.

25. After the death of Valentinian III., Rome saw many obscure emperors mount the throne in rapid succession, and, one after the other, fall a victim of revolts and usurpations, unable to defend the shattered remnants of the Empire against the barbarians who, in every quarter, were shaking it to its very foundation. In the year 455, the Vandal Genseric, summoned by the widow of Valentinian, took and pillaged Rome. He carried off the spoils to within the walls of Rome's former rival, Carthage, where the barbarian had established his power.

26. This catastrophe only preceded by a few years the final Fall of what was still called the Roman Empire. The last who wore the Imperial purple was Romulus Augustulus. He who saw the Roman dominion perish, by a singular coincidence, bore the name of its two founders. Odoacer, chief of the Heruli, drove out Augustulus, and proclaimed himself King of Italy, 476.

---

24. By whom, and where was Attila defeated in Gaul?—25. What did the Vandal Genseric do? Whither did he carry the spoils of Rome?—26. Who was the last Roman Emperor?

HISTORY OF THE MIDDLE AGES.

INTRODUCTION.—1. According to our adopted division of History, the Middle Ages commence at the Fall of the Western Empire, A. D. 476, and terminate at the Taking of Constantinople by the Turks, 1453.

2. This interval, comprising nearly ten centuries, is divided into four great periods. The first extends from the Fall of the Western Empire, 476, to the Accession of the Carlovingians, 752; the second, from the Accession of the Carlovingians, to St. Gregory VII., 1073; the third, from St. Gregory VII., to the Death of Boniface VIII., 1303; and the fourth, from Boniface VIII., to the Taking of Constantinople, 1453.

FIRST PERIOD.

From the Fall of the Western Empire, 476, to the Accession of the Carlovingians, 752.

SECTION I.

ITALY.

1. After the Fall of the Western Empire, Italy became successively the prey of the Heruli, Ostrogoths, and Lombards, and passed afterwards under the domination of the Franks. The Heruli, led by Odoacer, became the masters of the country, in 476, but could maintain their sway over it for 14 years only.

1. What period of time is allowed for the Middle Ages?—2. How is it divided?

1. Whose prey did Italy become, after the Fall of the Western Empire? What is said of Odoacer? Under whose command did the Ostrogoths penetrate into Italy?

The Ostrogoths, under the command of Theodoric, penetrated into Italy, gained three great victories over the Heruli, and usurped in their turn that dominion.

2. Theodoric was one of the greatest of the barbarian kings. Aided by his minister Cassiodorus, he knew how to conciliate the diverse interests of his subjects, and maintain their warlike habits, while leaving to the Romans their own legislation. As he and his people were Arians, he could not fully sympathize with the conquered nations, and, towards the end of his reign, persecuted the Catholics. Theodoric had the weakness to sentence to death Boëtius and Symmachus, his best councillors and most faithful subjects; but, becoming soon convinced of their innocence, his remorse was so violent that it affected his mind; he died shortly afterwards, in 526.

3. After the death of Theodoric, the Goths resumed their former habits of ferocity and barbarism; this drew against them the arms of the Emperor of the East, Justinian, who sent his two great generals, Belisarius, the conquerer of the Vandals in Africa, and after him, Narses, to make the conquest of the country they had usurped. Narses succeeded in overthrowing the Ostrogoths, in 553; their Kingdom in Italy had lasted 41 years only. The Eastern emperors thus regaining possession of the Peninsula, retained it only for a short time. The Empress Sophia, wife of Justin I., finding that Narses protracted his absence too long, sent him a distaff covered with flax, to remind him of his servile condition. This vexed Narses to such a degree, that he invited the Lombards to invade Italy, 568.

4. The Lombards, a people of Germanic or Scandinavian origin, more ferocious than all other barbarians, had Alboinus for their chief. Obeying the invitation of Narses, they soon took possession of upper Italy, which, from them, received the name of Lombardy; then, overrunning the whole Peninsula, they wrested from the Eastern Empire most of its possessions. Anarchy was soon introduced amongst them. Their conversion to Catholicism, under Theodolinda, widow of Autharis, one of their greatest kings, appeased for a short time their unceasing convulsions. But, after the death of Theodolinda, dissensions were renewed. The reign of Luitprand alone deserves to be signalized as a

2. What were the characteristics of the government of Theodoric?—3. What became of the kingdom after the death of Theodoric? Why did Justinian send Belisarius and Narses to Italy? What put an end to the Ostrogoth Kingdom in Italy? On what occasion did Narses call the Lombards in Italy?—4. What is said of the Lombards? Which Queen contributed to their conversion? What do we know of Luitprand? Of Astolphus? What were the results of the intervention of the Frank Kings in Lombardy?

period of glory and prosperity. Astolphus, one of the successors of Luitprand, on willing to possess himself of Rome, and impose his yoke on the Pope, provoked the intervention of Pepin the *Short*. The Lombard Kingdom, already weakened by the arms of the Frank King, received its death-blow from Charlemagne, son of Pepin, in 774. These barbarians had brought into Lombardy, the fruitful germ of Germanic liberties.

SECTION II.

THE FRANKS UNDER THE MEROVINGIANS.

1. The Franks were a confederation of Germanic tribes. Having offered their services to the Romans, the latter ceded to them the left bank of the Rhine, on condition they would defend that province; and, from that time, they divided themselves into two tribes, the *Ripuarians* and the *Salians*. The Ripuarians occupied the bank of the river towards Mayence, and the Salians settled on the banks of the Saale. The Ripuarians having been almost annihilated in 406 by the Alains, the Salians directed themselves towards Gaul, and succeeded in making its conquest.

2. Towards the year 420, they crossed the Rhine under the conduct of their chief Pharamond. In 428, under Clodio, they became masters of Cambray, Tournay, and Amiens. After the death of Clodio, Meroveus was chosen to succeed him, in 448. This Prince contributed much in gaining the victory over Attila on the plains of Chalons, and his name became so celebrated, that it has served to designate the kings of the first French dynasty. In 456, Meroveus was succeeded by his son Childeric, who became the father of Clovis; we must consider the latter as the real founder of the French Monarchy.

3. At his accession to the throne, the young Clovis already possessed the virtues and genius peculiar to conquerors. The Burgundians were then settled in the provinces comprised between the Rhone, the Saone, and the Alps; the Visigoths were the masters of the country situated between the Alps, the Pyrenees, and the Loire, while the Romans were still the owners of the remainder of France, with the exception of some provinces in the north-east invaded by the Franks. Clovis successively triumphed over all these powerful rivals. Syagrius was the first

1. What is said of the Franks?—2. Who was the first King of the Franks? Where did Meroveus distinguish himself? Who was the father of Clovis?—3. Who was governing Gaul at the accession of Clovis? Whom did he attack first?

to feel the effects of his valor; by the defeat and death of this General, the power of the Romans in Gaul was annihilated.

4. Gondebaud, King of the Burgundians, granted to Clovis, his formidable neighbor, the hand of Clotilda, daughter of one of his two brothers, whom he had assassinated. Clotilda, who was a Catholic, made use of all her influence to win over her husband to her faith. A marvellous event hastened the conversion of Clovis, whose pagan principles were already much shaken. The Germans, having made an irruption into his territory, he marched against them, and gave them battle near Tolbiac; seeing that his soldiers were wavering, Clovis lifted his eyes to heaven and exclaimed: *God of Clotilda, if Thou render me victorious, I will have no other God but Thee.* Immediately, his troops rallied, charged the enemy, and gained the victory. Faithful to his promise, Clovis learned the Christian Doctrine, and, with 3000 of his soldiers, received baptism at the hands of St. Remigius, at Rheims, 496; his example was soon after followed by most of his subjects.

5. Among the many exploits of Clovis, we may mention his celebrated victory over Alaric II., King of the Visigoths, whom he slew with his own hands at Vouillé near Poitiers, in 507. Whilst enlarging his dominions and strengthening his power, Clovis endeavored to organize the government and maintain discipline by wise regulations, which he caused to be drawn up at the Council of Orleans, in 511; but his insatiable ambition led him to commit unjust and violent actions, quite contrary to his Christian name and to the glory he had acquired. He died at Paris, which he had made his capital, 511.

6. After the death of Clovis, his kingdom was divided among his four sons: Thierry, the eldest, reigned at Metz; Childebert, at Paris; Clotaire, at Soissons; and Clodomir, at Orleans. These princes were at peace as long as they followed the counsels of their mother St. Clotilda; but this peaceful harmony was very soon troubled by jealousy and ambition. Clodomir having died, Clotaire and Childebert murdered his children to possess themselves of their patrimony; the youngest named Clodoald, now St. Cloud, alone escaped the massacre; he withdrew near Paris in a village which at present bears his name.

4. Whom did Clovis marry? Relate his conversion.—5. Relate the victory of Clovis over the Visigoths. To what was he led by his ambition?—6. How was the kingdom divided after the death of Clovis? How long did these princes remain at peace? What did Clotaire and Childebert after the death of Clodomir? Who alone escaped their massacre? Which of the sons of Clovis remained sole master of the monarchy?

Clotaire survived his brothers and reigned alone for nearly three years, from 558 to 561.

7. Clotaire left four sons, viz : Caribert, who was made King of Paris ; Gontran, King of Burgundy ; Sigebert I., King of Metz or Austrasia ; and Chilperic I., King of Soissons. This new division brought great troubles in the country, and caused several murders and many scandals. Austrasia being in direct contact with the Germans, its inhabitants preserved the characteristics of those barbarians, while those of Neustria inclined more towards the manners of the Gallo-Romans. Between the people of these two kingdoms, though of the same origin, yet of different tendencies, there existed a rivalship well personified at first by the great enmity between the two renowned Queens, Fredegonda and Brunehault.

8. Brunehault, the daughter of the Visigoth King in Spain, was married to Sigebert. Fredegonda, who was of an obscure descent, succeeded, by means of crimes, to sharing the throne with Chilperic, in causing the assassination of his Queen Galswinda, the sister of Brunehault. This was the first cause of the war between the two brothers. Sigebert was assassinated by Fredegonda as he was on his march against Chilperic, 575. His son Childebert, under the protection of Gontran, succeeded him. Brunehault governed in her son's name ; her wise administration was held in benediction throughout Austrasia.

9. Fredegonda, to secure the power to herself, had Chilperic assassinated, and she assumed the regency, her son Clotaire II. being only four months old, 584. Childebert II., King of Austrasia, having died, Fredegonda thought the moment favorable to attack his sons, Theodebert II. and Thierry II., the respective kings of Austrasia and Burgundy. She gave them battle at Leucofao, near Laon, and gained the victory. This was her last success; she died the same year, 596, justly detested for her heinous crimes.

10. Discord having arisen between Theodebert and Thierry, the former perished in an engagement against his brother, and the latter died in the following year, 613. Clotaire II., following but too well the lessons of his mother Fredegonda, made Brunehault expire in the most cruel torments, massacred such of her family as gave him umbrage, and united again the whole French monarchy under his domination. His reign was rendered memorable by the commencement of a new office, that of *Mayor of the Palace.*

7. Who were the sons of Clotaire? What was the cause of the rivalship between the people of Austrasia and Neustria?—8.-9. What is said of Brunehault? Of Fredegonda? What crimes did Fredegonda commit?—10. What became of Brunehault?

11. Towards 628, Dagobert I., son and successor of Clotaire II., at first raised the French Monarchy to the zenith of its power; but afterwards suffered himself to be carried away by his passions; and, instead of obeying the wise ministers appointed him by his father, he seized upon the property of the Church to supply his wants, and neglected the affairs of his kingdom to indulge in pleasures; thus preparing the decay of his dynasty. This decay was even so rapid, that his two sons, Sigebert, in Austrasia, and Clovis II., in Neustria, headed the list of the *lazy kings*, 638.

12. These two princes being too young to govern alone, the administration was left in the hands of the mayors of the palace. Originally, these officers were of no great importance; being merely intendants, the king appointed or removed them at pleasure. Under the *lazy kings*, however, the mayors of the palace were the rulers, to whom alone all attentions were paid. One of them, Pepin of Landen, wisely governed Sigebert's State; but his son Grimoald, who succeeded him in the administration of affairs, was cruel and ambitious. After the death of Sigebert, Austrasia was united to Neustria, under the sole government of Clovis II., 650.

13. At the death of Clovis, 656, the monarchy was again divided among his sons. Clotaire III. had Neustria, and Childeric II., Austrasia; Thierry, being still an infant, had no share in his father's inheritance. St. Batilda, mother of the two sovereigns, had the principal share in the government of the dominion of Clotaire, who was then five years of age. But Ebroin, the Mayor of the Palace, forced her by his vexations to leave him the direction of affairs. The Queen then withdrew into her convent of Chelles.

14. Clotaire III. having died in 670, his brother, the young Thierry III., was proclaimed King through the influence of Ebroin. Thierry had for successors Clovis III. and Childebert III. Pepin of Heristal, the Mayor of the Palace, and grandson of Pepin of Landen, continued to govern in their name. Ebroin having been condemned to death in 681, Berthaire, his successor, had not the strength necessary to resist Pepin. The battle of Testry gave to Austrasia the preponderance. From that moment, the family of Pepin continued at the head of affairs. Pepin of Heristal administered the kingdom until 714.

---

11. Who was the successor of Clotaire II.? How did Dagobert I. begin his reign?—12. Who succeeded to Dagobert I.? What was the office of Mayor of the Palace? What is known of Pepin of Landen? Of Grimoald?—13. Who were the sons of Clovis II.? Who was St. Batilda? What did Ebroin do?—14. Who were the successors of Thierry III.? Who governed in Austrasia? What gave the preponderance to Austrasia?

15. The last kings of the Merovingian dynasty, were: Dagobert II., Clotaire IV., Chilperic II., Thierry IV., and Childeric III. The Mayors of the Palace, and notably Charles Martel, son of Pepin of Heristal, had all the glory both of the government and of the victories gained by the Franks over their enemies.

16. Charles Martel first carried on a successful war against the Germans, who were repeatedly attacking the northern frontiers; and afterwards, against the Saracens or Arabs, who had taken possession of Spain. In 732, an innumerable army of the latter, under Abderrahman, after having ravaged the southern provinces, advanced towards the Loire; Charles went to meet the enemy between Tours and Poitiers. After an entire day of terrible carnage, the Franks were preparing to renew the combat the next morning, when they perceived the camp of the Saracens deserted: they had fled, leaving their dead on the field of battle, numbering, it is said, 375000, their General being among the slain. This victory, which won for Charles the surname of *Martel* (hammer), saved Europe. Without the genius of Charles, and the courage of his soldiers, the Arabs, being already in possession of the greater part of the East, would have subjugated the whole of the Christian world.

17. The two sons of Charles Martel, Carloman and Pepin the *Short*, succeeded their father in the government of the Monarchy. In 747, Carloman, renouncing all human grandeurs, retired into the monastery of Mount Cassino, where he lived and died in the odor of sanctity. Pepin was then invited by the lords to assume the title of King, since he already exercised the full authority of one. Pope Zachary, having been consulted on the matter, gave a favorable answer. The Franks then raised Pepin to the throne, in the city of Soissons, where he was crowned in 752 by St. Boniface, the Apostle of Germany.

SECTION III.

SPAIN AND GREAT BRITAIN.

1. Under the Romans, Spain and Great Britain were comprised within the Prefecture of the Gauls. It is therefore quite natural that we should treat of these two countries at the same

15. Who were the last kings of the Merovingian dynasty?—16. Against whom did Charles Martel carry on a war? Relate the battle of Poitiers.—17. Who succeeded Charles Martel in the government? How did Pepin become King? By whom was he crowned?

1. What countries were united to Gaul under the Romans?

time, although differing from each other in their character and destiny.

2. Spain was at that time occupied by the Visigoths and Suevi. The Visigoths attained the summit of their power under Euric. This Prince took from the Romans what remained to them of Tarragona, drove the Suevi into Galicia, and subjugated the southern part of Gaul up to the Loire. Alaric II., the successor of Euric, and like him a fanatic Arian, having indisposed the populations in the midst of which the Visigoths had settled, Clovis marched against him, and wrested from him the possessions he held in the south of Gaul, 507.

3. The Suevi and Visigoths having embraced the Catholic Faith, the two nations blended into one people, under the same authority, and governed by the same laws. The nation thus strengthened by the influence of religion, continued to flourish for nearly a century, from 586 to 672. Their kings governed with wisdom, and the concord between the civil and ecclesiastical powers, was manifested in the many councils held at Toledo. But, towards the reign of Wamba, from 672 to 680, this good harmony began to subside. The throne and sanctuary were sullied with all crimes. The kings, being elective, were insensibly despoiled of their authority; the morals of the people became enervated; and when, under Roderic, the last King of the Visigoths, Count Julian invited the Arabs into Spain, these had no difficulty in overthrowing a power so long weakened and undermined by vice.

4. When, in 420, the Britons had succeeded in throwing off the Roman yoke in Great Britain, they found themselves powerless in checking the destructive incursions of the Picts and Scots. They therefore invoked the aid of the Saxons from Holstein. These had become, in a comparatively short time, the most formidable of pirates, spreading fear and consternation throughout the north of Europe. Hengist, their first King, founded the Kingdom of Kent in 455. Other chiefs successively founded the kingdoms of Sussex (southern Saxony), Wessex (western Saxony), and Essex (eastern Saxony), in the interval of time from 477 to 526. The Angles from Jutland, followed the Saxons, their neighbors, and created after their example three other king-

2. Who raised the Visigoths to the summit of their power? What is said of Alaric II. Why did Clovis attack the Visigoths?—3. What effect had the conversion of the Suevi and Visigoths? What is said of the nation during the following century? When did that good harmony begin to subside? By whom was Spain conquered?—4. Whence came the Saxons? What kingdoms did they found in Great Britain? Whence came the Angles? What kingdoms did they found? What was called the *Heptarchy?*

doms in Great Britain: Northumberland, in 547; East Anglia, in 571; and Mercia, in 584. These three kingdoms, united to the four others, formed what was called the *Heptarchy* (seven Saxon kingdoms).

5. Soon after, at the preaching of St. Austin and his companions, sent thither by Pope St. Gregory the Great, in 597, all these kingdoms embraced Christianity. This religious unity prepared the Saxons, as well as the Visigoths, to a political union, which was consummated only several years later. When these barbarians became Christians, they could not at once lay aside their ferocious manners and brutal passions. Hence, they are known to have indulged in frightful disorders. But they sought to expiate their faults by great and sincere acts of repentance. During this period, there were numbered more than thirty crowned heads, who embraced the humble and penitential life of the cloister. The number of monasteries increased exceedingly, which institutions contributed powerfully to the development both of science and agriculture. Political unity was finally effected under Egbert, King of Wessex, who established his domination over all the other kingdoms, 827.

SECTION IV.

EASTERN EMPIRE.

1. Arcadius, who succeeded his father Theodosius in the East, was a weak Prince, a slave to two unworthy favorites, Rufinus and Eutropius. The first was murdered before his eyes by the soldiery; the second persecuted the Patriarch of Constantinople, St. John Chrysostom, whose generosity of character could not help denouncing all the disorders of which he was a witness.

2. Theodosius II. was only seven years old when he succeeded his father Arcadius, in 408. He was guided in the government by two virtuous princesses, his sister Pulcheria, and his consort, the learned Athenaïs, who gave him no heir to the throne. His reign is memorable for the publication of the *Theodosian Code*, a vast compilation of the Imperial Constitutions. At his death, 450, Pulcheria remained charged with the Empire, and gave it a powerful defender in the person of the valiant Marcian, whom

5. By whom were the Anglo-Saxons converted? What was the result of this religious unity? Which kingdom absorbed the others?

1. What is said of Arcadius?—2. What is said of Theodosius II.? Of Pulcheria? Of Marcian?

she espoused. The intrepid answer of this Emperor, turned away Attila from his design of attacking Constantinople.

3. Leo the *Thracian*, successor to Marcian, in 457, and after him, Zeno, were raised to the throne by the pretorian guards, who thus asserted their ancient privilege. The reign of the latter was filled with religious troubles occasioned by the Eutychian heretics, and by the ackward intervention of the Emperor, who was himself a partisan of the heresy. Anastasius, whom the widow of Zeno called to the Imperial throne, in 491, and after him, Justin I., began a defensive war against the Sassanian kings, who had succeeded the Parthians since 226.

4. Justin I. was succeeded by his nephew Justinian, in 527. The reign of this Emperor was glorious; but its glory was due not so much to the genius of Justinian, as to that of the eminent men who served under him, among whom were two great generals, Belisarius and Narses. The former distinguished himself first in a campaign against the Persians, and afterwards, against the Vandals in Africa, where, in 534, he defeated their King Gelimer in the battle of Tricameron, forced him to surrender, and led him away to Constantinople. Africa being thus reconquered, became an Exarchate of the Eastern Empire.

5. The usurpation of Theodatus, King of the Ostrogoths in Italy, equally called for the arms of Justinian. Belisarius was again entrusted with the command of this expedition. We have already seen his achievements, and the conquest of the Peninsula finally terminated, after 19 years of contest, by Narses, who destroyed the kingdom founded by Theodoric. Justinian pushed on his ambition still further; he sent an army to Spain, which wrested from the Visigoths a part of Andalusia. The unjust disgrace of Belisarius suspended for a while the prosperity of the Empire. The King of Persia, Chosroes, captured Antioch, and forced Justinian to pay him tribute. Belisarius was recalled in 559, in order to repulse from Constantinople an invasion of the Avars, who were conducted by their Khan; he also saved Jerusalem, in 562. This was the last exploit of this skilful General; he underwent a fresh disgrace and was exiled.

Not satisfied with extending the limits of the Empire, Justinian also gave his name to the great legislative works of his time. He had the learned lawyer Tribonian to make a compilation of the Roman laws known by the name of the *Justinian Code*. This immense work has become the basis of all modern legislations.

---

3. What happened under the reign of Zeno?—4. By whom was Justin I. succeeded? To whom did Justinian owe the glory of his reign? What were the achievements of Belisarius?—5. How was Belisarius treated by Justinian? What legislative work has honored the reign of Justinian?

6. The decline of the Empire, arrested for a while by Justinian, or rather by Belisarius, took again its downward course after the death of that Prince, in 565. His nephew Justin II. lost Italy through the imprudence of the Empress Sophia, and the vengeance which Narses took for the insult she had offered him.

7. Tiberius, whom Justin had adopted in 578, justified the choice made by the latter, by his victories over the Avars and Persians. Mauritius, a skilful General, succeeded Tiberius; but he at first displeased his army by giving aid to Chosroes II., King of Persia, in putting down a rebellion headed by one of the satraps; and afterwards, by refusing to ransom 12000 Greek soldiers taken prisoners by the Avar Khan, who, on that account, mercilessly put them to death. The army revolted, and proclaimed Emperor the centurion Phocas, who caused the whole family of Mauritius to perish, 602. This tyrant, so little jealous of the glory of the Empire, was himself assassinated by the orders of Heraclius, son of the governor of Africa, whom the inhabitants of Constantinople had called to their assistance, 610.

8. The reign of Heraclius lasted from 610 to 641, and was a mixture of successes and reverses. Vanquished at first by Chosroes II. and the Avars, Heraclius was for a moment tempted to transport the seat of the empire to Carthage. The Patriarch Sergius opposed this design, and roused the courage of the Emperor. Heraclius then took the offensive against the Persians; victorious at Issus, in 632, he made an alliance with the Turks bordering the Caspian Sea, repulsed a second invasion of the Avars, and concluded an advantageous peace with the parricide Siroes, successor to Chosroes II. But the Arabs, gathered under the banner of the Khan, made him sustain great losses both in Asia and Africa. From that time, the Byzantine Empire continued declining without interruption until it became a total ruin.

9. The descendants of Heraclius occupied the throne of Constantinople from 641 to 711. This dynasty rendered itself most contemptible, and was dishonored by the most infamous cruelties. Constantine III. was poisoned in 641; Heracleonas, mutilated in 641; Constant II., exiled, and then assassinated in 668. Constantine IV., styled Pogonatus, repulsed the Caliph

6. Who succeeded Justinian?—7. Whom did Justin II. choose for his successor? What did Tiberius II. do? What is said of Mauritius? Who was proclaimed in his place? By whom was the death of Mauritius avenged? 8. What were the reverses of Heraclius? Did he obtain any success? What happened towards the end of his reign?—9. What was the character of his descendants? What virtue had the Greek fire? Who were the successors of Constantine Pogonatus? By whom was the Isaurian dynasty founded?

Moaviah, who, in 680, had come with a fleet to besiege Constantinople. For the space of seven years, the Saracens kept penetrating as far as the capital of the Empire, but were always repulsed with considerable loss. Against them, the Greek fire was used for the first time. This fire, which had the property of burning down the vessels even under water, had just been discovered by Callinicus. Constantine IV. had his two brothers massacred under pretext of their having conspired against his life, and left the throne to his son Justinian II., in 685. The latter was dethroned at the very moment he was issuing an order for the massacre of the people of Constantinople. The atrocities of the usurpers Leontius, in 695, and Absimarius Tiberius, in 698, permitted Justinian II. to retake the sceptre in 705; but he was assassinated in 711, and with him was extinguished the unfortunate dynasty of the Heraclidæ. The throne was afterwards successively occupied by three ephemeral emperors, the last of whom was, in 717, overthrown by Leo III., the founder of the Isaurian dynasty.

SECTION V.

THE ARABS.

1. In the course of the seventh century, an invasion of a wholly peculiar character arose from Arabia. Its motive power was religious fanaticism. Like a violent tempest, it threw into confusion the whole face of Asia and Africa, aspiring to nothing less than swaying the empire of the world.

2. Mahomet, the celebrated founder of Islamism, or the religion of the Mussulmans, was born at Mecca towards the year 570; he was a descendant of the idolatrous princes and pontiffs of the country. At the age of forty years, 610, Mahomet began to preach, pretending to be inspired by the Archangel Gabriel. To sanction his mission, he had recourse to all kinds of knavery, false miracles, and gross fables. He first persuaded his wife Kadijah, that he had received a divine mission. His freedman Zeid, his cousin Ali, the rich Abu-Beker, and Othman, suffered themselves to be also persuaded. At last, the people gathered around him, and listened to his preaching on the public places. But the partisans of the old worship, having excited a violent persecution against him and his adherents, he was

1. What remarkable event took place during the seventh century?—2. Where was Mahomet born? What did he do at the age of 40 years? What means did he use to sanction his mission? What is the *Hegira*.

obliged to flee from Mecca to Yatreb, since called Medina (town of the prophet), where he raised a numerous party, 622. This year of the flight, or *Hegira*, is the beginning of the Mahometan Era.

3. The new doctrine, contained in the *Koran*, or book by excellence, was to be propagated through the world, not merely by persuasion, but also by violence and the sword; thus did its founder understand it. He, himself, at the head of an army composed of his adherents, marched against the independent tribes. He reduced the towns that resisted him, and became master of Mecca, in 630. Shortly afterwards, all the tribes of Arabia submitted to him. Mahomet was preparing to invade Syria, when death cut short his career at Medina, in 632.

4. Abu-Beker, father-in-law of Mahomet, succeeded him with the title of *Caliph*, or Vicar. Kaled, the Lieutenant of the latter, conquered the army of Heraclius in Syria, and captured Damascus and Palestine. Omar, another father-in-law of Mahomet, was the second Caliph. Under him, Kaled completed the conquest of Syria as far as the Euphrates. Amrou invaded Egypt, and is said to have destroyed, by order of Omar, the great library of Alexandria, which contained upwards of 400000 volumes, 638.

5. The Caliphate of Othman, successor of Omar, 644, was rendered conspicuous by the conquest of Abdallah, who penetrated into Africa as far as Tripoli in Barbary, and by those of Amrou, who completed the ruin of the Persian Empire, in 649. Othman also caused several vessels to be equipped, and the crescent was soon triumphant over all the seas. Moaviah, who had formerly been Governor of Syria, was entrusted with the first maritime expedition. He made the conquest of the Islands of Cyprus and Rhodes, and was preparing to attack Constantinople by sea, when Othman was assassinated, 656.

6. Ali, the legitimate successor of Othman, had to struggle against a formidable opposition whose chief was Moaviah. After several combats without decisive result, Ali was assassinated, and his death caused the triumph of Moaviah, whose reign opened the dynasty of the Ommiades, who made Damascus their capital, 660. Moaviah sent one of his lieutenants into Africa; his son appeared six times in the Propontis, and Constantinople owed its existence only to Greek fire. This Caliph, however,

3. How did Mahomet establish his power over the Arabs? What is the Koran? Where did Mahomet die?—4. Who was the successor of Mahomet? What conquests were made by Kaled, Lieutenant of Abu-Beker? Who was his successor? By whom was Egypt conquered?—5. Which Caliph was the first to equip a fleet? What islands did he conquer?—6. What is said of Ali? How did Moaviah found the dynasty of the Ommiades? Where did the Ommiade Caliphs reside?

acknowledged himself a tributary of the Empire; he died in 630. Civil broils disturbed the reigns of his three successors.

7. Abd-el-Malek opened a new period of triumphs, and pushed his conquests as far as the Atlantic Ocean; Carthage was taken from the Greeks, and destroyed in 697. Thus, in the space of seventy years, the Arabs had subjugated Syria, the Persian Empire, Egypt, and a part of Africa. Father Lacordaire says: "We had to behold falling beneath their yoke, the conquests of Alexander and of the Romans, the primitive churches, and even those holy places where the memory of the patriarchs, the bones of the prophets, and the still warm traces of the Savior of men, are held in deep veneration."

8. Under Valid I., son and successor of Abd-el-Malek, the conquest of Asia extended even to China, while Spain was invaded by his Lieutenant Tarik, 711. King Roderic having grievously offended Count Julian, the latter called the African Arabs in Spain, as Boniface had formerly done by calling the Vandals from Spain in Africa. Tarik gave battle to Roderic on the plains of Xeres, in 711; the last King of the Visigoths was there conquered and slain. This battle decided the fate of Spain. The whole Peninsula submitted to the Arabs, with the exception of Pelagius, King of the Asturias, who retired into the Pyrenees with his brave warriors, there to keep in reserve those manly virtues, which were, at a later period, to reanimate the Spanish nation.

9. The Arabs were not slow in crossing the Pyrenees, and in possessing themselves of Septimania and part of Aquitania; they were marching towards the Loire, when Charles Martel saved France and Christendom, by gaining the famous victory of Poitiers over Abderrahman, Lieutenant of the Caliph Hesham, 732.

10. Under Merwan II., a bloody war was begun between the Abbassides and Ommiades, or the blacks and whites. Aboul-Abbas, a descendant of Mahomet, and conqueror of Merwan, founded the dynasty, of the Abbassides, which reigned from 750 to 1258. He asserted his power by the massacre of eighty Ommiade emirs. Abderrahman, having alone escaped from the ruins of his family, took refuge in Spain, 756, where his successors continued the Caliphate of the Ommiades of Cordova, until 1031.

---

7. By whom were the Greeks despoiled of their possessions in Africa? —8. What conquests were made by the Mussulmans under Valid I.? Which general was the first to pass into Spain? In what place were the Visigoths conquered?—9. How far did the Arabs push their conquest? —10. Under whom did the war between the Abbassides and Ommiades commence?

11. Al-Manzor, brother and successor of Aboul-Abbas, ceased residing at Damascus, the ancient capital, and laid the foundation of the city of Bagdad, since so flourishing, making it the seat of his Empire. Haroun-al-Raschid, 786, fifth Abbassido Caliph, reigned also gloriously over the greater part of Asia, as far as the Indus, and over a portion of Africa. This Prince is particularly known for the enlightened protection he extended to arts and sciences, and by the relations he kept up with Charlemagne, his contemporary.

12. Wherever the Arabs penetrated, their invasion at first bore a barbarous character; but, as soon as their victory was secured, far from oppressing the vanquished nation, they endeavored to effect an intermixture of the races, by a mild and quite tolerant government. The conquered nations were allowed the use of their laws, and were confirmed in their possessions. In the mean time, the emirs encouraged, as far as they could, the studies of sciences and mathematics, in which the Arabs made great progress; they also invigorated industry, commerce, and agriculture. Hence, by them were introduced in Spain those plants which, till then, had been known only in Eastern countries. An enlightened civilization was soon developed over the lands they had conquered. However, the domination of the Arabs never took very deep root; the decline of their power followed closely its greatest prosperity.

13. Besides the two caliphates already mentioned, of the Ommiades and Abbassides, a third one was formed in Egypt, that of the Fatimites, the descendants of Ali, who founded the city of Cairo, 969. Other chiefs formed new caliphates out of these three. The Bouides took possession of Persia, the Ghaznevides, of India, and the Seljukian Turks were called in by the Caliphs of Bagdad to form a formidable guard, or militia. But these kept their masters in subjection, disposed of the sovereign power according to their own caprice, and caused the vanquished peoples to feel the weight of an oppressive and intolerant domination.

---

11. What do you know of Al-Manzor? Of Haroun-al-Raschild?—12. How did the Arabs treat the vanquished nations? What was the conduct of the caliphs and emirs concerning the arts and sciences?—What other caliphate was formed soon *after that of the Abbassides*?

SECOND PERIOD.

From the Accession of the Carlovingians, 752, to St. Gregory VII., 1073.

SECTION I.

PEPIN, CHARLEMAGNE, LOUIS THE DEBONNAIRE, AND THE DISMEMBERMENT OF CHARLEMAGNE'S EMPIRE, 752 TO 887.

1. Pepin, who has been surnamed the *Short* on account of his low stature, was as brave, active, liberal, and skilful, as had been all his ancestors. Finding himself at the head of the Kingdom, Pepin caused himself to be crowned at Soissons, by St. Boniface, Bishop of Mayence and the Apostle of Germany. He was afterwards consecrated at St. Denis, together with his two sons Charles and Carloman, by Pope Stephen II., who had consented to come to France for this ceremony, 754. Some time after, solicited by Pope Stephen III., Pepin took up arms against Astolphus, King of the Lombards, who was then threatening Rome. Astolphus sued for peace by means of a considerable sum, and with the promise of leaving the Pope in the free possession of the countries conquered by Pepin, 755. This was the origin of the Temporal Dominion of the Popes, and which was afterwards confirmed by Charlemagne.

2. Charlemagne and Carloman succeeded their father Pepin; but Carloman dying shortly after, Charlemagne remained the sole master of the whole Monarchy. He distinguished himself as a warrior, legislator, and patron of letters. As a warrior, he waged war against the Saxons, the Lombards, and the Arabs. The Saxons, led by Witikind, were his most formidable enemies, and were tamed only after the submission of Witikind, who was afterwards most faithful to him. He defeated Desiderius, King of the Lombards, and compelled him to restore to the Church the territories which he had usurped. He vanquished the Avars, or Huns, and made the conquest of Bavaria. After having triumph-

1. Whence came the surname of Pepin? By whom was he crowned, and by whom consecrated? What was the success of his expedition against Astolphus?—2. Who succeeded Pepin? What do you know of Charlemagne? To what nations did he wage war? Where and by whom was he crowned Emperor? What was the result of his expeditions in Spain?

ed over the enemies that had leagued against him, Charlemagne was crowned Emperor of the West, at Rome, by Pope Leo III., in 800. His expeditions against the Arabs rendered him master of the north of Spain, and extended the limits of his Empire as far as the Ebro.

3. As legislator, Charlemagne restored the honor of those national assemblies called *Champ de May;* and, in those assemblies which were both civil and religious; he issued a great number of laws, commonly known under the name of *Capitularies.*

4. Charlemagne merited the appellation of protector of letters, on account of the zeal with which he encouraged the learned men of his age. The most remarkable were: Alcuin, whom he placed at the head of the school of the palace; his secretary Eginhard, the poets Leidrade and Theodulph, the philosophers Clement and Icotus Erigena, the theologians Raban-Maur and Pascase Ratbert. His justice, zeal for religion, fatherly care of the poor, widows, and orphans, caused him to receive generally the title of Saint, whereas his valor merited for him the title of Great. He died at Aix-la-Chapelle in 814, where he had established the seat of his vast Empire.

5. The successor of Charlemagne was Louis, surnamed the *Debonnaire,* on account of a goodness of heart which degenerated into weakness. This Prince, having divided his Empire among his sons Lothaire, Louis, and Pepin, wished to form a fourth part in favor of another child, which he had had by Judith, his second wife. His three first children revolted against him, vanquished him, and caused him to be deposed by an assembly of bishops and lords who had met at Soissons. Later, having been re-established upon the throne by the lords of his court, he appointed his son Charles to be his successor, which thing was the cause for new troubles. He died whilst going to make war against his son the King of Bavaria.

6. After the death of Louis the Debonnaire, a war broke out among his children; Louis the *German* and Charles the *Bald* leagued together against Lothaire, and vanquished him on the Plains of Fontenay, in 841. The Empire of Charlemagne was divided then into three large kingdoms: France, Italy, and Ger-

3. What was called the *Champ de May?* What are the capitularies?—4. Which celebrated men did Charlemagne patronize? What titles are generally given him?—5. Who was the successor of Charlemagne? How did Louis the *Debonnaire* divide his Empire? What was the cause of the civil war that broke out under his reign?—Why did a war break out among the sons of Louis? What was the result of the battle of Fontenay?

many. France was ravaged by the Normans, whilst Italy suffered from the Saracens.

7. The descendants of Charlemagne betrayed everywhere a great weakness. Lothaire had for successors his three sons; Lothaire II. over Lorraine, Charles over Provence, and Louis II. over Italy with the title of Emperor. They all three died without posterity, 855–875.

Louis the German also had three sons: Carloman, Louis the *Younger*, and Charles the *Fat*. The first two were removed by a premature death. Charles the Fat inherited their possessions, and became King of the whole of Germany.

8. Charles the Bald had himself crowned Emperor on the death of his nephew Louis II., in 875. But this dignity, far from restoring his power, served only to make his want of energy and courage more manifest. As King of France, he had allowed the lords to despoil him of his power, 847. As Emperor, he knew not better how to defend Italy from the ravages of the Saracens, than he had known how to protect France against the incursions of the Normans. He was poisoned by the Jew Sedecias, his physician, on returning from an expedition he had made beyond the Alps, 877.

9. The successor of Charles the Bald was his son Louis the *Stammerer*. It is principally under this Prince, that the Feudal System grew into existence. The fiefs granted by the kings of the first race to certain lords, so as to attach these to their interests, having become hereditary, those who possessed them, in their turn, divided them, so as to create vassals to themselves. These lords gradually became independent in their possessions, and forgot that they owed respect and obedience to their Sovereign. The reign of Louis the Stammerer was rather short, from 877 to 879.

10. Louis the Stammerer was replaced by his sons Louis and Carloman, who reigned conjointly. These Princes gave the example of a most perfect union. They waged war against the Normans and several of the lords who had undertaken the dismemberment of the Empire. Louis died in 882, and Carloman, in 884.

11. After the death of Louis and Carloman, the crown devolved upon Charles the *Simple*, a posthumous son of Louis the Stammerer. But this Prince being still in the cradle, the gov-

7. Who were the successors of Lothaire? of Louis the German?—8. What do you know of Charles the Bald? What was the cause of his death?—Who was the successor of Charles the Bald?—10. For what were Louis III and Carloman distinguished?—11. Upon whom did the crown devolve after the death of Louis and Carloman?

crument was offered to Charles the *Fat*, Emperor of Germany, in the hope that he would drive out the Normans who were laying waste the country. Far from corresponding to the wishes of the lords, this weak Prince dared not declare war against the enemy, and allowed the country to remain in the greatest distress for more than eighteen months. Paris in particular owed its safety to the courage of Eudes, its Governor, and of Gosselin, its Bishop. His cowardice roused the indignation of the French and Germans. The latter revolted, and, after having deposed Charles the Fat at the Diet of Tribur, they elected in his stead his nephew Arnulf, who became King of Germany.

SECTION II.

PRINCIPAL KINGDOMS MADE OUT OF THE DISMEMBERMENT OF CHARLEMAGNE'S EMPIRE: FRANCE, ITALY, AND GERMANY.

1. FRANCE.—The race of the Carlovingians having become extinct, room was thus made for that of the Capetians. After the deposition of Charles the Fat, the lords elected for their King, the Count of Paris, Eudes, who was descended from Robert the *Strong*, the first ancestor of the Capetians. Eudes governed with wisdom, and delivered the country from its enemies. Shortly after, he ceded a part of the kingdom to Charles the *Simple*, whose cause was supported by several lords.

2. At the death of Eudes in 898, Charles the Simple remained sole possessor of the throne; but the nobles, profiting by his weakness, took a new ascendency and revolted against him. The Normans, led by the famous Rollo, took advantage of these circumstances, and invaded Neustria. Charles was dethroned by the lords and put in prison. His son, still a child, was led into England, and reigned but at a later period under the title of Louis d'*Outre-Mer*. Robert, Eudes' brother, who had usurped the power, died at the end of two years. His son, Hugh the Great, might have ascended the throne, but he preferred giving the honor to his brother-in-law, Rodolph, Duke of Burgundy.

3. The reign of Rodolph was but a series of revolts and seditions fomented by the ambition of the lords. Louis d'Outre-Mer, who succeeded him, willing to shake off the yoke of these great vassals of the crown, made an alliance with Otho, Emperor of

1. Whom did the lords elect for King of France, after the deposition of Charles the Fat? How did Eudes govern?—2. In what state was the country at the death of Eudes?—3. What were the principal events under Rodolph and his successors?

Germany. This alliance having displeased the French lords, they revolted against the King, and obliged him to retire into his dominions of Laon and Burgundy. Lothaire, son and successor of Louis d'Outre-Mer, having gained over to his interests Hugh the Great and afterwards Hugh Capet, found himself enabled to reclaim his rights; but he knew not how to profit by these advantages. His son Louis V., styled the Idle, succeeded him, but reigned only one year. With him, the Carlovingian race became extinct, after having held the sceptre from 752 to 987.

4. At the death of Louis V., the crown of France devolved upon Charles, Duke of Lorraine, and son of Louis d'Outre-Mer; but this Prince having rendered himself odious to the French, the crown was awarded to Hugh Capet, who thus became the first King of the Capetian race, 987. Hugh showed himself worthy of the throne by his moderation, prudence, and judicious firmness; he restored the honor of the throne and of the nation. To this Prince is often ascribed the establishment of the peerage, although its origin dates from the foundation of the Monarchy. The title of *Peer* was given to all men equal in the same order: thus, there were military peers, ecclesiastical peers, &c., &c., any accused person had to be judged by his peers. The peers of France were great vassals, who were immediate dependents on the crown of France.

5. To secure the sceptre to his son Robert, Hugh had him crowned before his own death. Robert succeeded him in 996 without meeting the least opposition. Good, pious, and generous towards the poor, Robert became popular, and the whole Kingdom was unanimous in magnifying his meekness and humility. He was moreover a man adequate to those times, and sustained everywhere the honor and rights of the crown. At his death, in 1031, the whole population flocked to St. Denis, professing the deepest mourning.

6. The reign of Henry I., son and successor of Robert, was one of the most calamitous for France: during three years, neither fruit nor corn was gathered; the inhabitants were reduced to eat the grass of the fields like the animals; civil wars, revolts, and murders, became so common, that men were seen killing their neighbors in full daylight, not to strip them of their goods, but to devour them! These habits of depredation and murder, still continued after these years of scarcity. Though

4. Upon whom did the crown devolve at the death of Louis V.?—5. Who was the successor of Hugh Capet?—6. What was there remarkable under Henry I.? What was the *Truce of God?*

the influence of the authority of the Church over all minds and hearts was, at that time, very great, nevertheless it was powerless against such great evils. The Church had at first prohibited the bearing of arms, and to do justice to one's self at any time; this law was called the *Peace of God.* But later, she was obliged to acquiesce to the *Truce of God,* which forbade all hostilities from Wednesday evening till Monday morning, as also on fasting days and feasts of obligation.

7. Henry I. caused his son Philip I. to be aknowledged for his successor, in 1059, and died in 1060. Philip did nothing remarkable by himself, but witnessed great events. During his minority, the Duke of Normandy, William the Conqueror, invaded England; a Burgundian duke founded the Kingdom of Portugal; other Normans, Robert Guiscard and Roger, laid the foundation of the Kingdom of the Two Sicilies, and lastly, France took the initiative in those famous enterprises, the Crusades, which roused the West against the East, and brought about the triumph of Christianity over Islamism.

8. ITALY.—This country was always greatly divided. At the epoch of the dismemberment of Charlemagne's Empire, a great number of counties and duchies asserted their independence. Beranger I., Margrave of Friuli, took the title of King of Italy, 888. His successors were Hugh of Provence, in 926, and Beranger II., Margrave of Ivrea, in 945. Italy was afterwards reunited to Germany, in 962.

9. GERMANY.—Before its reunion with Italy, Germany was governed by the last descendants of Charlemagne, Arnulf and his son Louis the *Child,* from 888 to 912. The crown being elective, the lords gave it at first to Conrad of Franconia, and afterwards to the Duke of Saxony, Henry the *Fowler,* in 918. This dynasty restored at once the Empire. Henry had his authority acknowledged throughout Germany, and Otho the Great united Italy to Germany. Of this dynasty, three other sovereigns ruled over Germany: Otho II., in 973, Otho III., in 983, and St. Henry, in 1002. Then followed Franconian Rulers, whose only aim was to render their authority absolute. Henry III. wished to reduce both Italy and the Holy See to a state of servitude; this was the cause of the struggle which broke out between the Church and the Empire, under Henry IV., his successor.

---

7. What are the great events that took place under Philip I.?—8. What was the state of Italy after the dismemberment of Charlemagne's Empire? What was Beranger I.? Who were his successors?—9. Who were in Germany the successors of Charles the Fat? To whom was the Imperial Crown bestowed after the extinction of the Carlovingian line? What did Otho the Great do? Who were his successors? Whence came the contest between the Church and the Empire?

SECTION III.

KINGDOMS OUTSIDE THE EMPIRE OF CHARLEMAGNE: ENGLAND AND SPAIN.

1. ENGLAND.—During the reign of Egbert, from 800 to 836, the Danes invaded England, but were at last repulsed. Having later penetrated into Essex and Kent, they were defeated in 852, by Ethelwulf, son of Egbert. They reappeared again in 870, under the reign of Ethelred I., and settled over a portion of the country.

2. But soon after, there arose against the Danes a formidable adversary in the person of Alfred the Great, the brother and successor of Ethelred, 872. Vanquished at first by the Danes, Alfred passed seven years in exile, penetrated into the barbarian's camp under the garb of a harper, and when he had assured himself of the weakness of their position, giving them battle, he delivered his country. The laws which he gave the English were so wise, that they were ever reclaimed by the people. The successors of Alfred continued to combat the invasions of the Danes; but at last, under the reign of Ethelred II, his eighth successor, a fresh invasion conducted by Sweyn overthrew the English, and Ethelred was obliged to take refuge in Normandy, 1013.

3. Canute the Great, son and successor to Sweyn, in 1015, was equally beloved by the Saxons and the Danes. His sons did not follow his example. Their vexations so irritated the Saxons, that they recalled the youngest son of Ethelred II., Edward the Confessor, in 1042, and thus restored the Saxon line. The piety of Edward, his love of law and justice, gave England some repose, and merited for himself the honor of being canonized. After the death of this Prince, William, Duke of Normandy, invaded England, in 1066, and made himself master of the country.

4. SPAIN.—This country was divided into two parts: Mussulman Spain, and Christian Spain. Invaded by the Arabs at the commencement of the eighth century, Spain had, since 756, formed the Ommiade caliphate of Cordova. The successors of

1. By what people was England invaded?—2. How did Alfred the Great know the position of the enemy? What do you know of the successors of Alfred? By whom was Ethelred II. dethroned?—3. Who is the Danish chief that ruled in England? What was the conduct of his successors? Who was the last King of the Saxons? By whom was England invaded after the death of Edward?—4. How was Spain then divided? What is said of the reigns of the successors of Abderrahman? Into how many kingdoms was the caliphate of Cordova divided?

Abderrahman had been enlarging their dominions for more than two centuries. But the walis, or governors of the princes, having made themselves independent, 1038, this caliphate became thus divided into ten kingdoms, and thence, entered into its period of decadence.

5. The Christians of Spain, who, under the leadership of Pelagius, had intrenched themselves in the Asturian Mountains, began to wage a determined war against the Mussulmans. Favila, son of Pelagius, conquered the Asturias in 737. Alphonso the *Catholic* wrested from the Saracens, Galicia and the Kingdoms of Leon and Castile. Froila, his son, in 757, having defeated the Mussulmans, built Oviedo in remembrance of his victory, which city he made the capital of his Kingdom. From that moment, the successors of Pelagius took the title of King of Oviedo.

6. The expedition of Charlemagne against the Moors, and the Marche of Barcelona which he made a part of Spain, soon gave rise to the Kingdom of Navarre, where a lord known by the name of Aznar, rendered himself independent. His grand-nephew, Garcia Ximenes, was proclaimed King in 957, and chose Pampeluna for his capital. The Kings of the Asturias allied themselves with Sancho III., styled the *Great*, King of Navarre, in 1000, and together, gained the battle of Calatanosor, after which, Sancho the Great conquered Aragon and Castile. At his death in 1035, his dominions were divided among his children, whence arose the Kingdoms of Navarre, Castile, and Aragon. Hence we see, that at this period, there were in Spain three Christian Kingdoms against ten Mussulman States.

SECTION IV.

EASTERN EMPIRE, FROM THE EXTINCTION OF THE HERACLIDÆ, 711, TO THE ACCESSION OF THE COMNENI, 1057.

1. The great event of this period in the Eastern Empire, was the Schism of the Greek Church; the Heresy of the Iconoclasts, or Image-Breakers, had prepared it, Photius established its principles, and Michael Cerularius gave its completion.

5. Who was the successor of Pelagius? Who was the founder of Oviedo?—6. How was the Kingdom of Navarre established? Which Prince united under his power all the Christian possessions in Spain? What kingdoms were formed from that of Sancho the Great?

1. What was the great event of this period for the Eastern Empire?

2. The error of the Iconoclasts, was first advanced by Leo the Isaurian, the founder of the dynasty of that name, in 717. The Patriarch of Constantinople, St. Germain, and the Sovereign Pontiff, Gregory II, opposed this barbarous doctrine. The son of Leo, Constantine Copronymus, supported this error with still more cruelty and barbarism, 741. This Prince lost Italy, which separated from the Empire on account of his persecutions. The Empress Irene restored peace to the Church and to the Empire, in causing this Heresy to be condemned by the second Council of Nice, 787. Unfortunately, other Iconoclast emperors reappeared: Leo the Armenian renewed the persecutions against the Orthodox, in 816. His examples were followed by his successors, and the East recovered its tranquillity but under the regency of the Empress Theodora, a woman possessing a pure faith with an eminent piety. This Princess facilitated the convocation of another Œcumenical Council, held at Constantinople, in 842. The heresy was once more condemned, and thus the death-blow was given to an error which had troubled the East for more than a century, and had caused torrents of blood to flow.

3. Unfortunately, schism was to succeed this heresy. The author of this shism was Photius, the most learned man of his time, but who, to a flexible and fertile genius, united all the resources of a consummate artifice. Having sought to depose St. Ignatius, Patriarch of Constantinople, he revenged himself for the check he received, by laying down all those principles for which the Greek Church has separated from the Latin. This intriguer denied the primacy of jurisdiction of the Roman Church, and that Constantinople was the equal of Rome both in civil and religious concerns. At the death of St. Ignatius, he caused himself to be named in his place, 877, and kept possession of the See of Constantinople until his expulsion from it by Leo the *Philosopher*.

4. The Emperors of Constantinople still showed some warlike virtues. Nicephorus, Zimisces, and Basil II., obtained over the Arabs, Bulgarians, and Russians, some successes that veiled for a moment the turpitudes that dishonored the throne. But, after

---

2. What Heresy was supported by Leo the Isaurian? Who were the defenders of Orthodoxy? What do you know of Constantine Copronymus? What was Irene, and what did she do? Where was this Heresy condemned?—3. Who was the author of the Greek Schism? What was the character of Photius? By whom was he expelled from the See of Constantinople?—4. What do you know of Nicephorus, Zimisces, and Basil II.? What became of the Empire after the reign of these Princes? By whom was the Greek Schism consummated? Which dynasty succeeded to the Macedonian one?

those exploits, history has nothing else to record but reverses and crimes. It was at this sad conjuncture that the Schism of the Eastern Church was consummated, through the intrigues of the Patriarch Michael Cerularius, in 1054. A few years after this deplorable event, the Macedonian dynasty, which had begun with the Emperor Basil II., was replaced by that of the Comneni, 1057.

THIRD PERIOD.

From St. Gregory VII., 1073, *to the Death of Boniface VIII.*, 1303.

SECTION I.

THE PAPACY AND THE EMPIRE. INVESTITURES. GUELPHS AND GHIBELLINES, 1063–1273.

1. Europe, constituted into definitive nations since the end of the Second Period, had already commenced the work of its organization. Two powers were, at that time, in face of each other, the Church and the Feudal System. The latter, which degenerated into tyranny at a later period, was originally a beneficial power, as it served to attach the inhabitants to the soil by hereditary rights, and to commence domestic education, by allowing the woman, whom Christianity had raised to her proper dignity, to exercise her gentle and legitimate influence. But the moral strength of this period resided wholly in the Church, which, enlightening all minds, and softening the manners of the people, protected the oppressed, and vivified with her life-giving breath the two greatest works of the Middle-Ages, Chivalry and the Crusades. It was in France, above all, that her action was most felt, because she found in that country the most generous and docile hearts. In Germany, the Church had to withstand the incroachments of the Empire, and to uphold the rights of her mission, which are so intimately connected with those of the human conscience.

2. Henry IV. was but six years old, when he succeeded his father Henry III. on the throne of Germany. His education had

1. What was the state of Europe at the beginning of this period?—2. What was the character of Henry IV.? What were his usurpations, and their consequences?

been much neglected. As he advanced in age, he was allowed to foster those passions which have rendered his reign so unfortunate. This Prince governed with tyranny, and abandoned himself to all sorts of debaucheries. He carried to the last extremity the scandal of Simony, or the traffic of holy things, selling abbeys and bishopries to most unworthy men, so that the German clergy was dishonored by the disorder and ignorance of its members, and religion was being compromised in the eyes of the people.

3. A man of superior genius, endowed with great courage, and possessed of eminent piety, was needed to make the Church triumph over this terrible trial. This man was St. Gregory VII. He was the son of an humble carpenter named Hildebrand. He had been a monk in the abbey of Cluny, which was then very considerable. Hardly was he raised to the Pontifical throne, that, touched at the great evils existing in the Church, he resolved to restore the dignity of the Chair of St. Peter, by asserting the independence of the Church in the free exercise of her legitimate rights. He began by reforming ecclesiastical discipline; then, he convoked two Councils which proscribed Simony, and prohibited laymen to confer the Investiture of ecclesiastical charges, or dignity, by giving the ring and the crosier, which are symbols of the government of souls.

4. Instead of obeying the decree of the Council, Henry IV. named an antipope. On his side, Gregory VII, conformably to the maxims of public rights generally admitted by the Catholic nations of Europe, resolved not only to launch a sentence of excommunication against the Emperor, but also to absolve his subjects from their oath of allegiance, and to transfer the crown to another prince. Henry, thus excommunicated, seeing that the people rose against him, came to Canossa, in Lombardy, in order to receive absolution after having performed a public and solemn penance, 1077.

5. Soon after, faithless to his engagements, Henry broke up with the Pope, and thus rashly exposed himself to new misfortunes. He caused another antipope to be elected, and gave several battles to his rival, Rudolph of Swabia, who perished in the battle of Merseburg, in 1080. Gregory VII. could rely upon a great number of German lords, the Saxons, the Countess Mathilda of Este, sovereign of Tuscany, and upon Robert Guis-

3. Which great man then took the defence of the Church? What measures did St. Gregory VII. take after his accession to the Pontifical Chair? How did he attack the Investitures.—4. Did Henry IV. submit? —5. Was he faithful to his engagements? What became of Rudolph? What were the successes of Henry IV.? By whom was St. Gregory rescued from his hands? Where did he die?

card, chief of the Italian Normans, who succeeded in rescuing the Pope from his enemy, 1084. Notwithstanding this protection, the courageous Pontiff, after the taking of Rome by the Emperor, was compelled to withdraw to Salerno, where he died an exile, uttering these beautiful words: "I have loved justice and hated iniquity, wherefore I die in exile", 1085.

6. The successors of St. Gregory VII., Victor III. and Urban II., supported his work with energy. Paschal II. renewed the sentence of excommunication against the incorrigible tyrant. The two sons of Henry IV. successively revolted against him, and the united forces of Tuscany and Lombardy made Henry experience a defeat, in 1090. After fresh vicissitudes and errors, abandoned of all, and forced to abdicate, the old Emperor went to end his days in misery at Liege, where he died in 1106, having kept Germany and Italy in continual broils for more than fifty years.

7. Before his accession, the rebellious Henry V., son of Henry IV., had promised to recognize the rights of the Holy See; but scarcely was he seated upon the throne, when he forgot all his engagements. He persecuted the Sovereign Pontiff, whom he dared cast into prison. But the nations declared in favor of the illustrious Captive; and, at the Diet of Worms in 1122, the question of *Investitures* was at length resolved to the satisfaction of the Church.

8. Henry V. lived only three years after the Diet of Worms; and with him the Franconian line became extinct, in 1125. The electors chose Lothaire, Duke of Saxony, to succeed Henry V. On the death of Lothaire, two powerful parties entered into a rivalship, that of the Welfs (Guelphs), possessing Bavaria with the Duchies of Saxony and Tuscany; that of the lords of Wiblingen (Ghibellines), or Hohenstaufen, the masters of Swabia and Franconia. Their dissensions extended very soon into Italy, where the Ghibellines upheld the cause of the Empire, or rather the despotism of the emperors, who aimed at establishing their absolute domination over that country; whereas the Guelphs, obeying the influence of the Popes, defended the independence of the Italian republics, and the free cities of Lombardy.

9. Conrad III., of the Swabian line, Duke of Franconia, was

---

6. Who were the successors of St. Gregory VII.? What were the afflictions of Henry IV. in his last years? Where did he die?—7. What was the conduct of Henry V. towards the Holy See? What was the result of the Diet of Worms?—8. Who was the successor of Henry V.? What were the Guelphs? the Ghibellines?—9. What do you know of Conrad III.? Who was his successor? What were the pretensions of Frederic Barbarossa? Which Pontiff opposed his invasions? Where was Frederic beaten?

elected in 1138. He was the head of the dynasty of the Ghibellines and Hohenstaufen. Conrad having died on returning from the Holy Land, whither he had gone on the second Crusade, his nephew, Frederic I. Barbarossa, succeeded him in 1152. This Prince, after having become master of all Germany, carried war into Italy, where he attacked the independent cities of Lombardy. Pope Alexander III., who knew that the liberty of the Holy See, as well as that of all Italy, was endangered in this war, aided these republics against Germain despotism, and had the glory of triumphing over his powerful adversary, who was obliged, after his defeat at Legnano, to sign at Venice a treaty in which he recognized the liberty of Italy, and the rights of the Holy See, 1177.

10. At the accession of Innocent III., Germany was a prey to profound divisions, ever instigated through the same cause. The Guelphs were represented by Otho IV. of Brunswick, and the Ghibellines, by Philip of Swabia. Innocent declared in favor of Otho; but, after a long struggle, victory having declared in favor of Philip, the Pope recognized him in 1198. But this Prince having been shortly after assassinated, Innocent caused Otho to be elected in his place. He was not long however before repenting; for Otho, turning against his benefactor, obliged the Pope to excommunicate him from the Church. The solicitude of the Pontiff turned upon Frederic, a young Prince fourteen years old, of the blood of the Hohenstaufen, whom he had already crowned King of Sicily, 1212.

11. Frederic II. triumphed over Otho and respected the Holy See as long as it was occupied by Innocent III., to whom he owed the preservation of his patrimony, and his being elected Emperor; but, unfortunately, under Honorius III. and Gregory IX., he took up the errors of his predecessors, and was also excommunicated. Innocent IV. having been raised to the Chair of St. Peter, the obstinacy of Frederic forced the new Pope to leave Rome and retire at Lyons, where he convoked a general Council, by which the Emperor was deposed, 1245. This sentence annihilated the power of Frederic, who, from this out, met only with reverses, and at last died overwhelmed with afflictions, in 1250. He was a skilful and learned Prince, gifted with great political talents, a legislator, and a friend of the arts and sciences;

10. In whose favor did Innocent III. declare? What did Otho do? Whom did the German princes elect in his place?—11. What was the conduct of Frederic during the reign of Honorius? Why was Frederic excommunicated? Who was the successor of Gregory IX.? What did Innocent IV. do? What was the end of Frederic II.? How long did Conrad IV. reign? How did Conradin die? What House succeeded that of the Hohenstaufen?

but, by his despotism and licentiousness, he resembled more a Mussulman than a Christian. His son Conrad survived him but four years, and his grandson Conradin lost his head on the scaffold, in 1268. Thus ended wretchedly the dynasty of the Hohenstaufen, which had caused so many evils in the Church. This dynasty was followed in Germany by an interregnum which lasted till 1273, and which brought about the most deplorable divisions throughout the country. The electors put an end to this anarchy by raising to the throne the House of Hapsburg.

SECTION II.

CRUSADES AND CHIVALRY, 1095–1270.

1. Under the Comneni, the Empire of Constantinople had sustained severe losses; the Seljukian Turks had wrested from them Mesopotamia and Armenia. Very soon Malek-Shah left only Trebizond in Asia to the Greek emperors. It was to be feared that Islamism would commence again the great invasion formerly checked by Charles Martel. The Eastern Empire, or rather the Lower Empire, was incapable of defending itself; it had considerably weakened itself by separating from the Latin Church, in 857; and the Schism, consummated by Michael Cerularius, in 1054, was the prelude of its downfall. On the accession of Alexius I., in 1081, the Empire was reduced to the greatest distress. This Prince implored the assistance of the Western nations, whose zeal was already inflamed by the inspired preaching of a poor pilgrim of Amiens, named Peter the Hermit.

2. Sylvester II. and St. Gregory VII. had already conceived the idea of those holy expeditions; it was Urban II. who realized their projects. The quarrel between the Church and the Empire seemed to be extinguished. The Pontiff, at the Council of Clermont, in 1095, had launched an anathema against two rebellious Princes, Henry VI. and Philip I. But afterwards, preaching peace within, and the Crusades without, the Pope terminated a discourse by these words: *God wills it*, which became the rallying word of the crusaders. Having inflamed his hearers with a holy zeal, he distributed the cross, the symbol of the pilgrimage, to a multitude from every country, language, and condition. The Crusades, numbering eight in all, from 1095 to 1270,

1. Which province did the Seljukian Turks wrest from the emperors of Constantinople? What was the situation of the Eastern Empire, at the accession of Alexius I.?—2. Which Popes had first conceived the idea of the Crusades? Who decided on the first Crusade?

appertain properly to the history of France, because this country acted the principal part in them, and reaped therefrom the most precious fruits.

3. First Crusade,—In the first heat of enthusiasm, the nations rose, and, after having at random chosen chiefs among themselves, the more sanguine immediately set out for the East, without providing any means for their sustenance. But, after this first movement of effervescence, the crusaders organized themselves more regularly, under the leadership of the most illustrious princes of Christendom. Godfrey of Bouillon, Duke of Lower Lorraine, was chosen a leader of the expedition. His companions were Hugh of Vermandois, brother to the King of France; Robert Curthose, Duke of Normandy; Stephen, Count of Blois and Chartres; Raymond, Count of Toulouse; Robert II., Count of Flanders; Bohemond of Tarentum, son of Robert Guiscard, and Tancred, his nephew. Adhemar de Monteil, Bishop of Le Puy, represented the Pope as legate, and was the spiritual head of the army. They appointed Constantinople as their place of meeting.

4. At the sight of this powerful army, Alexius Comnenus was terror-stricken. He knew not how to behave towards this multitude, armed as they were with bows whose arrows, as Anna Comnena expresses it, could pierce through bucklers and even the very walls. In his perplexity, he decided upon transporting without delay their innumerable battalions across the Bosphorus into Asia Minor. The crusaders took Nice in 1097, gained a first victory, under the walls of this city, over the Sultan of Iconium, defeated him a second time at Dorylæum, and founded the Principality of Edessa. Their victorious army advanced and laid siege to Antioch. Treason opened the gates of this city to the crusaders, who created a second Principality, and appointed Bohemond its sovereign, 1098. The sultan of Mosul having advanced with an army of 200000 men, the crusaders were about losing courage, when the discovery of the steel head of the lance which pierced our Savior's side reanimated them. They bravely marched against the enemy; and the Turks, incapable of resisting their impetuous attack, left more than 100000 men dead on the field of battle, with an immense booty in gold, arms, vestments, horses, cattle, and provisions.

5. Godfrey of Bouillon had but 50000 men remaining, when he left Syria to go and conquer Palestine. They marched bare-

3. Who were the leaders of the first Crusade?—4. How were the crusaders received at Constantinople? What was their first conquest?—5. How did they attack Jerusalem? What title did Godfrey of Bouillon assume? How long did he reign?

foot, singing psalms, and taking no heed of the obstacles they met with in their way. When they came in sight of Jerusalem, they prostrated themselves in the dust, and then intrepidly rushed on the Holy City, expecting they were able to scale the ramparts by means of their stout arms and courage alone. Having been repulsed in this first attack, they constructed warlike machines and, after suffering horribly from the climate and famine, they made the assault at three o'clock in the afternoon, on Friday, July 15th, 1099, and remained victorious. Godfrey of Bouillon, after having stopped the frightful carnage which ensued, was unanimously proclaimed King of Jerusalem. But he refused this title, not willing to be crowned with gold, where the Savior of the world had been crowned with thorns. Through humility, he had himself named Baron of the Holy Sepulchre, and strengthened further his new State by the victory of Ascalon. He died after a year's reign, in 1100.

6. Under the name of *Assizes of Jerusalem*, Godfrey of Bouillon gave his Kingdom a code of laws by which the Feudal System was introduced in Palestine. Three Christian Principalities were placed under the suzerainty of Godfrey of Bouillon; those of Edessa, Antioch, and Tripoli. But the Crusade once terminated, the Christians remained exposed to the attacks of the infidels. Two Orders both religious and military, founded with a view to protection, rendered this Crusade to a certain degree permanent. These Orders were the *Knights of St. John*, or *Knights Hospitallers*, and the *Templars*, or *Guardians of the Temple*, who, for a long time, filled Europe with the fame of their exploits. The Germans instituted a third Order for the same purpose, styled *Teutonic*, particularly celebrated in the West.

7. SECOND CRUSADE.—New explosions of Mussulman fanaticism incited a second Crusade. Godfrey of Bouillon and his successor Baldwin had enlarged the Kingdom of Jerusalem by sacking the towns of St. Jean d'Acre, Beirout, Sidon, and Tyre. But the death of the Sultan of Persia favored the establishment of two new sects, the *Atabeks* and the *Assassins*, who restored their former wild energy to the Mussulmans. The Atabeks, under the command of the redoubtable Noureddin, took Edessa, and threatened the Christian kingdoms. From this circumstance the second Crusade was determined on.

8. This Crusade was preached by St. Bernard, the eloquent

6. What was the constitution of the Kingdom of Jerusalem? What Orders were founded for the protection of the Holy Land?—7. What reverses did the Atabeks make the Kingdom of Jerusalem suffer?—8. By whom was the second Crusade preached? What sovereigns took part in it? What became of the army of Conrad III.? Where did Louis VII. rejoin Conrad III.? To what town did they lay siege?

Abbot of Clairvaux, at the Council of Vezelay in Burgundy under the pontificate of Eugenius III., 1187. The German army of the Emperor Conrad III., betrayed by the Greeks, was almost annihilated near Nice. Louis VII., King of France, a prey to remorse after the burning of Vitry, rejoined the Emperor beneath the walls of Damascus; he had had the imprudence to take the land route, which caused him to lose almost all his army in the solitudes of Asia Minor. Having failed to take Damascus, the two princes ingloriously returned to their countries, after a fruitless expedition, which grieved the heart of St. Bernard, and discouraged the whole West.

9. THIRD CRUSADE.—Noureddin had charged his Lieutenant Saladin to win Egypt from the Fatimites. The latter, having conquered these, on the death of Noureddin, proclaimed his own independence, 1173. Saladin then took possession of Syria, and undertook the conquest of Palestine. Guy de Lusignan, King of Jerusalem, gave him battle on the borders of Lake Tiberias, 1187. But, notwithstanding prodigies of valor, the true Cross fell into the hands of the infidels; Guy de Lusignan was made prisoner, and afterwards, Jericho, Ptolemaïs, Jaffa, Cæsarea, and Jerusalem, fell into the hands of the Turks.

10. On receiving intelligence of the taking of Jerusalem, Pope Urban III. died of grief. All Christendom assumed mourning; and when William, Archbishop of Tyre, came to Europe to preach a fresh Crusade, his call was not only responded to by the French, but also, the Danes, the Saxons, the Germans, the Genoese, the Pisans, the Venetians, in a word, all the nations of the West took up arms. The Emperor of Germany, Frederic Barbarossa; the King of France, Philip Augustus; the King of England, Richard Cœur de Lion, placed themselves at the head of the crusaders.

11. Frederic Barbarossa set out the first, defeated 300000 Turks in Asia Minor, and perished in crossing an obscure river in Cilicia. The Kings of France and England embarked, one at Genoa, the other at Marseilles, and rejoined one another in Sicily, 1190. There, great dissensions arose between them. They were hardly reconciled when they again set out. Richard, on his way, took possession of the Island of Cyprus, and rejoined the army of crusaders before St. Jean d'Acre. The siege of that city was then still proceeding. The impetuosity of Richard

9. What successes did Saladin meet with? What town did he take? —10. What effect was produced in Europe by the news of the taking of Jerusalem? By whom was the third crusade preached? What sovereigns commanded it?—11. Where did Barbarossa die? What did Philip Augustus and Richard do?

triumphed over the resistance of the besieged, and the town was carried by assault, 1191.

12. Unfortunately, after this success, dissensions broke out afresh. Richard insulted the Germans by having the Duke of Austria's flag lowered—it having been hoisted on the summit of a tower. Philip Augustus, weary of the pride which Richard assumed, returned into France, leaving in Asia only 10000 French, under the command of Hugo III., Duke of Burgundy. Richard, remaining alone, gained the battle of Assur, and might then have easily taken Jerusalem. He lost time however in building up the walls of Jaffa, Ascalon, Naplous, Gaza, and in making himself illustrious by personal deeds of valor which had no good results. Nevertheless, he obtained from Saladin a truce, and it was agreed with the sultan, that the Christians should enjoy the liberty of making pilgrimages to the Holy Land, and of fulfilling all their religious duties at Jerusalem, 1192.

13. FOURTH CRUSADE.—After the death of Saladin, his sons were despoiled of their inheritance by their uncle Malek-Adel. Jerusalem was still captive. One of the greatest Pontiffs of the Middle Ages, Innocent III., hearing with grief of the extreme misery endured by the Christians in the East, ordered a new Crusade to be preached, entrusting it to Foulques, the zealous Parish Priest of Neuilly. Philip Augustus took no part in this expedition; but some French noblemen, among whom were Baldwin, Count of Flanders; Simon de Montfort; Geoffrey de Villehardouin, the historian of this Crusade; and with them, some Italian princes, Boniface, Marquis of Montferrat; the Doge of Venice, Henry Dandolo, a blind old man of eighty, gathered together an imposing army at Venice. The Venetians agreed to furnish all the vessels for the transport of the army, for a sum of 4000000 francs and the half of the conquests.

14. As they were on the point of setting sail, Alexius, son of Isaac Comnenus, came to entreat the crusaders to deliver his father, who had been imprisoned by a usurper, his own brother, also named Alexius. The crusaders, allowing themselves to be turned aside from their first design, marched on Constantinople, and, at first, reinstated Isaac; but, displeased with the Emperor, and profiting by a fresh usurpation, they conquered Constantinople for themselves, 1204. Baldwin received the Imperial crown, Dandolo was made Prince of the Peloponesus, the

12. What concession did Richard obtain from Saladin?—13. By whom was the fourth Crusade preached? Where did the Crusaders assemble?—14. Why did the crusaders march on Constantinople? What Kingdom did they found? Who was Lascaris and what did he establish? What princes overthrew the Latin Empire of Constantinople?

Venetians took possession of all points favorable to commerce, and each crusading nobleman had his share of the conquest. Some Greek princes emigrated into Asia. Lascaris, a relative of Comnenus, established a small State at Nice. His successors, the Palæologi, reconquered Constantinople in 1261, without having had to draw their swords.

15. Fifth Crusade.—Whilst the crusaders were taking Constantinople, famine and pestilence were ravaging the East. Innocent III., moved by these disasters, decided upon a fresh Crusade, at the Council of Lateran, 1215. Fifty thousand men, as many German as French, took up arms; but, for want of proper direction, they fell victims to their inexperience. Honorius III., successor to Innocent, continued the latter's designs. Frederic II. had taken the cross, but he refused to accomplish his vow. Andrew II., King of Hungary, then placed himself at the head of the expedition. He was accompanied by John de Brienne, titular King of Jerusalem, and by Lusignan, King of Cyprus. The three Princes turned their steps towards Egypt, where they took Damietta, 1218. They would have obtained Jerusalem and her dependencies, had not the pertinacity of the Legate Pelágius, forced them to fight just as they were about signing an advantageous treaty.

16. Sixth Crusade.—The Emperor Frederic II., having espoused Yolanda, daughter of John de Brienne, thus became King of Jerusalem. This alliance and his being excommunicated by Pope Gregory IX., at length decided him on embarking for the East. But the Pontifical anathema pursuing him even to Jerusalem, he could find no bishop who would consecrate him, so that he crowned himself with his own hands. He concluded a shameful treaty with Malek-Adel, leaving the Holy Places in the power of the Mussulmans, and then hastened to return to the defence of his German and Italian Crowns.

17. Seventh Crusade.—In 1244, the Holy City was taken, and horribly sacked by a barbarous race, the Kharizmian Turks, whom the Mongolian conquerors were driving before them. At this sad news, Louis IX., King of France, was deeply moved. Having, in the mean while, fallen sick, he made a vow to take the cross; having recovered his health, he confided the regency of his Kingdom to his mother Blanche of Castile, and embarked at Aigues-Mortes, on the Mediterranean, with Queen

15. What did Innocent III. do in favor of the Christians of the East? What result had the expedition of Andrew of Hungary?—16. How did Frederic set out for the Holy Land? What was his character? What relations had he with Malek-Adel?—17. By whom was Palestine laid waste? What vow did St. Louis make? Where did he embark?

Marguerite, his wife, two of his brothers, and several noblemen, among whom was Sir de Joinville, the historian of this Crusade, 1248.

18. They passed the winter on the Island of Cyprus. Saint Louis, then rightly thinking that the possession of Egypt would be a key to Syria, attacked Damietta, which he bravely carried by assault. Instead of pushing on at once to Cairo, he waited six months for reinforcements; and then, the unfortunate battle of Mansourah, in which perished Saint Louis' brother, Robert of Artois, threw the King and army into extreme peril. The plague spreading in the camp, St. Louis was forced to yield himself up a prisoner, together with 12000 of his men.

19. St. Louis, in his misfortunes, showed such a greatness of soul, as to give his conqueror a high opinion both of himself and of Christianity. The Sultan demanding Damietta and a million of golden bezants ($1900000) for the King's ransom, the latter made this beautiful reply: "A King of France can not be ransomed with money; I will give the million of golden bezants for my subjects, and Damietta for my own person". This magnanimity so touched the Sultan, that he deducted 100000 francs of the promised sum. St. Louis then went to Palestine where he remained three years, occupying himself with fortifying the towns, restoring concord among the Christian princes, and consoling them in their misfortunes, giving them himself a most beautiful example of resignation, patience, and self-devotion. The news of the death of Queen Blanche, obliged him to return to his own States, 1254.

20. Eighth and Last Crusade.—The successes of the Mamelukes, and the ruin of all the Christian towns, with the exception of St. Jean d'Acre, determined St. Louis to take the cross a second time. The royal Pilgrim sailed to Tunis with the hope of converting the Sultan of that country, granting also the request of his brother Charles of Anjou, King of Sicily, who desired his help against the Mussulman pirates of the Mediterranean. A contagious disease attacked his army; Tristan, Count of Nevers, son of St. Louis, born at Damietta, was one of the first victims. Being himself attacked, the King soon found his end approaching; after having given admirable advices to his son Philip III., he expired lying on ashes, clad in sackcloth, giving the double example of the most perfect humility, and the

18. What success did St. Louis meet with? Where was he conquered and made prisoner?—19. How did St. Louis behave when he was in chains? What were the terms of his ransom?—20. What was the last Crusade? Against what country did he set out? How did St. Louis die? What became of the Eastern Christians?

greatness of soul befitting a king. The army was saved by Charles of Anjou, who obtained an advantageous treaty from King of Tunis. The Holy Land was forever abandoned to the infidels. The three religious Orders retired: the Knights Hospitallers first to Cyprus, thence to the Island of Rhodes; the Templars to France; and the Knights of the Teutonic Order to Courland, where, for two centuries, they devoted themselves to the conversion of the Prussians, who were still idolators.

21. Results of the Crusades.—If the faults of the leaders, and the bad faith of the Greeks, were obstacles in the way of the material success of the Crusades, these latter, nevertheless, retarded the Fall of Constantinople for three centuries, and hastened the progress of Christian civilization in Europe. They served not only to draw the various nations nearer among themselves, but also the different classes of society, thus facilitating public order, and conducing to the welfare of all. The extension of the spiritual power of the Popes, the consolidation of royalty, the emancipation of the middle classes, the manumission of the serfs, were, in a great degree, the results of these distant expeditions, to say nothing of the impulse given to commerce and navigation, which enriched Venice, Genoa, Pisa, Marseilles, Barcelona, and favored the industry of the large cities of Flanders and Germany. Much refinement, many inventions in the arts, and introductions of new productions, sprung from the same source. The natural sciences, Medicine, Geography, History, and Poetry, gained much by the contact with the Arabian learned men, and by the intellectual activity which was awakened by so many adventures and travels.

22. There is no doubt but Chivalry also received its greatest development and its marvellous lustre from the Crusades. This institution took its origin from the military education of the Germans, their intrepid and pensive national character, and their respect for women. Christianity purified these sentiments, ennobled the ideas of the barbarous warrior, and made him love self-devotion and the spirit of sacrifice. To remain faithful to God, to plighted word, and to honor; to defend the Church against the infidels, to protect women, orphans, and travellers; such were the oaths of the young nobleman, who, after being first page, then squire, was admitted in the Order of Knighthood. It was a school of heroes, which, though without subordination and discipline, in spite of the weaknesses or disorders of its members, yet has taught the modern world how to revere honor, and cultivate a delicacy of feelings unknown to the pagan world.

21. What were the results of the Crusades?—22. What was Chivalry?

23. PROGRESS OF ARCHITECTURE AND LETTERS. — To the religious movement among souls, there corresponds a magnificent movement in the arts. The Gothic, or *Pointed* style, so called on account of the triangular arch which is its very essence, dethroned Roman architecture, which was characterized by the semi-circle, and from the thirteenth century, produced its most perfect creations. Mentioning the cathedrals of Chartres, Amiens, Rheims, Strasburg, Bourges, Cologne, Westminster, and of Burgos, is it not recalling marvels of that Christian art, which needs not borrow anything from Greece or Rome? The towns on the borders of the Rhine, as well as the Italian cities, Pisa, Sienna, Florence, were enamored with it. Every thing in it heightened the magnificence of the edifices as well as the splendor of the worship. Painting colored their windows, and lavished gold and azure on their ceilings. Sculpture decorated them with ornaments and lace-works, bas-reliefs and innumerable statues. Simple and sublime poetry found utterance in these proses, *Lauda Sion*, *Stabat Mater*, *Dies iræ*, and those hymns the music of which consisted of varied and popular airs. The tones of the organ delighted the faithful, who crowded into those immense naves, where every thing spoke to their souls and senses, inspiring them with sweet devotion.

24. Poetry was not an unfit mate for the other arts. Two dialects had been formed in France, the one spoken to the North, the other to the South of the Loire, which were designated by their respective words for expressing *Yes :* the *language of Oil* (langue d'Oil), and the *language of Oc* (langue d'Oc). The *Troubadours* rendered the *Provençal* dialect illustrious, more particularly in cultivating the lyric, elegiac, and passionate styles. The *Trouvères* of the language of Oil devoted themselves to interminable recitals, or songs of *Gestes;* these, doubtless, were attempts at epic poems, which, though rude and unformed, contained here and there sublime sentiments, and the inspirations of natural eloquence. They celebrated the exploits of the paladin Roland, as well as those of Charlemagne, of whom they made an accomplished chevalier, of King Arthur and his companions, of the Knights of the Round Table, &c. Their tales or *fabliaux*, too often licentious, already betrayed that jesting and satirical turn which is peculiar to the French. But the real poetry of the period was contained in the legends of the Saints and Martyrs, as also in the sacred chants. As for history, it was, so to say, born during the Crusades, with the prose-writers

23. In what state were architecture and letters during the Middle Ages? —24. In what state was poetry ?

Villehardouin and Joinville, the latter of whom, particularly, is a model of Gallic ingenuousness and liveliness which may still be read with pleasure.

SECTION III.

FRANCE.

1. It was during the minority of Philip I., as it has been said, that William, Duke of Normandy, made the conquest of England. The union of Normandy with England, made the latter country sufficiently powerful to contend with France. The rivalry between these two nations, broke out under the reign of that same William. A foolish joke of Philip's so irritated the Conqueror, that it induced him to invade the French King's States and lay siege to Mantes, which he burned. The remainder of Philip's reign was taken up by his disorders, and the embarrassments which sprang from them. Towards the years 1100, he associated with himself his son Louis VI., called the *Fat*.

2. This young Prince showed great activity, chastised the rebels, succored the oppresed, and shed some lustre on the royal power.

It was during his reign, that the movement concerning communes took place. Certain towns had preserved the right, which they held from the Romans, of freely choosing their own magistrates and of governing themselves, without depending on any seignior or suzerain; many others asked the same privilege. Louis the Fat having powerfully supported this movement, a great number of towns shook off the yoke of the Feudal System, and being erected into communes, gave in their submission to the royal authority direct.

3. Henry I., King of England, seeing that Louis the Fat was consolidating his power by supporting the communes against the seigniors, declared war against him, and even managed to enlist Henry V., Emperor of Germany, in his interests against France. In spite of this powerful auxiliary, the French arms were nearly always victorious.

4. Being about to die, Louis the Fat gave the following

1. What consequences for France had the Duke of Normandy's Conquest of England? Who succeeded Philip I.?—2. How was the emancipation of the middle classes effected?—3. Why was Louis VI. attacked by the King of England and the Emperor of Germany?—4. What advice did Louis the Fat give to his son before dying? What princess did Louis the Young marry? What war had he to carry on?

advice to his son Louis VII., called the *Young:* "My son, you are about to succeed me; reign more holily and justly than I have done; observe the religion of your fathers, protect the Church, the poor, the orphans; royalty is a trust which God confides to you, and of which He will require of you a strict account at your death." Louis VII. succeeded his father in 1137. His marriage with Eleanor of Aquitaine added to the royal domain the Provinces of Poitou and Limousin, the Duchy of Gascony, and the Counties of Bordeaux and Agen; which did not, however, prevent Thibaut, Count of Champagne, from declaring war against Louis. The King defeated Thibaut at all points; but, irritated against the inhabitants of Vitry, who had long refused surrendering, he reduced the town to ashes, without even sparing the church, where more than 1300 persons had taken refuge.

5. The king, a prey to remorse, thought to expiate his crime by taking the Cross, 1147. We have already seen the sad termination of this ill managed expedition. But the greatest fault of Louis was repudiating, on his return, his wife Eleanor, of whom he had had cause to complain during his sojourn in Asia. The prudent Suger, Abbot of St. Denis, strongly opposed this step so long as he lived; but, after his death, the King, heeding only his own resentment, and without thought for the political reasons which forbade his breaking off an alliance which was so conducive to the greatness of France, hastened to annul his marriage under pretext of relationship. The consequences of this divorce were very fatal for France. Eleanor espoused Henry, Duke of Normandy, who, having become King of England, found himself likewise master of a portion of France. The rivalry between the two nations was thus kindled anew, and, from that time, the struggle between the two nations continued almost uninterruptedly.

6. Louis VII. and Suger had somewhat restored the lustre of the royal authority. Philip II., called Augustus, 1180, son of Louis VII. and of Alix of Champagne, still further strengthened the Capetian Monarchy, by commencing that series of victories which eventually overturned the Feudal System. The young King made the conquest of Vermandois; then, by force of arms, he compelled the English to quit the French territory which they were then invading.

Philip, wishing to replace Lusignan on the throne of Jerusalem, from which Saladin had displaced him, established a tax to pay

5. What fault did Louis VII. commit on his return from the Crusade? What was Eleanor's dowry? Whom did she marry after her divorce?—6. Who succeeded Louis VII.? What are the most remarkable events of the reign of Philip Augustus?

for the expenses of the war, which tax was called the Saladin tithe. He joined Richard Cœur de Lion, King of England, and Frederic Barbarossa, Emperor of Germany, in a fresh Crusade, 1190. We have seen, page 139, that Frederic died in Asia, and that, shortly afterwards, misunderstandings having arisen between the two other sovereigns, Philip returned to France, and was disloyal enough to come to an understanding with John Lackland, brother to Richard, to rob the latter of the crown of England whilst he was absent. On his return, Richard revenged himself by his victories, and would probably have pursued his successes still further, had he not perished in the flower of his age, 1199.

John Lackland having mounted the throne of England, called the Emperor Otho to his assistance against France, which country espoused the cause of Arthur, son of Geoffrey; but, in spite of this coalition, Philip gained the battle of Bouvines.

7. Louis VIII., son and successor of Philip Augustus, 1223, surnamed the *Lion*, on account of his great courage, gained great advantages over Henry III. of England, and took from him Limousin, Perigord, Aunis, etc. But he interrupted his course of conquests to make war on the Albigenses, heretics in the Province of Alby. He died at Montpensier in Auvergne, on returning from this expedition.

8. Blanche of Castile, sister of St. Ferdinand of Spain, had borne to Louis VIII. eleven children, of whom the eldest was Louis IX., or St. Louis. As this Prince was but eleven years old, the Queen mother assumed the regency, and her firmness disappointed much the hopes which the lords had founded on the weakness of a woman. Blanche managed either by force or persuasion to put an end to a formidable league which had been formed by Thibaut, Count of Champagne; Pierre Mauclerc, Duke of Brittany; Raymond VII., Count of Toulouse, and the King of England.

9. When Louis had attained the age of twenty one, Blanche gave him up that authority of which she had made so noble a use, and the young Prince showed himself worthy of the education he had received. He subjugated the Count of La Marche, who had revolted against him, and gained over the English the famous battles of Saintes and Taillebourg, where he captured an immense amount of plunder, carrying off the baggage of the enemy's army, and even the jewels of Henry III., who was there commanding in person.

7. What is known of Louis VIII.?—8. Who was the successor of Louis VIII.? Who governed France during the minority of Louis IX.?—9. Where was St. Louis victorious?

10. The invasion of the Mongols, and the vow that Louis had made during a severe illness, determined him on taking the Cross. He embarked for that purpose at Aigues-Mortes, 1248, leaving the regency in the hands of Queen Blanche. Having been made prisoner after the battle of Mansourah, he gave Damietta for his ransom, and payed for that of the French prisoners. This good Prince, whilst on his way to Palestine for a second expedition, died of the plague before Tunis, to which he was laying siege. A great many charitable foundations are due to St. Louis, amongst others the Blind Hospital, known by the name of Quinze-Vingts, which he founded for the three hundred soldiers whose eyes had been plucked out by the infidels.

11. St. Louis was succeeded by his son Philip III., called the *Hardy*, 1270. This Prince reunited to the crown the Counties of Toulouse and Valois. It was during his reign that took place the massacre which is known as the *Sicilian Vespers*. Philip, wishing to avenge his murdered fellow-countrymen in the Kingdom of Naples and Sicily, marched against Peter of Arragon, who was accused of having instigated this massacre; he met with but little success, and died soon after at Perpignan, 1285. In 1274, he had ceded Avignon and the County of Venaissin to Pope Gregory X. Philip's policy was like his father's, firm and skilful.

12. Philip IV., the *Fair*, already, King of Navarre, Count of Champagne and of Brie, by his marriage with Jane of Navarre, succeeded his father Philip III., 1285. He was a skilful, enterprising, and cunning Prince, thinking only of success without troubling himself about the justice of the means employed. He took Guienne from Edward I., King of England. Having afterwards declared war against the Flemish, he lost the battle of Courtray, 1302, where a great number of noblemen perished, drawn on by imprudent daring. Shortly afterwards, he, in his turn, gained the celebrated victory of Mons-en-Puelle, 1304.

13. In the meanwhile, Philip the Fair, pressed by the want of money on account of his perpetual wars, had confiscated the possessions of the Jews, levied a contribution on the Italian and Lombard merchants, and altered the coin to create pecuniary resources to himself. These exactions not sufficing, he laid arbitrary taxes on the possessions of the clergy. Pope Boniface VIII. protested against this violation of the rights of the Church.

10. What made St. Louis determine to take the Cross? To whom did he confide the regency? What happened to him during his first crusade? Where did he die?—11. Who succeeded St. Louis? What provinces did Philip add to the Crown?—12. What was the character of Philip the *Fair*? On whom did he make war?—13. Of what exactions was Philip guilty? How did he treat Pope Boniface VIII.?

but Philip the Fair replied to the remonstrances of the Pope only by acts of violence. After having falsified the Bull which recalled his duties towards the Holy See, and caused it to be publicly burned, 1302, he convoked the States-General, and made them send to Rome letters filled with threats and insults.

14. The quarrel between the Pope and the King terminated in a tragic manner. The emissaries of Philip the Fair, Peter Flotte and William de Nogaret, went to Italy to attack the Pontiff whom they found at Agnani. Boniface VIII., thinking his last hour had come, clothed himself in his pontifical robes, and, the tiara on his head, the cross in one hand, and St. Peter's keys in the other, he presented himself to his executioners. The august and energetic old man endured every outrage, passed three days in prison without food, and Nogaret even went so far as to strike him brutally on the face with his iron gauntlet. The people, indignant, delivered him; but he died a month afterwards from the effects of the cruel treatment he had undergone, 1303, being 86 years of age.

15. After the short pontificate of Benedict XI., Philip the Fair caused to be elected under the name of Clement V., Bertrand de Goth, Archbishop of Bordeaux, and obliged him to *choose* Avignon for his place of residence, 1305. The Papacy now found itself placed in dependence on the King of France. The Romans called this exile the Captivity of Babylon. It lasted no less than 68 years, that is to say, till 1377.

16. Philip the Fair, taking advantage of the charges brought against the Order of Templars, demanded its suppression so that he might seize on its immense possessions. He had all the knights arrested and put to torture. Their Grand Master, James de Molay, was burned alive on the *Pont-Neuf* at Paris, without time being taken to examine his cause judicially, 1314. It is said that on mounting the pile, De Molay cited the Pope and the King to appear before God. Clement V. having died on the 20th of April of that same year, and Philip the Fair, on the 29th of November, the people looked on their end as a chastisement from Heaven.

---

14. What was the end of Boniface VIII.?—15. Who succeeded this venerable Pontiff? Why did Philip the Fair make the Popes reside at Avignon?—16. Why did he suppress the Order of Templars? How did James de Molay die?

SECTION IV.

ENGLAND.

1. The Feudal System, which William the Conqueror had brought from France into England, had a very different destiny in the two countries. Whilst the kings in France were extending their pow r by the support of the *tiers-état*, the Nobles in England, with the help of the Commons, were keeping a check on royalty, and extorting from it that aristocratic and liberal constitution, which ensured the continuance of their influence.

2. The life of William was all taken up in struggles with the Saxons, with his turbulent subjects, with his own son Robert, to whom he had promised Normandy without dreaming of keeping his word. He was preparing to punish the King of France, Philip I., for the help he had afforded his rebellious son, as well as for a pleasantry concerning his corpulence; he had invaded Vexin, and had just burned the town of Mantes, as we have already seen, when his horse stumbled and threw him to the ground amidst smoking ashes. He died from the effects of this fall at Rouen, where he had caused himself to be taken, 1087.

3. Notwithstanding his roughness, which was that of the times he lived in, William had great aptitudes for order and greatness, the gift of choosing the right men, energy and skill, and above all, an eminently creative genius. Before his time, the Anglo-Saxons were ignorant, corrupt, and savage; he moulded them so, that this nation was prepared for its new and brilliant destiny.

4. William the Conqueror left three sons: Robert, William Rufus, and Henry. William seized the crown to the detriment of Robert, his elder brother, and, for twelve years, 1087-1100, worked the misery of the Saxons whom he treated like slaves, subjecting them to the most infamous exactions in order to satisfy his own rapacity. One day, while hunting in a forest, he fell mortally wounded in the chest by an arrow without knowing whence it came. His brother Henry succeeded him. Robert, the eldest, who was absent at the Crusade, found his younger brother in possession both of the throne of England and of the Duchy of Normandy. He tried to regain his inheritance, lost the battle of Tinchebray, 1106, and was cast in prison where he ended his days after a captivity of twenty-eight years.

---

1. What effect on England was produced by the Feudal System which William the Conqueror introduced there?—2. How did William pass his life after the Conquest? Where did he die?—3. Of what qualities was William possessed?—4. Who was his successor on the English throne? How did William Rufus die? Who succeeded him?

5. Robert's son, William Cliton, supported by Louis the Fat, was not more fortunate than his father. A pupil of the pious Lanfranc, and yet given to debauchery, to simony, and to infringing the liberties of the Church, which were then the liberties of the world, Henry I. persecuted St. Anselm, Archbishop of Canterbury, on account of his firmness, and with difficulty consented to a mutual agreement being entered into. After the battle of Brenneville, which made him master of all Normandy, Henry had the misfortune to lose his son, who was shipwrecked on his voyage to England. He had no other child but the Countess Matilda, first married to Henry V., and in second marriage to Geoffrey Plantagenet, Count of Anjou. He had named her his heiress; but the Normans refused to obey a woman, and crowned, in London, Stephen of Blois, Count of Boulogne, grandson of William the Conqueror, 1135. Civil war rent the kingdom for seventeen years. At length when England was nothing but a desert filled with ruins, Stephen, who had just lost his son, came to an understanding with Matilda, and it was agreed that he should retain the sceptre for life, and that Matilda's son, Henry of Anjou, should succeed him.

6. The following year, 1154, Henry II. Plantagenet succeeded Stephen. Already Duke of Normandy through his mother, his paternal inheritance consisted of Anjou and Maine, and his marriage with Eleanor of Guienne, the divorced wife of Louis VII., had brought him the whole of Aquitaine. He therefore surrounded, on all sides, the possessions of the King of France, his suzerain, so that in the struggle about to commence, his superiority appeared certain. However, the difficulties which were occasioned him by the aristocracy, the commons, the Archbishop of Canterbury, and the revolts of his own sons, made things equal between the two rivals.

7. Henry II. soon became intoxicated by his power. He wished to render his authority absolute, and to gain his end, he did not scruple to attack the most sacred privileges of the Church. This Prince counted on the pliancy of his Chancelor Thomas à Becket, who, till then, had been the companion of his pleasures. But, as soon as the King had raised him to the primacy of Canterbury, the new Archbishop comprehended the gravity of his duty, and courageously resisted the usurpation of the secular power. The latter was soon obliged to flee in France where he found

5. What character was Henry I.? What passed in England after the death of Henry I.?—6. Who succeeded Stephen? What were the possessions of Henry II. Plantagenet?—7. What was the cause of quarrel between Henry II. and Thomas à Becket? Relate the death of the latter. What had Henry to do to expiate his fault?

both asylum and protection. From his retreat, the courageous Archbishop excommuniated Henry II., whom he thus forced to desist from his pretensions. Louis VII. and Alexander III. having declared for the Archbishop, the King of England was obliged to allow him to return to his church. Hardly had he done so, however, that four courtiers, to please the King, massacred him in his cathedral at the foot of the altar, the fifth day after Christmas, 1170.

This crime raised the indignation of all Christendom. Alexander III., a zealous defender of the rights of the Church, launched an interdict against the Kingdom of England, and forced the murderer to go and kneel at the tomb of the martyr, who was thenceforth honored as a Saint.

8. The end of the reign of Henry II. was employed in conquering Ireland and fighting against domestic foes. His ungrateful children allied themselves with their father's enemies, the kings of France and Scotland; they stirred up against him the easily-led populace of Aquitaine. Henry II., overwhelmed with anguish, yet ready to pardon, died of grief on seeing the name of his son John, heading the list of those who had revolted.

9. Richard, surnamed Cœur de Lion, or Lion-hearted, 1189, the legitimate heir to the Crown of England on the death of Henry, his elder brother, at once showed his chivalrous qualities in the third Crusade. We have already seen his exploits and misfortunes. On his return to England, he found auxiliaries against his brother John a[illegible]g the *Outlaws*, or proscribed Saxons; but soon afterwards, he was killed at the siege of the Castle of Chalus (Limousin).

10. John Lackland, who succeeded him in 1199, was not long before quarrelling with his old ally Philip Augustus. The murder of Arthur of Brittany, furnished the King of France with a pretext for confiscating a part of John's possessions on the continent. The latter continued to reign tyrannically, persecuted the Church, and was excommunicated by Pope Innocent III., to whom he afterwards paid homage to escape the arms of Philip Augustus.

11. King John, as well as his allies, being vanquished by Philip Augustus at the famous battle of Bouvines, the English barons profited by this defeat to revolt against him, and limit his authority by forcing him to sign the *Magna Charta*, which secured them their liberties and privileges, as well as those of the

8. What was the end of Henry II.?—9. W[illegible] succeeded Henry II.? How did Richard die?—10. Who succeeded [illegible]ichard? How did John Lackland behave?—11. What Charta did the barons force him to sign? On what account was Louis the Lion crowned King of England?

clergy and cities. As he shunned granting these concessions, they offered the Crown of England to Louis the *Lion*, son of Philip Augustus. The young Prince crossed the Channel, and was crowned in London, 1215. But John Lackland having died in the meantime, the feeling of nationality was aroused, and the English, who had only called in a foreign prince out of hatred for their own King, acknowledged Henry III., John's son, and Louis had to recross to France, 1217.

12. The troubles which disturbed the minority of Henry III., and the reverses he later met with on the continent, where St. Louis gained over him the battles of Taillebourg and Saintes, 1242, consolidated the ascendency of the English nobility. At the head of the malcontents was seen a French Lord, Simon de Montfort, son of the conqueror of the Albigenses, and now become Earl of Leicester in England. It was he who organized the Parliament, which was convoked three times a year, and composed of two Houses, or Chambers : the hereditary *House of Lords*, and the elective *House of Commons*, where the old Saxon party was at length represented. Edward, son of Henry III., by the battle of Evesham, which he gained over the nobility, 1265, restored his father's authority, which had been sensibly impaired by the formidable Earl of Leicester.

13. Edward I., after having taken part in the eighth Crusade, hearing of the death of his father, 1272, hastened back to England to impart to the royal authority some of the prestige gained by his important successes. He conquered the Kingdom of Wales, and gave his new-born son Edward to the Welsh to be their Chief and Prince, 1283. It was thence that arose the custom of giving the title of Prince of Wales to the eldest son of the King of England. Edward I. then turned his arms against Scotland, and profited by the death of King Alexander III., 1286, to declare his suzerainty over that country.

SECTION V.

SPAIN, PORTUGAL, AND THE TWO SICILIES.

1. Spain.—Both the Christian and Mussulman powers were yet existing together in this country. The latter, being rapidly declining, was revived by the dynasties of the Almoravides and

12. What defeats did Henry III. meet with? By whom was the English Parliament organized?—13. Who succeeded Henry III.? What conquests were made by Edward I.?

1. What conquests were made by the Almoravides? Who arrested their progress?

Almohades. Alphonso, King of Castile, was defeated at the battle of Zalaka, 1286, by the Almoravides, a tribe which had recently come over from Africa to the help of the Spanish Mussulmans. But the Christians' cry of distress was heard beyond the Pyrenees, and two Princes of the House of Burgundy, Raymond and Henry, responded to the appeal. The Almoravides found themselves obliged to renounce their projects against the Christians. They then turned their arms against the Moors, took possession of Grenada, Almeria, Cordova, and Seville; and their chief Yussuf, after having cast the last descendants of the royal family into prison, took the title of *Emir-al-Moumenin.*

2. But the Almoravides soon becoming disunited, the *Almohades,* or Unitarians, displaced them in Africa and Spain, 1147. In order to oppose chivalric enthusiasm to the fanaticism of these Africans, the Christian kings instituted the religious and military Orders of Alcantara, Calatrava, St. James, and Avis, which rendered the same services to Spain, as the Templars and Hospitallers had rendered to Palestine. The Christians however were defeated at the battle of Alarcos, 1197.

3. In this common danger, the kings of Castile and Leon, Navarre, Aragon, and Portugal, docile to the advice of Pope Innocent III., acted in concert to drive out the fierce Almohades. The crusaders met their foe near Navas de Tolosa, 1212. The battle was bloody, the infidels leaving more than 100000 dead on the field of battle. Although nearly three centuries more elapsed before Spain was completely delivered from the Arab yoke, yet the decay of their power dates from this terrible defeat.

4. The Christian kingdoms of Spain from that time extended rapidly. This was a brilliant and glorious epoch. There reigned, then, James I. the *Conqueror,* in Aragon, and Ferdinand III. the *Saint,* in Castile. James I. took the Balearic Islands and the Kingdom of Valencia. During 64 years' reign and combats, he was never conquered, gained thirty victories, and erected 2000 churches. His son Pedro III. the *Great,* obtained Sicily after the *Sicilian Vespers,* 1282, and to the detriment of the House of Anjou, the Treaty of Anagni confirmed the possession of that Island and Sardinia to his successors.

5. Ferdinand III., profiting by the dissensions of the Moors, took Cordova, Seville, Cadiz, and nearly all Andalusia, where

2. By what sect were the Almoravides attacked? What religious and military orders were then formed? Where were they defeated?—3. Where did the crusading princes defeat the Almohades?—4. What distinguished princes then reigned in Spain? What is there remarkable in the reign of James I. the Conqueror?—5. What towns did Saint Ferdinand III. take? Who were the Merinites?

the infidels retained only Granada. They called to their assistance a third African tribe, the Merinites, who were beaten and driven out by Sancho, the valiant son of Alphonso, King of Castile. The rivalry between Sancho and his nephews, the Infants of La Cerda, brought about the first struggle between Castile and France, whose kings were allied with the family of La Cerda. The efforts of Philip III. and Philip IV. the *Fair*, could not, however, prevent Sancho from reigning over the people he had saved.

6. After the battle of Navas de Tolosa, Thibaut, Count of Champagne, nephew of Sancho VII., was called to reign over Navarre. Henri I. of this House, having left but one daughter Jane, 1274, the Crown of Navarre was, through her marriage with Philip the Fair, joined again to that of France, 1288, but was later detached on the accession of the line of Valois, when it passed to the House of Evreux.

7. PORTUGAL.—The Kingdom of Portugal was founded in 1095 by Henry of Burgundy, great-grandson of Robert, King of France. This young lord having taken service under Alphonso VI., King of Castile, in order to fight against the infidels, the Monarch gave him the hand of Donna Theresa, his daughter, as well as the country lying between the Douro and the Minho. Oporto (Porto Cale) was the place of his residence, and it was from that town the new kingdom took its name. His son Alphonso the *Conqueror*, strengthened his States by the victory of Ourique, which he gained over five infidel princes. He then had himself proclaimed King by the Cortes, 1143. Having conquered Estramadura, he made Lisbon the capital of his kingdom. The Almohades tried in vain to take his possessions from him; the victory of Santarem delivered him from these formidable enemies. Under Alphonso III., 1245-1279, the Provinces of Alemtejo and Algarve were conquered, and Portugal attained the extent which it has at the present time.

8. THE TWO SICILIES.—The Kingdom of the Two Sicilies was founded by Robert Guiscard and Roger, sons of Tancred de Hauteville, one of the leading seigniors of Normandy. These Normans, having entered Italy, conquered La Puglia, 1043. Robert Guiscard afterwards attacked the Duchy of Benevento,

6. Who was called to the throne of Navarre after the battle of Navas de Tolosa?—7. By whom was Portugal founded? What conquests did Alphonso I. make? Under what king did Portugal attain its present extent?—8. Who founded the Kingdom of the Two Sicilies? Whose was the suzerainty? Under whom were Southern Italy and Sicily united? To whom did this kingdom pass after the Roman dynasty? What were the *Sicilian Vespers*? To whom did Sicily give herself after this horrible massacre? Who succeeded James of Aragon?

and took possession of Southern Italy, whilst Roger established himself in Sicily. These two countries were joined to one another under Roger II., and formed the Kingdom of the Two Sicilies, 1131. To the Norman dynasty succeeded the Hohenstaufen in the person of the Emperor Henry VI., who got himself crowned King at Palermo, 1194. On the fall of this family, the Pope offered this kingdom, of which he was suzerain, to Charles of Anjou, brother of St. Louis, 1266. But the exactions of Charles, and the brutality of his followers in Sicily, brought about the horrible massacre known by the name of the *Sicilian Vespers*, 1282. The rebels summoned Peter of Aragon to their aid, and his Admiral Roger de Loria gained a victory over Charles of Anjou's fleet. The struggle then began between the Houses of Anjou and Aragon, and was prolonged even after the death of the two competitors, 1285.

FOURTH PERIOD.

From the Death of Boniface VIII., 1303, *to the Taking of Constantinople by the Turks*, 1453.

SECTION I.

EMPIRE OF GERMANY.

1. After a long interregnum, the electors put an end to the anarchy which was laying waste Germany, by bestowing the Imperial crown on Rudolph of Hapsburg, the founder of the House of Austria, 1273. Rudolph I. twice made war successfully against Ottocar, King of Bohemia. Satisfied with having restored the Empire to peace by his vigor and prudence, he did not interfere in the affairs of Italy. But he made a false step in wishing to have his son Albert elected as his successor, the Diet giving the preference to Adolphus of Nassau, 1291. This latter compromised himself by his unjust enterprises. A civil war broking out between him and his rival Albert; Adolphus perished at the battle of Ingelheim, near Worms, being slain by his rival, 1298.

2. Albert I. of Austria, son of Rudolph of Hapsburg, after having triumphed by his arms, had himself regularly elected.

1. Who was the founder of the House of Austria? Where did Albert conquer Adolphus of Nassau?—2. How did Albert I. end? By what battles did the Swiss assure their triumph?

He uselessly waged war against Holland, Thuringia, and Bohemia, and perished while marching against the Swiss, whom the tyranny of his officers had driven to revolt, 1308. On the death of Henry VII. of Luxemburg, successor to Albert I., Louis of Bavaria and Frederic of Austria, disputed for the Imperial throne; and the Swiss, having the celebrated William Tell at their head, did not hesitate to pronounce in favor of the former. Then, the Archduke Leopold, brother to Frederic, invaded their mountains with an army of 6000 men. They let him get entangled in a defile at Morgarten, and though they were but 1500, they cut his army to pieces, 1336. This victory, together with that of Sempach, 1386, and Nöfels, 1388, entirely freed the Swiss from Austria, and their Federative Republic soon counted seven and later thirteen cantons.

3. Louis V. of Bavaria, 1314, after having triumphed over his competitor Frederic of Austria, at Muhldorf, 1322, wished to render his power absolute, not only in Germany, but also in Italy. He took part against the Holy See, afforded protection to the enemies of the Pope, and favored the condemned errors, thus drawing down upon himself several times the sentence of excommunication. Clement VI. placed Charles of Luxemburg, son of John, King of Bohemia, in opposition to him, and Louis was marching against his foe, when death surprised him.

4. Charles IV. of Luxemburg, 1347, having obtained the Empire, made great sacrifices for the sake of peace in Germany and Italy. He gave up his rights as suzerain of Milan, Florence, Ferrara, and Sicily. At the Diet of Nuremberg, held by him in 1356, the famous *Golden Bull* was decreed. This was a sort of constitution regulating the rights and privileges of the seven electors, and the mode of electing the emperors. As King of Bohemia, he enlarged his hereditary kingdom; as King of Arles, he recognized the cession of Avignon to the Holy See, and that of Viennois to France.

5. Wenceslas, having succeeded his father Charles IV. on the Imperial throne, 1378, allowed the Empire to fall a prey to the most shameful dissoluteness, whilst the Church was afflicted by schism and all its consequent disorders. The electors, sharing the universal discontent, deposed him, 1400. Among his crimes, must be reckoned the martyrdom of St. John Nepomucene, whom he caused to be drowned in the Moldau, for having refused to reveal him the Empress's confession.

3. How did Louis of Bavaria behave towards the Holy See?—4. Who was his successor? What was the *Golden Bull*?—5. What happened during the reign of Wenceslas?

6. Robert of Bavaria, 1400, whom the electors placed on the Imperial throne after the deposition of Wenceslas, vainly tried to restore the Imperial authority in Italy. Near Lake Garda, he was conquered by Galeas Visconti, and obliged to renounce his pretensions in that country. After the death of Robert, 1410, the Diet was divided upon three competitors, and ended by electing Sigismund of Luxemburg King of Hungary, 1411. This Prince, in concert with Pope John XXIII., convoked the Council of Constance, in order to put an end to the Schism of the West, and reform the Church. The heresiarchs John Huss and Jerom of Prague were cited before this Council; but, having remained obstinate in their errors, they were given over to the secular power, and sentenced by the latter to be burned alive, according to the law of those barbarous times.

7. However, the partisans of John Huss, who were very numerous, especially in Bohemia, took up arms and avenged the death of their chief by the massacre of the Senate of Prague, 1419. Such was the origin of the religious and social war called that of the Hussites, the ravages of which were added to those of the Ottomans for fifteen years. Sigismund, after having endured great reverses, had the consolation of re-establishing peace in his States before dying. Under his reign, the House of Hohenzollern, which has since become the royal House of Prussia, acquired the Marches of Brandenburg as well as the electoral dignity, 1418.

8. The House of Hapsburg reappeared afterwards in the person of Albert II. of Austria, 1438. His reign did not last two years, yet it is remarkable, in as much as with Albert, the House of Austria seized again the Imperial sceptre to lose it no more. Albert II. left the crown to Frederic III., his relation, who concluded a Concordat with the Holy See, and then went to Rome to be consecrated by Nicholas V., 1452. This is the last of the German princes who received that honor at Rome. The remainder of his reign belongs to modern history.

---

6. Who succeeded him? Why did Sigismund cause a General Council to be convoked? Where was it held?—7. What did the Hussites do?—8. At what period and under whom was the Imperial sceptre settled in the House of Austria? Who was the last Emperor of Germany that was crowned at Rome?

SECTION II.

ITALY.

1. The war of Investitures had thrown Italy in great confusion. The names of Guelphs and Ghibellines had lost their original meaning, and were now thus applied, the former, to the partisans of democracy, the latter, to those of the Empire. Everywhere, these two factions were a permanent cause of trouble. Italy, the centre of which was occupied by the Pope, counted a number of other States, such as the Republics of Venice, Genoa, Pisa, Milan, and Florence; lastly, the French Kingdom of the Two Sicilies.

2. VENICE AND GENOA.—Venice, which had been founded at the period of the invasion of the Huns, and governed from the year 697 by Doges, or Dukes, had adopted a constitution of a purely aristocratic character. In spite of revolts and conspiracies, this form of government became firmly established.

3. At Genoa, on the contrary, the democratic faction, being in power, occasioned frequent revolutions, and often even appeals were made to foreign power. These two republics, very early in their history, commenced a struggle, for they both disputed for the commerce of the Mediterranean and the East. The active part which Venice had taken in the fourth Crusade, had given her possession of nearly all the ports of the Levant. The return of the Greek emperors to Constantinople, made the Genoese triumph, and these expelled their rivals from Greece, and interdicted them the trade of the Black Sea.

4. The Venitians did not resign themselves to this decay. They undertook the Caffan war against the Genoese, which terminated in favor of their rivals, 1355. A second and more serious war broke out in 1378; the Genoese, having defeated the Venetian fleet before Pola, took possession of the port of Chiozza. In this pressing danger, Victor Pisani, making an appeal to the courage of his fellow-citizens, obliged them all, citizens and nobles, to take up arms, and made them swear to die for the safety of the Sate. He was fortunate enough in destroying the Genoese fleet by shutting it in at Chiozza, 1380. Peace was concluded the following year. Venice from that time forward took the ascendency, never losing it again. Prosperous through the

1. What effect had the war of investitures produced in Italy?—2. By whom was Venice governed?—3. Why were Venice and Genoa at strife?—4. Who was victorious in the Caffan war? What happened during the Chiozzan war? What were the consequences to the Genoese? What became of Venice?

stability of her institutions, Venice made other important conquests.

The people and patricians of Venice and Genoa had a taste for magnificence; they filled their towns with marble palaces and splendid churches, which were the ornament of Italy and of the world.

5. MILAN AND PISA.—Milan, for a long time at the head of the Lombard cities, which were leagued together under the protection of the Pope, defended her independence and liberties against the Emperors of Germany. The rage of parties and the jealousy of the towns, were fatal to this cause: the need of repose, also, favored usurpation.

6. In the fourteenth century, Matthew Visconti received, from the Emperor Henry VII., the title of *Vicar Imperial* of Lombardy, 1311. His descendants attained to ruling over all Upper Italy. The most celebrated amongst them, John Galeas, obtained the title of Duke of Milan from the Emperor Wenceslas. His sons, having allowed their family to decline, were displaced by the celebrated Francis Sporza, the head of the *condottieri*, or Italian mercenaries.

7. Pisa, which was a flourishing city at the time of the Crusades, and under the princes of the House of Swabia, took part in all the contests in Italy. Menaced from the first with the enmity of the Genoese, she disputed with them the possession of Sardinia, and lost the battle of Meloria, 1284. A treaty signed with Genoa forced Pisa to fill up her port, the source of all her riches and prosperity, 1284. To console herself, however, she retained her adornment of superb edifices, as well as the *Campo Santo*, in which her glory and genius still survive.

8. FLORENCE.—This industrious and opulent town, the city of trades and arts, was more than any other a prey to the quarrels of the Guelphs and Ghibellines. The genius of Dante ripened amidst these political struggles, but that poet wandered about the desolate wastes of the Romagna poor and proscribed. The illustrious family of the Medici rose from the midst of these disturbances, and attained to sovereign power. John de Medici, their head, took the title of Prince at the commencement of the 15th century, and, by his generosity and the protection he afforded the people, gained the title of *Father of the Poor*. Cosmo de Medici who succeeded to his dignity and power, 1429, was a rich merchant, who made use of his revenues to multiply his deeds of

5. What attitude did Milan assume?—6. What families reigned in Milan? What dynasty succeeded that of Visconti?—7. What was Pisa at that time? By what town was she conquered?—8. To what family did Florence owe her becoming illustrious? What did John de Medici do? What was the character of Cosmo de Medici?

benevolence. The Florentines inscribed on his tomb the glorious title of *Father of his country*.

9. ROME AND THE STATES OF THE CHURCH.—The paternal voice of the Popes in vain exhorted all these furious partisans to reconciliation and peace. Rome experienced all the agitations of Italy, whilst at the same time several powerful families disputed for the ascendency with arms in hands. The Emperors of Germany also frequently renewed their attempts at domination. In the midst of these troubles, the policy of Philip the Fair transferred the seat of the Holy See to beyond the Alps. Rome was deserted by a great number of her population during this *Captivity* styled *of Babylon*, which lasted 70 years, 1308-1378, and suffered more than ever from the horrors of anarchy. Rienzi's attempt to establish a republic, which at first was a very popular movement, ended by a tyranny which proved fatal to its author, 1354. Six Popes succeeded one another at Avignon, all subject to French influence. At length, Gregory XI. having died in Rome, 1378, the Romans compelled the cardinals to nominate a Pope of their nation, and Urban VI. was chosen. Soon, a part of the Sacred College, having revolted against the legitimate Pontiff, elected, at the instigation of Charles V., King of France, the antipope Clement VIII., who went to reside at Avignon, 1378. The Christian world was divided between the two competitors, and hence arose the deplorable Schism of the West, which ended only in 1448 by the election of Nicholas V.

10. THE TWO SICILIES.—We have already seen that after the conspiracy of the Sicilian Vespers, the Sicilians called Peter of Aragon to their assistance. After the death of this latter, Frederic of Aragon was acknowledged King of Sicily by the Treaty of Anagni, 1302, and Charles II., the successor of Charles of Anjou, remained King of Naples. The Aragonese party was upheld by the German Emperors and the Ghibellines, whilst the party of Anjou represented the policy of the Holy See and of the Guelphs in Italy. Robert the Wise, son and successor of Charles I. of Anjou, 1309–1343, had but one daughter, his heiress Jane I. This Princess, who was married to the son of the King of Hungary, left behind her only a disgraceful reputation. Her heir was Charles of Duras, but she preferred to him Louis I., brother to Charles V., King of France, the founder of the second House of Anjou, 1382. Charles of Duras gained the day over his rival by strangling Jane.

9. What became of Rome during the absence of the Popes? How many Popes succeeded one another at Avignon? Under what Pope did the Schism of the West commence? How did this Schism end?—10. What passed in the Two Sicilies after the *Sicilian Vespers?*

11. The House of Duras, or Durazzo, had a nearly similar end to that of the House of Anjou. Jane II. of Naples, having no children, at first adopted Alphonso of Aragon. Réné of Anjou, a descendant of Louis I., who was also adopted by Jane II., in 1434, in vain attempted to have his rights recognized. He bequeathed his domains and his pretentions to Louis XI., a fatal legacy which afterwards became the pretext of the Italian wars.

12. LETTERS AND ARTS IN ITALY. — The Italian tongue and literature profited by the proximity of the Provençal tongue and poetry, which were very flourishing in the eleventh and twelfth centuries. The Provençal troubadours were the first masters of the earliest Italian poets. But, by an effort of his genius, the Florentine Dante created, so to speak, the language and poetry of his country, by elevating the popular idiom to a level with his own inspirations. The *Divine Comedy* offers us the attractive spectacle of a strong, tender, and sincere soul, which, while mounting from *Hell* to *Purgatory*, from *Purgatory* to *Paradise*, purifies itself, and gradually divests itself of its violent and gross passions, so as to arrive, by repentance, at the serenity of resignation and hope. Petrarch of Arezzo, in his *Canzoni*, by turns celebrates the fountain of Vaucluse, the liberty and glory of Italy. He received the laurel crown, at Rome, on Easter-Day, 1341, a day ever memorable in the history of letters. The historian Villani, a contemporary of Dante, and the tale-writer Boccaccio, a friend of Petrarch, gave a determined form to Italian prose.

Tuscany had the privilege of being the cradle of arts as well as of letters. But Pisa was the first to raise remarkable monuments, in which a new style of architecture was displayed, —one distinct from the Oriental and Gothic styles. The architect Brunelleschi, the sculptors Ghiberti and Donatello, all three Florentines, regenerated the art, during the first half of the fifteenth century, by drawing their inspirations, with remarkable originality, from antique models. Cimabue and Giotto of Florence, were the fathers of modern painting. Masaccio, their fellow-countryman, who died in 1443, at twenty six years of age, left behind him studies which were of service to Leonardo de Vinci and Raphael.

11. How did the House of Durazzo end?—12. At this period, in what state were the arts and sciences in Italy?

SECTION III

FRANCE.

1. Philip the Fair had left three sons, Louis surnamed the *Hutin*, or the *Headstrong*, Philip V. the *Long*, and Charles the *Fair*, who successively mounted the throne, but had none of them the happiness of transmitting the Crown to one of their children. Louis X. reigned only two years, 1314. Under his reign, Charles of Valois exercised the greatest authority; he increased the taxes, sold the magisterial posts, and recalled the Jews on their paying a contribution. Louis X. allowed the royal serfs to purchase their liberty, saying that *according to the law of nature, every one ought to be born free.*

2. Shortly after the coronation of Philip V. the Long, several provinces were afflicted with a cruel mortality; the Jews, being accused of having poisoned the wells and fountains, were again driven out of France and despoiled of their riches.

3. Charles IV, surnamed the Fair, having mounted the throne, made war on the English, and took several towns from them; but, from motives of justice and equity, he afterwards restored them. From the same motives and in order not to rekindle the flames of war, he refused the Imperial crown which was offered him by Pope John XXII. With him became extinct the first branch of the Capetians, which had reigned from 987 to 1328, and given fourteen kings to France.

4. By virtue of the Salic law, Philip VI. of Valois, grandson of Philip III. in the male line, was raised to the throne, 1328. He was the first King of the Valois line, the second branch of the Capetians. His reign was remarkable for many great events. It was under him that the so called *Hundred Years' War* commenced between France and England, 1338. The cause of this war was Edward III. laying claim to the Crown of France. At first, the land troops of Philip VI. gained the memorable victory of Cassel, 1328, over the Flemish who had revolted, but at sea this naval forces were defeated by the English at the battle of Sluys, 340. Six years afterwards, he lost the battle of Crecy, where an immense number of French noblemen perished. In consequence of this victory, Edward III., King of England, found himself master of a part of Artois, and particularly of the town of Calais, 1347. An epidemic, which until then had been unprecedented,

1. How many sons did Philip the Fair leave? Who was his successor? —2. What is known of Philip the Long?—3. What occurred during the reign of Charles the Fair?—4. Who was the first king of the House of Valois? What is there remarkable about the reign of Philip of Valois?

was added to the misfortune of the war and the disasters of a horrible famine. Under Philip VI. of Valois, France was burdened with taxes. It was by him that the salt tax, or *gabelle*, was first imposed. He enlarged the domains of the Crown by adding the Seigniory of Montpellier, as well as Viennois and Dauphiny. This latter was ceded to him by Humbert II., on condition that the presumptive heir to the throne of France, should bear the title of Dauphin.

5. Philip of Valois was succeeded by his son John, surnamed the *Good*, 1350; this Prince, having captured Charles the *Bad*, King of Navarre, who was laying France waste, put him in prison. Some of the malcontents, profiting by this opportunity, embraced Charles' cause and continued to create disturbances in the State.

6. Edward III., King of England, believing this to be a favorable moment, again declared war against France, and advanced towards Poitiers. The precipitation of the French soldiers was fatal to success; the army was defeated and King John fell into the hands of the enemy, 1356. Charles the Bad then left his prison, joined the Flemish and English, and in a few days, France found herself nearly everywhere invaded by powerful armies. Paris even only owed its safety to the valor of its inhabitants, commanded by Marcel, the merchants' prevost.

7. King John, worn out by his captivity, concluded the Peace of Bretigny with the King of England, who had again invaded France. This treaty was one of the most disastrous in French history, 1360. Guyenne, Poitou, Saintonge, Limousin, Perigord, and Angoumois, were abandonned to the English, and a ransom of 3000000 gold crowns was to be paid. Not being able to pay the whole sum promised, and learning the escape of his son, the Duke of Anjou, who had been left in London as a hostage, John returned to England through scruples of honor, and yielding himself up a prisoner, died shortly afterwards, 1364, without having again seen his country.

8. During the detention of John the Good, his son Charles V., surnamed the *Wise*, governed France. This Prince, who took the title of King after the death of his father, aided by the celebrated DuGuesclin, defeated Peter the *Cruel*, King of Castile, beat the English several times, and won back a great number of towns and provinces, which they had invaded under the reigns of his predecessors. He protected commerce, agriculture, and

5. Who succeeded Philip of Valois?—6. Where and by whom was King John made prisoner?—7. What was the result of the Treaty of Bretigny?—8. Who governed France during the detention of John the Good?

the sciences; he also built the Bastile and the Castles of Vincennes and St. Germain. This good Prince often said: "I find kings happier than other men, only because they have more power in doing good."

9. Charles VI. was not twelve years old at the death of his father Charles the Wise, 1380. His minority was a troublous one. Having lost his reason, 1392, his uncles, the Dukes of Burgundy and Berry, disputed for the administration of affairs, and France was soon plunged into all the horrors of civil war. Henry V., King of England, profiting by these circumstances, took nearly all the important places, and had himself declared regent and heir presumptive of the Crown of France. The young Dauphin had retired to Bourges with the few troops which had remained faithful to him. On the death of Charles VI., a faction, which had sold itself to Henry VI., proclaimed this latter, at Paris, King of France and England.

10. The Dauphin Charles VII., having become King, had made useless efforts to repulse the English, when Joan of Arc, a young shepherdess from Lorraine, was presented to him as having received the order and power from Heaven to deliver France. Under her orders, C[illegible] troops beat the English first at Orleans, and afterwards in [illegible]ery part of France as far as Rheims, where she conducted the King to have him consecrated. Joan then wished to retire; but she had become so necessary to the King, that he detained her.

Shortly afterwards, she fell into the hands of the English, who covered themselves with eternal shame by condemning her to a cruel death, which she bore with a truly christian resignation, 1431.

11. This unworthy vengeance served only to weaken the power of the English. Bedford was defeated at Gerberoy, and his ally the Duke of Burgundy was won over by the Constable of Richmond. Charles VII. made his triumphant entry into Paris the following year, and dwelt in the palace of his ancestors. He won back from the English, Meaux, Pontoise, Dieppe, and nearly all their French provinces. At the termination of all these wars, a truce was arranged; but, on its expiration, the success of the French arms continued. Picardy was taken in 1450, and Dunois, entrusted with the conquest of Guyenne, took Bayonne and Bordeaux, and put an end to the hopes of the English, by

9. Who was the successor of Charles the Wise? What happened during the minority of Charles VI.? What happened during the mental alienation of the King?—10. Who succeeded Charles VI.? Relate the history of Joan of Arc. How did she die?—11. What successes did the French meet with after the death of this heroine? What provinces did they take from the English? What remained to them in France?

the defeat and death of Talbot at the battle of Castillon, 1453. The error of Louis the Young, the losses of Philip of Valois, of John the Good, and of Charles VI., were repaired. More fortunate than his grandfather Charles the Wise, Charles VII., justly surnamed *the victorious*, left to England only the town of Calais, and restored its completeness to the Kingdom of France. With the termination of the Hundred Years' War, the strengthening of the royal authority, and the constitutional establishment of the nation, Modern History commences.

SECTION IV.

ENGLAND.

1. Edward II., 1307, son of Edward I., covered himself with dishonor in the eyes of the nation, in allowing himself to be governed by his favorites. He was forced to yield to the resentment of the barons, who first obtained the banishment from Court, and then the death of Gaveston, the unfortunate object of their hatred. Robert Bruce, whom Scotland had chosen for King, 1306, gained two victories over the English, of which the most celebrated, that of Bannockburn, 1314, confirmed the independence of Scotland. The unfortunate King of England, exposed to the derision of the barons, and to the hatred of his wife Isabella of France, daughter of Philip the Fair, was condemned by the Parliament to perpetual imprisonment, which was not, however, of long duration, for assassins put an end to his life, 1327.

2. The History of England, from the Conquest, presents to the reader nothing but civil wars, religious persecutions, sons revolting against their fathers, brothers fighting with brothers, murders, and the extreme weakness or the tyranny of princes. The nobility and the citizens, however, finding some good amidst the excess of evil, had obtained guarantees against arbitrary measures, when there was kindled that rivalry between France and England, so celebrated under the name of Hundred Years' War.

3. Edward III., son and successor of Edward II., was, at the commencement of his reign, obliged to recognize Robert Bruce and his descendants, 1328. He wished to renew his claims to the Kingdom of France in the name of his mother Isabella, sister

1. What was the character of Edward II.? How did Scotland recover her independence? How did Edward II. die?—2. What spectacle has England presented from the Conquest to the time we are speaking of?—3. Who was the successor of Edward II.? What claim did he lay to the Crown of France? What defeat did Philip VI. meet with?

to the three last French Monarchs; but his pretensions were disallowed by the French people, who preferred to him Philip VI. of Valois, cousin to the late King Charles IV.; by virtue of the Salic law, they refused to acknowledge that a woman had the power of transmitting to her son rights which she herself did not possess. Edward's anger increased the more when the King of France required that the King of England should come in person and do him homage for his Duchy of Guyenne. Edward, having secured the alliance of the Flemish and the protection of the Emperor of Germany, solemnly assumed the title of King of France. The first victories were gained by Philip VI., but his fleet, composed of 120 vessels, sustained a disastrous defeat before Sluys, at the mouth of the Meuse, 1340. The two sides being both exhausted, a year's truce was concluded.

4. Edward soon recommenced hostilities. He landed at Harfleur, overran Normandy, and burned the villages around Paris. When he learned that Philip was advancing to meet him at the head of a formidable army, Edward recrossed the Seine and the Somme, and took up a very strong position on the heights of Crecy, 1346, with his Welsh, Irish, and Gascon archers, the best in Europe. In spite of the inferiority of their numbers, the cool valor of the English triumphed over the rashness of the French. Philip VI. was vanquished. Edward III., wishing to secure the empire of the sea, marched against Calais, which he took after an eleven months' siege.

5. Whilst the English Monarch was fighting on the continent, the Scotch made an irruption into England, but were defeated at the battle of Neville's Cross, and their King made prisoner.

6. King John, who had succeeded his father Philip VI., having resolved to drive the English out of his States, began a campaign with an army of 60000 men. Near Poitiers, he was met by the Prince of Wales, surnamed the Black Prince, who gained a signal victory, notwithstanding the heroic courage of John the Good and his young son Philip the *Hardy*, 1356. These two Princes were taken to London, 1356, where they remained prisoners together with David, King of Scotland.

7. Edward III., who had acquired so brilliant a military renown, towards the close of his reign, fell into such indolence and weakness, that, before his death, he had lost all his conquests, except Calais. The death of the Black Prince, whose heroic

4. What is known of the battle of Crecy? Where did the English army next go?—5. What was passing in England at this time?—6. Under what circumstances did the battle of Poitiers take place, and what were its consequences?—7. How did Edward III. behave towards the end of his life?

actions were surpassed only by the virtues which gained him universal love, threw the whole nation into mourning, and left his father inconsolable. Edward III. survived his son only a few months; he died in the sixty-fifth year of his age, and the fifty-first of his reign, 1377.

8. Edward III. was one of the most illustrious princes of his time. His French and Scotch wars, although unjust, were crowned with success, and have rendered his reign one of the most brilliant in English History. Under him, Chivalry attained its culminating point in England. Edward himself and his son the Black Prince, were both possessed of chivalric qualities to an extreme degree. He instituted the Order of the Garter, and built that magnificent edifice, Windsor Castle. Under his reign, the use of the French language in the courts of justice, was discontinued.

8. Richard II., son of the Black Prince, mounted the throne in 1377. As he was but eleven years of age, his three uncles, the Dukes of Clarence, Lancaster, and York, preyed on the country in the name of the infant King. An unjust tax excite a formidable insurrection; 100000 peasants, led by a blackp smith named Wat Tyler, took possession of London, 1381. After having quieted the revolt, the King made a barren expedition into Scotland, and still further displeased the English, by giving Cherbourg and Brest to France, as price of his marriage with the daughter of Charles VI. He was returning from Ireland, where an insurrection had broken out, when Henry of Lancaster, stirring up the kingdom against him, overcame and imprisoned him. Like Edward II., he was tried and deposed from the throne; like him also, he perished in prison by a violent death, 1399.

9. The usurper, on mounting the throne, took the name of Henry IV. At first he had to resist the claims of the House of York, rival to that of Lancaster. He weakened Scotland, and, by the victory of Shrewsbury, struck terror into the opposite party and the barons who had revolted, 1403. This quarrel was recommenced half a century later; but Henry IV, dying in the flower of his age, left to his son Henry V. a firmly-established Kingdom, capable of recommencing the war with France, which country was just then a prey to the most deplorable anarchy.

10. On the death of his father, 1413, Henry V. hastened to put the domestic affairs of his Kingdom in order, and invaded France with an army of 50000 men to renew the claims of Edward III. He landed in Normandy, took Harfleur, and

8. Who governed during the minority of Richard II. ? By whom was he dethroned?—9. Who succeeded Henry IV.?—10. What great battle did Henry gain over the French?

returned across Picardy towards Calais to avoid the French army. His retreat was cut off in Artois near Agincourt by more numerous forces than his own. The French committed the same blunder at Agincourt, 1415, as had proved fatal to them at Crecy and Poitiers; they blindly rushed on the enemy, and plunged into the marshes whence they could not extricate themselves, and where the English archers had but to take aim at them. 10000 dead remained on the field of battle, among whom were 7 princes and 120 seigniors. After having reduced Normandy, Henry V. had himself declared regent of the Kingdom of France and heir of Charles VI. He died at Vincennes in 1422.

11. Henry V. left a child of ten months old as his successor, and the infant was proclaimed King of France and England under the name of Henry VI. The Duke of Bedford, his uncle and guardian, watched over his interests with skill and vigor. The French, thinking the opportunity a favorable one, resolved to shake off the English yoke, and they again made an effort to obtain the independence of their country.

12. In the mean while, the Duke of Bedford had laid siege to Orleans, then a strongly fortified town which commanded the River Loire, 1429. France would have been lost, if the misunderstanding, which had sprung up between the English and the Duke of Burgundy, had not caused them to lose a valuable ally, and more particularly, if the mission of Joan of Arc had not caused Divine strength to be wielded by a weak arm. This young girl, at the head of the French warriors, soon carried all the English outworks before Orleans, and raised the siege which had already continued for seven months. In a short time, the English had lost all their possessions in France, except Calais.

SECTION V.

SPAIN AND PORTUGAL.

1. During this period, the Christian States, viz: Castile, Aragon, Navarre, and Portugal, were the only remarkable kingdoms of the Iberian Peninsula.

2. SPAIN.—Castile was a prey to continual dissensions. Alphonso XI., having attained his majority, distinguished himself

11. Where did Henry V. die? Who was his successor?—12. Which was the only town that remained to the English?

1. What was the state of the Iberian Peninsula during this period?—2. What was the state of Castile at the commencement of this period? what victory did Alphonso IX. gain?

by brilliant successes against the Moors. He gave battle to the kings of Fez and Grenada at Tarifa, 1340, and killed more than 200000 men; but he died of the plague just as he was going to take Gibraltar.

3. Pedro, surnamed the *Cruel*, succeeded his father Alphonso XI. His tyranny aroused the indignation of the people and nobility, and was the cause of a league being formed against him, at the head of which was his brother Henry of Transtamare. France espoused the cause of the latter, while England declared for Pedro the *Cruel*. Duguesclin won a victory for Henry's party at Montiel, 1369. On that day, the French hero defeated an army of 40000 African and Spanish Moors, whom the tyrant had not hesitated to call to his succor. Henry of Transtamare mounted the throne of Castile. After him, the kingdom did but decrease until the reign of Henry IV., 1454, whose sister Isabella espoused Ferdinand of Aragon.

4. The conquests made by James II., Alphonso IV. and Pedro IV. of Aragon, having considerably increased their States, raised them up many enemies, and engaged them in various struggles of which the only object was the expulsion of the Moors. Alphonso the *Magnanimous*, 1448, valiantly maintained the honor of his House in Italy against the Princes of Anjou. The marriage of his nephew Ferdinand the *Catholic* with Isabella, heiress of Castile, 1469, by permanently uniting the two kingdoms for a time, raised Spain to the foremost place among modern nations.

5. Navarre passed to the House of Evreux by the marriage of Jane, daughter of Louis X. the *Hutin*, with Philip of Evreux. Their son, Charles the *Bad*, played a sad part in the troubles of France. To the Counts of Evreux succeeded the House of Aragon, 1425, by the marriage of Blanche of Navarre with John of Aragon; at length, it passed to the House of Albret, without ever being much celebrated.

6. PORTUGAL.—The latter Princes of the House of Burgundy did not imitate the virtues of their ancestors; this House became extinct in the person of Ferdinand, 1383. In order not to fall under the dominion of Castile, the Portuguese raised to the throne John I., Grand Master of the Order of Avis.

---

3. Who was the last of the descendants of the House of Burgundy? By whom was Henry of Transtamare upheld? what afterwards became of Castile?—4. What effect had the conquests of the kings of Aragon? What was the end of the Kingdom of Aragon?—5. How did Navarre pass to the House of Evreux? How did Charles the Bad behave? To whom did the Kingdom of Navarre next pass?—6. How did the last Burgundian princes behave in Portugal? What happened on the extinction of that House?

7. Confined along the coast of the Atlantic Ocean, and, by their geographical position, shut out from Mediterranean commerce, the Portuguese soon turned their attention to exploring the Ocean. In 1415, they gained possession of Ceuta in Africa. The Infant Don Henry, explored the coast as far as Cape Bojador, and discovered the Island of Madeira, covered with forest which he set on fire, and which are said to have burned for seven years. After having cleared the soil, he imported from Cyprus plants of the Malvaisia grape and sugar cane. Other navigators advanced as far as Guinea. Bartholomew Diaz discovered the Cape of Good Hope, 1486, which he named Cape of Tempests. This little country, so fertile in great men, afterwards added the renown of great descoveries and successful maritime expeditions, to the military glory handed down by its founders.

SECTION VI.

GREEKS AND TURKS.

1. The Greek Empire did not recover from the disasters of the fourth Crusade. The Palæologi, having returned to Constantinople by the help of the Genoese, 1264, put a finishing stroke to the Christian East, by wasting their energies on ridiculous theological disputes, and repelling all idea of sincere reconciliation with Rome. This was the death-agony of a miserable despotism. From the other side of the Bosphorus, on the contrary, the wild conquerors were gaining strength to destroy and replace the Greek Empire.

2. The Turks, who came from the countries bordering on the Caspian Sea, appeared as soon as the Mongolians, under Gengis Khan and his sons, had overturned the Empire of the Seljukians, 1258. The founder of their power and of the dynasty of the Osmanlis, was Osman, or Othman, 1299, from whom they took the name of Ottomans. Othman conquered a great portion of Asia Minor from the Greeks. Orkan, his son and successor, took Nicomedia and Nicea, and made his reign famous by the creation of the celebrated force of the Janizaries.

3. When John Palæologus saw the Turks approaching Europe, he comprehended the extent of the danger which menaced

7. What discoveries did Portugal make?

1. What became of the Greek Empire after its restoration by Michael Palæologus?—2. What was the origin of the Turks? What creation made Orkan remarkable?—3. To whom did John Palæologus have recourse against the Turks? What country did Amurath I. subjugate? Where did he die?

him. He sent his son Manuel to Rome to entreat the Pope to preach a Crusade in his favor, and to declare that he abjured Schism, a promise incessantly made and always broken. The successor of Orkan, Amurath I., 1360, took possession of Ancyra and Adrianople, where he established the seat of his dominion, subjugated Armenia, invaded Macedonia, and was arrested in his progress only by the courage of the Servians. A victor in thirty-seven battles, Amurath perished at the battle of Cassova, after having defeated the armies of the Kings of Servia, Bosnia, and Bulgaria, 1389. The Greeks remained in possession of only Constantinople, Thessalonica, and a few islands, with a portion of the Morea.

4. Bajazet I., successor to Amurath I., 1389, in less than two years, subjugated all the Mussulman principalities of Asia Minor, and conquered Thessaly, Macedonia, Thrace, Bulgaria, and was for five years encamped before Constantinople. He defeated the Crusaders at Nicopolis, 1396. Manuel II., son of John, visited the West unsuccessfully, going from court to court begging for soldiers and money, whilst Bajazet was displaying at Bursa more than Eastern magnificence. The courage of an illustrious French captain, Boucicaut, a former brother-in-arms of Du Guesclin, saved Constantinople again from Mussulman barbarity.

5. Another Mongolian conqueror, a second Gengis Khan, had, from the year 1370, been overrunning the greater part of Asia. Tamerlane (Timur-Lenk or the limping), the chief of a tribe of Tartars, after having assumed the royal crown at Samarcand, proceeded from conquest to conquest, brought into subjection all the countries to the East of the Caspian Sea, overran and laid waste Hindostan, took Syria from the sultan of Egypt, reduced Damascus and Bagdad to ashes, and, on the ruins of the latter, raised a pyramid of 90000 human heads. He proceeded thence to Asia Minor, where Providence destined him to humble the proud Bajazet.

6. Tamerlane advanced with 800000 barbarians against Bajazet, who had but 120000 men to oppose him. The battle was fought near Ancyra, 1402. The Turks allowed themselves to be surrounded by the wings of the Mongolian army, and, notwithstanding the bravery of the Janizaries, who were exterminated to the very last man, Bajazet fell into the hands of Tamerlane. The chief of the Mongols was so sure of victory, that he was amusing himself in playing at chess, when the pres-

4. Who was the successor of Amurath I.? What country did Bajazet I. subjugate? Who then saved Constantinople from Mussulman barbarity? —5. Who was Tamerlane and what conquests did he achieve?—6. What became of Bajazet?

ence of the Sultan, his prisoner, was announced to him. He treated him with great consideration, and made him follow his army as one of his most glorious trophies.

7. The Mongolian invasion, which menaced overwhelming every thing, was arrested in 1405, when its chief was no more. One of the descendants of Tamerlane, at the commencement of the following century, founded the Empire of the Great Mogul, in India, which has subsisted until the present time. Constantinople, which the victory of Ancyra had saved for the time, was soon menaced anew under Manuel II., from whom the Ottomans took the Morea.

8. Amurath II., grandson of Bajazet, 1421, had to raise the siege of Constantinople in order to go and fight on the banks of the Danube, where an armament was being prepared against him. Though a conqueror in Servia, he failed before Belgrade. The Hungarian John Hunniades, the Albanian Scanderberg, opposed his arms with indomitable valor, performing fabulous exploits. It was in vain that the Council of Florence, in 1440, declared the Union of the two Churches by the consent of the Emperor John Palæologus. It was too late. The vessels of Genoa and Venice were alone protecting the walls of Byzantium, when the fleet and formidable artillery of Mahomet II., enabled him to take the city after a siege of two months. Constantine XII. Dracoses, the last Greek Emperor, died heroically on the breach, 1453.

From the foundation of Rome by Romulus, 2206 years had elapsed, and 1124, since Constantine had transferred the seat of government to Byzantium. The last vestiges of Roman dominion had disappeared. But the Turks, not satisfied with having crushed down the finest countries of the ancient world beneath the weight of their fanaticism and barbarity, long continued to menace Eastern Europe and the shores of the Mediterranean with their formidable invasions.

SECTION VII.

SCANDINAVIAN AND SLAVONIC STATES.

1. Both the northern and eastern States of Europe, peopled by Scandinavians and Slavonians, were the last to enter the

7. What victory saved Constantinople for the time? Under what Greek Emperor did the Ottomans take the Morea?—8. What prevented Amurath II. taking Constantinople? Was he more fortunate against Hunniades and Scanderberg? By whom was Constantinople taken? Who was the last Greek Emperor?

bosom of the Church, and scarcely took any part in the events of the Middle Ages. Thus, Denmark, Sweden, and Norway, have only a local history, and are hardly known before the union of Calmar, 1397.

2. SCANDINAVIAN STATES.—Margaret, named the Semiramis of the North, daughter of Waldemar III., King of Denmark, became regent of Norway on the death of King Hakon, whom she had married, whilst her son was proclaimed in Denmark, and placed under her guardianship. At length the Swedes, whose crown was elective, not satisfied with Albert of Mecklenburg, whom they had chosen, offered the crown to Margaret. The latter vanquished her rival, and compelled him to abdicate. Having thus become mistress of the three Northern Kingdoms, she convoked the celebrated Diet of Calmar, in 1397, by which these kingdoms were united into a perpetual federation. Each country was to retain its own law.

3. Having lost her son, Margaret proposed replacing him by her grandnephew Eric the *Pomeranian*, and had him recognized as King of the North. The union of the three monarchies however did not last more than fifty years. In 1440, the Danes deposed Eric, replacing him by his nephew Christopher the *Bavarian*. On the death of the latter, the rupture of the Union was consummated by the election of Charles Canutson in Sweden, and that of Christian I. in Norway and Denmark, 1448.

4. SLAVONIC STATES.—The most celebrated of the Slavonic States in the Middle Ages, was Poland. A King, named Piastus, towards the year 842, commenced there the dynasty which bears his name, and of which the most celebrated was Boleslas Chrobry, 992. Casimir III. the *Great*, a conqueror and legislator, was the last representant of the race of Piastus, which occupied the throne for 528 years. The daughter of Lewis of Hungary, his successor, took the crown into the House of the *Jagellons*, 1386, by espousing the Prince of Lithuania. It was after this marriage, that the Lithuanians, who had been pagans until then, became Christians, and Poland acquired more importance by the extension of her territory, and by her conquests over the surrounding peoples.

5. The most formidable enemies of Poland, were the Knights

2. What is known of Margueret, surnamed the Semiramis of the North? What was the Diet of Calmar?—3. Who was the successor of Margaret? How long did the union of the three monarchies last? Who succeeded Eric? What happened on the death of Christopher? Who was elected king of Norway and Denmark?—4. Which was the most celebrated of the Slavonic States during the Middle Ages? What is known of Casimir III. the great? What dynasty succeeded that of Piastus?—5. Who were the most formidable enemies of Poland? By whom were the Teutonic Knights conquered?

of the Teutonic Order, who, after the ruin of the Holy Land, had established themselves in Prussia. Wladislas V. overcame them, and Casimir IV. imposed on them the Treaty of Thorn, 1466. Wladislas VI. was at the battle of Varna, 1444, where he perished gloriously whilst fighting against the Turks. The insubordination of the nobles, and the conditions they imposed on their elective kings, under the name of *Pacta conventa*, was a fatal cause to the decay of Poland.

6. After the invasion of Attila, one of the Slavonic tribes, seated on the borders of the Rossa, joined the Alains and took the name of Rossolans. These barbarians founded Kiev and Novgorod towards the sixth century, and received the name of *Russians*. In 862 appeared some Varangian chiefs, one of whom, named Rurick, founded a durable kingdom: he reigned at Novgorod; his posterity rapidly spread over a part of Southern Russia and Galicia, established themselves at Kiew, made Constantinople tremble, and rose to a high pitch of prosperity under Vladimir the *Great*, 980, who embraced Christianity, which he received from the Greek Church, already separated by schism from the Latin Church.

7. After the conversion of Vladimir, the Russians lived at peace with the Empire of Constantinople. Moscow was founded, and Novgorod became flourishing through its commerce; but the Mongolian invasion soon annihilated all the elements of civilization, 1224. These barbarians overflowed Russia with the sons of Gengis Khan; the *Golden Horde*, founded by the Khans in Kaptchak, kept their footing there more than two centuries. The feeble Dukes of Muscovy, oppressed by the Tartars, burdened with tribute, at length roused themselves from their subjection, when the internal divisions of the Golden Horde had shaken the foreign power, and allowed Ivan III., 1464, to free his country from a yoke as heavy as it was humiliating.

8. Summary of the History of the Middle Ages.—The Middle Ages gave birth to the modern nations, which sprang from the dissolution of the Roman Empire and the invasion of the barbarians. The Church made light spring forth from chaos, by upholding, with her whole strength, the moral law, peace, and justice; by watching carefully over the treasures of ancient learning deposited in her hands. Charlemagne commenced the political education of the nations under his rule. From Clovis to Charlemagne, from Charlemagne to St. Louis and to Joan of

6. Who were the first barbarians who founded towns in Russia? Who was the first Russian Prince that embraced Christianity?—7. What did the Russians do after the conversion of Vladimir?—8. What influence did the Church exert during the Middle Ages?

Arc, the progress is immense. The wild Normans, once converted, became the most fervent promoters of civilization, whilst the Turks, remaining Mussulmans, have never done aught but oppress, corrupt, and destroy.

9. To the Middle Ages, we owe the Crusades, Chivalry, the Religious and Military Orders, the liberty of the middle classes, the emancipation of serfs, the parliaments and universities. They saw the birth of Christian royalty, the Magna Charta of England, the States-General of France, the Cortes of Spain, the Italian Republics, and the Helvetic Confederation. Free England is the country which has the best preserved the institutions of this period, which are not however to be too much regretted.

10. The Middle Ages have produced the *Divine Comedy*, the *Summa* of St. Thomas, the *Imitation of Jesus Christ*, Roman and Gothic cathedrals, the revival of the Arts in Italy. They also gave us the mariner's-compass, gunpowder, the art of printing. Thus, in spite of the many horrible disorders and calamities of every description, we may assert, that they paved the way for modern civilization.

---

9. What do we owe to the Middle Ages?—10. What did they produce?

MODERN HISTORY.

From the Taking of Constantinople, 1453, *to the Present time.*

NOTE.—It was not deemed necessary to adopt any particular division for Modern History. The method followed in treating of Ancient History, which is that of good English authors, seemed to merit the preference. For this reason, a connected history of each people will be given.

SECTION I.

FRANCE.

FROM THE EXPULSION OF THE ENGLISH, UNDER CHARLES VII., 1453, TO THE ACCESSION OF FRANCIS I., HEAD OF THE SECOND BRANCH OF THE HOUSE OF VALOIS, 1513.

1. When the battle of Castillon, fought in the year which opens Modern History, 1453, had left but the city of Calais in possession of the English, Charles VII. applied himself seriously to reforms, the necessity of which he had been made aware by an experience dearly acquired. He fully understood the danger of the Feudal System, when he saw the Duke of Burgundy decide the issue of the war, according as his attitude with the English was friendly or hostile.

2. The days of Charles VII., worn out by care and fatigue, were shortened by the criminal projects and attempts at revolt of the Dauphin Louis. Fearing lest his son would poison him, he condemned himself, it is said, to die of hunger, 1461. The kingdom, which he had received in a wretched condition, was left

1. What did Charles VII. do, after the battle of Castillon?—2. What was the conduct of the Dauphin Louis? How did Charles VII. die?

happy and prosperous. However, a tissue of extraordinary circumstances, and the visible protection of Providence in the mission of Joan of Arc, contributed more to this result, than the efforts of the Prince, whom posterity will ever reproach for his indifference, levity, and weakness.

3. Louis XI., was one of the ablest kings that ever sat on the throne of France, 1461; but unfortunately, his heart was as corrupt as his mind was vast and enterprising. The basis of his character was dissimulation; his success in war was due to artifice and knavery, and his cruelty and injustice rendered him odious to the people. This Prince, however, did much for the kingdom; he gave the fatal blow to Feudalism, enlarged the State by the acquisition of several fine provinces, established the postal service, fixed the standard of coin, and confirmed the judges in their authority by making them immovable.

4. He passed the last years of his life in the Castle of Plessis-lez-Tours, dreading plots and the loss of life. To be delivered from the terrors of death, he abandoned himself to all sorts of superstitious pratices, and allowed no one to approach him but his physician Coitier, the provost Tristan, the executor of his vengeance, and his barber Olivier *le Daim* or *le Diable*. Death however arrived, and this powerful politician passed away in the arms of St. Francis of Paula, whom he had sent for to Italy, hoping to prolong his miserable existence through the intercession of the saintly man.

5. Charles VIII. was thirteen years of age when his father Louis XI. died, 1483. This young Prince, whose education had been designedly neglected, was thereby rendered unfit to direct the reins of government. But his sister Anne de Beaujeu, who inherited the genius of her father, acting as regent, convoked the States-General in 1484, and caused this assembly to give her the guardianship of her brother. The Duke of Orleans, who was to succeed Charles VIII. under the name of Louis XII., was displeased with this decision, and retired to Brittany, where he excited a revolt. Being defeated at St. Aubin-du-Corbier by La Trémouille, he was made prisoner, 1488, and his ally, the Duke of Brittany, was compelled to sign a humiliating peace.

6. Charles, having attained the age of majority, took in hands the reins of government, became reconciled with the Duke of Orleans, and, after concluding treaties of peace with England,

3. What was the conduct of Louis XI., son and successor to Charles VII.?—4. By whom was he assisted in his last moments?—5. Who was the successor of Louis XI.? To whom was the regency confided? What did the Duke of Orleans do? Where was he conquered?—6. What did Charles VIII. do, having attained his majority? What war did he undertake?

Spain, and Austria, marched against Italy at the head of 32000 men, with the intention of enforcing his claims to the Kingdom of Naples. He first succeeded beyond his expectations; but, shortly after, the jealousy of the neighboring princes compelled him to abandon his conquest.

7. This Prince died accidentally in 1498, at the age of twenty-seven years. In the too short interval which elapsed between his return from Italy and the time of his death, Charles VIII. acquired solid glory by the care he gave to the government of his States. Like St. Louis, he loved to administer justice in person; and to all, particularly the poor, he never refused a willing ear. *Small in body but large in heart,* says Commines, he was so dearly cherished by his servants, that several of them died through grief. Leaving no children, the crown passed from the Valois branch to that of Orleans.

8. Louis XII., son of Charles of Orleans, and great-grandson of Charles V., succeeded Charles VIII. This Prince had been the prime mover in the troubles that took place during the minority of his predecessor; but, dating from the day he was released from prison, his fidelity never ceased. The commencement of his reign was signalized by useful reforms, which gained him the glorious title of *Father of his people.*

9. Desirous of recovering Naples and Milan, Louis XII. marched towards Italy, and gained over the Venitians the battle of Agnadello. Irritated at his successes, the Emperor Maximilian, Henry VIII., Ferdinand the Catholic, and Pope Julius II., formed a coalition with the Swiss and the Venitians, against France. The allies, however, were defeated at Bologna, Brescia, and Ravenna. Gaston de Foix, nephew of Louis XII., perished at the last place in the twenty-third year of his age, after immortalizing himself by acts of heroism, 1512. About this time, also, appeared the famous Bayard, surnamed the *Knight without fear and without reproach.*

10. England and Austria afterwards united their arms, and retrieved their losses at the battle of Guinegate, called in history the *Battle of Spurs.* Louis, however, by means of able negotiations, succeeded in disuniting his enemies. By the Treaty of London, he brought tranquillity to the realm, 1514. His death filled the hearts of his subjects with the deepest sorrow, 1515. With him began and ended the first branch of the House of Orleans.

---

7. How did this Prince die? What was his character?—8. Who succeeded Charles VIII.?—9. Mention the events of the reign of Louis XII.

SECTION II.

FROM FRANCIS I., 1515, TO THE BOURBON DYNASTY BEGUN BY HENRY IV., 1589.

1. Louis XII. having left no male issue, Francis I., son of Charles, Count of Angoulême, succeeded him. In history, he begins the second branch of the House of Valois. Handsome, intelligent, brave, and magnificent, this young King loved Chivalry and daring adventures. He possessed the same rights over Naples as his predecessors, and over Milan, the claims of Louis XII., whose nephew he was.

2. Though Louis XII. had formed a very unfavorable opinion of his successor, yet the latter, in the first years of his reign, by breaking up the humiliating Treaty of Dijon, repaired one of the former's great faults. Francis I. made great preparations to retake Milan. At the head of a formidable army, he crossed the Alps with an audacity equal to Hannibal's, and gained over the Swiss the celebrated victory of Marignan, 1515. Success however did not attend all his attempts, for he lost several battles, especially that of Romagnano on the Sesia, in which the brave and chivalric Bayard was killed, 1524.

3. The Imperial throne of Austria becoming vacant at the death of Maximilian, several of the electors cast their eyes on Francis I.; but Charles V. of Spain being preferred, a cruel war between the two princes began. Francis was taken prisoner at the battle of Pavia, but renewed hostilities as soon as he recovered his liberty. While engaged in the battle of Cerisoles, the English took possession of the North of France, and Charles V. attacked Champagne. Shortly after the Treaty of Crespy, which suspended for some time the course of the war, Francis I. died at Rambouillet, 1547.

4. Francis I. organized the French infantry, which became afterwards so formidable. He encouraged the marine, neglected by his predecessors, and created the port of Havre. During his reign, Jacques Cartier, a navigator of St. Malo, ascended the St. Lawrence River and discovered Canada, 1534, which became, at a later date, an important colony. Industry and commerce were much protronized by him. Francis I. was above all the *father*

1. Whom did Francis I. succeed? What was his portrait?—2. What opinion had Louis XII. formed of him? Who gained the battle of Marignan? Was Francis I. always successful in war?—3. What was the cause of the rivalship that arose between Francis I. and Charles V.? Where was Francis I. taken prisoner?—4. What does the French Monarchy owe to Francis I.?

of letters. The royal printing-house, liberally provided by his bounty, published books in all languages and in their proper characters. In the *Collége de France*, founded in 1530, Hebrew, Greek, Mathematics, Medicine, and Philosophy, were taught. The lustre which the arts and literature cast on this reign, has made it one of the most important in French History. The faults of Francis I. have left few traces, whereas the good he effected has been durable.

It was during the reign of this great Monarch, that Luther and Calvin separated from the Roman Church, and established Protestantism.

5. Henry II., son and successor of Francis I., 1547, continued the war begun by his father. He defeated the Imperialists at the battle of Renti, 1554, and took possession of Lorraine. He was, shortly afterwards, overthrown by the Spaniards at St. Quentin and Gravelines. But this reverse did not prevent him from taking Calais, which had been held by the English for more than two centuries. His death was caused by an accident which happened on a festival given on the occasion of the marriage of Margaret of Valois with the Duke of Savoy. France was, at this time, a prey to factions and religious hatred, already much envenomed by the rigorous policy of the late King towards Protestants.

6. Henry II. was succeeded by his son Francis II., a weak and sickly Prince in the sixteenth year of his age, 1559. The evils caused by the sanguinary civil wars produced by his successor's severity against the Huguenots, began during this reign. Religion seemed to be the apparent pretext of those civil broils, but the ambition of the nobility was their real motive. Antoine de Bourbon having become King of Navarre, and Louis de Condé being displeased to see the regency in the hands of Catharine de Medici, the King's mother, both formed a league with Admiral Coligni against the government, which was supported by the Duke of Guise and his brother the Cardinal of Lorraine, who were the acknowledged leaders of the Catholic party. Francis barely escaped the conspiracy planned at Amboise by the leagued princes for the seizure of his person. He died at the moment Condé was about to expiate his attempt. Some years later, his spouse Mary Stuart, heir to the Kingdom of Scotland, perished on the scaffold by order of the cruel Elizabeth, Queen of England.

5. By whom was Francis I. succeeded? What is known of the reign of Henry II.?—6. Who succeeded Henry II.? What parties were formed under Francis II.? What was the end of the conspiracy planned at Amboise?

7. Charles IX. ascended the throne after the death of his brother Francis II., 1560. He was unceasingly exposed to the intrigues of the different parties who aspired to power. These parties were, on the one side, Catharine de Medici, the King's mother, and Antoine de Bourbon, Lieutenant of the kingdom; on the other, Constable Montmorency, the Duke of Guise, and Marshal Saint André. Condé and Coligni, at the head of the Protestants, formed a third party equally opposed to the two others. The following battles were fought by these rivals: first, that of Dreux, 1562, gained by the Duke of Guise who was second in command under Montmorency; secondly, that of St. Denis, 1567, which the Royalists, commanded by the Duke of Anjou, gained over Condé; thirdly, that of Jarnac, 1569, gained by the same Duke over Condé, who was there killed; fourthly, that of Roche-Abeille, 1569, gained by the Protestants; and fifthly, that of Montcontour, 1569, in which the Duke of Anjou, seconded by De Guise and Tavannes, defeated the Protestants, commanded by Coligni, who was there wounded.

8. Before these battles, and during the short intervals of truce, recourse was had to different measures of conciliation; but, notwithstanding these attempts which did not always appear to be made in good faith, notwithstanding the Conference of Poissy, the Court resolved to put an end to this desorder by an atrocious means. An order was obtained from the King to massacre all the Protestants. The carnage, begun at Paris on St. Bartholomew's Day and continued the following days, was nearly general throughout the kingdom. The governors of some provinces, however, refused to obey, being persuaded that such an order could not have emanated from the free will of the King. At Paris, this awful massacre cost the lives of Admiral Coligni and nearly 4000 Huguenots.

No cardinal, bishop, or priest, was in the Council in which this bloody edict was passed. Catharine, who resolved on it, had no object of worship superior to her ambition. In all the towns in which this horrible decree had to be executed, the Protestants found no protectors more ardent than the Catholic clergy.

9. Charles IX., being ashamed of the crimes which the odious policy of his mother made him commit, died, in remorse, at the age of twenty-four, of a malady so cruel that it is supposed to have been from poison.

---

7. Who succeeded Francis II.? To whom was the regency confided? What parties were then formed? Relate the religious wars which took place under Charles IX.—8. Who ordered the massacre of St. Bartholomew's day? What proves that religion was a stranger to this massacre? —9. How did Charles IX. die?

This reign, fertile in crimes and disasters, saw, nevertheless, some wise reforms introduced into the administration, the tribunals, and the laws, by the efforts of the Chancellor of the Hospital.

10. On hearing of the King's demise, the Duke of Anjou, Henry III., left Poland, over which he had reigned during one year, and took possession of the Crown of France. This Prince was still weaker in character than his brother Charles IX. He had the misfortune to obey the imprudent counsels of his mother, and to be irresolute in his relations with Catholics and Protestants.

11. The government of Picardy, in which the Catholics predominated, being confided to Condé, the people rose up against him, and laid the foundation of the formidable association, which spread its branches in so many localities, and became known in after times, as the *League*. Its chief motive sprang from the profound attachment of the people to the Catholic Faith; but self interest and political passion, soon found entrance therein. The De Guises made the League serve their own ambition, and thus altered the nature of this great movement, which had been so pure in its origin.

12. The De Guises at first supported Henry III; but the latter, fearing the influence which the war would give to Henry De Guise, granted such advantages to the Protestants, as threw the Catholics on the brink of despair. De Guise, turning their indignation to his advantage, put himself at the head of the Leaguers. The King's Council, who were called *politicals*, sided with the friends of order and peace. The supporters of Henry, King of Navarre, calling themselves *Huguenots*, formed the Protestant party. Spain united with the Leaguers; Germany, with the Protestants.

13. In the inevitable war which followed, called in history the *War of the three Henrys*, Henry of Navarre gained the battle of Coutras over the Leaguers, 1587; the latter, commanded by the Duke of Guise, exterminated, at Vimory and Auneau, the reinforcements which the former expected from Germany, and took possession of Paris on the *Day of the barricades*. The Duke of Guise and the Cardinal his brother, having been massacred at Blois, by order of the King who feared their influence, Mayenne, their young brother, supported by the Leaguers and the faction of *the sixteen* which had been formed at Paris, was proclaimed Lieutenant-General of the kingdom. A short time after,

10. What was the character of Henry III.?—11. In which Province did the *League* originate?—12. What step did Henry III. take?—13. What was called the *War of the three Henrys*? What were the victories of the Duke of Guise? How did Henry III. get rid of the Guises? What was his end?

the King himself was assassinated by Jacques Clément. The death of Henry III. put an end to the House of Valois, the fourth of the Capetians, 1589.

SECTION III.

FROM THE BOURBON DYNASTY, BEGUN BY HENRY IV., 1589, TO THE FRENCH REVOLUTION, 1789.

1. The first King of the House of Bourbon, was Henry IV., son of Antoine de Bourbon, 1589. This Prince became the legitimate heir to the Crown on the death of Henry III. The Protestant Religion, which he professed, was a motive for the Leaguers to separate him from the throne; but he conquered them in the battles of Arques, Ivry, and Epernay. His abjuration, made at St. Denis, gained him Catholic confidence, and opened for him the gates of the capital, which he had several times uselessly besieged.

2. Henry IV., being master of the State, governed it with much goodness and admirable wisdom. He confided the administration of affairs to the celebrated Sully and other ministers worthy of confidence, and constantly occupied himself with the happiness of the French. Though this good King always showed himself a father to his people, yet he was assassinated, in Paris, by the infamous Ravaillac. "Never," says Guizot, "did any king, in times of extreme violence, by milder proceedings, put an end to so much evil, begin so much good, and dignify the monarchy with so much regard to old traditions or the new wants of liberty."

3. The royal authority passed from the firm hands of Henry IV. to those of Louis XIII. Being but ten years old, the regency was confided to his mother Maria de Medici, a woman possessing greater ambition than ability. The great projects of the last reign, were soon forgotten; for the regent changed the entire system of government. She dismissed the old ministers to take in her favor the Florentine Concini, whom she named Marshal of Ancre. This choice was quite disagreeable to the people. Condé and several other noblemen, jealous of the prime minister's authority, united their efforts, and obtained the exiling of the regent. Her favorite was at the same time massacred.

1. Who was the first King of the House of Bourbon?—2. To whom did Henry IV. confide the administration of the State? How did he die?—3. Who was the successor of Henry IV. To whom was the regency confided? Who was her prime minister? What was the end of the Marshal of Ancre?

4. The entrance of Richelieu into the ministry, 1624, saved the dynasty of Henry IV.; for, during the fourteen last years, royalty had been greatly declining. This great minister prosecuted the Protestants on account of their seditious intrigues, and, after a long siege took La Rochelle, which had become their bulwark and the centre of all their revolts. Cardinal Richelieu showed himself no less terrible to the nobles, who were endeavoring to weaken the royal authority. The execution of several conspirators, without any consideration of rank, contributed much to establish peace within the kingdom, and permitted the making of glorious wars, and the acquiring of new provinces.

Richelieu governed until his death, notwithstanding the jealousy of his rivals. The King survived him but a few months.

It was in the reign of Louis XIII., that the French Academy was founded by Richelieu, 1635, and that St. Vincent de Paul began the founding of his institutions of charity.

5. The most glorious reign of the Bourbon dynasty, was unquestionably that of Louis XIV., son of Louis XIII. This Prince being but five years old when he ascended the throne, 1643, the regency was confided to his mother Anne of Austria, and the ministry, to Cardinal Mazarin. The victories that signalized the advent of Louis XIV., were those of Rocroy, 1643, Friburg, 1644, Nordlingen, 1645, and Lens, 1647, all gained by the French troops under the command of Condé. Turenne was likewise successful in Germany: the Treaty of Westphalia crowned there his triumphs. These happy beginnings were troubled by the wars of the *Fronde*, caused by the Members of Parliament, and supported by the Prince of Condé, Cardinal De Retz, and several other Court noblemen, who were the sworn enemies of Cardinal Mazarin, whom they forced to resign.

6. On attaining his majority, Louis XIV. defeated the Spaniards, and closed this war by the Treaty of the Pyrenees, when he married Maria Theresa, Infanta of Spain. In 1700, his grandson Philip was called to the throne of Spain, which plunged Louis XIV. into a war with all Europe. His most powerful enemies were the famous Prince Eugene, commander of the German troops, and Marlborough, commander of the English. Louis triumphed for a long while, and received the title of

4. What great minister then came to power? What were the chief acts of Richelieu?—5. Who succeeded Louis XIII.? To whom was the regency confided? Who was prime minister? What obstacles did Mazarin meet with? What victories signalized the advent of Louis XIV.? How were these happy beginnings troubled?—6. Whom did Louis XIV. defeat on attaining his majority? To what throne was his grandson Philip called? Against whom had Louis XIV. to combat? Which battles did he lose? Which victory did Villars gained?

Great; but France, drained of men and money, was at last humbled at Turin, Malplaquet, and other places. It was towards the end of his days only, that Louis, by the brilliant victory of Denain, 1712, gained by Villars, restored to France a part of her glory.

7. No reign was ever rendered more illustrious by literature, the arts, and sciences, and the production of great men, than that of Louis XIV. This Prince showed himself always great, even in adversity. The Christian resignation with which he saw death approaching, ought to cancel the ostentation which he loved to display during life. He died in acknowledging his faults, and in recommending to his successor, not to imitate him in his love of glory, war, and pleasure.

8. Louis XV., son of the Duke of Burgundy and great-grandson of Louis XIV., was scarcely five years old when he ascended the throne, 1715. While awaiting the Prince's age, the government was confided to the Duke of Orleans. Louis XIV., distrusting the latter, had the prudent forethought of not giving him absolute authority; but the Duke caused the King's will to be annulled by Parliament. The regency, which lasted until 1722, formed the first part of the reign of Louis XV.

9. Philip of Orleans, whom Louis XIV. used to call a boaster of crime, because he made himself appear worse than he really was, would have been an accomplished Prince, had it not been for his impiety and the looseness of his morals, which authorized the most shameful disorders in those around him. Public morals, already sensibly altered, received a mortal blow from the scandals of the regency.

10. The first acts of the regent's administration, were useful reforms. Willing to restore order in the finances, he gave this important mission to a Scotchman, named Law, who introduced the system of loans, which he supposed to be an efficacious means; but far from being successful, this means augmented considerably the deficit, and completed the ruin of commerce. At this epoch, a pestilence brought desolation in the city of Marseilles. Her Bishop, the Right Rev. de Belzunce, distinguished himself on this occasion by his heroic devotedness.

11. France became engaged soon after in diverse wars: first, with Germany, in favor of Stanislas Leczinski, father-in-law of Louis XV.; secondly, in that of the Austrian Succession, against

7. What rendered the reign of Louis XIV. remarkable? What was the end of Louis XIV.—8. Who was his successor? Who was declared regent of the new King?—9. What was the character of the regent?—10. What were his first acts? What was the system of Mr. Law?—11. What wars were carried on by France?

Maria Theresa, to whom the Emperor Charles VI., had left his States; thirdly, in the Seven Years' War with England and Prussia.

12. At different times, France gained the battles of Parma, Dettingen, Fontenoy, Minden, Bergen, and others in which the Prince of Brunswick, the Duke of Broglie, Marshals of Saxe and Belle-Isle, distinguished themselves. But in India, Africa, and America, she lost immense possessions and nearly all her navy, notwithstanding the valor of Duquesne and the skill of the celebrated Dupleix, Governor of Pondicherry. The Treaty of Paris, 1763, completed the humiliation of France. These misfortunes were aggravated by the increase of the taxes, and the dearth which happened at this time. The future appeared frightful; the depravity of morals seemingly authorized, unfortunately, by the king's conduct, favored the spirit of insubordination which was everywhere arising.

13. Louis XV. was succeeded by his grandson Louis XVI., 1774. "This Prince," says Guizot, "mounted the throne with the virtues the most necessary for the government of France: pure and simple morals, the sentiment of duty, honesty of purpose and of life, intentions profoundly benevolent and humane, with very little personal ambition for power." These precious qualities in a young Prince of twenty years, were not sufficient for the task which his predecessor had left him. Besides, had he been gifted with the genius of Henry IV., he would inevitably have failed. What human power could have succeeded in directing a nation carried away by the fatal current of revolutions!

14. The first remarkable event of the reign of Louis XVI., was the war with America. He recognized the Independence proclaimed by the English colonies. Irritated at this act, England declared war against France. In this war, France gained many advantages with her navy, which had been ruined under Louis XV., but restored by Louis XVI. After alternate successes and reverses on both sides, the result of this five years' war, was the loss of the American colonies to the English, and of the East-India possessions to the French. The finances of both nations were equally drained. By the Treaty of Versailles, in 1783, all the powers of Europe recognized the Independence of the United States of America.

15. Different ministries had succeeded one another without

12. Which battles did the French gained? Name their chief Generals. What did the Treaty of Paris effect? In what situation was France at the end of the reign of Louis XV.?—13. Who succeeded Louis XV.? What was the character of Louis XVI.?—14. What was the first remarkable event of his reign? Which wars had he to carry on?—15. Why did Louis XVI. convoke the States-General?

having put the finances in order. A general uneasiness and agitation was spread throughout the Kingdom. Louis, hoping to re-establish tranquillity, convoked the States-General; but the Revolution was already begun.

SECTION IV.

FROM THE FRENCH REVOLUTION, 1799, TO THE FALL OF THE EMPIRE, 1815.

1. Europe was now on the eve of a universal revolution. Joseph II., Emperor of Germany, by his opposing the Church, had provoked a revolt in the Netherlands. Austria and Russia had concerted together the final dismemberment of Poland. England, Holland, and Prussia had just formed an alliance against these last two powers; then broke out the French Revolution. Alarmed at its frightful progress, the sovereings of Europe assembled at Pilnitz, to devise means to stem the current of the new ideas. Francis II., Emperor of Germany, then addressed himself to the Legislative Assembly of France, resquesting them to check the spread of revolutionary principles; but the Assembly, refusing to sacrifice their liberty, declared war against Austria.

2. It was on the 5th of May, 1789, that the States-General, comprising the three orders of Nobility, Clergy, and Commons, assembled at Versailles, amidst an enthusiasm unexampled perhaps in history. The Members, however, having disagreed among themselves, the Commons seized upon the Legislative authority, and styled themselves the National Assembly.

3. On the 14th of July, 1789, a violent insurrection broke out in Paris. The arsenals were broke open, and the prison of the Bastile demolished. Later, on the 5th and 6th of October, the people went in a body to Versailles, and forced the Royal Family to return with them to Paris. The National Assembly, whose efforts had been directed towards framing a Constitution, went also to the capital and called themselves the Constituent Assembly.

4. The principal decrees of the Constituent Assembly, were: the division of France into departments, the establishment of the

1. What was the situation of Europe, when the Revolution broke out? —2. When and were did the States-General assemble? What was this Assembly composed of?—3. What happened in Paris on the 14th of July, 1789. Which name did the Assembly assume?—4. What were the principal decrees of the Constituent Assembly? What was the conduct of the French Clergy concerning the Civic Oath?

jury, the creation of *assignats*, the liberty of the press, the suppression of monasteries, and the abolition of Nobility titles and Feudal rights. To the Clergy also they gave a Constitution, by which bishops and priests were either to take the Civic Oath, or forfeit their right to a State salary. The great majority of the French Clergy, refusing to perjure themselves, preferred poverty, exile, and persecution. By promulgating this Act without the intervention of the Holy See, the Constituent Assembly committed one of its greatest political faults.

5. Finding their lives insecure, a great number of ecclesiastics, with many of the noblility, left France. The King also endeavored to escape together with his family; but, being recognized at Varennes, he was arrested and brought back to Paris, where he was kept in close custody in the Tuileries, and forced to accept a new Constitution on the 14th of Sept., 1791. Some time after this event, the revolutionists stirred up the people against the King. Being attacked in his palace by the mob, Louis XVI. sought refuge in the Legislative Assembly, which had succeeded the Constituent Assembly. While there, he heard his downfall proclaimed; after which he was conveyed with his family, to the prison of the Temple.

6. On the 21st of September, 1792, a new body was convened styled the National Convention. At its first meeting, the regal government was abolished, and France, declared a Republic. This Convention was conducted by monsters in human form, such as Marat, Danton, Robespierre, and their confederates, who thirsted for the blood of the innocent Monarch. In consequence, he was accused by this infamous tribunal, and condemned to perish by the guillotine.

7. On hearing his sentence, Louis XVI. lost none of his usual firmness. According to the affirmation of Hebert, an enthusiastic Jacobin, "there was something supernatural in his looks and manners." He was led to the place of execution amid the most gloomy silence. Arrived at the foot of the scaffold, his confessor, Abbé Edgeworth, said to him: *Son of St. Louis, ascend to heaven!* Louis protested his innocence for a last time, and then delivered himself up to the executioner, on the 21st of January, 1793. Thus perished, in the flower of his age, the best of men, but the weakest of kings, a real martyr to the faults of absolute power which were not his, and of a tissue of unheard of circumstances, which princes stronger than he could never have resisted. His Queen Marie Antoinette, and Princess Elizabeth,

5. How was the King treated after his arrestation at Varennes?—6. What was the conduct of the National Convention of 1792?—7. Relate the circumstances of the death of Louis XVI.

his sister, who knew but to pray and forgive, underwent the same fate: the latter in May, the former in October, 1793. The Dauphin, Son of Louis XVI., a child ten years old, died in a dungeon of the Temple, 1795.

8. From 1792 to 1794, at Paris and in the provinces, the guillotine reeked with the noblest and purest blood of France. Arrests were so numerous, executions and massacres so horrible, that this period is styled in history the *Reign of Terror*. Shortly afterwards, the greater number of these demoniacs, heads of the revolutionary government, were, in their turn, sent to the guillotine by their rivals, and thus received the just punishment due to their crimes. Among the number was the Duke of Orleans, a monster of vice and cruelty, who voted the death of his cousin, the unfortunate Louis XVI.

9. The Convention now indulged in the most extravagant excesses. It decreed the abolition of the Christian religion, to replace it by the abominable worship of the goddess Reason. The Sunday and all that referred to Christianity, incurred the hatred of the revolutionists and were discarded.

10. Alarmed at the extravagant proceedings of the French Revolution, the Sovereigns of Europe judged it was time for them to unite their efforts in opposing its frightful progress. In 1792, a coalition had already been formed between Prussia and Austria, with the view to re-establish the Monarchy and restore tranquillity in France. After the execution of Louis XVI., England, Holland, Russia, and Spain, leagued also with the former. The allied forces, commanded by the Duke of Brunswick, invaded France, but were completely defeated.

11. Emboldened by this success, the French, commanded by Dumouriez, carried the war beyond the Rhine, and, by a series of victories, rapidly brought Belgium, Holland, Switzerland and a part of Germany, under subjection. In 1796, Napoleon Bonaparte, then in the 27th year of his age, was intrusted with the command of the army of Italy. This extraordinary man, who had previously distinguished himself at the siege of Toulon, soon astonished all Europe by his brilliant victories. He completed the conquest of Italy, and obliged the Austrians to sign the Treaty of Campo-Formio, 1797, which confirmed to France the cession of Belgium with the territory on the left bank of the Rhine.

---

8. What took place from 1792 to 1794?—9. To what excesses did the Convention now indulge?—10. What did the Sovereigns of Europe do, alarmed at the extravagant proceedings of the Revolution?—11. What were the successes of the French army under Dumouriez in the North, and under Bonaparte in Italy?

12. In October, 1795, the Convention terminated its reign of blood. The government of the Republic was confided to an Executive Directory consisting of five members, and of two Chambers, the Council of the *Five Hundred*, and the Council of the *Ancients*.

13. The Directory, fearing the ambition of the young hero who commanded the army of Italy, consented to charge him with an expedition against Egypt. Within two years, Bonaparte overthrew, with a few thousand men, the numerous armies of the Turks and Mamelukes, penetrated into Syria, and took possession of all Egypt; but was defeated at Acre, which was defended by the Turks and English. The latter, under Nelson, destroyed the French fleet at the battle of Aboukir. Confiding to General Kleber the command of his army, which had diminished in numbers, Napoleon returned to France and placed himself at the head of the government, under the title of First Consul, after having violently dissolved the Council of the Five Hundred, on the 9th of November, 1799.

14. While Bonaparte was in Egypt, the Directory undertook to organize everywhere republican governments dependent on France. The powers of Europe, uneasy at this spread of the Revolution, formed a second coalition. The Austrians, under the Archduke Charles, and the Russians, under General Suwarrow, entered Italy with an army three times as numerous as that of the French. Moreau, Joubert, and MacDonald, finding themselves unable to cope with these adversaries, were obliged to evacuate the Italian territory. The frontiers of France were now threatened with an invasion by way of Germany; but the victory of Brune over the English at Bergen, and that of Massena over Suwarrow at Zurich, forced the allies to retreat.

15. Finding himself at the head of the government, Bonaparte devised the recovering of Italy. He accordingly took the command of the army, and, effecting his celebrated passage of the Alps, defeated the Austrians in the memorable battle of Marengo. By this victory, France recovered all her lost possessions. In the mean time, Moreau overthrew the Austrians at Hohenlinden, and obliged the German Emperor to sue for peace. The English, tired of the strife, concluded also a treaty of peace at Amiens, 1802. Egypt was evacuated by the French army and given up to Turkey. Tranquillity was now estab-

12. Which government succeeded that of the Convention?—13. Relate the principal events of the Egyptian expedition. How did Bonaparte become Consul?—14. What coalition was formed against France during the Egyptian expedition? How were the attacks of the allied powers repulsed?—15. What were the successes of Bonaparte during his consulate?

lished throughout Europe, for the first time since the Revolution.

16. During the suspension of hostilities, Bonaparte employed himself in works of public utility. In concert with Pope Pius VII., he re-established in France the Catholic Religion, which had been suppressed by order of the Convention. He published a Civil Code, drawn up by the most skilful lawyers of the nation; offered great encouragement to commerce, by causing new roads and canals to be made; and embellished Paris by erecting several splendid buildings and monuments. It is, however, to be regretted that, at the same time, his course was stamped with cruelty and stained with blood; for he used the utmost rigor against Moreau and Pichegru, two illustrious Generals, who were accused of having taken part in a conspiracy. The former was exiled, and the latter, strangled in prison, while a large number of others were sent to the guillotine. The Duke d'Enghien, a Prince of the Bourbon family, after a mock trial, was shot during the night at the Castle of Vincennes.

17. In the mean time, Bonaparte was gradually arriving at the height of his ambition. After causing himself to be named Consul for life with supreme power, he had himself elected in 1804, Emperor of the French, under the name of Napoleon I. He was, accordingly, crowned by Pope Pius VII. The following year he assumed the title of King of Italy.

18. War being declared against England, Napoleon gathered a numerous army at Boulogne to embark for that country; but the weakness of his navy, and the renewal of hostilities by the Austrians and Russians, forced him to renounce this enterprise. Marching rapidly towards Germany, he captured an Austrian army at Ulm, and completely defeated at Austerlitz the two emperors whose forces were united, 1805. A treaty of peace was concluded at Presburg, by which France recovered her Venetian territories. The glory of these brilliant achievements, was however a little obscured by the great naval victory, gained at Trafalgar, by the English over the combined fleets of France and Spain. Lord Nelson, the English Admiral, was killed in this engagement.

19. The new victories which he gained afterwards, enabled Napoleon to bestow crowns on his brothers. To Joseph he gave Naples; to Louis, Holland; while for Jerome, he created the Kingdom of Westphalia. Marching on Prussia, which had

16. What did Bonaparte do, after the Treaty of Amiens? What did he publish? What acts of cruelty did he commit?—17. Being named Consul for life, what did Napoleon now do?—18. Why did he renounce invading England? What were his successes in Germany? What naval battle did France lose?—19. Which kingdoms did Napoleon dispose of? What were the successes of Napoleon against Prussia and Russia in 1806, 1807?

just declared war against him, he vanquished her forces at Jena and Lubeck, and entered Berlin on the 6th of November, 1806. His victories at Eylau and Friedland brought about the Treaty of Tilsit, which was signed by France, Prussia, and Russia, but was hostile to England.

20. Napoleon, elated by these astonishing successes, directed his attention towards Spain and Portugal. His threatening measures terrified the Royal Family of Portugal, and made them resolve on emigrating to Brazil. He obliged Charles IV., King of Spain, to abdicate in favor of Joseph Bonaparte, while the throne of Naples, already occupied by the latter, was given to Murat, brother-in-law to Napoleon, 1808. The Spaniards rose against the French, and, aided by England, began a war which lasted until 1814. The French gained several battles; but Sir Arthur Wellesley, afterwards Duke of Wellington, who commanded the united forces of Spain and England, gained the battles of Talavera, Salamanca, and Vittoria.

21. The Austrian Emperor, seeing the French army occupied in Spain, thought it a favorable moment to recover all his losses, and declared war to France. On receiving this intelligence, Napoleon transported himself at a rapid rate to Germany, invaded Austria, and gained the battles of Ratisbon, Essling, and Wagram. This war was soon concluded by the Treaty of Vienna, 1809, by which the Emperor of Austria was obliged not only to cede several provinces, but also to promise his daughter Maria Louisa in marriage to his victorious enemy. In order to consummate this marriage, Napoleon was divorced from his first wife, the virtuous Empress Josephine.

22. During the campaign just terminated at Wagram, Napoleon authorized a barbarous act of tyranny and cruelty, which has left a very disgusting stain on his memory, and which became the turning point of his fortune; for from this act can be dated his precipitate fall from the summit of power to a dreary and languishing captivity. This deplorable act was the dethroning and imprisoning of the venerable Pope Pius VII., and the violent annexation of the Patrimony of St. Peter to the French Empire, because the Pope refused to conform to the arbitrary and unjust demands of the imperious conqueror. This event happened July 6th, 1809.

23. Alison, the celebrated English historian, concludes the

20. Which two countries now drew the attention of Napoleon? To what did he force Charles IV.? Had the French any success in Spain? —21. Against whom had Napoleon to combat in 1809? Whom did he marry afterwards?—22. What happened in Italy during the campaign of Wagram?—23. What reflections does the English historian Alison make concerning the conduct of Napoleon towards the Pope?

narration of this infamous transaction by the following remarkable passage :—"What does the Pope mean," said Napoleon to Eugene, in 1807, by the threat of excommunicating me? Does he think the world has gone back a thousand years? Does he suppose the arms will fall from the hands of my soldiers?" Within two years after these remarkable words were uttered, the Pope did excommunicate him, in return for the confiscation of his whole dominions, and in less than four years more, the arms did fall from the hands of his soldiers, and the hosts, apparently invincible, which he had collected, were dispersed and ruined by the blasts of winter. He extorted from the Pope, at Fontainebleau, in 1813, by the terrors and exhaustion of a long captivity, a renunciation of the rights of the Church over the Roman States; and within a year after, he himself was compelled, at Fontainebleau, to sign the abdication of all his dominions. He consigned Cardinal Pacca and several other prelates, the courageous counsellors of the Bull of excommunication, to a dreary imprisonment of four years amid the snows of the Alps; and he himself was shortly after doomed to a painful exile of six, on the rock of St. Helena! "There is something," continues Alison, "in these marvellous coincidences beyond the operations of chance, and which even a Protestant historian feels himself bound to mark for the observation of future ages. The world had not gone back a thousand years; but that Being existed with whom a thousand years are as one day, and one day as a thousand years."

24. Meanwhile, the ambition of Napoleon did not abate. In 1812, while the Peninsular War was raging, he began hostilities against Russia, under the pretext that, contrary to enactments in the Treaty of Tilsit, the latter had favored British commerce. Accordingly, at the head of an immense army, he invaded Russia, defeated the Russians at Smolensk, fought the terrible battle of Borodino in which 30000 men fell on both sides, and, at the head of his legions, advanced on Moscow, which he found enveloped in flames and abandoned by its inhabitants. The Muscovites had set their city on fire to prevent its affording an asylum to the French army. In the annals of history, there can scarcely be found a parallel for the sufferings which the French army had to endure from cold and famine. It is stated that nearly 30000 horses perished in one day from the severity of the climate. Of the 400000 men that entered Russia with Napoleon, 30000 only recrossed the Niemen.

25. Napoleon, leaving the remnant of his army near the

24. What did Napoleon do in 1812?—25. What did he do after his disasters in Russia? Who gained the battle of Leipsic?

frontiers of Russia, fled in disguise to Paris, and raised another army of 350000 men; but he found himself opposed by a fifth coalition, consisting of Russia, Prussia, Austria, Sweden, and England. Without losing a moment, he put himself at the head of his army, defeated the allied powers in the battles of Lutzen and Bautzen, and afterwards repulsed them from Dresden; but he was completely beaten in the tremendous battle of Leipsic, 1813.

26. After these overwhelming reverses, Napoleon fled again to Paris, and made a vain attempt to rouse the French people. Without loss of time, the allies crossed the Rhine, penetrated into the heart of France, and entered the capital on March 31st, 1814. Finding his situation hopeless, Napoleon abdicated, and received from the allies the Island of Elba for his future residence. He was allowed, however, to retain the title of Emperor. The Bourbon dynasty was now restored in the person of Louis XVIII., brother of the unfortunate Louis XVI., and the Pope, after five years' captivity, returned to Rome.

27. All now seemed to promise a lasting peace. However, a year had not passed when Napoleon left his island with the determination of recovering his power. He landed in the South of France, on the 1st of March, 1815; was enthusiastically received by the army; marched rapidly on Paris, which he entered on the 20th, and was again master of France for the space of one hundred days. Louis XVIII. and family fled at his approach. As soon as his return was made known to the Sovereigns of Europe, assembled in Congress at Vienna, he was declared by them a traitor and an outlaw. Nearly all the powers of Europe now formed a new and formidable coalition against him. Napoleon, opening the campaign in Belgium, at first defeated the Prussians at Fleurus; but was finally and completely overthrown by the allies, under Blucher and Wellington, in the memorable battle of Waterloo, June 18th, 1815. Obliged to abdicate a second time, he surrendered himself to the English government, who exiled him to the Island of St. Helena, where he died christianly on the 5th of May, 1821, in the 52nd year of his age. His remains, brought to France in 1840, now repose in the beautiful monument under the dome of the Invalides.

28. Napoleon was, unquestionably, one of the most remarkable men that figure in the history of the world. Rising, by the

26. Whither did Napoleon go, after the battle of Leipsic? Where did he retire, after his abdication? Who was placed upon the throne of France?—27. How long did Napoleon remain on the Island of Elba? Who gained the battle of Waterloo? What became of Napoleon?—28. What was the character of Napoleon?

energy of his genius, from obscurity to the most magnificent and most powerful position that can be attained in modern times, he presented himself to the world as a warrior, a sovereign, and a statesman,—a combination of great and brilliant qualities, which are rarely found in the same person. But he had also great defects: he governed his States with military despotism; and his insatiable ambition led him to sacrifice, unscrupulously, the rights and independence of other nations, insomuch that the news of his downfall, was hailed with joy by all the friends of humanity.

SECTION V.

THE RESTAURATION, 1815; THE GOVERNMENT OF JULY, 1830; THE SECOND REPUBLIC, 1848; THE SECOND EMPIRE, 1852, AND THIRD REPUBLIC, 1871.

1. After the second dethronement of Bonaparte, Louis XVIII. was again placed on the throne, and France reduced to nearly the same limits as before the Revolution. This Prince granted a Constitutional Charter, and thus established a Representative government in France. Louis died without children, in 1824, at the age of sixty four years. His brother, Count of Artois, succeeded him under the name of Charles X., and was crowned at Rheims.

2. During this reign, France with several of the powers of Europe, espoused the cause of the Greeks, who, since 1821, were endeavoring to throw off the Ottoman yoke. In 1827, the combined fleets of France, England, and Russia, gained over the Turks the victory of Navarino. In the following year, General Maison occupied the Morea, which gave Greece her independence.

3. The Dey of Algiers having insulted the French Consul, Charles X. sent a formidable army against him, under the command of General De Bourmont, the minister of war. Shortly after the enemy was first overthrown at Sidi-Ferruch, Fort l'Empereur was taken, and on the next day, July 5th, 1830, Algiers capitulated and surrendered. The Dey retired into Europe, and France was indemnified for the expenses of the war by his own treasury, which is said to have contained 50000000 francs. Algeria has since become one of the most important of the French colonies.

1. What happened after the second dethronement of Bonaparte? Who succeeded Louis XVIII.?—2. What expedition was undertaken in 1827?—3. How was the Dey of Algiers treated for having insulted the French Consul?

4. A few days after the conquest of Algiers, Charles X. issued his famous ordinance of July 25th, which brought on the Revolution of July. The struggle lasted during three days, July 27th, 28th, 29th, in consequence of which, Charles and his son successively abdicated in favor of the Duke of Bordeaux; but the Chamber of Deputies, refusing to ratify this arrangement, proclaimed, on the 9th of August, the Duke of Orleans King of France, under the title of Louis Philippe. Charles X. embarked for Holyrood in Scotland, and after residing some time in that ancient palace, proceeded to Prague, and thence to Goritz in Illyria, where he died on the 6th of November, 1836, in the eightieth year of his age.

5. At the time Louis Philippe began his reign, various governments of Europe were disturbed by revolutionary troubles. Belgium separated from Holland; Greece received a king from the House of Bavaria; Poland tried to shake off the Russian yoke; disorder reigned in Spain, Germany, Italy, Brazil, and other countries. In France, troubles were manifested at Lyons and Paris.

6. In 1832, a French army joined Belgium in her struggle with Holland, from whom they took the citadel of Antwerp.

7. In the mean time, the conquest of Algiers was extended and secured by the African army, which occupied successively Mostaganem, Oran, Bougia, Mascara, and other places, but particularly, Constantine, the taking of which was its greatest feat of arms. From this time, the colonization of this new country was actively undertaken: Philippeville was built, and ruined cities restored. Pope Gregory XVI. created the See of Algiers. A little later, 123 French soldiers immortalized themselves at Mazagran, by resisting 12000 Arabs.

8. In pursuance of a law enacted in 1840, the immense fortifications of Paris were undertaken: the capital was surrounded by a bastioned wall twenty-nine miles long. Thirteen forts were constructed in the environs. This year was noted for the devastation caused by the overflowing of the Saone and Rhone.

9. The year 1848 will ever be memorable for the grave events which were accomplished in Europe. On the 22nd of February and the two following days, a revolution broke out in France, which forced Louis Philippe to abdicate in favor of his grandson, the Count of Paris, under the regency of the Duchess

4. What did Charles X. do after the conquest of Algiers? In whose favor did Charles X. and his son abdicate? Where did Charles X. die? Who was his successor?—5. Which were the chief events of Louis Philippe's reign?—6. What took place in 1832?—7. What was done in Algiers at the same time?—8. What were undertaken in 1840?—9. What was there remarkable in 1848?

of Orleans, and to retire to England. The regency not being accepted, the Republic was proclaimed, and the reins of State confided to a provisional government, composed of eleven members. On May 4th, the power was remitted to the National Assembly, consisting of nine hundred deputies elected by universal suffrage.

10. On the 23rd of June, an insurrection broke out and continued during four days. Paris being in a state of siege, the Assembly declared itself permanent, and confided its power to General Cavaignac. This action caused a great number of victims to fall, among whom were seven or eight generals. The Most Rev. Affre, Archbishop of Paris, while exhorting the combatants to peace, was struck by a ball, and died from its effects a few days after. On the 28th, General Cavaignac, being first invested with Dictatorial power, was named chief of the Executive, and President of the Council of Ministers. Meanwhile, the Assembly were for three months employed in discussing the Constitution they were to give France, which they adopted on the 4th of November. On the 10th of December, Louis Napoleon Bonaparte was elected President of the Rupublic by universal suffrage, and on May 28th, 1849, the Constituent Assembly was replaced by a Legislative Assembly.

11. The Holy Father Pius IX. having been forced to leave Rome on account of an insurrection, a French army, under the command of General Oudinot, embarked, towards the end of April, 1849, for Civita Vecchia, and marched directly on the Eternal City. After a siege of a few weeks, the city surrendered to the French, who made their triumphal entry on the 2nd of July. The General-in-chief immediately sent an officer to Gaeta to inform the Pope of the victory, and to depose at his feet the keys of the Eternal City. Pius IX. returned to Rome in the month of April, met with a brilliant reception, and peacefully resumed the exercise of his authority.

12. In 1851, the majority of the Legislative Assembly became more and more hostile to the government of the President; but Louis Napoleon violently casting aside the Constitution, assumed Dictatorial power by his famous *coup d'état* of the 2nd of December. The following year, Dec. 2nd, 1852, he caused himself to be proclaimed Emperor of the French, under the name of Napoleon III.

13. In 1854, France and England formed an alliance against Russia in favor of Turkey. The allied forces, amounting to

10. What took place in Paris, on June 23rd, 1848?—11. What did France do when the Holy Father was forced to leave Rome? What was the result of the expedition?—12. What did Louis Napoleon do in 1851?—13. Relate the campaign of the Crimea.

60000 men, arrived at the Crimea, September 14th, and marched on Sebastopol, under the orders of Saint Arnaud, Commander-in-chief of the French army. On the 20th of the same month, they met the enemy, gained the glorious victory of Alma, and began the siege of Sebastopol. After some brilliant exploits under the walls of this city, the French succeeded in taking by assault the famous Fort of Malakoff, which forced Sebastopol to surrender. General Pelissier, made Commander-in-chief after the death of Saint Arnaud, was named Marshal of France and Duke of Malakoff.

14. In 1857, France joined England in the war with China, to obtain a reparation for the insults given to their flags, and also to punish her for the cruelties exercised over their missionaries. The allies took Canton and were rapidly marching on Pekin, when the Emperor of China hastened to sign a treaty of peace; but the latter was no sooner freed from the presence of his enemies, than he violated the promises he had made, and renewed his persecution of the Christians. A second expedition being sent to China, the victorious army made its entry in Pekin in October, 1860. A new treaty, much more advantageous than the first, was then signed, by which France and England obtained the right of maintaining an ambassador at Pekin; the Christians were to be free in future to practise their religion; eight ports of China were to be opened to European commerce; and the Emperor was to pay each of the two Western powers, an indemnity of $3160000.

15. France, assisted by Spain, undertook a similar expedition in 1861 against Cochin China. The Allies took Tourane and Saigon. Operations were suspended for a time, as Spain had withdrawn her forces; but France renewed hostilities in 1862, and obliged the Emperor of Anam to allow the free practice of Christianity in his States, to pay an indemnity, to cede three provinces, and to open in Tonquin three ports to European commerce.

16. It is to be regretted that, during these expeditions, France suffered herself to be drawn into a war with Italy. Louis Napoleon, espousing the quarrel of Victor Emmanuel with Austria, first sent an army to Italy; but he himself afterwards went to take the command. On June 4th, 1859, the French defeated the Austrians in the celebrated battle of Magenta, and on the 24th

14. What expedition was undertaken by France and England in 1857? Why were hostilities resumed? How did this war end?—15. What expedition was undertaken by France and Spain in 1861? What was its result? What was the Emperor of Anam obliged to do in 1862?—16. What do you know of the campaign of Italy in 1859? What was its result for France?

of the same month, in that of Solferino, which lasted sixteen hours. A treaty of peace was soon concluded at Zurich, by which Sardinia obtained Lombardy, and France, Savoy and the County of Nice.

17. In 1861, France, England, and Spain conjointly sent a fleet to Mexico. This expedition was at first successful; but some difficulties having arisen, Spain and England withdrew their forces, leaving France to prosecute the war alone. The French soon gained brilliant victories, and made themselves masters of Mexico. The sequel proved this enterprise to have been one of the greatest errors of Louis Napoleon: it cost France much blood and money, without realizing any of the ends for which it was undertaken.

18. In 1869, Louis Napoleon granted a Constitution with a Responsible Ministry. On July 23rd, 1870, for rather slight reasons, he declared war against Prussia. On the 2nd of September, after a series of terrible reverses, he was made prisoner at Sedan together with an army of 90000 men. At this news, a revolution broke out in Paris, which declared the deposition of the Emperor, and proclaimed the Rupublic. The Germans, abandoning the sieges of Metz, Strasburg, and other places, marched on Paris, which was completely invested on the 19th. The fall of Strasburg, Sept. 28th, was, one month later, followed by that of Metz with 200000 prisoners. The inexperienced troops organized by the provincial government, could not raise the siege of Paris, which, after a heroic resistance of four months, was finally obliged to surrender through famine, January 28th, 1871. During the siege, the city had no other means of communication than by balloons and trained pigeons. An armistice having been agreed to, France elected an Assembly to decide for peace or war. The preliminaries of peace were ratified on March 1st. France was condemned to pay Prussia an indemnity of £200000000, and to cede her Alsace and one-fifth of Lorraine, comprising Metz.

---

17. Relate something of the expedition against Mexico. What was its end?—18. What did Louis Napoleon do in 1869? When did he declare war against Prussia? What happened to him at Sedan? What was the result of this unfortunate war?

SECTION I.

ENGLAND.

HOUSE OF LANCASTER—*Henry VI.*; HOUSE OF YORK—*Edward IV., Edward V., Richard III.*, 1453-1485.

1. The continental reverses of England, together with the loss of all her French possessions, caused the House of Lancaster to become very unpopular. Profiting by the disaffection of the people, Richard, Duke of York, a descendant of Edward III., raised the standard of civil war against Henry VI. of Lancaster, and seized the power which had been taken from his family by Henry IV.

2. Historians and poets call this contest the *War of the Two Roses*, from the fact that the House of Lancaster had a red rose for its symbol, whereas the House of York had a white one. This war is one of the longest and most desperate mentioned in history, having lasted thirty years, 1455-1485.

3. The Duke of York caused himself to be named Lieutenant of the King and Protector of the Kingdom; but Margaret of Anjou, wife of Henry VI., roused to indignation at the part which Richard of York assumed in the government, pressed her husband to reconquer his prerogatives by armed force. The King was defeated and made prisoner in the battle of St. Albans, 1455. His energetic Queen, however, pursued the war and gained the battle of Wakefield, in which the Duke of York was overthrown and slain, 1460. After this action, the eldest son of the Duke, aged twelve years, was murdered in cold blood by a certain Lord, who pretended thus to avenge the death of his own father.

4. HOUSE OF YORK.—The blood of Richard and his son did not yet exterminate the Yorkists. The Earl of Warwick, putting himself at their head, had the young son of Richard crowned at London, under the title of Edward IV. In the decisive battle of Towton, 1461, he put to flight the unfortunate Margaret with her child.

5. Edward IV. now thought himself securely seated on the

1. How did the House of Lancaster lose the affection of the people? What did the Duke of York do?—2. What was the origin of the War of the Two Roses?—3. What did Margaret of Anjou do? Where was Henry VI. made prisoner? Where was the Duke of York vanquished? What was done to his eldest son?—4. Who got Edward IV. crowned King? Where was Margaret vanquished?—5. What did the Earl of Warwick do? Where did he die?

throne; but Warwick, filled with indignation at the King's marriage with Elizabeth Woodville, widow of a simple nobleman, went to France, and offered his services to Margaret, whom he had before so vigorously combated. Victory still favoring the Earl, he overthrew Edward, whom he had raised to the throne; and releasing Henry VI. from prison, presented him the sceptre amid the acclamations of the people, who styled Warwick the *king-maker*. His triumph, however, was of short duration. Edward IV. appeared again at the head of a powerful army, and vanquished the Earl of Warwick on the plains of Barnet, 1471, in which battle the Earl lost his life.

6. Edward dishonored his victory by the violent measures he used against his enemies. Margaret, taken at Tewkesbury, saw her son, her only hope, put to death; Henry VI. was found dead in prison; and scaffolds were erected for shedding the blood spared in the war. Edward's cruelty was extended even to those nearest to him by the ties of nature. He ordered the death of his brother, the Duke of Clarence, who, having had the choice of his death, preferred perishing in a cask of Malmsey wine. But it is said that Edward IV. was himself despatched with poison by his own brother, the Duke of Gloucester, 1483.

7. Being named regent, the Duke of Gloucester ordered his two nephews, Edward V. and Richard, known as the *children of Edward*, to be put to death. These two children having perished by the poignard of an assassin, the regent, who had exterminated all his family, had himself proclaimed King, under the name of Richard III., 1483. The usurped crown, however, did not remain long with him; for, Henry Tudor of Richmond, who belonged to the House of Lancaster, being a descendant of a brother of Henry VI., sailed for England with an army which the regent of France, Anne de Beaujeu, allowed him to raise, and gained the battle of Bosworth, in which the tyrant Richard III. found the punishment of his crimes, 1485.

---

6. How did Edward IV. dishonor his victory? What was the end of Henry V.? How did Edward IV. die?—7. What became of Edward V. and Richard, the children of Edward IV.? What became of Richard III.? How was he dethroned by Henry Tudor?

SECTION II.

THE TUDOR FAMILY—*Henry VII., Henry VIII., Edward VI., Mary, Elizabeth*, 1485–1603.

1. Henry of Richmond, under the name of Henry VII., began the Tudor dynasty. By his marriage with Elizabeth of York, the rights and pretensions of the rival Houses were united. The English throne, which seemed to give way under the pressure of civil broils, became firm by the very causes of its weakness. Though the nobility were already decimated and impoverished, yet, Henry VII. weakened them still more by frequent and arbitrary confiscations. This Prince favored commerce and industry, and created the English navy. He also furnished Sebastian Cabot with the means of discovering Florida and Newfoundland. Before dying, 1509, Henry gave his daughter Margaret in marriage to James IV., King of Scotland, and caused his eldest son Arthur to marry Catharine of Aragon. Arthur having died six months after this marriage, his brother Henry became Prince of Wales, and married his widow.

2. Henry VII. was succeeded by his son Henry VIII., 1509. On ascending the throne, Henry VIII. found in the treasury, which the avarice of his father had well replenished, the means of waging war against France and Scotland. He defeated Louis XII. in the battle of the *Spurs*, vanquished and slew James IV., the friend of the French, in the battle of Flodden Field, 1513. Shortly after, a general peace being declared, he gave his sister Mary in marriage to Louis XII.

3. At first attached to the Holy See, Henry VIII. received from the Pope the title of *Defender of the Faith*, for having refuted, in a theological work, Luther's doctrine on the Sacraments; but his subsequent conduct was as remarkable as it was infamous. After being married eighteen years to Catharine of Aragon, he desired to annul this marriage, under the pretext that she had been for some months the wife of his brother. This was a vain scruple, because he had previously obtained the necessary dispensations from Rome. The fact is, Henry had become violently enamoured of Anne Boleyn, one of the Queen's maids of honor, and wanted to marry her. Pope Clement VII. having refused

1. Which dynasty ascended the throne after Richard III.? Describe the reign of Henry VII. To whom did he marry his children?—2. Who was his successor? State the commencement of the reign of Henry VIII.—3. What title did he receive from the Pope? Why did he ask for a divorce? What reason did he allege for his divorce? What did Henry VIII. do, the Pope having refused to grant his request?

to countenance this guilty intrigue, the King broke off with Rome, and declared himself the *Protector* and *Head* of the Anglican Church. He rejected certain doctrines, whereas others, such as auricular confession, he imposed under the pain of death.

4. Henry expelled the religious from their monasteries, and took possession of their goods, which he applied to his own use or distributed to his obsequious agents. John Fisher, Bishop of Rochester, the ex-chancellor Thomas More, and few other personages, who alone among the clergy and the aristocratic class, had the courage to contradict the King, were made to perish in atrocious torments. As the slightest resistance led to capital punishment, innumerable executions stained the kingdom with blood.

5. In the hands of Henry VIII., the Parliament was the docile instrument of his most odious and arbitrary despotism. Anarchy, which signalized the War of the Two Roses, in fatiguing the nation, had deprived the people of all jurisdiction. The Bill of *Attainder*, which freed Henry VIII. of all judicial formality, condemned before hand those whose death he desired. The sums proceeding from the pillaged monasteries, were foolishly squandered, while the poor, who had been provided for by the religious, were now left to die of want and in misery. Henry VIII. was the first to assume the title of *King of Ireland;* and recoiled from no measure, however cruel or perfidious, to consolidate his dominion over that Catholic Island. Of the six wives he successively espoused, two were sent to the scaffold, notably Anne Boleyn, who first had inspired so violent a passion in the King's breast, that, in order to satisfy its cravings, he had renounced the religion of his ancestors.

6. During his last years, Henry VIII. suffered the most horrible tortures. His faculties were so weakened by his excesses, that he no longer attended to the affairs of his kingdom, but limited himself to the signing of death-warrants. Finally, on the 28th of January, 1547, he went to give the Almighty an account of his tyranny, and of all the evils with which he had afflicted the Church.

7. The son of Henry VIII. by Jane Seymour, was the next King of England, under the name of Edward VI., 1553. Being

4. How did Henry VIII. treat the religious? How did he deal with those who would not subscribe to his arbitrary decrees?—5. What is said of the Parliament under Henry VIII.? What use did he make of the goods of the monasteries? How many wives did he successively espoused? What was the fate of Anne Boleyn?—6. What do you know of the last years of Henry VIII? Of whom was Edward VI the son?—7. To whom was the regency confided? By whom was Somerset overthrown?

but ten years old, the regency was confided to the Duke of Somerset, his maternal uncle, whose greatest desire was to strengthen Calvinism, and proscribe all the moral usages introduced by Catholicity. The Duke waged war against Scotland with some success; but was less happy on the continent, as he lost Boulogne, which was taken by France. The ambitious Warwick, Duke of Northumberland, overthrew him and assumed the title of Protector. He had even made preparations to confiscate for himself the royal authority, when Edward VI. died.

8. At the death of Edward VI., 1552, the people, who greatly regretted the loss of their ancient belief, and who had shed tears at the fate of the injured Catharine of Aragon, declared for Mary Tudor, daughter of this unfortunate Queen. Warwick, like Somerset, was beheaded, and Lady Jane Grey, great-granddaughter of Henry VII., who had espoused the son of Warwick, and who had been proclaimed Queen by the Duke's partisans, was pardoned as well as her husband. But the spirit and projects of Warwick did not die with him; for shortly afterwards, a new conspiracy was formed in favor of Jane Grey. Thereupon, the principal leaders with Lady Jane and her husband Lord Dudley, were led to the scaffold.

9. Mary was profoundly Catholic. She married Philip, Infante of Spain, son of Charles V., and occupied herself, as soon as she ascended the throne, with giving to the people the worship and faith of their ancestors. The ancient liturgy, which was universally regretted, was unanimously re-established by the Parliament, who abolished all the decrees of Somerset and Cranmer. The Protestants, however, did not consider their cause lost. They multiplied their pamphlets against the government, the Bishops, and the Roman Church; and even asked of Heaven the death of the Queen. They attempted to take the lives of the Priests, and stirred up everywhere seditions against the lawful authority. To repress these attempts, Mary was obliged to do violence to the mildness of her character. However, it must be said that the rigor she exercised towards Protestants, but which has been much exaggerated, was highly disapproved of by the Papal Nuncio. In 1558, the Duke of Guise dispossessed the English of Calais, the last of their French possessions. This event, together with the anxiety caused by her sister Elizabeth's suspected faith, filled the Queen with much grief. "Open my

8. Who succeeded Edward. VI? What was the fate of Warwick?—9. What did Mary do on ascending the throne? What obliged her to deal with severity against the Protestants? What were the two great afflictions which caused her death?

heart," said she frequently, "and you will find therein written Calais and Elizabeth." Her death was caused by these two great afflictions, on the 24th of November, 1558. Her virtues have been eulogized by all, even by Protestants.

10. Elizabeth, daughter of Anne Boleyn, succeeded her sister Mary. She was scarcely on the throne, when she openly declared against Catholicity, adopted Protestantism as the religion of the kingdom, and assumed, like her father, the title of *Supreme Head of the Anglican Church.* She began a cruel and systematic persecution against her Catholic subjects, without any of the causes which determined Mary to use the severity mentioned in her reign. She revived all the statutes enacted against them, and added many others far more oppressive. To deny her supremacy over the Church, or to recognize the Pope's jurisdiction in her States, or to convert any one to the Catholic Faith, was an act of high treason. These statutes, which have disgraced England during nearly three centuries, are not yet all repealed.

11. Elizabeth became reconciled with France by signing the Treaty of Cateau-Cambresis, 1559. Her hatred for the Roman Church, was augmented by her antipathy for Mary Stuart, the young Queen of Scotland, who was then in France, where she had espoused Francis II. On the death of Mary Tudor, she had the imprudence to assume the title of Queen of England, basing her pretensions on the illegitimacy of Elizabeth, and on her being the granddaughter of Henry VII. For this reason, when Mary Stuart, becoming a widow, returned to Scotland, she had no repose on account of the continual conspiracies fomented by England against her.

12. After a series of most tragical and afflicting events, the unfortunate Queen of Scots was obliged to leave her States. She requested an asylum from her cousin Elizabeth; but instead of the expected protection, she found a captivity which lasted for nineteen years. The austere and cruel Queen of England had dissimulated her fears and resentment, but had never forgotten them. She finally implicated her cousin in some real or imaginary plot, but without proof, and made her appear before a tribunal of her own choosing, which pronounced the sentence of death against the captive, 1587. This atrocious act has stamped the character of Elizabeth with a most infamous stain, which will descend with her name to the remotest posterity.

13. Philip II., King of Spain, indignant at the aid which

10. Who succeeded Mary Tudor? What were the proceedings of Elizabeth once on the throne?—11. How did her enmity with Mary Stuart arise?—12. How did she behave towards her?—13. Why did Philip. II undertake an expedition against England? What was its result?

Elizabeth gave to the people of the Netherlands in their revolt against him, equipped a formidable fleet, called the *Invincible Armada*, 1588, with the view to invade and subjugate England. This vast armament, however, never reached its destination; having been dispersed by a violent tempest on the coast of France, its destruction was completed by the English Admirals, Howard and Sir Francis Drake.

14. If the policy of Elizabeth was merciless, especially when it was question to revenge the wounds made to her self-love as a woman, it is no less true to say that she was an eminently able Sovereign, and that she raised England to a high degree of maritime power and commercial prosperity. Her admirals were brave and skilful: Sir Francis Drake, by her order, circumnavigated the world, ravaged the Spanish colonies, and took possession of California; Walter Raleigh founded the first English colony in the United States, and called it Virginia in honor of his Sovereign. Her reign was also rendered illustrious by Shakespeare, the greatest dramatic poet of England.

15. Notwithstanding the flatteries of her contemporaries, Elizabeth does not appear to have been irreproachable in her morals. The Earl of Essex, the last of her favorites, was sacrificed like several others before him. She was deceitful, perfidious, cruel, tyrannical, and deprived of those amiable qualities which are the ornaments of her sex. This proud Queen, however, could not dissimulate her crimes. Her remorse increased in violence according as her end approached. These interior troubles caused her death at the age of seventy, 1603.

SECTION III.

DYNASTY OF THE STUARTS—*James I. and Charles I.* REPUBLIC—*Olivier and Richard Cromwell.* RESTORATION OF THE STUARTS—*Charles II., James II., William III. and Mary, Anne,* 1603–1714.

1. At the death of Elizabeth, James VI., King of Scotland and son of Mary Stuart, was nominated as her successor, being the descendant of James IV. and Margaret, daughter of Henry VII. On his accession, he took the title of James I., and thus were the crowns of England, Scotland, and Ireland, united.

14. What were the qualities of Elizabeth? What great men illustrated her reign?—15. What do you know of her private conduct? Of her last years?

1. Who was the successor of Elizabeth? What did James I. do? What was the *Gunpowder Plot*?

The bloody persecutions which he ordained against Catholics in defiance of his mother, caused the famous *Gunpowder Plot*, 1605, so called from the fact that the conspirators intended to blow up the Parliament House, and thus involve in one common ruin the King and his ministers.

2. The pretensions of James I. to absolute power encountered much opposition in the House of Commons. The latter refused to vote the subsidies, and thus placed the King in the impossibility of aiding Holland, which had revolted against his son-in-law, the Elector Palatine, then engaged in the Thirty Years' War. Equally odious to both Catholics and Anglicans, he sought to forget the cares of government by occupying himself in theological quarrels, and in displaying a pedantic erudition, which obtained for him the surname of *Master James*. Abandoned all his life time to favorites, the principal of whom was George Villiers, Duke of Buckingham, James left to his son Charles I. the kingdom a prey to religious and political passions, 1625.

3. Already suspected by the Anglicans and Presbyterians on account of his marriage with a Catholic Princess, Henrietta of France, daughter of Henry IV., Charles I. increased the general discontent by his arbitrary acts, and by his blind confidence in the frivolous Buckingham. The failure of the expedition to La Rochelle, the introduction of a new liturgy of his own invention, and the illegal levying of taxes which had been refused by the Commons, served to increase this dissatisfaction, and caused the nation to rise against him. The Parliament drew up a long list of its privileges, called the *Petition of Rights*, and presented it to the King for his sanction. The Scots repulsed the Episcopacy which had been imposed on them, and formed a new Presbyterian league called the National Covenant, 1638.

4. The King allowed his minister Strafford, who had faithfully served him, to be judged and condemned to death by Parliament. This act of weakness excited the audacity of a seditious assembly that joined the rebels of Scotland. Parliament was dissolved four times and re-assembled as often without reducing the opposition. Civil war was not long before breaking out, 1642.

5. At the head of the nobility, who, the greater part, had remained faithful to him, and of the Irish who rallied to his

2. How were the pretensions of James I. received by the House of Commons?—3. Who was the successor of James I.? Whom did Charles I. marry? What effect had this union on the English? How was their discontent increased? What forced Scotland to revolt?—4. How was Strafford treated by Parliament?—5. What caused the civil war to break out? How were the opposite parties styled? Who was Cromwell? Which battle did he gain?

cause, Charles took up arms in the hope of recovering his power. His partisans were called *Cavaliers* and his enemies *Round-heads*. He several times encountered the army of Parliament with various success. Queen Henrietta, who heroically seconded him, crossed the Channel more than once to bring him succor. He conquered at Worcester and Edgehill, 1642, but was defeated at Newbury, Marston Moor, and lost the decisive battle of Naseby, 1645, in which Fairfax and Oliver Cromwell distinguished themselves. The latter, "a man of great depth of mind, a refined hypocrite as well as an able politician, active and indefatigable in peace and in war," was the leader of a bigoted sect called *Independents*, who desired to level all distinctions in religion as well as in the government.

6. The conquered King confided himself to the Scots, who basely delivered him to Parliament. He succeeded in effecting his escape, but was overtaken on the Isle of Wight, and led back to London where his enemies had him tried. This was the first example, in modern times, of a king being judged and condemned by his own subjects. Charles I. showed until his last moments much dignity, resignation, and courage; he was beheaded at Whitehall on the 9th of February, 1749. England has, since then, commemorated the anniversary of his death as a national affliction.

7. Cromwell culled the fruits of the regicide of which he was the principal author. He subjugated unhappy Ireland with the ferocity of an executioner; defeated the son of Charles I., who was defended by the Scots, at the battles of Dunbar, 1650, and Worcester, 1751; and opened for himself a road to absolute power by employing both force and craft. After having ignominiously driven away the *Long Parliament*, which had conferred on him the title of Commander-in-chief, he caused himself to be named by another Assembly, *Protector*, or chief of the English Republic, 1653; but shortly afterwards, he dismissed the deputies in order to govern uncontrolled.

8. The government of Cromwell, always despotic, but firm and able, was respected both abroad and at home. Holland humbled, Jamaica taken from the Spaniards, Dunkerque acquired, advantageous alliances made with continental powers, raised and aggrandized England, while, at the same time, the *Navigation Act* assured her maritime preponderance. Cromwell died in 1658,

6. What became of Charles I.? What was his end?—7. Who was at the head of the government after the death of Charles I.? How did Cromwell treat Ireland? What title did he receive from Parliament?—8. What was the government of Cromwell? Against what nations did he wage war? At what age did he die?

at the age of fifty-nine years, with the reputation of being a politician of genius.

9. His son Richard Cromwell, unable to bear the burden of the Protectorate, and too honest to maintain his position by crime, resigned at the end of a few months. The restoration of the Stuarts was then accomplished in the person of Charles II., son of the unfortunate Charles I., owing to the assistance and profound ability of General Monk, Governor of Scotland, 1660. At the epoch of the civil and religious wars of England, Milton, the author of *The Paradise Lost* and secretary of Cromwell, was born. He is, after Shakespeare, the most illustrious representative of English poetry.

10. Charles II., recalled to England, showed that he had profited very little by the cruel lessons of experience. Though endowed with brilliant qualities, yet he had no foresight, and, moreover, sacrificed every thing, even the dignity of his country, to his love of pleasure. He began by estranging himself from public opinion in declaring war against Holland, and in contracting an intimate alliance with Louis XIV., from whom he received a considerable pension. From this reign dates the distinction of *Whigs* and *Tories:* the former being more attached to the popular cause, and the latter, more devoted to royalty and the Anglican Church.

11. Without being personally hostile to Catholics, Charles II. was compelled by Parliament to confirm the Bill of the *Test Oath,* which excluded them from all public charges and employments. This Act was, in a special manner, directed against the Duke of York, the King's brother, who was distrusted on account of his attachment to the Roman Faith ; in fact, he resigned the Admiralship in order to avoid taking this Oath. Another bill, conceived in a more liberal spirit, honored the government of Charles II. This was the *Habeas Corpus* Act, by which individual liberty was protected. The last years of Charles II. were troubled by a revolt of the Puritans, or rigid Presbyterians of Scotland, who desired neither Anglicanism nor the Monarchy. He died in 1685, leaving the crown to his brother, the Duke of York, who took the name of James II.

12. Being a Catholic, this Prince thought he could without

---

9. Who succeeded Cromwell? Why did Richard Cromwell resign? What do you know of General Monk? Name some distinguished men who then illustrated England.—10. Who was Charles II.? What was his character? What is meant by Whigs? By Tories?—11. To what was Charles II. forced by Parliament? What was the Test Oath? What was the Habeas Corpus Act? Who succeeded Charles II.?—12. What religion did James II. profess? By whom was he overthrown? Where did he retire?

danger proclaim liberty of conscience, and give to Catholics the free exercise of their religion ; but the Protestants, who claimed this liberty when it was favorable to the propagation of their doctrines, condemned it when it seemed to turn against them. The malcontents, therefore, secretly concerted with William, Prince of Orange, who did not hesitate to sail for England with an army of 15000 soldiers, with the design of overthrowing his father-in-law. James II. could scarcely conceive such a perfidy ; he left his kingdom without offering the least resistance and retired in France, where Louis XIV. gave him the Castle of St. Germain for his residence, with 150000 francs to buy himself a suitable equipage, and 50000 francs a month for his subsistence.

13. The Revolution of 1688, which occupies so prominent a place in the annals of England, did not modify very sensibly her essentially aristocratic constitution.

The lords, commons, and citizens preserved their respective privileges ; the rights of the crown were limited ; and Parliament became the first power of the State.

14. The Irish having risen in favor of the fugitive King, Louis XIV. put at his service a corps of 8000 men, with whom the dethroned Prince attempted to land at Kinsale in Ireland. It was in vain, however, that Chateau-Renaud and Tourville performed prodigies on the sea ; for, the day after that on which the latter defeated the combined fleets of England and Holland before Dieppe, King James lost the battle of the Boyne, 1690, and was forced to quit Ireland.

15. William of Orange, afterwards William III., triumphed over all obstacles by his ability and perseverance. The Catholic Stuarts never regained the crown. During his reign, literature could boast of such names as Pope, Swift, Addison, and Locke.

16. William III. having died without children, 1702, the Parliament rejected the Catholic Stuarts, and called to the throne the daughter of James II., Anne, who was a Protestant, and who had married a Prince of Denemark. This epoch was one of the most glorious in the History of England, by the victories of Marlborough, the acquisition of important maritime possessions, and the eclat of letters. Scotland was finally united to the crown by the fusion of the two Parliaments in one. Queen

13. What changes did the Revolution of 1688 operate ?—14. What did Louis XIV. do in favor of James II. ? What was the result of the battle of the Boyne?—15. What title did William of Orange take? What distinguished men of letters illustrated his reign ?—16. Who was the successor of William III. ? In what was the reign of Anne made remarkable ? What did Anne seek to obtain from Parliament ?

Anne, having no children, sought to obtain from Parliament the recall of her exiled family; but her endeavors were fruitless.

SECTION IV.

HOUSE OF BRUNSWICK—*George I., George II., George III., George IV., William IV., Victoria*, 1714–1837.

1. George I., son of the first Elector of Hanover and of the granddaughter of James I., was preferred to the Pretender, son of James II., 1714. He is the head of the Brunswick-Hanoverian dynasty, which now occupies the throne of England. George I. was more clever than scrupulous. His fleet, commanded by Admiral Byng, destroyed, in times of peace, that of Spain, on the coasts of Sicily. His minister, Robert Walpole, by buying the votes in Parliament, caused all the measures favorable to royal prerogatives to pass.

2. George II. succeeded his father in 1727, and did not fail to keep at the head of his ministry the man who practised so kilfully parliamentary corruption. During his reign, England played an important part in the affairs of Europe. She espoused the cause of Maria Theresa of Austria, against the Emperor Charles and Louis XV. of France. The principal States of Europe, also, took part in this war, called the *War of the Austrian Succession*. Success was divided. The English and their allies, commanded by George II. in person, defeated the French at Dettingen; but the French, under the Marshal of Saxe, gained the important battle of Fontenoy over the English, commanded by the Duke of Cumberland, second son of the King, 1745. After the war had been vigorously pursued for some time, peace was restored by the Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, in which the rights of Maria Theresa were recognized.

3. While George II. was engaged on the continent, Charles Edward, grandson of James II., aided by the French government, made a final effort to seize the throne of his ancestors. The young Prince landed in Scotland, gained the favor of the warlike tribes of Highlanders, and advanced with his victorious troops to within thirty leagues of London. Forced to retreat, and coming to an engagement at Culloden, Charles Edward was overthrown by the Duke of Cumberland, 1746. The conqueror

1. What was George I. before his accession? Who was his minister?—2. Who was the successor of George I.? What war did George II. undertake? What victory did he gain? What other battle was lost by his armies?—3. What did Charles Edward undertake? What was the result of the expedition?

was so merciless on this occasion that he was surnamed the *butcher*. This was the last attempt of the Stuarts, France herself abandoned this hopeless cause.

4. If the Seven Years' War was not favorable to England on the continent, it procured her, at least, many other advantages on sea, together with the acquisition of Canada, Nova Scotia, and Cape Breton Island, 1760, by which she became possessed of nearly all of North America.

5. George II. was succeeded, in 1760, by his grandson, George III., aged eighteen years. This Prince began his reign at an epoch when the arms of the nation were triumphant everywhere, and the administration of the government directed by the genius of William Pitt (Lord Chatham), one of the most eminent and popular ministers we read of in the annals of the nation. In 1762, Great Britain declared war against Spain, and took possession of several Islands of the Antilles.

6. In 1775, the English colonies of America revolted against their metropolis. After a long and expensive struggle, Great Britain was obliged to acknowledge their independence, 1783. In 1793, England declared war against the French Revolutionists, and began a series of military and naval operations, which terminated by the triumph of the allied powers of Europe over Napoleon, 1815. In 1798, a rebellion broke out in Ireland; and in 1800, the Parliament of this unfortunate country was united to that of Great Britain.

7. In 1811, the King having become insane, his son, the Prince of Wales, was named regent. The following year, the United States declared war against Great Britain. This war was terminated by the Treaty of Ghent in 1815. George III. died in 1820, after a reign of sixty years, which was rendered illustrious by a multitude of men celebrated in politics, war, philosophy, eloquence, and poetry.

8. The Prince of Wales, who, during the last ten years of his father's life, had governed as regent, succeeded him in 1820 with the title of George IV. This Prince, who had been prodigal and dissipated in youth, was endowed with much talent and ability. The most remarkable events of his reign, were: first, the extension of the British Empire in India; secondly, the

4. What acquisition did Great Britain make in 1760?—5. Who succeeded George II. What remarkable minister had he? What did Great Britain do in 1762?—6. What did the English colonies of America undertake in 1775? How did the contest terminate? What did England do in 1793? What took place in 1798? In 1800?—7. Who was regent during the insanity of the King? When did George III. die?—8. Who was his successor? What were the qualities of George IV.? What were the chief events of his reign?

aid granted to the Greeks in their struggle for independence, which was assured them by the naval victory of Navarino over the Turks, gained in 1827 by the combined fleets of England, France, and Russia; and thirdly, the passing of the Emancipation Act, which freed the Catholics from the political incapacity, which had, since so long a time, weighed on them both in England and Ireland.

9. George IV. died at Windsor, June 26th, 1830, in the sixty-eighth year of his age and the eleventh of his reign. His brother William, Duke of Clarence, succeeded him under the title of William IV. During the peaceful reign of this Monarch, a parliamentary Reform Bill was passed, 1832. William IV was succeeded in 1837 by Queen Victoria, daughter of his brother, the Duke of Kent. It is to be regretted that, during the early period of her reign, history had to register: first, the cruel injustice of her government towards unhappy Ireland during the famine which then afflicted that country; secondly, the malevolent attempt of the British ministry, who sought to stir up a party spirit among the citizens by getting a law voted which forbade the Catholics to make use of Ecclesiastical Titles,—a law regarded at first as null by those whom it was destined to molest.

10. In 1853, began the troubles on the Turkish question; and, on the 28th of March, 1854, England and France, having just terminated an offensive and defensive alliance, declared war against Russia. On page 198 the progress and results of this war are related.

11. This war, which showed the power and credit of England, exposed also her weak side. The restoration of peace was a benefit to her; for the year was hardly passed, and she had just commenced hostilities with Persia and China, when, in January 1857, an insurrection broke out in her great army of Sepoys in Bengal. Delhi, the old capital of the Mongols fell into the hands of the Sepoys, and the nominal Emperor of the Mongols found himself to be a real Sovereign. The sedition spread rapidly, and shortly after, all the army of Bengal became, with few exceptions, as hostile to the English as those that had combated against them at Wandiwash and Assaye.

12. At the end of 1858, this formidable revolt was totally suppressed. The Major-General Sir Henry Havelock, partic-

9. Who succeeded George IV.? What was the reign of William IV.? Who was his successor? What were the chief acts of the first years of Queen Victoria's reign?—10. What took place in 1853 and 1854?—11. When did an insurrection break out in Bengal? What was its result?—12. What do you know of Sir Henry Havelock and Sir Colin Campbell?

ularly distinguished himself in this war, but did not live long enough to see its end. After defeating the Sepoys in nine battles, he died at Lucknow on the 25th of November, 1857. The war was concluded by General Sir Colin Campbell, who, for his services, was raised to the Peerage. In the month of October, 1860, an Anglo-French army made its entry into Pekin, capital of China.—See page 199.

SCOTLAND.

From the first century of the Christian era, to the accession of James IV. to the throne of England, under the name of James I., in 1603.

1. The first inhabitants of Scotland were undoubtedly of Celtic origin. The Romans extended their conquests to within the southern part of Scotland, then occupied by the Caledonians. Agricola, 85 A. C., drove the natives towards the friths of Forth and Clyde; Adrian, 120, hemmed them in by a wall from the Tyne to the frith of Solway; and twenty years later, under the reign of Antoninus, another wall was constructed which connected the Forth and Clyde. The country situated south of this wall took the name of Valentia. In 207, Septimus Severus built another wall still more northward.

2. The Scots, from Ireland, and the Picts, of Gothic origin, afterwards occupied Northern Scotland. These tribes made incursions into the North of Britain, at first against the Romans, and after the departure of these, against the Britons. In 843, Kenneth II. united the two crowns of the Picts and Scots, and thus became the first King of Scotland. Scotch historians count sixty-six kings before this Monarch, the first of whom was Fergus, who reigned B. C. 350; but the existence of the kings previous to Fergus II., who ascended the throne 410 A. C., is considered fabulous. Christianity penetrated into Scotland, in the sixth century.

3. In the eleventh century, under the reign of Malcolm III., 1047-1093, who espoused a Saxon Princess, known as St Margaret of Scotland, a great number of Saxons, to escape the domination of William the Conqueror, retired to Scotland. The wild habits of the inhabitants were modified under the influence of the Saxons.

---

1. What do you known of the first inhabitants of Scotland? How far did the Romans extend their conquest? What did Agricola do in 85 A. C.? What did Adrian do later? Antoninus? Septimus Severus?—2. Who were the Scots and Picts? What do you know of Kenneth II.? Of Fergus II.?—3. What do you know of Malcolm III.?

4. On the death of Alexander III., 1286, the old line of kings became extinct; and, after various revolutions, during which Bruce, Baliol, and Stuart, contended for the crown, the latter at last triumphed, 1370. During these domestic troubles, England made several attempts to unite Scotland to her dominions; but Robert Bruce, at Bannockburn, 1314, compelled her to defer the execution of this project.

5. David II., who succeeded Robert Bruce, having died without issue, had as his successor, in 1370, his nephew Robert Stuart, under the name of Robert II. He was the chief of the royal House of the Stuarts. Eight princes of this House reigned successively after him. One of them, James I., seeking to check the power and pride of his barons, was assassinated by them, 1437.

6. James II., son of James I., continued the work of his father with success; but James III., 1460, who succeeded James II., provoked a general insurrection, in which he was vanquished and slain, 1488. James IV., by espousing Margaret, daughter of Henry VII., King of England, acquired for his descendants the right of pretending to the throne of England. He perished in combating the English, at the battle of Flodden Field, 1513. James V., by espousing Mary of Guise, drew closer the bonds which united France to Scotland, since a long time allied to one another.

7. Under the reign of James V., began the troubles of the Reformation, fomented by England, and preached with an unheard of violence by John Knox, an apostate monk. His daughter Mary Stuart, affianced to the Dauphin of France, afterwards Francis II., succeeded him, 1542. The great opposition of this Queen to Protestantism, was the source of the discontent which later degenerated into open revolt, forcing her to take refuge in England, with her cousin Elizabeth; but the latter, instead of giving her aid, kept her a prisoner and afterwards put her to death, 1587.

8. James, son of Mary Stuart, succeeded his mother in Scotland, under the name of James VI., and, after the death of Elizabeth, became the King of England, under the name of James I. 1603. Scotland, however, preserved her Parliament, her laws,

4. What happened in Scotland after the death of Alexander III.? What victory did Robert Bruce gained?—5. Who succeeded Robert Bruce? Who was the head of the Stuart dynasty? What did James I. do?—6. What was the end of James III.? Whom did James IV. marry? What was his end? Who was his successor?—7. What happened under James V.? Who succeeded him? What do you know of Mary Stuart?—8. Who succeeded Mary Stuart on the throne of Scotland? Did Scotland keep long her Parliament?

and her title to a kingdom; it was but after another century, 1707, that Queen Anne combined the two kingdoms, under the name of Great Britain.

IRELAND.

SECTION I.

1. Ireland was known to the civilized nations of antiquity. Aristotle, who speaks of Great Britain, calls Ireland, *Ierne;* and, before him, Orpheus, in his Argonautics, named her *Iernis.* Festus Avienus relates that Hamilcon, the Carthaginian, visited Ireland, called *Sacra Insula,* and that his fellow-countrymen had commercial relations with her inhabitants. The Romans gave her the name of *Hibernia,* but never possessed a clear and complete notion of her, and never established their sway on this Island. The old traditions of Ireland are so obscure, and so little can be gleaned from her old ruins and monuments, that it is almost impossible to write an account of her past. Recourse must be had to Tigernach and the other annalists of the Middle Ages, who have brought their histories back to two centuries before our era.

2. According to the best authorities, it appears that Ireland was inhabited by a Celtic race. These people in their turn were vanquished by the Firbolgs, a tribe of the great Gothic family. Finally, the Scots who, according to the bards, coming from Spain, under the leadership of Milesius' sons, became masters of the Island and permanently settled on her hills. The descendants of Milesius supplied kings to Ireland until her conquest by the English.

3. Ireland was divided into six kingdoms. That of Tara, the smallest but the most fertile, was the seat of the Supreme government. By the King of Ireland was meant the King of Tara. The remaining five kingdoms were subdivided each into five fefs, and the name of king was given to the possessor of each. All the crowns, the chief king's as well as the subordinate ones, were hereditary as to the family, but elective as to the person.

4. The first remarkable event which is found in the Irish annals, and on which Tigernach first throws the lights of historical truth, is the foundation of the palace of Emania by King

1. What do we know of the primitive history of Ireland?—2. Who were her first inhabitants? Which was the last tribe that settle on this Island? Which tribe gave kings to Ireland?—3. How was Ireland divided? Which was the chief kingdom?—4. When did King Kimboath reign? Name some of his successors.

Kimboath, B. C. 200. Among his successors is named Hugony the Great, who divided Ireland into thirty-five districts, and, for a short time, put an end to the five larger governments. Two centuries, wholly sterile in events, elapsed from Hugony to Conary the Great, whose reign begins with the Christian era. Out of his thirty-two predecessors, say the historians, twenty-nine perished by a violent death.

5. The reign of Crimthan, 75-80 A. C., is worthy of attention on account of his incursions into England, in order to harass the Romans, who then occupied Great Britain under the governorship of Agricola. At his death, a civil war placed *Carbrecatcan* on the throne. This usurper reigned five years, and was succeeded by his son Moran, who restored Feredach, Crimthan's son and legitimate heir of the ancient dynasty, to his father's throne. The country then relapsed into anarchy and civil warfare, until the accession of Cormac Ulfadha in 270. According to the annalists, this King, as a legislator, warrior, and scholar, was the most accomplished of the Milesian dynasty.

6. Until the year 397, the Irish chronicles are almost silent on the events which took place. Towards the end of the fourth century, a King, called Niall of the Nine-Hostages, made an incursion into England and returned victorious; but, having afterwards invaded Gaul, he was killed on the banks of the Loire. Dathy, 406, his successor, was the last pagan King of Ireland. Like his predecessor, he invaded Britain, and penetrated into Gaul as far as the Alps. He is said to have been struck by lightning, while preparing for his return.

7. Pope St. Celestine I. sent Bishop Palladius to introduce Christianity into Ireland; but, at his arrival, some isolated tribes had already received the good tiding, among whom, nevertheless, there were some tainted with the Pelagian heresy. This mission was not successful, for Palladius was obliged to leave the Island. Some time afterwards, the Pope sent over St. Patrick, who landed in Ireland in 432. This celebrated missionary was born, according to some authors, in Brittany; according to others, in a small village, now called Kill-Patrick, which is situated between Dumbarton and Glasgow. Before the close of his long career, which was filled with unwearied zeal, good works, and miracles, the religion of Christ was established throughout the Island.

5. What made the reign of Crimthan remarkable? Who succeeded him? What do you know of Cormac Ulfadha?—6. What king distinguished himself towards the end of the fourth century? What do you know of King Dathy?—7. When was Christianity introduced into Ireland? Who converted the Irish? Where was St. Patrick born?

8. From the death of St. Patrick, 465, Ireland is again lost in obscurity; and, during three centuries, her history presents but the sad spectacle of civil discords. The result of this anarchy was, necessarily, the weakening of royalty, and the consequent impossibility for Ireland to resist the invasion of her first enemy. This is what happened towards the end of the eighth century, when the Northmen, that is, Danes and Norwegians, landed on the north-west coast of Ireland, 787, and devastated the country without meeting the least resistance. The power and fortune of the Northmen vanished, however, after the death of their King Turgesius, who was assassinated in a feast by the revolted Irish. His warriors were put to the sword, and Ireland recovered for a while her nationality.

9. Another fleet of 140 ships soon brought new invaders, who subjugated the Island a second time, aided again by intestine divisions. In 920, Donnogh fought the Danes with success and gained brilliant advantages over them in the North; while Mahon, King of Munster, and his brother Brien Boru, or Boiroimhe, vanquished them in several engagements in the South. From this time, the illusion which followed the Danish adventurers, was broken, and their fortune declined by degrees. King Malachi II. attacked them vigorously in 980, and, after a bloody battle of three days, gained a victory at Tara, by which he liberated all the slaves in possession of the Danes.

10. Brien made the Kings of Munster and Leinster his vassals, and acquired a power equal to that of his paramount Sovereign. Malachi II., proud of his victories over the Danes, took up arms against Brien. A long and bloody struggle ensued, which terminated only in 1001, in favor of the revolted Brien, who ascended the throne of Tara, whilst the dethroned Malachi was forced to swear homage to his vassal conqueror. Brien had a peaceful reign of thirteen years, during which his firm hand curbed the turbulence of his vassals.

11. In 1013, the Danes of Dublin ravaged the hereditary dominions of the dethroned King Malachi. Brien refused him his support. The Danes, emboldened by success, soon attacked Brien also; but they were driven back towards Dublin, and totally defeated at Clontarf by the son of Brien, who paid this

8. What became of Ireland after the death of St. Patrick? What people invaded Ireland at the end of the eighth century?—9. What did Donnogh do in 920? What did Mahon and Brien Boru do? What did King Malachi do?—10. To whom did Brien Boru wage war? Of which kingdom did he become king? How long did Brien Boru reign in peace?—11. What did the Danes of Dublin do in 1013? What victory did Brien's son gain over the Danes? What was the end of the old Brien Boru? What happened afterwards in Ireland until the middle of the twelfth century?

victory with his life. The old King himself was killed in his tent by a fugitive Dane, while on his knees praying to God for his army. The history of Ireland, from this epoch, 1014, to the second half of the twelfth century, presents but a complication of civil wars and misfortunes of all kinds, which would take too long to unravel. Ireland, besides, was destined by fate to cease as a distinct nation, and her history became then blended with that of England.

Before proceeding further, we will take a retrospective glance at the state of Ireland before she became the vassal of England, who has never ceased since to oppress her.

12. The Gospel seed so liberally scattered by St. Patrick over the land of Erin, produced so plentiful a harvest that, in a short time, churches were in all places seen to arise, in which the God of love was adored in all the sincerity of a firm faith, by those Irish populations so simple and so pure in morals. Monasteries also appeared all over the land, in which all the sciences then known were assiduously cultivated. The Irish monks had the singular happiness of escaping the incursions of the barbarous hordes, who, in the fifth and sixth centuries, depopulated and dismembered the Western Empire. Some of these children of solitude, in their peaceful retreats, were inspired by the Christian muse to write poems and legends, some of which teem with such beauties, that Dante, the greatest of Italian poets, is believed not to have disdained to use some passages to embellish his own immortal pages.

13. While the flame of knowledge seemed to be extinguished on the continent, it still threw a feeble glimmer on the remote coasts of Erin. During the seventh century and the greater part of the eighth, strangers from Britain, Gaul, and Germany, attended Irish schools; while Irish missionaries, founding abroad monasteries, spread instruction on the very banks of the Danube and amidst the snows of the Apennines.

14. The Irish distinguished themselves not only in literature, for which they were renowned throughout the West, but they also excelled in music. It is, undoubtedly, from their taste in this art, and their skill on the harp, that this instrument has become the symbol which ornaments the flags of Erin.

12. What was the state of Ireland previous to this epoch?—13. What do you know of the Irish schools in the seventh and eighth centuries?—14. In which art did the Irish excel?

SECTION II.

From the invasion of Ireland by Henry II., King of England, in 1171, *to the year* 1848.

1. The proximity of Ireland to England suggested to William of Normandy the idea of adding this Island to his dominions. Henry I. had the same thought; but being obliged to abandon the project, Henry II. undertook to carry it out, 1155. To justify the invasion of a free and unoffending people, his ambition had discovered, that the civilization of their manners and the reform of their clergy, were benefits which the Irish ought cheerfully to purchase with the loss of their independence.

2. John of Salisbury, a learned monk, and afterwards, Bishop of Chartres, was despatched by King Henry to solicit Pope Adrian, an Englishman by birth, to grant him permission to invade and subjugate Ireland. The envoy was charged to assure His Holiness that Henry's principal object was, to provide instruction for an ignorant people, to extirpate vice from the Lord's Vineyard, and to extend to Ireland the annual payment of Peter's pence; but, because every Christian island was the property of the Holy See, he did not presume to make the attempt without the advice and consent of the successor of St. Peter. "The pontiff" says Lingard, "who must have smiled at the hypocrisy of this address, praised in his reply the piety of his dutiful son; accepted and asserted the right of sovereignty which had been so liberally admitted; and exhorted him to bear always in mind the conditions on which that assent had been grounded."

3. After this singular negotiation, an occasion favorable to the ambitious views of Henry did not fail to present itself. According to old chroniclers, Dermod Mac-Murrough, King of Leinster, having carried off the wife of O'Rourke, King of Meath, Roderick O'Connor, Monarch of all Ireland, to whom the latter complained, immediately took his cause in hand, and drove Mac-Murrough from his States. Abandoned by his countrymen, Dermod fled to England and asked succor from the King, who was then at war with France. Henry II. readily acquiesced to the traitor's solicitations, and authorized the Earl of Pembroke, surnamed Strongbow, to raise the necessary forces. Shortly after,

1. What was the project of Henry II, in 1155? What reason did he give?—2. Whom did Henry send to the Pope? What was the answer of the Pontiff?—3. What favorable occasion presented itself to Henry, for the invasion of Ireland? What was the conduct of King Dermod? Whither did he flee? What did he ask of Henry? What did he obtain? What did Strongbow do? When did Henry himself go to Ireland?

1169, Strongbow landed in Ireland with 3000 men, made himself master of Wexford, Waterford, and Dublin, and re-established Dermod on his throne. Finally, Henry himself landed in 1171 with the flower of his nobility and about 4000 chosen troops, and subdued all the kings of Ireland, except that of Ulster.

4. The King of England could not have chosen a more favorable moment for his enterprise: for Ireland was still bleeding and exhausted by the battles she had to sustain against the Danes; and when Strongbow and Henry arrived with their fleet, Dublin, Waterford, and Wexford, were entirely Danish cities. A more unfortunate circumstance for Ireland could not be imagined; for the Danes, in defending a precarious and contested position, could not display the zeal and devotedness which natives themselves bring to the defence of their country. On the other hand, the Irish, on seeing the struggle of the Danes with the Anglo-Normans, fluctuated between the terror that the latter inspired, and the contentedness which they felt at the war being made against the former. "All these circumstances combined," says De Beaumont, "show clearly how, in the twelfth century, Ireland was too weak, both socially and politically, to repel the invasion of the Anglo-Normans.

5. Ireland was famed, among Christian nations, for the piety and sanctity of her children. Though all her social powers were weak, yet there existed one, that of religion, which always commanded respect. The priests were regarded by the people as their friends and consolers, their best protectors and most upright magistrates. Ten years before the conquest, the Primate of Armagh regulated in Supreme Chapter the quarrel of several Irish kings, among whom the Bishop alone had the power to restore harmony.

6. In 1175, a treaty was concluded between Henry and Roderick, in which it was solemnly resolved, that the Kings of England would henceforth be paramount Sovereigns of Ireland, that all the fiefs would depend on them, and that the Kings of Ireland would become vassals of the English Crown.

7. In 1185, Henry ceded the government of Ireland to his son John, then in his twelfth year. The insolent conduct of the young Prince and his courtiers, roused the indignation of the Irish chiefs, who now perceived that they had confided their liberty to perfidious guardians, whose aim was to render them not only vassals, but also slaves. Forgetting their own contentions,

4. What reflections can be made on the epoch of the invasion of Ireland by England?—5. What other cause was propitious to the invasion of Ireland?—6. What were the conditions of the treaty concluded in 1175?—7. What happened in Ireland in 1185? By whom was John replaced?

they united against the common enemy of their country, and were so successful in their efforts, that, according to the English chronicles, John lost nearly all his army. Informed of the danger which threatened the existence of his power in Ireland, Henry gave immediate orders for the recall of the Prince, and named at the same time *De Courcy* to replace him.

8. Until the time of Edward II., Ireland was comparatively tranquil. During his reign, however, the Irish, led by Edward Bruce, brother of the famous Robert Bruce, King of Scotland, made another effort to drive the English from their country. At first they were successful, but afterwards they were defeated, and Bruce having been killed, the Scots were obliged to retire. During the civil wars which broke out in England, between the Houses of York and Lancaster, from 1453 to 1485, the Irish embraced the cause of the former, and, in consequence, were submitted to severe and cruel trials.

9. From the first days of their conquest, Henry II. and the Anglo-Normans inaugurated a policy which, after six centuries, still governs unfortunate Ireland. The idea of her conquerors in the twelfth century, was to keep Ireland under subjection without ever associating with her; and such seems to have been the will of England ever since. From this, says a French author, followed all the misfortunes which have brought the Isle of Saints before the world. It would be too long here to show the different phases of oppressions under which this country has passed—this country, evangelized by St. Patrick, and rendered illustrious by so many struggles and deeds of courage.

10. The spirit of the Irish people being essentially Catholic, her misfortunes must have redoubled when the heresies of Luther and Calvin, like two great scourges, broke loose. The conquest of Henry II., it is true, caused Irish blood to flow, but then it was shed on the field of battle. How different the case with Henry VIII., who caused Ireland to weep and bleed, and became for her an infamous persecutor! This religious persecution was begun by Henry Tudor, and continued by Elizabeth and Cromwell.

11. At the present day, the names of Henry VIII. and Elizabeth are yet held in execration. Time, which erases many recollections from a nation's memory, has not yet made Ireland forget the extortions, persecutions, cruelties, tortures, and bloody

8. What was the state of Ireland till Edward II.? What attempt was made by Edward Bruce? What was his end?—9. What has been till now the policy of England towards Ireland?—10. How did Henry VIII. deal with Ireland?—11. What recollections of Henry VIII. and Elizabeth do the Irish still preserve?

executions ordered by the two Tudors and the regicide Cromwell. While, with the aid of tyrannical laws, Henry VIII. and Elizabeth fancifully established the Reformed religion of England, all their efforts to introduce it in Ireland ended in two or three insurrections, to which the national sentiment was not a stranger, but which originated principally in their hatred for the Protestant religion.

12. Seeing that she could not overcome the hatred which the Irish bore her, Elizabeth tried to renew the population by encouraging a Protestant colony. To give room to these followers of Luther and Calvin, the Catholics were expelled. This violent and odious means, nevertheless, contained nothing which was repugnant to the morals of the daughter of Henry VIII., for confiscation and death had been the foundation of all the political and religious quarrels stirred up by her father. Nearly 600000 acres, the property of old Catholic owners, were confiscated. In England, says Leland, a proclamation was issued which offered lands to any one on condition, for instance, that he would never allow a farmer of Irish origin to cultivate them.

13. From the Irish inhabitants who resolved to remain faithful to the Catholic worship, about 200000 acres were taken and given to Protestants. This was the bounty offered to apostacy. When, in a clan or family faithful to faith, there was found one member weak enough to apostatize, he inherited the goods of his parents who remained steadfast. Lingard's beautiful pages, under the reigns of Henry VIII., Elizabeth, Cromwell, James I, and Charles II., should be read to know all the iniquities committed by England towards Ireland.

14. While the cruel and sanguinary genius of Elizabeth was devoted to all these persecutions, the Irish became more ardent in their faith, and ceded not in courage to the heroism of the martyrs of the primitive Church. Deportations crowded the continent with young men destined for the sanctuary; in France, Flanders, and the Roman States, Catholic seminaries and colleges were raised for them, forming nurseries in which these exiles nourished their aspiration to suffer and die in the religion of their ancestors.

15. Dr. Lingard relates as follows the last moments of Elizabeth who always thirsted for Catholic blood. "The Queen, during the paro· sms of her disorder, had been alarmed at the

12. What did Elizabeth do seeing she could not overcome the hatred of the Irish?—13. What was the reward given to an apostate member of a family?—14. What was the conduct of the Catholics during this persecution?—15. What does Lingard relate of the last moments of Elizabeth?

frightful phantoms conjured up by her imagination. At length she obstinately refused to return to her bed; and sat both day and night on a stool bolstered up with cushions, having her finger in her mouth and her eyes fixed on the floor, seldom condescending to speak, and rejecting every offer of nourishment. The Bishops and the Lords of the Council advised and entreated her in vain. For them all, with the exception of the Lord Admiral, she expressed the most profound contempt. He was of her own blood: from him she consented to accept a basin of broth: but when he urged her to return to her bed, she replied that, if he had seen what she saw there, he would never make the request. To Cecil, who asked if she had seen spirits, she answered, that it was an idle question beneath her notice. He insisted that she must go to bed, if it were only to satisfy her people. "Must?" she exclaimed, "is *must* a word to be addressed to princes? Little man, little man, thy father, if he had been alive, durst not have used that word: but thou art grown presumptuous because thou knowest that I shall die." Ordering the others to depart, she called the Lord Admiral to her, saying in a piteous tone, "my Lord, I am tied with an iron collar about my neck." He sought to console her, but she replied, "no: I am tied, and the case is altered with me." In establishing her Protestant colonies, how many of her Irish Catholic subjects, did she not drive from their estates with an *Iron* collar on their neck! Now God had to avenge the sufferings of His faithful servants; and behold! the heretic Elizabeth, in her last moments, in the decline of her spirit, she feels as if strangled by the same *iron* collar of her victims!

16. James I. followed in the footsteps of Elizabeth. This Prince, who feared the blade of a sword, did not persecute the Irish by the sword, but caused his yoke to weigh heavily on them by acting more as a solicitor than a tyrant. By his order, an army of Protestant lawyers, interested in spoliation, like so many birds of prey, fell upon unhappy Ireland, and, by detecting some real or imaginary flaw in old titles, deprived the Irish of a considerable number of estates, which the King bestowed afterwards on his new Protestant colonists.

17. Once a bad way is pointed out, many people unfortunately follow the same: it is to be regretted that history had to signalize, as having followed in the path of persecution against oppressed Ireland, the noble but unfortunate Charles I., who was beheaded by order of Cromwell at Whitehall. Charles and his favorite, the Earl of Strafford, while in prison, must have recalled to mind the

16. How did James I. treat Ireland?—17. Was Ireland better treated under Charles I.?

persecutions they had ordered against Ireland, and these recollections should have likely rendered their captivity the more unendurable.

18. When the royal victim had reddened the London scaffold with his blood, when the Puritan Cromwell had obtained the reins of government at the price of this regicide, he, together with the *Saints of the Covenant*, must have welcomed, with and infernal joy, his turn of persecuting Catholic Erin. It was then that tortures and imprisonments surpassed in cruelty those ordered by Henry VIII. and Elizabeth. To exculpate himself from the charge of ordering these bloody excesses, Cromwell pretended that he was but punishing Ireland for having dared to revolt against his power. The Irish did rise, indeed, to shake off the English yoke; but their act was then justified by the long years of oppression to which they had been subjected by their tyrannical masters:—first, unjustly conquered by Henry II.; afterwards, decimated by Henry VIII. and Elizabeth; and lastly, ruined and banished by James I.

19. The Irish rebellion was hardly declared, when the Lords justices, commissioners of the English Parliament, sent to their agents the following instructions: "Wound, kill, massacre, and destroy all the rebels, and their adherents and abettors; burn, spoil, waste, consume, destroy, and demolish all places, towns, houses, and churches, where the rebels were or have been relieved or harbored; waste and destroy the harvest, corn, and hay, existing there; kill and destroy all men able to bear arms, inhabiting those places."

20. Landing in Ireland in 1649, Cromwell encountered two great obstacles which he overcame as hereafter related. The city of Drogheda refused to surrender to him. To reduce its garrison, he made a terrible assault, promising, at the same time, life to all who would surrender. But this point being gained, Cromwell, with much calm and in cold blood, gave his soldiers the orders to put the whole garrison to the sword. The massacre lasted five days, and was accompanied by circumstances so revolting, that a person shudders with horror on reading the account. The soldiers now turned their swords against the inhabitants, and massacred in the Cathedral a thousand defenceless victims. Other cities being treated in the same manner, a step could scarcely be made in Ireland without meeting with traces of blood or fire.

21. As these achievements did not fulfil the end which England

18. How did Cromwell deal with Ireland, once in power?—19. What instructions were given by the commissioners of the English government?—20. Relate the doings of Cromwell in Ireland.—21. What measures were taken by England to supersede the Irish population?

had proposed, Cromwell returned to the idea of colonizing Ireland with Protestants. Finding it impossible to exile all the Irish, he resolved to people with Protestants three of the four provinces into which Ireland is divided, and to admit Catholics in the fourth only. This Province was Connaught, to which was added the County Clare. Then, all whom the war had stripped of their possessions, as well as others who, by their poverty, had been spared, were forced to retire to Connaught. "This miserable population," says De Beaumont, "contained, nevertheless some of the noblest sons of Ireland, who brought with them the faith of their forefathers and the love of their country. All Ireland's future was there." The Catholics were penned up like vile cattle in Connaught, and were moreover forbidden, under pain of death, to pass the fixed bounds. There is still in Ireland an old saying, which dates from the time of Cromwell. When one wishes evil to his enemy, he tells him: *Go to hell or to Connaught!*

22. One would have thought, that, on the accession of the legitimate King Charles II., Ireland would have had a respite, and that, under a Stuart who inclined towards Catholicity, she would have enjoyed a short repose from persecution; but, on the contrary this weak Monarch, fearing the Covenanters, through timidity, continued to prosecute the Catholics. He ordered the execution in Ireland of the penal laws, and suspended individual liberty, fearing lest the Irish should come and demand justice from him in England. Though he re-entered his States and took possession of his palace, yet he did not restore his partisans to their estates: the fear of the vigilant Covenanters rendered him ungrateful.

23. In the seventeenth century, the Sovereigns of England seem to have governed one part of their subjects by pursuing a policy of treachery and injustice towards the other. James II., brother and successor of Charles II., however, was of a character too elevated to feign sentiments different from those he cherished in his heart, in order to support a religion in which he did not believe. As it has already been related, this honest King, notwithstanding his courage, lost his crown at the battle of the Boyne, and was forced to take the road to exile. If he had conquered, and if the ungrateful William and Mary had not obtained against right one of those successes, which Providence in His impenetrable decrees sometimes grants, Catholic Ireland would have breathed in peace under the reign of James II.

22. How did Charles II. treat Ireland?—23. What do you remark of the Sovereigns of England, in the seventeenth century? What was the attitude of James II. on ascending the throne?

24. Although these sanguinary persecutions now ceased, yet the Catholics of Ireland had no less to endure from the code of penal laws, which, written with a satanic competency in words of tolerance, artfully concealed an odious tyranny. The people whom no violence, however cruel, could deprive of their faith, thought they could now enjoy the benefits of their priest and church without molestation; but, while Catholic worship was tolerated, a law was enacted which banished from Ireland all prelates having the power of conferring the orders of priesthood. In other terms, the prospective effect of this enactment was, that the Catholic Religion would cease in Ireland with the generation of priests then living. Liberal rewards were held out to informers, who could indicate the presence of a Catholic Prelate. Priests were tolerated on three conditions: firstly, that they would take the oath of abjuration; secondly, that they would have their names registered before a magistrate, and give two sureties of £50 each, pledging themselves to never leave the country; thirdly, that they would not officiate elsewhere but in the parish for which they were registered.

The famous Edmund Burke, speaking of this system of persecution against Ireland, describes the code of penal laws as "a machine of wise and elaborate contrivances, and as well fitted for the oppression, impoverishment, and degradation of a people, and the debasement in them of human nature itself, as ever proceeded from the perverted ingenuity of man."

25. Towards the end of the year 1776, the Declaration of Independence of the English colonies in America, besides throwing England into consternation, spread an agitation throughout most of the nations of Europe. Ireland, aroused by this news, conceived the hope of Irish independence. Fearing that, like her revolted american colonies, Ireland would likewise slip from her grasp, England repealed several of the penal laws, which were the most obnoxious to the people. In 1778, Parliament abolished the law by which a Catholic father was rendered incapable of disposing, even in legacies and portions, of any part of an estate possessed by descent or purchase, if the eldest or any other son became a Protestant.

26. The war of England with the Americans had both a moral and material effect on Ireland. The allies of the Americans having menaced this Island with an invasion, the English government called on the Irish to resist them. For this purpose,

---

24. Were the Irish free after these bloody persecutions?—25. What happened when the American Independence was declared?—26. What was the effect produced in Ireland by the revolt of the Anglo-American colonies.

they were permitted to raise regiments of volunteers, who enthusiastically defended their country, and afterwards made their strength serve to render the English yoke less oppressive. From this date, Ireland enjoyed some repose. The King of England perceived that he had now raised up a formidable nation, with whom he would be obliged to act condescendingly.

27. In 1782, the Irish Parliament declared itself independent, and, supported by the volunteers, proclaimed the principle that no earthly power had the right to enact laws obligatory to Ireland except the King, Lords, and Commons of Ireland. Henry Grattan, the precursor of O'Connell, was the most distinguished among the parliamentary combatants of this epoch. Convinced by his forcible words, the Irish Parliament addressed the King this energetic declaration: "That his subjects of Ireland are a free people; that the crown of Ireland is an Imperial crown inseparably annexed to the crown of Great Britain, on which connection the interests and happiness of both nations essentially depend; but that the Kingdom of Ireland is a distinct kingdom, with a Parliament of its own—the sole legislator thereof. That there is no body of men competent to make laws to bind this nation, except the King, Lords, and Commons of Ireland."

28. This address, supported by an army of 60000 volunteers, met with full success in the Irish Parliament, which, in its independent state, abolished the laws that had become for England a real arsenal of persecution. It was in consequence of this proclamation, that the law prohibiting a Catholic to possess a horse worth more than £5, and permitting Protestants, in time of war, to seize the horses of Catholics, was effaced from the code. This Parliament, however, was soon invaded by corruption.

29. Under the reign of George III., the Irish Parliament became octennial, with power to assemble every second year. The custom pursued by the government of buying the votes of the members, enabled the Protestant party to regain its influence, and thus religious persecution, which had been disarmed for a time, recommenced its vexations and injustices.

30. About this time, the French Revolution of 1789 broke out; but, like the American, produced in Ireland an effect less baneful than elsewhere. At first, the Irish Catholics rejoiced at its appearance, because it afforded them a new opportunity of throwing off the English yoke; but, when they witnessed its

27. What did Ireland obtain in 1782? Who was the most distinguished among the parliamentary combatants?—28. What penal law was then abolished?—29. What became of the Irish Parliament under George III.?—30. What did the French Revolution produce in Ireland?

attacks on the altar as well as on the throne, they no longer desired its support.

31. The *United Irishmen* party, composed of men who believed that the object justified the means, did not however dislike the French Revolution on account of its crimes and excesses. Ireland desired to break her chains, but, finding herself not sufficiently strong, sought an alliance with the French Republic. France, which persecuted French Catholics and despoiled their Churches, was indeed a singular champion of Catholicity!

32. In 1798, the expedition sent by the French Directory, was not long in perceiving that the unanimous cooperation of the Irish could not be relied on. The Catholic party of Ireland would not admit the enemies of priests as their liberators. The Irish, however, derived some advantages from this invasion and their relations with the French Republic.

33. As the season of England's weakness and alarm has ever been that of redress and hope for Ireland, several concessions were made by her on this occasion. By this relaxation in the penal laws, Catholics could become lawyers; Protestants and Catholics could unite in marriage; Catholics could without fear raise their children as they thought proper and wherever they pleased; Catholics could henceforward vote at elections; and finally, they could be admitted to all the civil and military employments in the United Kingdom. These ameliorations constitute the third reform of Ireland.

34. The people of Ireland, who expected their deliverance by means of French aid, had accustomed themselves to revolt. The rebellion broke out, and we may, in vain, search the bloody annals of Ireland for a phase as unfortunate as that which followed this rising in arms. Perhaps, says De Beaumont, we might paint with one word the miseries of Ireland at this epoch, by saying that even when the war was over, the fate of the country was remitted to the army. While the insurrection was raging, martial law was proclaimed. The rebellion was quelled, but military justice was still retained by the army, who, after striking their enemies on the field of battle, pursued them by death-warrants issued by a council of war.

35. As stated before, England's fear was always Ireland's opportunity for redress; but, when the cause of her alarm disappeared, her cruelty towards Ireland again renewed. The Parliament of Ireland, since the recovery of its independence, had

31. What did the *United Irishmen* wish?—32. How was the French expedition received in 1798?—33. What was then the attitude of England towards Ireland?—34. How did England deal with the rebellion which then broke out in Ireland?—35. How was the Irish Parliament abolished?

been embarrass[illegible] the English government, who resolved on its destruction. This was accomplished at London, by the Act of Union passed on the 26th of May, 1800, by a majority of 118 votes against 73. It has been calculated that, out of the 118 voters, 76 were public functionaries. On proclaiming the Union, England declared that, in the future, the laws necessary for the government of the two nations, would be enacted by one same Parliament in which each country would be represented. But, in enacting for the future, England did not reform the past. Another marked epoch for Ireland, was the year 1829, in which the question of Emancipation was agitated.

36. When the Union between England and Ireland was established, the former promised to abolish the political disabilities of the Catholics residing in the latter. George III. had made this promise as a relief to the rigors of the Union ; but, when he saw that the Roman Catholics would enjoy the same rights and privileges as the Protestants, the conscience of the old Monarch became alarmed, and refused to accomplish his solemn engagement. Mr. Pitt who was, at that time, Prime Minister, finding himself unable to keep his promise, resigned his functions. Much irritated by this want of faith, and warned by her past misfortunes, Ireland resolved to have recourse to legal means alone to enforce her rights. Her two great auxiliaries were the press, and an association organized, towards the year 1810, by John Keough, who directed it until Daniel O'Connell became its leader, as well as the leader of all Ireland.

37. This association was the most fertile and most powerful idea ever conceived for the liberation of Ireland. Besides being animated, at meetings, by the words of their leaders, the people were unceasingly stimulated by the press. By this means, Ireland advanced a bold but sagacious step towards reforms.

38. England, always imbued with her Protestant spirit, refused the Emancipation so loudly claimed by the Irish. It was then that Ireland sent O'Connell to England to represent her in Parliament. From contemporary history, we learn to what moral power had risen this zealous Catholic, whose voice was respected and obeyed by gatherings of more than 100000 persons. Faith and hope sustained O'Connell in this conflict, and he never ceased repeating to his compatriots, that the days of Catholic triumph was dawning, and, in a few years more, Mass would be sung again in the royal church of Westminster.

---

36. What did England promise at the time of the Union?—37. What contributed most to the liberation of Ireland?—38. What great man was sent to Parliament to represent Ireland?

39. It was on the 13th of April, 1829, that the English Parliament adopted the Bill, by which the Roman Catholics could henceforward enter Parliament without being obliged to take the oath to which their conscience objected. Thus was broken the last link of the chain of penal laws, which had so long bound Ireland.

40. In an abridgment of History by P. C. Grace, published in 1848, we read as follows:—"Though the passage of the Emancipation Act, removing many of the disabilities which oppressed the Catholic population of Ireland, gave some hope that this country might yet regain, by peaceful effort, her sacrificed rights, yet, she still remains a miserable Province; and the noble efforts of Daniel O'Connell, after his triumph in the cause of Catholic Emancipation, have yet produced no satisfactory result. The cry for justice, which, from the impoverished and starving millions of Ireland, has constantly risen to the British throne, has been cruelly disregarded; and famine and pestilence, with their attendant horrors, which have stalked through this devoted Island, have failed to soften the heart, or awaken a feeling of sympathy in the bosom of that government."

41. An attempt was made in 1848, by certain members of what was known as the *Young Ireland Party*, entirely to throw off the British yoke; but, from various, yet obvious, causes, like all former attempts, it proved a failure, and only added to the misery it was intended to relieve.

SPAIN.

From the 15th century to the year 1870.

1. By the marriage of Ferdinand the *Catholic*, King of Aragon, and Isabella, Queen of Castile, there arose, as we have seen, that entire union of the different Spanish Kingdoms, which definitively established the Spanish Monarchy, 1479.

2. Master of the Christian Kingdoms of Spain, and aided by the counsels of the famous Cardinal Ximenes, and the skill of Gonzalvo of Cordova, Ferdinand resolved to put an end to the Moorish dominion in Spain. This power had already been considerably weakened by his predecessors, and was then confined

39. When was the Emancipation Bill passed?—40. What has been the attitude of England towards Ireland since the passage of that Bill? How has Ireland been treated by England, during her trials by pestilence and famine?—41. What attempt was made in 1848.

1. What did the marriage of Ferdinand with Isabella of Castile operate?—2. What vast enterprise did Ferdinand conceive? Who was his counsellor? When did he conquer Granada? What did Christopher Columbus procure for Spain?

to the one Kingdom of Granada. He completed this great enterprise in 1492. It was at this period also that Christopher Columbus endowed Spain, almost against her own will, with a new world and new subjects, as we shall see further on.

3. Ferdinand, in order to oppose the entrance of Charles VIII., King of France, into Italy, ratified the alliance he had just formed with Austria, by marrying his daughter Jane to the Archduke Philip. The latter found himself obliged to bear arms against his father-in-law, who was soon obliged to give him up the throne, 1506, but only for a very short time. His successor was his son Charles V., whose reign was the most brilliant of those known in the Peninsula. At the same time Emperor of Germany and master of the Two Americas, he had to govern one of the largest Empires that has ever existed. The result of his disputes with his neighbors and with his rival Francis I., is well known, as well as his unfortunate attempts against the States of Barbary.

4. Disgusted with honors and with the world, Charles V., renouncing the throne in order to live in retreat, left his German States to his brother Ferdinand, and, in 1555, put his son Philip II., in possession of the Kingdom of Spain, to which was then reunited the Kingdoms of Naples and Sicily, Sardinia, the Duchy of Milan, Franche Comté, and the seventeen provinces of the Netherlands. To the Empire of his father, Philip added Portugal and several provinces of America. He also continued the wars his father had commenced against Germany, Italy, and France. The latter war was terminated towards the end of his reign by the Peace of Vervins, which he concluded with Henry II.

5. In the Mediterranean, the fleets of Philip II., gained the celebrated victory of Lepanto, 1571, and their triumph continued there even under his successors; but the fury of the elements prevented their being equally fortunate on the Ocean, in the expedition undertaken against England with the fleet called the *Invincible Armada.*

6. Philip II. died in 1598, in the 72nd year of his age. Of no Prince has so much good and so much evil been written. The Catholics paint him as a second *Solomon*, the Protestants and Philosophers, as a *Tiberius.* It was his zeal against error which won for him the latter name. Without endorsing all the praises heaped on Philip by the Spaniards, it must be acknowledged, however, that he had a quick, elevated, vast, and penetrating

3. Who was the successor of Ferdinand? What is said of Charles V.? Of his power?—4. How did Charles V. end his life? Who succeeded him? What States did he leave to his son Philip II.? What was the character of Philip?—5. What did the fleets of Philip operate? What became of the Invincible Armada?—6. What portrait was made of Philip II.?

genius, a prodigious memory, rare sagacity, and, in an eminent degree, possessed the art of governing men. He knew how to make majesty respected at a time when, elsewhere, it was meeting with the grossest insults; and he exacted and obtained for the laws and religion, that respect which is due to them.

7. Under his reign, Madrid became the capital of Spain: Toledo having possessed that privilege until then. This was also the epoch when Spanish literature flourished the most. The author of *Don Quixote*, the immortal Cervantes, was wounded at Lepanto; Lope de Vega, the greatest dramatic poet of his country, was on board the Armada. Spain, whose strength disseminated itself throughout two worlds, and whose gigantic enterprises exhausted her resources, far from finding real abundance from the precious metals with which she was inundated, lost the habit of industrial and agricultural labor, and commenced to decline. The decay became tangible under the successor of Philip II., 1598.

8. Philip III., a Prince without either energy or application, abandoned the reins of government to his minister, the Duke of Lerma. The United Provinces, which had revolted, obtained an advantageous truce for twelve years, 1609. The following year, a decree of expulsion drove more than 200000 Moors from Spain. This loss would not have so much affected agriculture, commerce, and the arts, had it not been for the drain on the mother-country occasioned by the immense colonies established in America.

9. Philip IV., 1621, son of Philip III., like his father, allowed himself to be governed by favorites. He became involved in fresh wars with all the European powers, particularly with France: the Treaty of the Pyrenees put an end to his strife with the latter, 1659. This Prince continued the war against the Flemings, who had risen against Philip II., and looked on quietly, when Portugal shook off the yoke of Spain, 1660.

10. Charles II. his successor in 1665, had Louis XIV. for antagonist, whose generals gained several successes over the Spanish possessions in the Netherlands and Italy. The Peace of Ryswick put an end to hostilities; and the Spanish Prince who had no child, chose as heir to his crown, Philip, Duke of Anjou, grandson of Louis XIV. and of the Infanta Maria Theresa, sister of Charles II., 1700.

---

7. By what personages was his reign illustrated? What effect had on Spain the emigration into America?—8. What do you know of Philip III?—9. Who was his successor? What country did Philip IV. lose?—10. Against whom had Charles II. to combat? Whom did Charles II. appoint for his successor?

11. The accession of the House of Bourbon to the Spanish throne, was not effected without opposition, and gave rise to the war called the *War of Succession*. The new sovereign, who took the name of Philip V., found a competitor in the Archduke Charles, who, more than once, was within a hair's breadth of gaining the advantage, and would probably have occupied the throne, had it not been for the skill of the Duke of Vendome, and the assistance of France.

12. In 1713, the Peace of Utrecht ratified the losses sustained by Spain, both in Italy and on her own soil, during and since this last period. Lombardy, Piedmont, Modena, and the Kingdom of Naples, were occupied by the Imperialists, and Gibraltar belonged to the English. The Spaniards, however, amply redeemed these losses by the taking of Ceuta, and of the Kingdoms of Naples and Sicily, where Philip placed his son Don Carlos. He also subjugated Catalonia, which was bearing her yoke with impatience, and had, moreover, also a five years' success in the North of Italy, 1741-1746.

13. Philip V. was succeeded by his son Ferdinand VI., 1746. This Prince acceeded to the Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle. He studied the happiness of his subjects, reformed the administration of justice and the finances, and caused the arts and sciences to flourish.

14. The Infante Don Carlos, Grand Duke of Tuscany, then King of Naples, under the name of Charles III., in 1759, took the place of his brother, who had died childless. He wished to follow in the footsteps of his grandfather, but, in consequence of the famous Treaty called the *Family Compact*, he found himself obliged to take part in the war against England, which terminated in 1762, and, in 1777, he had to interest himself in the cause of American Independence. Charles, dying in 1788, left behind him the reputation of being severe, magnificent, and skilful, although the reforms undertaken during his reign, had but little success and few results.

15. Charles IV., his son and successor, who had neither taste nor capacity for business, abandoned himself to the counsels of Manuel Godoy, the Queen's favorite, whom he later rewarded with the title of *Prince of Peace*. Spain, under this wretched ministry, fell back into the sad lethargy from which Charles III. had tried to rouse her.

16. Dissensions having arisen in the royal family, Napoleon

11. Who disputed for the Spanish throne with Philip V.? By whom was Philip powerfully aided?—12. What was the result for Spain of the Treaty of Utrecht? How did she redeem her last defeats?—13. What do you know of Ferdinand VI.?—14. Who was his successor? What reputation did Charles III. leave?—15. What was the conduct of Charles IV.? What became of Spain under his reign?—16. What happened to Charles IV. and Ferdinand after the interview at Bayonne?

was furnished with a pretext for interfering and domineering in the affairs of the Peninsula. King Charles IV. and his son Ferdinand VII., having taken him for arbitrator in their disagreement, went to him at Bayonne; there, Ferdinand was forced to restore the crown which his father had ceded to him, and Charles was forced to abdicate in favor of the Emperor Napoleon, 1808. Joseph Bonaparte was immediately named King of Spain.

17. Napoleon congratulated himself on the success of his schemes, and thought that, thenceforward, he would be absolute master of the Peninsula. He had however reckoned without the Spanish people. The revolt of May 2nd, 1808, quickly showed him his error. This insurrection, followed by others all over Spain, soon acquired incalculable force by the disasters at Baylen, and, during five years, Spain made vigorous efforts against Napoleon's power. She showed Europe that the Conqueror of Austerlitz and Wagram, might himself be resisted. The colonies profited by this struggle of their mother-country against Napoleon, to declare themselves independent.

18. The 22nd of March, 1814, the Bourbons re-entered Spain. A revolution which broke out in the Island of Leon, established, in 1820, the constitutional-monarchical government, called the *Government of the Cortes*, which was overthrown by a French army, under the command of the Duke of Angouleme, in 1823. Having arrived at the height of his power, Ferdinand VII. ended his reign by abolishing the hereditary law which excluded women from the throne, and bequeathed the crown of Spain to his daughter Isabella, still a child, under the guardianship of her mother Christina, 1833.

19. Don Carlos brother of the King, not choosing to recognize these arrangements, had himself declared King in the northern provinces. A civil war ensued. Chistina, after a long struggle against the Pretender and against the revolutionary party, found herself forced, in 1840, to abdicate the regency, which was then conferred by the Cortes on General Espartaro. He did not long retain public favor, and was driven out of the country in 1843. Isabella, being proclaimed of age, recalled her mother, 1844; and in 1846, she married her cousin Don Francis.

20. Under her reign, Spain has made several efforts to resume the high position she formerly held among nations. Besides her expedition against Cochin China, which she made conjointly

17. Could Napoleon establish his authority in Spain?—18. When did the Bourbons re-enter Spain? What troubles occurred in 1820? To whom did Ferdinand VI. bestow the crown?—19. Who had himself declared king? Who struggled against both the Pretender and the revolution? When was Isabella proclaimed of age?—20. What were the principal events of her reign?

with France, she terminated another against Morocco very favorably, and afterwards turned her arms against the Argentine Republic and that of Chili.

21. A revolution, which broke out in September, 1868, obliged the Queen and her family to go into exile. After a two years' interregnum, the Cortes, in the month of November, 1870, raised to the Spanish throne, Amadeus, second son of Victor Emmanuel, King of Italy. In 1872, the new King having been forced to abdicate, the Cortes proclaimed Spain a Republic.

PORTUGAL.

From the 15th century to 1860.

1. The epoch of the celebrated Dynasty of Avis, 1485-1580, is that of Portuguese glory and prosperity. It was rendered illustrious, as we have seen, by the expeditions of Bartholomew Diaz, Vasco de Gama, Cabral, Gaspard Cortereal, and of Americus Vespucius, who travelled in the service of Portugal, and by the conquests of Albuquerque, etc.

2. Portugal, a rival of Spain, overflowed with riches, and became a naval power of the first order. Besides her conquests in Asia, she extended her dominion over one of the finest countries of America, Brazil, 1500-1531. But errors, excesses, and Sebastian's imprudent expedition into Africa, where he perished at the battle of Alcazar, 1578, brought her successes to an abrupt termination.

3. On the death of Cardinal Henry, 1580, who had succeeded his grandnephew Sebastian, the King of Spain, Philip II., placed the crown of Portugal on his own head. Thenceforward, for a time, Portugal was but a Spanish Province, the consequence of which was the total ruin of the Portuguese navy. The Dutch, in a state of revolt against Philip II., followed in the footsteps of the Portuguese, had them sent away from Japan, made them lose the Moluccas, as well as numerous other possessions in Asia, and were on the point of taking Brazil from them.

4. In 1640, Portugal threw off the yoke of Spain, and placed on the throne the dynasty of Braganza, the issue of the former kings. Having again become independent, the country allied

21. What was the result of the war of 1868? Who was elected king in 1870? What happened in 1872?

1. What men illustrated the dynasty of Avis?—2. Over what countries did Portugal extend her domination?—3. What became of Portugal after the death of Sebastian?—4. When did Portugal recover her independence? What did the Methuen Treaty produce?

herself with France, and, at first, was under the influence of that power; but, from the time of Peter II., she inclined towards England, who, in 1703, confirmed her ascendency in Portugal by the celebrated Methuen Treaty. Soon the English got every thing into their own hands: industry, agriculture, commerce, finances, politics; and reduced the Portuguese to being their clerks and workmen.

5. When Joseph I. mounted the throne, 1750, his first care was to surround himself with skilful ministers. Order was soon re-established in the finances as well as in the army, an important navy was established, the mechanical and liberal arts were encouraged, and public schools were opened. However, Pombal having wished to shake off the English yoke, his efforts were fruitless.

6. Napoleon, in his struggle against England, attacked Portugal by land, and determined on her conquest; but England defended the country as a province of her own; and, taking the Royal Family and establishing them in Brazil, 1807, she won back Portugal from the French troops, who were already occupying the country.

7. On the general peace, 1815, the Royal Family of Portugal remained in Brazil, and the English ambassador Beresford, in reality governed this country. In 1820, a revolution broke out at Oporto, the object of which was to give a constitutional government to Portugal. King John VI. accepted the *Constitution* of the Cortes, and returned to Europe, 1821; but Brazil then claimed her independence, 1822, and chose herself an Emperor in the person of Don Pedro, son of John VI.

8. The separation of Brazil from her parent-country, was confirmed when Don Pedro was called to the throne of Portugal, on the death of John VI., 1826; he then abdicated the crown of Portugal in favor of his daughter Dona Maria, and kept Brazil for himself.

9. These last years, Portugal has been a constant prey to civil war: first, there was the struggle between the liberals or constitutionalists, and the partisans of absolute power under John VI., until 1826; then the usurpation of Don Miguel, who, wishing to depose his niece Dona Maria, 1827, had recourse to the most vexatious measures to establish his government; then

5. What did Joseph I. do after his accession to the throne?—6. Who defended Portugal against Napoleon? Where was the Royal Family taken to?—7. Did the Royal Family return in 1815? What took place in 1820? What did Brazil do in 1822?—8. When was the separation of Brazil from her parent-country confirmed? In whose favor did Don Pedro abdicate the crown of Portugal?—9. What was the state of Portugal under John VI.? Who succeeded John VI.? Who was Don Miguel?

the return of Don Pedro, who came to reinstate his daughter, and a war between that Prince and his brother Don Miguel, until the reinstatement of Dona Maria, 1833; lastly, the turbulent and disturbed reign of this Princess, who died in 1853. She was succeeded by her eldest son Pedro V., under the regency of his father. The sudden and premature death of the young King and that of his brother Joam, in 1861, placed Dona Maria's third son Louis I. on the throne, who is still reigning.

GERMANY.

From the 15th century to 1871.

1. The reign of Frederic III., who became Emperor in 1440, was remarkable for the progress of the sciences, the foundation of several universities, and the discovery of America. This discovery gave a new impulse to Germany in particular.

2. Maximilian I., 1493, son of Frederic III., fulfilled the wish of all oppressed states and people. He abolished the right of the strongest, by decreeing *perpetual peace*. To give more lustre to his crown, he took the title of Roman Emperor. Under him, judicial powers received a more difinite form and followed a new course. The last and most grievous event of this reign was the birth of Protestantism, which sprang up suddenly, at the University of Wittemberg, 1517.

3. Charles V., grandson of Maximilian I. and already King of Spain, succeeded him. The new doctrines preached by Martin Luther were beginning to spread; the war called the *Peasant's War*, at the head of which was Thomas Munzer, laid waste all Germany; the Landgrave Philip of Hesse and the Elector of Saxony concluded an alliance in favor of Protestantism; the solemn *Protestation*, whence Luther's followers derived their name, took place in 1529: the *Protestant* Princes concluded a league at Smalcalden in 1530, and the war bearing this name broke out in 1546.

4. By the Treaty of Passau, 1552, Charles V. obliged to give way to the Elector Maurice, who had allied himself to France and to the League of Smalcalden, granted to the Protestants the free exercise of their religion and the enjoyment of civil rights. This treaty served as a basis to the *Religious Peace*,

1. What do you know of the reign of Frederic III.?—2. Who succeeded him? What title did Maximilian take? What was the most grievous event of his reign?—3. Who was the successor of Maximilian I? What league was concluded by the Protestant Princes?—4. What was the result of the Treaty of Passau? What was the end of Charles V.?

which was signed at Augsburg in 1555. Charles V., tired with bearing the burden of the crown, abdicated in 1555, and retired into a Spanish monastery, where he died in 1558.

5. Ferdinand I., his brother, succeeded him in Germany. In this reign, the Council of Trent, which had opened in 1545, terminated its labors in 1563; it marked a line of separation between the Catholics and Protestants. The Holy See retained in part its spiritual authority over Germany; but, in order to be able to exercise it suitably, it permanently established nuncios at Vienna, Brussels, Cologne, and favored also the increase of the Jesuit Order, founded in 1540.

6. The reign of Maximilian II., successor of Ferdinand, 1564, does not occupy a remarkable place in history. Religious disputes divided the Protestants. Under the reign of Rudolph II., son of Maximilian, the establishment of the Union and the League, prepared the way for the Thirty Years' War.

7. Ferdinand II., 1619, an Emperor full of zeal for the Catholic Religion, but of a violent disposition, rekindled the flames of war. German blood flowed in abundance; Tilly and Wallenstein subjugated the greater part of the country to the Imperial rule. Just as Ferdinand thought he had attained the end he had in view, the King of Sweden, Gustavus Adolphus, agreeably to Cardinal Richelieu's plan, interposed in favor of the Protestant cause. On the death of this Prince, 1632, France took up arms against Austria, and the Elector of Brandenburg, Frederic William, embraced the cause of the Reformation, 1640. Banner, Torstenfen, Wrangel, and Turenne, covered themselves then with glory, and the Treaty of Westphalia, 1648, after thirty years' calamities, restored to Europe, which had been shaken to its very foundations, the peace of which that country had so long been deprived.

8. Before Brandenburg had intermeddled with this war, Ferdinand III., had succeeded to his father Ferdinand II., 1637. This Emperor, overcome by the arms of France and Sweden, was obliged to submit to the stipulations of that Peace, which secured the liberty of worship, except with regard to the hereditary States of Austria; the Treaty of Westphalia also stipulated for the independence of Switzerland and the United Provinces.

9. The Treaty of Westphalia, which established the national

5. Who was the successor of Charles V.? What do you know of the Council of Trent?—6. Who succeeded to Ferdinand? What do know of Rudolph II.?—7. What was the conduct of Ferdinand II.? Who made war against him? What two generals were distinguished under his reign? —8. Who was the successor of Ferdinand II.? By whom was the country conquered? What treaty was signed under this reign?—9. What was the result?

law of Europe, had important results: the improved and better defined organization of the Empire of Germany; the limiting of the Hanseatic League to the towns of Hamburg, Lubeck and Bremen; the establishment of standing armies, and a system of wisely adjusted taxation.

10. Religious liberty had already gained ground, when Leopold I. mounted the Imperial throne, 1657; it was under this Prince's reign that the Diet became permanent from the year 1663. Although Leopold was of a peaceable disposition, he, nevertheless, took part in several wars against Turkey and France. He created a ninth electorate in favor of the Prince of Brunswick-Luneburg, whilst Prussia, raised to being a kingdom, 1701, acquired great weight in the balance of German policy.

11. The Emperor Joseph I., the son of Leopold, 1705, continued the Spanish war, and placed the Electors of Bavaria and Cologne under the ban of the Empire, for having taken the French side. This Prince died suddenly: his brother Charles VI. succeeded him on the Imperial throne. Very soon, the Treaty of Utrecht and that of Radstadt destroyed the projects which Charles was fostering of once more uniting the Kingdom of Spain to his hereditary possessions in Germany. He was more fortunate in the laws affecting his family, which he carried under the name of *Pragmatic Sanction*, by which he regulated the succession of his race to the throne.

12. The Treaty of Vienna, 1735, terminated favorably for Saxony, the war which had arisen on account of the election of the King of Poland and the Treaty of Belgrade, 1733; it also put an end to the Turkish war, which termination was bought by Austria at the price of a few cantons.

13. Charles VI. died in 1740, and with him became extinct the male line of the House of Hapsburg; his daughter Maria Theresa took possession of the hereditary States of Austria. But the Elector of Bavaria, Charles Albert, laying claim to the succession of Charles VI., and even raised to the Empire under the name of Charles VII., made an eight years' war on Maria Theresa.

14. On the death of this Prince, 1745, Maria Theresa, who, in the interval, had sustained a desperate war against the King of Prussia, concluded the Treaty of Fussen and afterwards that of

10. Who succeeded Ferdinand III.? What wars had he to sustain? What part of Germany then became a kingdom?—11. What did Joseph I. do? Who was his successor? What treaties were signed under Charles VI.? What was the *Pragmatic Sanction*?—12. What was the result of the Treaty of Vienna?—13. Who was the successor of Charles VI.? What did the Elector of Bavaria do?—14. On whom did Maria Theresa wage war? Who was her successor?

Aix-la-Chapelle. Her husband Francis I. was elected Emperor of Germany, September 15th, 1745. The Treaty signed at Hubertsburg terminated the Seven Year's War, a very ruinous one for Germany.

15. The Emperor Joseph II. succeeded his father Francis I., 1765. He signalized the commencement of his reign, by publishing regulations reforming the administration of justice and the Aulic Council. The latter years of Joseph's reign were troubled by the revolts of Belgium, and by the resumption of hostilities with the Ottoman Porte. Overwhelmed with troubles, which he had brought on himself by his arbitrary measures, this Prince died on Februery 20th, 1790.

Joseph II. was a reformer more infatuated with theories than possessing real experience. He undertook to remodel not only the taxes and civil administration, but also ecclesiastical discipline. He suppressed 300 convents, abolished several religious orders, particularly the Jesuit's, arbitrarily changed the boundaries of the dioceses, and took on himself to forbid the veneration of images in the churches. The journey of the venerable Pope Pius VI. to Vienna, in 1786, did not bring back the Emperor to juster views.

16. Leopold II., previously Grand-Duke of Tuscany, succeeded Joseph II., his brother, and had only time to restore peace and quiet in his States before his death, 1792. His son, the Emperor Francis II., continued the alliance with the King of Prussia, formed by his father at Pilnitz, in 1791. In the meanwhile, the National Convention of France declared war on the House of Austria; and, on the 23rd of November, 1792, the Empire of Germany broke off with France.

17. But Prussia soon accepted the alliance of the New French Republic, 1795, and several German princes followed this example. The Treaty signed at Campo-Formio, 1797, restored a good understanding between France and Austria. Conferences were held at Radstadt to negotiate peace with the Empire of Germany. But, before the termination of the conferences, war broke out afresh, 1799. The treaty of Luneville, 1801, gave the Rhine as a limit to France; Germany lost more than 1200 square miles of territory, and nearly 4000000 inhabitants. Francis II. erected Austria into an hereditary Empire, 1804, whilst the First Consul, *Bonaparte*, caused himself to be proclaimed Emperor of the French, under the name of Napoleon I.

---

15. Who was the successor of Francis I.? What do you know of Joseph II.?—16. Who succeeded Joseph II.? Leopold II.?—17. What did the Treaty of Campo-Formio produce? What do you know of the Treaty of Luneville?

18. Soon Austria and Russia leagued together against Napoleon; but the Treaty of Presburg, concluded on the 26th of December, 1805, put an end to this war, in which three States of the German Empire, Bavaria, Wurtemburg, and Baden, had taken part as allies of France. The following year, sixteen German princes detached themselves from the federal bond, and formed a league, of which, the Constitutive Act, drawn up at Paris, the 12th of July, 1806, was sanctioned at St. Cloud, the 19th of the same month, and notified to the general Diet at Ratisbonne by Bacher, the French *chargé d'affaires*. By the terms of this Act, the Confederates submitted to the Emperor of the French, their protector, and gave to their association the name of *Confederation of the Rhine*. In consequence of this, on the 6th of August, 1806, the Emperor Francis II. renounced the Imperial crown of Germany, pronounced the separation of his hereditary States from the Germanic body, and took the title of Emperor of Austria.

19. A year had not elapsed from the establishment of the Germanic Confederation, before the soldiers it had furnished Napoleon had to fight against Prussia on the banks of the Saale, the Elbe, the Oder, and against Russia on the banks of the Vistula. Eleven princely Houses in the north of Germany agreed to the Germanic Confederation after the Treaty of Tilsit. A French throne was raised in Germany on the remains of the ancient sovereignties. The new Confederation was composed of four Kings, five Grand-Dukes, and twenty-five other Princes. The Treaty of Vienna, 1809, still further increased the power and extent of the Confederation. The southern countries of this league and the Hanseatic cities of Hamburg, Lubeck, and Bremen, were united to the French Empire.

20. When, in 1812, Napoleon made his disastrous expedition into Russia, numerous contingents of Confederates joined the great army. The princes and people of the Confederation, however, were perfectly aware that they were but instruments in the hands of Napoleon, and that they had no longer either justice or liberty to hope for under the dominion of that Conqueror. Still, they had to obey the law of necessity, and 100000 German soldiers perished beneath the snows of Muscovy. The Russians pursued their advantage as far as the frontiers of Ger-

18. What was the result of the Treaty of Presburg? How was the Confederation of the Rhine formed? What other title did the Emperor of Germany take?—19. How many princely Houses in the north of Germany acceded to the Germanic Confederation? What became then of the Hanseatic cities?—20. Did Germany furnish soldiers for Napoleon's campaign in Russia? What did Russia do in this war? What attitude was assumed by several northern States?

many; Prussia allied herself with Alexander by the Treaty signed at Kalisch, on the 28th of February, 1813; many of the northern States joined these two powers; Lubeck and Hamburg took up arms against Napoleon.

21. The Germans seemed perfectly convinced that the moment for recovering their freedom had arrived. This conviction grew stronger when Austria, on the 10th of August, joined the league formed against the Emperor of the French. The allies, unanimous in their views, were filled with enthusiasm: military events also, took a favorable turn for them. Bavaria in her turn separated from France, and, in accordance with the Treaty signed at Ried on the 8th of October, 1813, she joined her arms to those of the allies. Ten days later, the battle of Leipsic annihilated the French dominion in Germany. This battle completely ruined the Confederation of the Rhine. The King of Wurtemberg, on the 22nd of November, joined the alliance, and the remaining southern sovereigns followed his example.

22. After the victory which Napoleon gained at Hanau the 30th of October, the French army retired to the right bank of the Rhine. From that time Germany took a new form. The French had evacuated the country, with the exception of some fortresses which they still retained. The Kingdom of Westphalia and the Grand-Duchy of Berg no longer existed. Everywhere might be seen princes returning to the possessions from which they had been driven away. The whole of Germany made immense preparations in order to ensure her freedom; she rose as one man to fight for so sacred a cause. The armies crossed the Rhine on the 1st of January, 1813; they occupied those countries which France had conquered from Germany since 1793, and the great events, which marked the campaign of 1814, confirmed their possession of them.

23. Peace was signed at Paris on the 30th of May, 1814. By the terms of this Treaty, France gave up all the conquests she had made, with the exception of Montbelliard and some other small cantons, but these countries were not all restored to the mother-country: all the former circle of Burgundy and the Bishopric of Liege were given to Holland, and, together with her, formed the new Kingdom of the Netherlands. With regard to the internal affairs of Germany, this Treaty declared that the different States composing the country should be independent

21. Of what were the German people convinced? What did Bavaria do? What was the result of the battle of Leipsic?—22. What became of Westphalia and Berg? What did Germany do to ensure her freedom?—23. Where was the Peace signed? What were the conditions of this Treaty? When was the Congress of Vienna opened?

the one of the other, but that they should be united by a federal bond. The Congress of Vienna, which opened on the 1st of November, 1814, put this clause in execution; it reconciled the claims of the States, and determined the basis of the rights devolving from the Germanic Confederation, June 8th, 1815. The Protectorate of this Confederation was given to the Emperor of Austria, but without the title of Emperor.

24. Conformably to the above provisions, Germany ceased to be a separate Empire, one and indivisible; it was changed into a League of States, the members of which were in no way subordinate to one another, but possessing equal rights, a system which had already been adopted for the former Confederation of the Rhine. This metamorphosis of the *Holy Roman Empire* into a simple Federative League, the maxims which were adopted for the admission of the members of the Confederation, and the principles inserted in the Federal Act with regard to the internal relations of the States comprising this League, all this put to flight the hopes still cherished by a great number of Germans. However, before all the formalities concerning the Federal Act had been complied with, an unexpected event threatened to compromise and ruin this rising edifice.

25. The return of Napoleon kindled another war, which the allies had the good fortune of speedily bringing to a conclusion; peace was definitively signed on the 20th of November, 1815. This Treaty restored to Germany, with the exception of Montbelliard and some cantons enclosed in Lorraine, all those territories, not of much importance however, which France had retained by the Treaty of 1814. The opening of the Diet, retarded by the difficulties which the territorial arrangements had presented, took place only on the 5th of November.

26. In 1848-49 there were two attempts to establish a *Military Germany*; a *National Assembly* was convoked at Erfurt to replace the former *Diet*; the old order of things was re-established in 1850; but Prussia, victorious at Sadowa, 1866, established a new Germany, whence Austria was excluded. The result of the war between France and Germany in 1870-71, completed the fusion of the Northern States of the latter country with the Southern, and raised the King of Prussia to the dignity of Emperor of Germany. One of the clauses of the Treaty of peace, was the cession to Germany of Alsace and a part of Lorraine.

24. What became of Germany after the Treaty of Vienna?—25. What did the return of Napoleon produce? What did Germany obtain by the Treaty of 1815?—26. What did Germany attempt in 1848? What was the result of the victory of Prussia at Sadowa?

SWITZERLAND.

1. Helvetia or Switzerland in the time of the Romans, was almost entirely comprised in *Maxima Sequanorum*, a Province of Gaul; the remainder, to the east of Rhine, being a part of Rhætia. The *Tigurini* and other tribes of this country joined the Cimbri, 112 B. C. The Helvetians had left their country in a body, in order to establish themselves in Gaul, 61, when Cæsar in the year 58, exterminated some, and drove back others. Under the Roman dominion, the Helvetians were tranquil. From the fifth century, they belonged by turns to the Kingdom, of Burgundy, of Transjurane Burgundy, and of the Two Burgundies or Arles.

2. During the Feudal period, this country was divided into a number of fiefs of all sorts, of which a great number were owned by the House of Hapsburg at the time of the accession of Rudolph I., 1273. Albert, son of Rudolph, tried to subdue all Helvetia, 1304; but the tyranny of his agents, particularly, that of the pitiless Gessler, caused the revolt of the three cantons of Uri, Schwitz, and Unterwalden. It was on this occasion that the conspiracy of Grutli took place, and William Tell distinguished himself. The three primitive cantons, after having beaten Duke Leopold I., 1315, formed the Perpetual League of Brunnen, successively adding to their number Lucerne, 1332, Zurich, 1351, Zug and Glaris, 1352, Berne, 1353. Two other victories, gained over the Dukes of Austria, at Sempach and Näfels, 1386 and 1388, and several conquests made of parts of the possessions of these Dukes, caused the Swiss to be respected by their neighbors.

3. In 1422, were ned the Gray Leagues, or Leagues of the Grisons. But from 1439 to 1450, the war of Tockenburg set the Swiss at variance with one another; Zurich separated from the League, and the entire dissolution of this latter seemed imminent. At the same period, the Swiss were unexpectedly attacked by France, 1444, and 1600 of them were exterminated, after an heroic resistance, at the battle of St. Jacob's. However, order was restored in 1450; peace was concluded with France in 1453, and in 1460, the conquest of Thurgovia took place.

1. What was Switzerland at the time of the Romans? To whom did the Swiss belong afterwards?—2. How was this country divided during the Feudal period? What did the son of Rudolph attempt? Where was Leopold I. beaten? What cantons were joined later to the first three?—3. What did the war of Tockenburg produce? Who gained the battle of St. Jacob's?

4. From 1475 to 1476, the Swiss gave a fatal blow to the power of Charles the Bold in the battles of Granson and Morat, and the fame of their bravery spread through Europe. Hence arose their alliance called the hereditary *Union* with France and Austria, then the Treaty of Basel with the Empire, 1499, and the acquisition of five new cantons, Friburg and Soleure, 1481, Basel and Schaffhausen, 1501, and Appenzell, 1513, which completed the 13 cantons. At the same time was effected the alliance of the Valais and the Grisons, the conquest of Locarno, of Lugano, &c.

5. It was then that the Swiss commenced to be sought after as mercenaries; they entered the service of France, Austria, and the Pope. From 1512 to 1530, the Grisons had subdued or obtained Valtellina, and during the Thirty Years' War, Spain vainly attempted to take it from them; at length, in 1648, at the Peace of Westphalia, the Helvetian Confederation was definitively recognized by Austria and by the whole of Europe, as a power independent of the Empire.

6. Protestantism having been introduced into Switzerland, in the year 1519, by Zuinglius at Zurich, afterwards by Calvin at Geneva, a part of Switzerland soon abandoned Catholicism; hence arose many petty local wars up to 1712, the period when the respective state of the two religions in the 13 cantons was decided. After that, Switzerland continued tranquil until the French Revolution. Then there rose a party that wished for a a universal democracy, the unity of Switzerland, the abolition of the distinction between reigning and subject cantons, and, to carry all this out, French intervention.

7. Bonaparte, after the Treaty of Campo-Formio, 1797, sent Brune into Switzerland to effect the desired revolution. It took place, and on the 12th of April, 1798, the *Helvetian Republic*, one and indivisible, was proclaimed, and confirmed by the victory of Stanz, Sep. 9, but was called in question again by the second coalition against France, 1799, etc. After several successive changes, and the provisionary adoption of many ephemeral constitutions, Bonaparte forced the Swiss, in 1803, to accept a new federal organization, and put all the cantons on an equality: this was the Federation of the 19 cantons. In 1815, the number of these cantons was increased to 22.

4. What was the result of the battles of Granson and Morat?—5 Whose service did the Swiss then enter? What was the effect of the Peace of Westphalia in Switzerland?—6. When was Protestantism introduced into Switzerland? What party rose at the time of the French Revolution?—7. What did Bonaparte do after the Treaty of Campo-Formio? What did he do in 1803? How many cantons had Switzerland in 1815.

8. The Revolution of 1830, in France, had its effect in Switzerland; but it only caused the division of the canton of Basel into two cantons, Basel City and Basel District, 1833. The Revolution of the Valais in 1840, the troubles of Tessino in 1841, of Geneva in 1846, tried the strength of the democratic party. In 1847, was formed the *Sonderbund*, a Catholic and aristocratic league which did not last long; from that time, democracy has triumphed.

ITALY.

1. The principal States of Italy, on the Fall of the Greek Empire, were: Milan, Genoa, Venice, Florence, Rome, and the Kingdom of Naples. At first sight, it would seem that riches and the fine arts would have found an asylum in this beautiful country. Pleasure was there delicate and refined, the manners apparently gentle. But these brilliant appearances badly concealed the weakness of Italy. Wars, without being bloody, were continual; there were swarms of petty tyrants from the North to the South; bands of mercenaries called *condottieri* kept up the wars which procured them a livelihood, and, in time of peace, ravaged the country as brigands.

2. Italy, in spite of the efforts of Pope Julius II., 1503-1513, could not entirely throw off the foreign yoke. France and Spain disputed for the possession of that beautiful country; Charles VIII., Louis XII., and Francis I., Kings of France, in vain attempted to effect its subjugation. Spain gained the day: already mistress of the Kingdom of the Two Sicilies from the year 1505, she made the Duchy of Milan one of her Provinces, 1540, and, having thus the North and the South of Italy, she organized the rest as she chose; Venice alone maintained its independence.

3. The 17th century robbed Spain of some of this preponderance; the 18th did so almost entirely; the Milanese and the Two Sicilies passed into the hands of Austria, 1706-1721; but from 1731 to 1738, two younger lines of the House of the Spanish Bourbons obtained, the one, Parma, the other, the Two Sicilies, on the condition, however, that never should these States be reunited to the Spanish crown.

---

8. What did the French Revolution of 1830 produce in Switzerland? What took place in Switzerland in 1833? in 1846? in 1847?

1. What were the principal States of Italy at the Fall of the Greek Empire?—2. What is said of Italy in spite of the efforts of Pope Julius II.? What countries disputed the possession of Italy? Which gained over the other? Which State alone kept its independence?—3. To whom did the Milanese and the Two Sicilies pass?

4. The wars of the French Revolution, and particularly those of the Empire, for a time changed the face of Italy. In 1801, Savoy and Piedmont were reunited to France, the Milanese, taken from Austria, formed the Cisalpine Republic. Austria was indemnified by the cession of Venice and its States on terra-ferma. A Spanish Prince received the Kingdom of Etruria. In 1805, after the battle of Austerlitz, and afterwards, by the Treaty of Presburg, Venice and its terra-ferma were reunited to the Cisalpine Republic, which, thenceforth, bore the name of Kingdom of Italy; Genoa was incorporated with the French Empire; the Kingdom of Naples was taken from King Ferdinand IV., who only retained Sicily, and was given by Napoleon, first to his brother Joseph, 1806, then to his brother-in-law Murat, 1808. The Queen of Etruria abdicated in 1807, and her States were added to the French Empire; at the same time, a part of the States of the Church went to increase the Kingdom of Italy, which also enriched itself with Southern Tyrol, 1809, whilst even Rome itself and all that remained of the Pontifical States, was taken from the venerable Pope Pius VII. to be made part of the French Empire.

5. Thus, with the exception of Sicily, which the Bourbons of Naples retained, and Sardinia, which remained to the House of Savoy, the whole of Italy was subject to Napoleon under four different titles: the whole of the North-West as far as Garigliano, was accounted French Empire; all the East and the Legations formed his Kingdom of Italy, administered for him by Eugene, his step-son, as Viceroy; Murat, his brother-in-law, possessed the Kingdom of Naples.

6. After the events of 1814, the Congress of Vienna, 1815, restored to the Pope all his States; to the House of Savoy, Savoy, Piedmont, Nice, and Genoa; to Austria, the Milanese and Venise, which together formed the Lombardo-Venetian Kingdom; and to two Austrian Princes, Tuscany and Modena; to Maria Louisa, the Duchy of Parma. Murat kept Naples for a short time; but it was taken from him during the *Hundred Days*, and restored to Ferdinand IV.

7. In 1848, the Lombardo-Venetian Kingdom rose against Austria; Sicily separated from Naples; Naples and Sardinia received Constitutions; Rome and Tuscany made themselves Republics; but from 1849, every thing returned to its former order: a French army went to Rome to restore the Pontifical

4. What changes took place in 1801?—5. What remained of Italy to the former Sovereigns?—6. How was Italy divided by the Congress of Vienna?—7. What events took place in 1848? When did the Pope re-enter Rome?

authority, and the venerable Pope Pius IX., under the protection of France, made his entry in the Eternal City, April 12th, 1850.

8. In 1859, after victories gained by the French over the Austrians, at Montebello, Magenta, and Solferino, the Milanese was ceded by Austria and annexed to Piedmont; this latter soon after got up an insurrection in Central Italy, and, eventually, under the cover of pretended universal suffrage, annexed to itself the Duchies of Parma, Modena, and Tuscany. On March 17th, 1860, the King of Piedmont, Victor Emmanuel, took the title of King of Italy. The 24th of the same month, Savoy and the County of Nice were ceded to France. On the 6th of May, Garibaldi, under the protection of Piedmont, heading a band of filibusters, embarked at Genoa, and landed in Sicily, where he stirred up the people against the legitimate Sovereign, after which, he took possession of the Island, which he was shortly afterwards to pass, as well as Naples, to the King of Piedmont. During this time, the armies of Victor Emmanuel, without any declaration of war, invaded the States of the Church, and, falling unexpectedly on a detachment of the Pontifical troops, at Castelfidardo, made an horrible massacre of them. Umbria and the Marches of Ancona were afterwards incorporated with the new Kingdom of Italy; Rome and its environs alone remained to the Pope. In 1866, Austria ceded Venice to the Kingdom of Italy. Lastly, in October 1870, the government of Victor Emmanuel without any reason and contrary to all rules of justice, consummated its works of iniquity, by taking possession of the remains of the States of the Church.

TURKEY.

1. After the Taking of Constantinople, Mahomet II. believed himself to be already master of the whole West, and proudly styled himself: *Ruler of the two seas and of the two divisions of the earth.* He led on his victorious battalions against Europe, but the check he received before Belgrade, showed him that he had no longer to do with the enervated Greek and Asiatic soldiers. He however subjugated the rest of the Grecian Peninsula, Caramania, the Empire of Trebizond, 1461, Bosnia, Wallachia, 1463, Lesser Tartary, and penetrated as far as Italy.

2. Turkey increased still more under Selim I., who reduced

8. What took place in 1859? What were the chief events of 1860? Of 1866? What work of iniquity was consummated in 1870, by the government of Victor Emmanuel?

1. What did Mahomet II. do after the Taking of Constantinople? Where was he checked? What were his conquests?—2. What countries did Selim I. and Solyman II. conquer?

Syria, Palestine, and Egypt into Ottoman Provinces, 1517, took Mecca, and made the acquisition of Algiers, 1520. Solyman II. added, in Asia, Aldjezireh, a part of Armenia, of Kurdistan, of Arabia; in Europe, a part of Hungary, of Transylvania, of Slavonia, of Moldavia; he took Rhodes from the Knights of St. John, 1522, after a memorable siege, and encamped before Vienna, 1529.

3. In order to secure his power over the Mediterranean, Solyman equipped a fleet of 300 sail, and himself led an army of 300000 men against the Isle of Rhodes. The Knights of St. John, who were occupying this Island, had been witnesses of the fruitless efforts of Mahomet II., the Conqueror of Constantinople. Villiers of Isle Adam their Grand-Master, had prepared for a vigorous resistance. Although the Turks had formidable artillery at their disposal, they got possession of the place only after eleven assaults, and a six month's siege. Villiers only consented to capitulate when the town was but a heap of ruins. He retired with his Knights to the rock of Malta, which they were afterwards to immortalize by further exploits.

4. Selim II. took the Island of Cyprus from the Venetians, conquered Tripoli, 1556, and Tunis, 1573, but, at the same period, the Turkish fleet was annihilated at the battle of Lepanto, 1571. The decay of the Ottoman Empire commenced from this last event. At first this decay was but slow: notwithstanding the frequent revolutions in the palace, particularly from 1618 to 1622, notwithstanding losses in Hungary, 1595-1608, Turkey gained many important advantages. The Choczim war gained it several districts of Poland. Ibrahim commenced the Candian war, which ended in the conquest of that Island under Mahomet IV., 1669; but from that time forward, the decay made rapid progress.

5. The three regencies, Algiers, Tunis, and Tripoli, and even Egypt then indeed became almost free. The great war from 1682 to 1699, which was ended by the Peace of Carlowitz, took nearly all Hungary from the Turks: the Treaty of Passarovitz took from them Temesvar and a part of Servia, which, however, they recovered by the Peace of Belgrade, 1740. The Russians, with whom the Turks have been at strife since 1672, have now commenced to get the superiority. After the war of 1770 to 1774, in which the Porte figured as ally of Poland, she lost

3. With what force did Solyman attack Rhodes? What became of the Knights of St. John?—4. What do you know of Selim II.? What celebrated naval battle took place under his reign? When did the decay of Turkey begin? What conquests were made by Turkey under Mahomet IV.?—5. What did the Peace of Carlowitz terminate? Since when is Russia struggling with Turkey?

Bukovino and Lesser Tartary, the independence of which was recognized by the Treaty of Kutchuk-Kaïnardji. This same Tartary became a Russian Province in 1783. The war of 1790-1792, confirmed this state of things, and took from the Porte several of the Caucasian cantons.

6. From 1809 to 1812, there was a fresh war, and Provinces between the Dnieper and the Danube were insured to Russia by the Peace of Bukharest. In 1819, Turkey lost the Ionian Islands, which became free under English protection. From 1820 to 1830, there was the loss of Greece, finally freed by the victory of Navarino, 1827; the loss of part of Turkish Armenia, ceded to Russia, in 1829; after a fresh war with Russia, Wallachia, Moldavia, and Servia became free by the Treaty of Adrianople, 1829, but they were subject to a tribute guaranteed by Russia.

7. In 1830 Turkey lost Algeria, which was conquered by France. In 1833, the Pacha of Egypt openly raised the standard of revolt, conquered Syria, beat the Turks at Konieh, and menaced Constantinople. Reduced to placing herself at the mercy of Russia, Turkey signed the Treaty of Unkiar-Skellessi, 1833, which obliged the Sultan to open the Bosphorus to the Russians, by closing the Dardanelles to the other powers. Mahomet Ali, following up his success, in 1839, gained the victory of Nizib and took possession of Candia: the intervention of the European powers arrested his progress, and in 1840, the Porte even regained possession of Syria, which had been conquered by English arms; in 1841, Candia was restored to him.

8. From that time, the Ottoman Empire only exists thanks to the jealousy of the European powers: the vain efforts made for the last 50 years by Selim and Mahmoud to raise this Empire by introducing a European organization into it, have only resulted in rendering the Turks dissatisfied without restoring them their former energy.

9. The claims of Russia over the Greek Church in Turkey, gave rise to the Crimean War, 1853-1855, in which, for the first time in many long years, the Turks were victorious over the Russians. By the Peace of Paris, Turkey regained a part of the territory to the North of the Danube, and was in a manner emancipated from Russian dependence. In 1861, Abdul-Aziz, the present reigning Sovereign, was raised to the throne.

6. Relate the Turkish war from 1809 to 1812. What did Turkey lose in 1819? in 1829?—7. What province did Turkey lose in 1830? What did the Pacha of Egypt do in 1833? in 1839? What did the Porte obtain in 1840?—8. What did Selim and Mahmoud do to raise the Empire?—9. What did the claims of Russia over the Greek Church in Turkey give rise?

HOLLAND.

1. Holland, the name of which signifies *Hollow Land*, was, by the Romans, called the Island of the Batavi. In the time of Cæsar, the Batavi already formed a considerable colony, and that conqueror made a treaty of alliance with them, when he determined on subduing Belgic Gaul, 54. B. C. Three distinct races afterwards occupied Holland: the Batavi, the Frisii, and the Bructeri. These tribes became subject to the French power, after a bloody victory which Charles Martel gained over the Frisii, in 736; Charlemagne gained them over to Christianity.

2. Under this Prince's weak successors, Holland was divided into several States governed by independent Sovereigns. Such were: the Counts of Holland properly so called from 863, the Dukes of Guelder, the Lords of Friesland, the Bishops of Utrecht, etc. In 1433, Philip of Burgundy united this country to his vast domains, and confided its government to Lieutenants or Stadtholders. This country then bore the name of the Low Countries.

3. After the death of Charles the Bold, 1477, his daughter Mary of Burgundy took this inheritance into the House of Austria, and, after Charles V., it became the property of the Spanish branch of the same House. It was at this period, that commerce and industry were developed in Holland, and her progress was also favored by the discovery of the New World, and that of the passage to the East Indies.

4. From 1523, Luther's Reformation had penetrated into Holland, and made great progress there. Under the Stadtholdership of William of Orange, 1559, the principal Seigniors, fearing the influence of Cardinal of Granvelle, the minister of Margaret, Duchess of Parma and sister of Philip II., whom this Prince had named *Governess of the Low Countries*, 1559, leagued together, and openly declared their opposition to the edicts against the Reformation. This league, from its origin called the Federation of the *Gueux*, beggars, gave rise to the greatest disorders. The violence exercised by the government of the Duke of Alba, who had replaced Margaret, 1567, was the cause of a general rising against the Spanish authority. William of Orange, after a long struggle, managed to take Holland from Spain.

---

1. Under what name was Holland known by the Romans? What tribes inhabited it subsequently? Under what Sovereign was this county gained over to Christianity?—2. Which Prince united this county to his domains? What was its name then?—3. To whom did Holland pass after the death of Charles the Bold?—4. What happened under the Stadtholdership of William of Orange? Why did the principal Seigniors league together? What was the final result of this insurrection?

5. A new government was established by the Union of Utrecht, 1579, under the name of Republic of the *Seven United Provinces.* William was put at the head of this new State with the title of *Stadtholder;* his authority, however, being balanced by that of the States-General, Calvinism was the only religion recognized by the new government.

6. In 1648, the Treaty of Westphalia recognized the existence of the Confederation as a sovereign and independent State. Two years afterwards, the Stadtholdership was abolished, and Holland constituted herself a Republic. She alternately sustained several glorious wars against England and Sweden; then, having, in 1668, concluded with these two powers a Treaty known as that of the *Triple Alliance,* she tried to oppose the ambitious project of Louis XIV. Almost immediately abandoned by her allies, the Republic of the United Provinces suffered several defeats: she then thought it better to revive the Stadtholdership, 1672, in favor of William III., Prince of Orange, afterwards King of England, 1689-1702.

7. Favorable circumstances, and above all, the skill of Admiral Ruyter, restored prosperity to this State, which was so seriously compromised: the Stadtholder invested with extraordinary powers, profited by them to declare the Stadtholdership hereditary in his family, 1674; but, after the death of William III., the Stadtholdership was abolished anew, 1702, only to be again established in 1747. However, during this interval, Friesland, Groningen, and Guelderland retained the Stadtholdership.

8. William IV., of Orange, named Stadtholder of all the Provinces, at the Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle, recovered all that the Republic had lost; but he was forced to raze all his fortresses. William V. succeeded him in 1751, under the guardianship of his mother and of the Duke of Brunswick. The commerce and power of Holland then began to decay. She was torn by internal troubles and weakened by continued external wars. At length, after many vicissitudes, she was conquered by the French in 1795. She then took the name of the *Batavian Republic,* divided into eight departments. This constitution lasted but a short time.

9. In 1805, Holland was raised to being the *Kingdom of Holland,* in favor of Louis Bonaparte, and divided into eleven

5. What government was established by the Union of Utrecht?—6. What successive forms of government then took place in Holland?—What was the *Triple Alliance?*—7. What did the Stadtholder do after being invested with extraordinary powers?—8. What do you know of William IV.? Who was his successor? What became of Holland in 1795?—9. What was done with Holland in 1806 and 1810? What changes were made in 1814? in 1831?

departments. In 1810, she was reunited to the French Empire. In 1814, reunited to Belgium, she formed, under the name of *Kingdom of the Low Countries*, a new State which was given to William Frederic of Orange. A revolution having violently separated Belgium from it in September, 1831, Holland again became a separate Kingdom which is still existing.

BELGIUM.

1. The Belgæ appear to have come originally from Germany. At the time of the conquest of the Gauls, it was the Belgæ, and among them the Nervii, who offered the most determined resistance to Cæsar. Drusus, Germanicus, Caligula, often led their armies into Belgium to keep in subjection this unmanageable and restless people. It was by Belgium that the Franks commenced the conquest of the Gauls; their first capital was Tournay.

2. In the 6th century, Belgium was part of the Kingdom of Austrasia; in the 8th, the family of Heristal, which came from the Belgian countries of Liege and Namur, founded the Carlovingian Empire. After the death of Louis the *Debonnaire*, Belgium was included in the Kingdom of Lotharingia, and when the latter became a Duchy of the Germanic Empire and divided into Upper and Lower Lorraine, almost all Belgium was included in the latter, of which it formed the principal part. The Duchy of Lower Lorraine was afterwards divided.

3. In the 15th century, the greater part of Belgium was reunited under Charles the Bold, Duke of Burgundy, and, in the 16th, Charles V., his heir, by joining to it some fresh acquisitions, composed the 17 United Provinces which were called the Circle of Burgundy, being a dependence of the Empire, whilst at the same time belonging to the Spanish line of the House of Austria. At the time of the insurrection which took away seven of these Provinces from Spain and from the Empire, and which gave birth, as we have already seen, to the Republic of the Seven United Provinces, 1579-1595, the provinces comprising the Belgium of the present time, remained in the Austro-Spanish House; they passed to the House of Austria, by the Treaties of Radstadt and Baden, 1714.

4. In 1792, France, having declared war against the Emperor

1. What was the origin of the Belgæ?—2. What was Belgium in the 7th and 8th centuries? What became of Belgium after the death of Louis the *Debonnaire*?—3. To whom did Belgium pass in the 15th century? in the 16th century?—4. To which country was Belgium united in 1801? What became of Belgium in 1814?

Francis II, invaded Belgium. In 17[illegible], this country was entirely conquered, and, in 1801, declared a French possession. It then consisted of nine departments. But, after the fall of Napoleon in 1814, Belgium, in conjunction with the Dutch Provinces, was made into a separate kingdom, under the name of Kingdom of the Low Countries, and given to William III., Prince of Orange-Nassau.

5. Lastly, in 1830, the Dutch and Belgian Provinces separated, and fought against one another with fury. After long conferences held in London, in 1831, and thanks to the intervention of France, Belgium was recognized as an independent Kingdom. In 1832, the two Houses, by a free vote, awarded to Leopold I., Prince of Saxe-Coburg, the crown which they had first offered to the Duke of Nemours. However, it is only since 1839, after the Treaty of Peace concluded between Holland and Belgium, and the division of Luxemburg and Limburg, that this Kingdom has been definitively recognized by all the European powers.

DENMARK.

1. Christian I., who ascended the throne in 1448, became the head of the dynasty which has reigned uninterruptedly ever since, and is still reigning in Denmark, a dynasty which, in modern times, has given Sovereigns to Sweden and Russia. Christian acquired Norway and the Duchies of Schleswig and Holstein; but the capitulation which he had to sign, so circumscribed his power in Denmark, that he seemed more like the President of a sovereign Senate, than the King of a free people.

2. Christian II., grandson of Christian I., tried to shake off the yoke of the States; but this attempt cost him Sweden, which, in 1523, withdrew from the Union of Calmar, and soon afterwards, he also lost Denmark and Norway, which, dethroning him, chose his paternal uncle Frederic I. for their King. Under this latter, the aristocracy was all-powerful and bondage became legal. Religious Reformation was introduced into Denmark, in 1547.

3. Under Christian IV., Denmark took an unfortunate part in

5. What happened in 1830? When did Belgium become an independent Kingdom?

1. What do you know of Christian I.? What countries did he acquire? —2. What did Christian II. undertake? What was the result of this attempt?—3. What took place under Christian IV.? In 1660? In 1814? In 1848?

the Thirty Years' War: she lost her Gothland Provinces and her ascendency in Sweden. In 1660, a popular insurrection against the nobles gave absolute power to royalty. Being an ally of France during Napoleon's reign, she was cruelly treated by England, and Copenhagen was bombarded, 1807. In 1814, Denmark lost Norway. In 1848, she received a Constitution from Frederic VII.

4. The settlement of the future succession to the throne, gave rise in 1848 to a great agitation; Schleswig, Hólstein, and Lauenburg, with the help of Prussia, attempted on this occasion to separate from Denmark: after a three years' war, in which Prussia had the worst of it, the Treaty of London, May 8th, 1852, terminated the differences by settling the succession, after the extinction of the House of Oldenburg, on the Prince Christian of Sonderburg-Glucksburg. However, on the death of Frederic VII., 1863, Germany claimed the independence of Holstein and Schleswig, which gave rise to a new war, a disastrous one for Denmark. On the 30th of October, 1864, a Treaty was signed, by which Denmark ceded the Duchies of Schleswig, Holstein, and Lauenburg to Austria and Prussia, who had charged themselves with *Federal arrangements.*

SWEDEN AND NORWAY.

1. The Swedes, breaking the Union of Calmar, chose for King, in 1448, as we have already seen, Charles VIII, Canutson, who had continually to be defending himself against Christian I. of Oldenburg, already Sovereign of Denmark and Norway. The Union twice restored, was again broken when Stenon Sture was named administrator of Sweden. Christian II., grandson of Christian I., triumphed over Sture, got himself named King of Sweden, and held the country by means of the most abominable tyranny, 1520. The Swedish nobles and prelates were put to death in the midst of the weeping people. Christian thought he needed place no restraints on himself, since he was victorious and an ally of the Emperor Charles V., whose sister he had married.

2. The Swedes found an avenger. A young scion of the royal race, Gustavus Vasa, having, by the public wish, become King of Sweden, 1523, drove out the King of Denmark, Christian II.,

4. What did the succession to the throne give rise? What was the result of the war of 1863?

1. What do you know of Charles VIII.? Of Stenon Sture? Of Christian II.?—2. Who delivered Sweden from Danish oppression? Why did Lutheranism prevail in the North of Europe?

and completely delivered Sweden from Danish domination, 1523. With the family of Vasa the Reformation was established in Sweden, which country has always since been Lutheran.

The opinions of Luther, which, as we have already said, were favorable to the ambition of princes and nobles, prevailed in the North of Europe.

3. Under the Vasas, 1523-1654, Sweden took rank among the preponderating powers of Europe: she gave three kings to Poland, interfered in Germany with brilliant success during the Thirty Years' War, and, in the North, was the ally of France. To the Provinces of Livonia, Ingria, and Carelia, conquered by Gustavus Adolphus, his daughter, Christina, added a part of Pomerania, as well as the Duchies of Bremen and Verden. This Princess, after a reign of 22 years' duration, voluntarily abdicated, 1654, in favor of her cousin Charles X. of the House of Deux-Ponts; and shortly afterwards, she embraced the Catholic Faith.

4. The new House at first upheld the glory of Sweden; Charles XI. concluded the glorious Treaty of Oliva with Poland, 1660; but the adventurous Charles XII., after having obtained unheard of successes against the Russians, was conquered at Pultawa by the Czar Peter the *Great*. He could not return to his own States, and completely ruined his country, which was soon afterwards, by the Treaty of Nystad, 1721, despoiled of nearly all its conquests. After the reign of Frederic of Hesse, husband of Ulrica Eleonora, 1751, Adolphus Frederic commenced a new dynasty, that of Holstein-Gottorp.

5. The quarrels of the Hats and Caps, the encroachments of the Diet on the royal authority, the assassination of Gustavus III., 1792, a foolish war undertaken by Gustavus IV. against Russia and France, involving the loss of Finland, Eastern Bothnia, and a part of Swedish Pomerania, lastly, the deposition of the King, 1809, weakened Sweden more and more. Charles XIII., uncle of Gustavus IV., was elected to replace that Prince. He was remarkable for his prudence; he signed a peace with France, and chose for his successor the French General Bernadotte, 1810.

6. In 1813, Sweden joined with the *Allies* against Napoleon; and, as a reward, received Norway, taken away from Denmark.

3. What became of Sweden under the Vasas? What provinces did Gustavus Adolphus add to Sweden? What did Christina do after a reign of 22 years?—4. What did Charles XI. do? What do you know of Charles XII.? What dynasty was commenced by Adolphus Frederic?—5. By what events was Sweden weakened? Who succeeded Gustavus IV.? Whom did he choose for his successor?—6. What was done by Sweden in 1813? When did Bernadotte ascend the throne of Sweden?

In 1818, Charles XIII. having died, Bernadotte succeeded him without any difficulty under the name of Charles XIV., and thus commenced a new dynasty. Sweden made great progress under this Prince.

POLAND.

1. The period of the Jagello-Princes, 1386-1572, with the eighty preceding years, was the most glorious for Poland. During this time, this country gave Kings to Bohemia and Hungary, reunited to the crown several large fiefs which had been separated from her, acquired Western Prussia together with the suzerainty of Eastern or Ducal Prussia, then Livonia, 1560, which was secured to her by the Peace of Kieverova-Horka, and finally established her suzerainty over Courland, 1561.

2. After the Fall of the Greek Empire, Poland gloriously resisted the attempts of the Turks, her fresh southern neighbors. But through the defects of her internal constitution, this country, long the first of the Northern States, seemed destined to perish. From the time of the election of the Jagellons, 1572, the crown became elective. The choice of the Polish Lords first fell on Henry of Valois, the Duke of Anjou. His successors were Stephen Bathori, 1575, then Sigismund Vasa, 1587, of Swedish origin, who involved Poland in a long war with his own country. Ladislas Vasa and John Casimir, his brother, still further increased the evil. The last, especially, allowed the nobles to extort from him the *liberum veto*, which, conferring on one single deputy the right of annulling any resolution, in the end caused a hopeless anarchy.

3. John Sobieski, 1674, one of the heroes of his times, could not remedy the evils which distracted his country. He failed in his project of rendering the throne hereditary, of subjecting the magistrates to the royal authority, and in imposing taxes on the higher classes. But, if he met with no success as a legislator, he had the consolation of beating the Turks, whom he victoriously repulsed from Vienna in 1683. On his death, 1697, the crown passed from his family to Augustus II., Elector of Saxony.

4. During the great Northern War, 1700-1721, the invasion of Charles XII., the struggle between two competitors for the

1. What was the most glorious period of the history of Poland?—2. What did Poland do after the Fall of the Greek Empire? What became of the crown at the extinction of the Jagellons? What do you know of Sigismund Vasa and Casimir?—3. What attempt did John Sobieski make? How did he distinguish himself?—4. What finished the ruin of Poland? Who was Stanislas Poniatowski?

throne, Augustus, whose claims were supported by the Czar Peter, and Stanislas Leczinski, who was supported by Charles XII., completed the ruin of Poland. At length, favored by the discords which armed the Catholics and the Dissidents against one another, the Russians occupied Poland, and Catharine, by force, caused her former favorite Stanislas Poniatowski, to be proclaimed King, 1764.

5. Then a *rokoss* of patriots, called the *Confederation of Bar*, was formed to counteract Russian influence, 1768; Louis XV. and the Porte lent their support to the Confederates; but the fall of Choiseul, in France, and the defeats of the Turks rendered the heroism of the patriots vain, and the first dismemberment of Poland was decided upon in 1772. Eastern Galicia was given to Austria; all the former conquests of the Lithuanians from the Russians—White Russia, Black Russia, Polish Livonia—were given back to Russia; Prussia Royal and its appendages fell to the lot of the House of Brandenburg. What still remained bore the title of Kingdom of Poland, but was in fact a Russian Province.

6. In 1790, during the war of the Swedes and Turks against Russia, the Polish patriots effected a revolution; and, in 1791, they promulgated a judicious Constitution, which abolished the absurd *veto* and strengthened royalty; but Russia stirred up against them the Confederation of Targowice, 1792, composed of the Polish malcontents, who took up arms in the name of the old liberties and Constitution. Favored by these dissensions, a second division took place in 1793, between Russia and Prussia.

7. A fresh effort of the Poles, in 1794, brought on a third and still more unequal struggle, during which Kosciusko vainly performed prodigies of valor; and a third and last division took place in 1795. Austria had a share this time, as well as Russia and Prussia. Thus Poland, for twelve years, remained annihilated.

8. After his first Prussian compaign, 1807, Napoleon, by the Treaty of Tilsit, made of Polish Prussia and some other former provinces of Poland, the Grand-Duchy of Varsovia, which included about two-fifths of the former Kingdom of Poland, and gave it to the King of Saxony, Frederic Augustus, grandson of Augustus II., who had already been elected King by the patriots

5. What was the end of the Confederation of Bar? When was the first dismemberment of Poland made?—6. What did the Polish patriots do in 1790? In 1791? What stirred up Russia against Poland? Who shared in the second division of Poland?—7. What attempt did the Poles make in 1794? What other division took place in 1795?—8. What was the result of the Treaty of Tilsit?

in 1790, but had not accepted the crown. From that period, the Poles, always hoping for the restoration of their nationality, were devoted to the Emperor; their soldiers constantly fought in the ranks of the French army, in which they formed a select corps.

9. After Napoleon's fall, the Congress of Vienna, 1815, cut in two the *Grand-Duchy of Varsovia:* the western part, comprising Dantzic, Thorn, Culm, Posen, etc., was given to Prussia, which converted it into the *Grand-Duchy of Posen;* the eastern part, far the larger, was given to Russia; which formed it into an appendage of the Empire under the name of *Kingdom of Poland.* Cracovia alone was left out of this new division and formed an independent Republic; but Austria took possession of it in 1846, and incorporated it into Galicia.

10. This new Kingdom, whilst annexed to the Russian Empire, was to preserve its nationality; in fact it received a Constitution from the Emperor Alexander, and had its Diet, which voted taxes and discussed laws. A Viceroy was given to it in the person of Constantine, the Emperor's brother. Under this new form of government, Poland enjoyed some repose from 1815 to 1830; but, after the French Revolution of 1830, she revolted anew against Russia, alleging *as a pretext* the non-performance of the Treaty intended to secure her liberty. For six months, Poland struggled heroically against a tenfold force; being again conquered, she was decimated by the conqueror, forfeited the Constitution given her by Alexander, as well as the greater part of her privileges, and found herself still further weighed down under the Russian yoke; the statutes of 1832 and 1835 effaced the last traces of her nationality, and took from her even the use of her own language in all official acts.

The Emperor Alexander II., from the time of his accession, had endeavored to soften the fate of Poland; he had restored her the use of her own tongue, and given her a separate government; however, in 1863, the rigors of the conscription gave rise to a fresh insurrection. After an unequal struggle of two years' duration, the Poles, who had vainly relied on the help of the European powers, were again reduced, and found their fate considerably aggravated.

9. What was done by the Congress of Vienna in 1815?—10. By whom was the new kingdom governed? What did the Poles do in 1830? What did they attempt in 1863?

RUSSIA.

1. As we have seen, Russia had just been inundated by hordes of Tartars, but the great Ivan III. succeeded in freeing her from the yoke of these barbarians, 1481. This same Prince subjugated Novgorod, Pskov, Biarmia, and incorporated with Russia several principalities, amongst others, Severia. Shortly afterwards, he added the west of Siberia.

2. Basil IV. and Ivan IV., his successors, were always at war with Poland, the Teutonic Knights, and Sweden; they conquered Kazan and Astrachan; but Ivan made vain efforts to take Livonia. In 1598, the dynasty of Rurik became extinct, and Boris Godounof usurped the throne; then came a period of troubles, 1605, etc., during which Russia, for whose possession the Poles and Swedes were disputing, seemed on the eve of perishing; the election of Michael Romanoff, 1613, put an end to this unhappy period.

3. Russia gradually revived under this Czar and his two successors, and retook Severia from the Poles. Peter the Great, 1682-1725, continued this work, fixing as the boundaries of Russia, the Baltic, the Caspian Sea, and the Black Sea; he founded St. Petersburg, saw Poland declining, ruined the power of Sweden, and took part in the politics of Europe.

4. This flow of prosperity was stayed, without receding however, under the reigns of the successors of Peter the Great; but Catharine II., 1763-1796, raised Russia to the highest degree of splendor, conquered Lesser Tartary, Lithuania, Courland, Caucasus, and obtained half of Poland by the divisions of 1792 and 1795. Her son, Paul I., entered into the coalition against France, and sent his armies as far as Switzerland, 1799.

5. Under Alexander I., in spite of an almost unintermitted struggle with France, in spite of the expedition of 1812, during which Moscow was given up to the flames by the Russians themselves, Russia increased her dominion by the acquisition of Finland, Eastern Bothnia, Bessarabia, and Georgia. In 1815, she took possession of at least two-thirds of Great Poland, of which France had, in 1807, made the Grand-Duchy of Varsovia, and formed of it the *Kingdom of Poland*. At this epoch, Russia, at the head of the *Holy Alliance*, was the preponderating power in Europe.

6. Nicholas I., who succeeded Alexander, added to his States

1. Who freed Russia from the Tartars?—2. Who succeeded Rurik's dynasty?—3. Under what Prince did Russia begin to revive? What do you know of Peter the Great?—4. What did Catharine II. do? What do you know of Paul I.?—5. What is said of Alexander's reign?—6. What were the chief events of the reign of Nicholas I.?

the greater part of Armenia, which he took from the King of Persia, and the Pachalic of Akhaltsike as well as the mouths of the Danube, which were taken from Turkey. His victorious armies would have marched on Constantinople, if the intervention of the European powers had not arrested their progress, 1829; nevertheless, he had succeeded in considerably weakening the Turkish Empire by aiding Greek independence, 1820-27, and by almost entirely freeing Servia, Wallachia, and Moldavia, which were placed under his protection. At length, he saw that country reduced to be at his mercy by the Treaty of Unkiar-Skelessi, 1833. At the same period, Poland, stirred up by the French Revolution of 1830, was, in spite of her heroic efforts, subdued and incorporated with the Empire.

7. Thus, master everywhere, the Emperor Nicholas had now but to consolidate his conquests, when, in 1853, upon his wishing to make himself Protector of the Greek Church in the Turkish Provinces, he caused a fresh war with Turkey, and occasioned a quarrel which brought on a European war. After two disastrous campaigns, against Turkey, France, and England, Russia, was conquered on the heights of Alma and at Sebastopol, and forced to sign a disadvantageous peace on March 30th, 1856.

8. Alexander II., a peaceable Prince, has applied himself to repairing the evils caused by war, and reforming the domestic government of the Empire. He has undertaken the emancipation of the serfs, and the reorganization of public instruction; but, in 1863, the peace of his reign was troubled by a fresh revolt of the Poles, which was only quelled at the end of two years, and after sanguinary combats.

HUNGARY.

1. After frequent incursions into the various countries of Europe, the Hungarians, a race coming from Asia, fixed themselves in Pannonia. Subject to Charlemagne during his glorious reign, they soon recovered their independence, and chose themselves a chief named Geisa; the son of this latter embraced Christianity, and converted his people. He is honored by the Church under the name of St. Stephen, 1038.

2. Several dynasties of different origin succeeded one another

7. What was the cause of the war of 1854-55? How did this war affect Russia?—8. What were the first acts of the government of Alexander II.? What event took place in 1863?

1. Where did the Hungarians fix themselves? Who was Geisa's son?—2. To what Austrian Prince did the crown pass? What do you know of Maria Theresa?

on the Hungarian throne; at length, Ferdinand, brother of Charles V., succeeded in declaring the crown hereditary in the House of Austria, causing it to be given to his son Maximilian, who, shortly afterwards, became Emperor, 1564. After long civil and religious wars, which agitated all Germany, Hungary passed to Charles VI. His daughter, Maria Theresa, 1745, was kept on the Imperial throne by the valor of the Hungarians, who had remained faithful to her; from that time, Hungary has remained united to Austria.

3. In 1848, Hungary, irritated by the encroachments of the Austrian Emperors, wished to recover her independence by having recourse to arms. She was on the point of succeeding, when Austria solicited the intervention of Russia. Overwhelmed by superior force, the Hungarian army had to lay down their arms, but would only yield to the Russian General, August 1849. Hungary then saw her national institutions abolished, and her territory reduced, becoming then merely an Austrian Province. In 1861, Austria restored her a part of her liberties, and, in 1865, established a Hungarian Diet and ministry, and made every effort to gain the affections of the people.

PRUSSIA.

1. The inhabitants of Prussia, in ancient times, were the *Guttones*, the *Vendili*, etc. This country formed part of the Gothic Empire, and, after the departure of the Goths, was invaded by Slavonic tribes, among which were the *Lettones* and the *Borussi* or *Porussi*, who dwelt on the banks of the Vistula, and gave their name to the country.

2. At the commencement of the thirteenth century, the Duke of Mazovia, Conrad, tried to subjugate and convert them to Christianity, 1207, but he was repulsed, and the Russians laid waste his States. He called to his aid against them the Knights of the Order of the Sword, 1215, afterwards those of the Teutonic Order, 1226. The latter, under their Grand-Master Hermann de Salza, 1237 etc., commenced the conquest of those barbarous countries, which was only finished in 1283. Forced to quit the Holy Land in 1290, the Order established its head-quarters and grand-mastership at Marienburg in Prussia, 1309.

3. What did Hungary do in 1848 and afterwards?

1. By what people was Prussia first inhabited?—2. What was done in the 13th century? What was the Teutonic Order? When did the Order quit the Holy Land?

3. Under their dominion, the country flourished for a time. The Order eventually became weakened by perpetual wars with Lithuania, Poland, and Brandenburg; then the display, the pillage, and the cruelties of the Knights, exasperated the people against them, and a terrible insurrection ensued, 1454; the nobility and the towns coalesced, and shaking off the yoke of the Order, placed themselves under the protection of Poland. The Peace of Thorn, 1466, put an end to the war, by dividing Prussia into two parts: the one to the West, *Prussia Royal*, which became part of the Kingdom of Poland, where Casimir IV. was then reigning; the other, to the East, *Teutonic Prussia*, which remained in the hands of the Order, but as a fief under the Polish Suzerainty.

4. In 1525, the Grand-Master of the Order secularized Prussia, and, by an act contrary to his rights, made it an hereditary duchy in his own family, but still depending on Poland, hence the name of *Ducal Prussia* given to Teutonic Prussia. This duke was Albert, of the House of Brandenburg; he had embraced Luther's Reformation.

5. Albert Frederic or Albert II., his son, succeeded him; but this Prince, having fallen into a state of imbecility in 1573, his States were administered by John George, then by Joachim Frederic and John Sigismund, his relations; the last was invested with the dukedom in 1611, and having made his son marry a daughter of Albert II., he settled the ducal crown of Prussia on the line to which it belonged.

6. Frederic William, in 1657, obtained from Casimir V. and from Charles X. of Sweden, that Prussia should cease being a fief of Poland. After the installation of Frederic III., as King, under the name of Frederic I., 1701, Prussia was increased by several provinces. The celebrated Frederic II., in 1741 and 1742, conquered nearly all Silesia, which was confirmed to him by the Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle, 1748, and that of Hubertsburg, 1763. The same Frederic, in 1774, obtained for his share, at the first dismemberment of Poland, Polish Prussia, but without Dantzic nor Thorn. Under this Prince, Prussia attained a high degree of greatness and glory.

7. In 1801, after having lost her possessions to the West of

3. What wars had the Teutonic Order to sustain? What was the subsequent conduct of the Knights? What did the Peace of Thorn effect?—4. What did the Grand-Master of the Teutonic Order do in 1525?—5. What do you know of Albert II.? Of John Sigismund?—6. What did Frederic William obtain in 1657? Who was the first king of Prussia? What were the chief events under Frederic II.?—7 What did Prussia receive from Napoleon in 1801? What was done to her troops soon after? What did the Treaty of Tilsit take from her? What suddenly restored her? What territories did Prussia recover after the fall of Napoleon?

the Rhine, on receiving advantageous compensations to the East, Prussia received Hanover from Napoleon; but a few months later, her troops were driven out of Hanover, and, in 1807, the Treaty of Tilsit took away from her all what she possessed in Westphalia and Franconia, besides Greater Poland, which became the Grand-Duchy of Varsovia. Driven back on the Oder, Prussia was on the point of being reduced to nothing, when the fall of Napoleon suddenly restored her. In 1814, she recovered about a fourth of Greater Poland, all her other possessions, except Anspach and Bayreuth, had in addition Swedish Pomerania, nearly half the Saxon Kingdom, and, both to the East and West of the Rhine, acquired the territories which formed Rhenish Prussia.

8. For a long time subject to absolute government, this country, in 1822, obtained the Assembly of the Provincial States, and, in 1847, a commencement of national representation. After the revolution which broke out in France, in 1848, a new Constitution was ratified by the King, February 6th, 1850; it established two Chambers, the House of Lords and that of the Deputies, these Chambers were to vote the taxes and the laws, and they also established the responsibility of the ministers.

9. William Louis, 1861, had at first to sustain fresh debates upon the Constitution; but, seconded by his crafty minister Bismark, he gave another current to popular feeling. Thanks to the successes easily gained over Denmark, 1864, and to a war as successful as it was bold against Austria, which was vanquished at Sadowa, 1866, he increased his Kingdom by Holstein, Sleswick, Lauenburg, Hanover, Electoral Hesse and Upper Hesse, Nassau, Hamburg, and Frankfort, and excluded Austria from Germany, which he reorganized by arrogating to himself the presidency of the *Northern Confederation.* (For the French war of 1870-1871, see page 200.)

8. What did Prussia obtain in 1822? When was her new Constitution ratified?—9. What had William Louis to sustain in 1861? What was the result of his victory at Sadowa?

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

SECTION I.

From the establishment of the first English Colonies, to their war with the French Canadian Colonies, in 1754.

1. The existence of the United States of America as a free and independent country, dates only from 1776; but their history begins much earlier. We may remember that the Venetians, John and Sebastian Cabot, were the first to discover the coasts of the United States of America, in 1497; that Ponce de Leon discovered Florida, in 1512; and that Verazzani, in 1524, visited the northerly coast as far as the 34th degree of latitude.

2. From 1562 to 1565, the French vainly tried to colonize Florida. Sir Walter Raleigh, a celebrated English navigator, having obtained a commission from Queen Elizabeth, set sail for America, where he arrived in 1684, entered Pamlico Strait, then went to Roanoke Island, near the mouth of Albermarle Sound, and took possession of the surrounding territories for the Crown of England; the Queen soon after gave that portion of country the name of Virginia.

3. The first effectual attempt at colonization took place in 1607, under the reign of James I., by a party of adventurers, among whom was Captain John Smith; they established themselves on the Powhattan, or James River, and there commenced a settlement which they called Jamestown.

4. Henry Hudson, an English navigator in the service of Holland, in 1609, discovered the river which bears his name, as well as the adjacent country. Then, following in the footsteps of the English, the Dutch, in 1614, established there two colonies, one of which has become the city of Albany, and the other, the great city of New York. To the whole region they gave the name of *New Netherlands*. In 1664, England, under the reign of Charles II., having been fortunate in a war against Holland, obliged the latter to cede her American colonies, which were thenceforward called New York, in honor of the King's brother, the Duke of York.

---

1. When did the United States become an independent country? When did the Cabots visit the coasts of America? Ponce de Leon? Verazzani? —2. What did Sir Walter Raleigh do in 1681?—3. When did the first effectual attempt at colonization take place?—4. What did Henry Hudson discover? Where did the Dutch establish colonies in 1614? To whom did the Dutch colonies afterwards pass?

5. In 1620, under the reign of James I., some English Puritans, wishing to escape the persecutions directed at them by the Established Church, came to seek the boon of religious liberty amidst the forests of America. They landed at the further end of a bay which they called Plymouth, New England, and there commenced a settlement. But hardly were they established on the American continent, when these colonists exercised a far greater intolerance than that from which they had fled, cruelly persecuting all who differed from their own religious belief. In 1628, John Endicott commenced the colony of Massachusetts Bay, and, in 1630, John Winthrop, those of Boston, Charlestown, and others in the neighborhood.

6. In the spring of 1623, were founded the two colonies of Portsmouth and Dover in New Hampshire. These settlements were united to those of Massachusetts in 1641; but, in 1679, New Hampshire obtained a separate government. The New England colonies owed their rapid growth to the violent persecution of the Puritans in England, which induced these latter to emigrate to America.

7. The intolerance of the Massachusetts colonies, was one of the principal causes of the formation of numerous settlements. Thus Roger Williams, a pastor exiled from Salem, founded Providence and Warwick in Rhode Island. Wheelwright and some of his friends took the direction of Piscataqua and founded the town of Exeter. Hooker, a Protestant minister from Cambridge, came, at the head of a hundred adventurers, and founded the town of Hartford. Another body of settlers set out from Dorchester to found Windsor; and other dissenters, following their example, settled in the valleys of Connecticut.

8. The valley of the Connecticut River had already drawn the attention of adventurers by its fertility and advantageous position. The Dueth had founded an establishment there, besides the Fort of Amsterdam which they had built at the mouth of the Hudson. Lord Say and Lord Brooke had also obtained patents for establishing colonies there; and, in 1635, John Winthrop was sent thither and raised a fort at the mouth of the Connecticut, and laid the foundation of Saybrook.

9. In 1638, John Davenport founded the Puritan colony of

5. When and by whom was the first colony established in New England? What was the subsequent conduct of these colonists? What did John Endicott do in 1628? John Winthrop in 1630?—6. What do you know of the first establishments in New Hampshire?—7. What gave cause for the settlement of Rhode Island and Connecticut?—8. What is said of the valley of the Connecticut River? Who had made a settlement there? Who founded Saybrook?—9. What did John Davenport do in 1638?

New Haven, which had a different jurisdiction from the inland one, so that, at this period, there were no less than three political communities on the territory now forming the State of Connecticut. These were Saybrook, under the jurisdiction of its owners; the colony of Connecticut, under that of Massachusetts; and the settlement of New Haven, whose inhabitants had acquired the territory from the Indians, and governed themselves in virtue of a social contract.

10. The colony of Massachusetts was the most flourishing; it was divided into four counties, Essex, Middlesex, Suffolk, and Norfolk. The colonists had founded towns, built churches for different denominations, erected fortresses, hospitals, colleges, and prisons. They had good harbors, ships, and vast magazines.

11. When the civil war broke out in England, towards the end of the reign of Charles I., the different colonies of New England, fearing lest they might be exposed to the scourge of the dissensions which were distracting the mother-country, resolved to form a Confederation among themselves, under the name of *United Colonies of New England.* These were Massachusetts, Connecticut, New Hampshire, and New Haven; Rhode Island and the Providence settlement were not admitted to the alliance, on account of the non-conformity, in religious opinions, of their inhabitants with those of the members of the Confederation.

12. The principal end of this Confederation, was the defense and enlargement of the New England colonies; it was recognized and authorized by the British government. The members of the Long Parliament, being themselves Puritans, were well disposed to favor the Puritan colonies. They gave their approbation of the conduct of the colonists, and exempted them from all taxes on importations and exportations, 1641.

13. In 1656, a certain number of *Quakers*, fleeing from the persecution they met with in England, came to seek an asylum in New England; but the novelty of their form of worship greatly offended the ministers of the Established Church, and they were consequently thrown into prison, and afterwards, on the first opportunity, expelled from the country. A law was then passed prohibiting the immigration of Quakers into Massachusetts, and forbidding, under pain of death, the return of those who had

10. How was the colony of Massachusetts divided?—11. What did the colonies form, when the civil war broke out in England? What was this Confederation called? What composed this Confederation.—12. What was the end of this Confederation? How was it considered by England?—13. What took place in New England in 1656? What law was passed there?

been banished. In consequence of these cruel proscriptions, many among them were hung, though perfectly inoffensive.

14. The Quakers were not better treated in Connecticut. A law was passed condemning its infringer to imprisonment with hard labor, and to having his tongue pierced with a red-hot iron.

15. In 1626, an expedition, composed of Swedes and Finlanders, had penetrated into Delaware Bay, and had there founded the town of Christina, in honor of the daughter of Gustavus Adolphus. This colony at first lived on a good understanding with its neighbor, the Dutch colony of *New Netherlands;* but no sooner did it increase in riches and population, than rivalry broke out between them. The Dutch took possession of this Swedish settlement in 1651. After the English had become its masters in 1664, it became part of New York.

16. About 1632, Sir George Calvert, Lord Baltimore, a distinguished person, who had been Secretary of State during the reign of James I. of England, obtained from King Charles I the concession of the territory extending from the course of the Potomac to the 40th degree of North latitude. Sir George dying, the grant passed to his eldest son, Cecil Calvert, who inherited his father's titles. Leonard Calvert, Cecil's brother, the following year, 1633, led thither an expedition consisting of about 200 men, and landed at the mouth of the Potomac. The new settlement received the name of Maryland, in honor of Henrietta Maria, the wife of Charles I. and daughter of Henry IV. Calvert, a well-educated and liberal-minded nobleman, professed the Catholic religion, which was at that time persecuted in England, and the first colonists were like him Catholics. Very soon, thanks to this nobleman's wise principles of tolerance, people of every religion came to establish themselves under his protection, and the population of the new colony increased rapidly. This State was the first in the world which enjoyed entire religious liberty.

17. The Charter granted by Charles I. to Lord Baltimore, recognized him and his heirs as lords and proprietors of the soil, and of all that it should produce, except one-fifth of all the gold and silver that should be found there, which was reserved to the crown. Lord Baltimore obtained in behalf of the inhabitants of his colony, exemption from all taxes and the enjoyment of all the rights of British subjects.

---

14. What law was passed in Connecticut?—15. What colony was settled in 1626?—16. What other colony was founded in 1633? What do you know of Lord Baltimore? What caused this new colony to increase rapidly?—17. What did Lord Baltimore obtain for his colonists?

18. Calvert, says Bancroft, deserves to take rank amongst the wisest and most philanthropic legislators of every age. He was the first in the history of the Christian world, who sought to guarantee security and religious peace by practising justice, without having recourse to power. He maintained liberty of conscience and the equality of all Christian sects.

19. New Jersey was first colonized by the Dutch and Swedes. When Charles II. gave New York to his brother, the Duke of York, 1664, all the territory between the Hudson and the Delaware was included in the grant. The region now forming New Jersey, was sold to Lord Berkeley and to Sir George Carteret. In 1674, Lord Berkeley sold his portion to two English Quakers; and, in 1682, William Penn and eleven other Quakers became proprietors of the rest of this Province, which they bought from Sir George Carteret.

20. In 1669, a colony, led by William Sayle, laid the foundation of the town of Charleston, South Carolina, after having obtained from Charles II., the grant of this place with a large extent of territory. In 1729, this vast tract of country was divided into two distinct territories, called North and South Carolina. In 1732, another portion was detached to form Georgia, thus named in honor of George II. A settlement was commenced immediately on the River Savannah, under the direction of General Oglethorpe.

21. The celebrated William Penn, son of the English Admiral of that name, having, when very young, embraced the opinions of the Quakers, largely shared in the persecution which sprang up against that sect in England. Not being longer able to endure this intolerant and unjust conduct, Penn resolved to go and seek in the New World an asylum from the persecution of the Old World. He therefore addressed himself to Charles II., who, in consideration of a sum of money due to his father by the crown, gave him the grant of a large territory in America, comprising the present State of Pennsylvania.

22. The first colony arrived in this country, in 1681, and commenced a settlement beyond the confluence of the Rivers Delaware and Schuylkill. In the month of October, 1682, Penn

18. What does Bancroft say of Calvert?—19. By whom was New Jersey colonized? What did Lord Berkeley do in 1674? Who became proprietor of New Jersey?—20. When was Charleston commenced? How was that large extent of territory divided? What formed Georgia, and why is it so called?—21. What did William Penn do to avoid the persecution against the Quakers in England? What did he receive from Charles II.?—22. When did the colony of Quakers arrive? Where did they commence their settlement? When did Penn arrive in the colony? How many colonists accompanied him?

arrived in the colony, accompanied by 2000 settlers, the greater part of whom were Quakers like himself, and, in 1683, he laid the foundation of Philadelphia.

23. Virginia, New York, Massachusetts, Delaware, Connecticut, Maryland, Rhode Island, New Hampshire, New Jersey, North Carolina, South Carolina, Pennsylvania, and Georgia, were the thirteen original States which revolted against the government of Great Britain, in 1775.

SECTION II.

From the War with the French Canadian Colonies, 1754, to the Revolution, 1775.

1. The Anglo-American Colonies struggled against many difficulties, and the events of their early history bear a general resemblance. The treatment, which, in many instances, the Indians, the legitimate owners of the soil, received from the European adventurers, awoke in this wild race a spirit of hostility and vengeance, which became the cause of much cruelty and great effusion of blood. It was particularly in New England, that the behavior of the settlers towards the Indians, was unjust and rapacious.

2. Another fruitful source of trouble, was the neighborhood of the French Canadian colonists. On founding their first establishments in Louisiana, the French had formed the project of uniting them to those in Canada, by a chain of intermediate posts along the banks of the Mississippi. They looked on the fertile valley watered by that river, as belonging to them, and laid claim to possess the land as far as the Apalachian Chain. Their plan of fortification, stretching from New Orleans as far as the great lakes, surrounded the English colonies with an arc of which these, in a manner, formed the chord, and thus they rendered themselves masters of all communication with the interior.

3. The English, established on the coasts of the Atlantic, also extended their claims in a westerly direction to an unlimited extent. Consequently, the project of the French, excited the liveliest apprehensions both in England and the colonies. The rivalry of the two nations soon brought the scourge of war into

23. Name the thirteen original States which revolted against England.

1. What do you know of the Anglo-American colonies? How did they treat the Indians?—2. What was another source of trouble to them?—3. What was at that epoch the population of the English colonies? Of the French colonies?

the vast regions whose possession was being disputed. The English colonies at this period numbered more than 1000000 inhabitants, whilst the population of the French settlements did not exceed 52000 souls.

4. In 1749, a company was formed in London, under the name of the Ohio Company, which obtained from the government a grant of 600000 acres, in order to establish trading relations with the Indians. In 1751, the Company sent out men to explore the newly-conceded territory. The French, looking upon these attempts at settlement as an invasion of their possessions, opposed them, and even arrested some English merchants, whom they retained prisoners.

5. At this intelligence, the colonial government of Virginia protested against the behavior of the French, and sent a message by young George Washington, the same who afterwards played so distinguished a part in the events of this country, to the commandant of Fort Duquesne, now the town of Pittsburg, complaining of these arrests, and, at the same time, summoning him immediately to evacuate this territory, as belonging to His Britannic Majesty.

6. The reply not being satisfactory, hostilities commenced almost immediately. Washington was then made Colonel of a regiment of Virginians. Troops were raised throughout the colony; naval and land forces having arrived from England, expeditions were sent against Nova Scotia, Crown Point, and Niagara, 1755.

7. This same year was rendered memorable by the expedition against Fort Duquesne. It was commanded by the English General Braddock, who, besides two regiments of regulars, had also the regiment of colonial troops under Washington. By the imprudence or carelessness of Braddock, the expedition was a very unfortunate one, the army being thoroughly routed by the French and Indians. Braddock himself was killed, and nothing less than the distinguished courage and coolness of Washington could save the army from complete ruin. The other expeditions had no important result.

8. The campaigns of 1756 and 1757, were without any result for the English Generals; but afterwards, the celebrated William Pitt (Lord Chatham), having become Prime Minister

4. What was the Ohio Company? What did it obtain?—5. What did the government of Virginia do at this intelligence?—6. As the reply was not satisfactory, what was done?—7. For what is the year 1755 memorable?—8. What is said of the campaigns of 1756 and 1757? When did the war take a more decided form? What took place in 1758 and 1759? What terminated the war? Who were the most distinguished British Generals? Who was the chief French General?

of England, the war took a more decided form. In 1758, Louisbourg and Fort Duquesne fell before the British colonial forces, and the tide of success turned so decidedly in their favor, that, the following year, Quebec and all Canada were conquered. Ticonderoga and Crown Point were likewise taken. The war was terminated by the Treaty of Paris, in 1763. The French had lost Canada, Acadia, Cape Breton Island, and only retained the valley of the Mississippi and New Orleans. The English Generals who most distinguished themselves in this war, were Amherst and the celebrated Wolfe, who fell before Quebec at the moment of victory. The French General Montcalm, Wolfe's great rival, fell also mortally wounded at the defence of Quebec.

9. It is from this epoch, that may be dated the misunderstanding which arose between England and her American colonies. These latter having made considerable increase, the English government thence thought himself justified in imposing fresh taxes on them, and, in spite of the reiterated representations, of which Franklin was several times the bearer, heavy duties were established, in 1765, on stamp-paper, glass, tea, etc. Soon the excitement became general, and in 1773, Boston gave the first signal of revolt.

10. Things had come to a crisis. The Americans saw and understood the menacing attitude of the British government, and the great responsibility weighing on themselves. But, full of confidence in the justice of their cause, and determined to maintain it before the world, they resolutely prepared themselves for the great event that was fast approaching.

SECTION III.

American Revolution.—From the Commencement of hostilities, 1775, *to the Recognition of the Independence of the United States,* 1783.

1. When it had become manifest that the British government was preparing measures of coercion, the Americans determined to convoke a Congress of the different colonies, so as to concert measures of asserting and defending their rights against the encroachments of Great Britain. This plan, conceived in Massachusetts, was rapidly adopted by all the colonies, Georgia excepted; the delegates met at Philadelphia, September 5th, 1774. This assembly, composed of fifty-five members, was

9. What took place in the colonies after this war?—10. What was the state of things, and what did the Americans determine to do?

1. What did the Americans convoke? What did the Congress do?

called the *Continental Congress*. After its organization, the Congress solemnly proclaimed the rights and immunities of the colonies, suspended all commercial relations with Great Britain, and voted several addresses, one to the King, another to the English people, and a third to the colonies. Proclamations were also addressed to the inhabitants of Canada, Acadia, and Florida, inviting them to join the American Confederation.

2. The British government, having received intelligence of what was passing in the colonies, resolved to act with severity. Accordingly, Massachusetts was declared in a state of rebellion, and repressive measures were extended to the other New England colonies. The army was increased by 10000 men, a force considered sufficient to quell the rebellion. Meanwhile, the Americans, losing all hope of obtaining justice from the fountain-head, vigorously prepared means of resistance. Manufactories of arms and magazines, were established in Massachusetts, Pennsylvania, and Maryland; on every side, companies of militia were raised and organized, and the whole country resounded with preparations for war. The crisis was at hand.

3. Notified by his emissaries that a magazine of arms and munition had been established at Concord, General Gage determined to carry off these stores, and, on April 18th, 1775, he sent thither a detachment of 800 grenadiers under Lieut. Col. Smith and Major Pitcairn. When these troops arrived at Lexington, they found a small body of militia under arms. Major Pitcairn, who was commanding the van-guard, summoned them to lay down their arms, and, on their refusal, ordered his men to fire on the rebels. The militia retired, leaving behind eight men killed and a great many wounded. This was the first blood shed in the struggle for independence. The troops then advanced as far as Concord and destroyed the stores. On his way back to Lexington, Col. Smith was attacked by a numerous body of militia, and his forces were routed. The English were then threatened with annihilation, when reinforcements, consisting of 2000 infantry, sent by General Gage, arrived in time to save the remains of the corps and secure their retreat.

4. This first battle of the revolution became the signal for war, and was of great importance to the fate of America. Throughout the colonies, the Americans took possession, for their own use, of the government forts, magazines, and arsenals.

2. What was done by the British government at this intelligence? What attitude did the Americans assume, losing all hope of obtaining justice?—3. What took place on April 18th, 1775? What took place at Lexington? At Concord?—5. What was the effect of the battle of Lexington into the colonies?

They immediately organized regular forces, got together a considerable army in the neighborhood of Boston, and sent expeditions against the Forts Ticonderoga and Crown Point, which yielded without resistance. These two forts gave the Americans more than 200 pieces of artillery and a great quantity of ammunition.

5. In the month of May, 1775, the second continental Congress assembled at Philadelphia, and adopted the name of *United Colonies*. About the same time, Generals Howe, Clinton, and Burgoyne arrived in Boston with reinforcements from England. Resolved to dislodge the English army from Boston, the Americans took possession of an eminence called Bunker Hill, and there threw up entrenchments on the night of the 16th of June. At daybreak, the enemy descried their operations, but the Americans continued their works in spite of the well-sustained fire of a numerous and powerful artillery. General Howe, at the head of 3000 regulars, advanced on the position occupied by about 1500 Americans. When the enemy was about sixty paces distant, the Americans opened a terrible fire, which carried death and disorder into the English ranks; returning to the charge, the English were again repulsed in disorder; but the entrenchments, attacked simultaneously at several points, and fired on from the vessels in the harbor, were at length carried at the point of the bayonet. The Americans, after a desperate resistance, fell back in good order to the Isthmus of Charlestown. The English remained masters of the field, but their victory cost them dearly; they had lost 1054 men in killed and wounded, whilst the Americans, 453. The most regrettable loss for the latter, was that of General Warren, an ardent and patriotic officer, who fell in the heat of the engagement.

6. In the meanwhile, Congress had made the most energetic arrangements, by ordering a body of 20000 men to be raised and equipped, thus organizing an army. George Washington, a member of Congress, the delegate from Virginia, was, by unanimous vote, named Commander-in-chief of the American army. This man truly great and good, whose high-mindedness, sound judgment, and strict principles, as well as rare intelligence, inspired the patriots with the greatest confidence, accepted the responsible position to which he was called, and immediately entered on his duties. He arrived at Cambridge, July 2nd, 1775, and there established his head-quarters.

5. What took place in May 1775? Relate the battle of Bunker Hill. What loss did the Americans sustain?—6. Meanwhile, what did Congress do? Who was named Commander-in-chief? What do you know of Washington?

7. Some months later, the Americans attempted to take Canada. A body of 3000 men under the command of General Schuyler and Montgomery, descended by Lake Champlain to Sorel River, and captured Forts Chambly and St. John. General Schuyler having fallen sick, Montgomery took the command-in-chief of the troops, and hastened towards Montreal with a large detachment. Governor Carleton, incapable of resisting him, quitted the town, and Montgomery made his entry in Montreal the following day. The American General, leaving a garrison there, marched rapidly on Quebec. In the month of November, Montgomery received, at Quebec, a reinforcement of about 1000 men under Colonel Arnold, a brave but unprincipled officer. Having remained some time before the city, and despairing of being able to take it by siege, the Americans resolved to attempt taking it by assault. Accordingly, early in the morning of December 31st, whilst a snow-storm darkened the atmosphere and rendered the enemy's vigilance less active, the attack was made at three different points, but without success; this attempt was fatal to the brave Montgomery, who fell together with many of his officers. After this event, the Americans, being defeated at all points, were soon obliged to evacuate Canada.

8. Whilst this unfortunate Canadian expedition was going on, Washington was investing Boston. During the winter of 1776, he resolved to drive the English from that city, and, for this effect, on March 4th, he erected a battery overlooking the town on Dorchester Heights. General Howe, not being able to dislodge the Americans from their position, was at length obliged to evacuate Boston, and Washington made his triumphal entry there on March 17th.

9. At the commencement of the struggle, the Americans had only defended their rights as British subjects, but the hostile measures adopted by the mother-country, determined them on assuming a higher position. Seeing that no alternative remained between asserting their absolute liberty and unconditional submission, they therefore resolved to break altogether the ties which united them to England, by asserting their independence. On the 7th of June, Henry Lee of Virginia, seconded by

7. What attempt was made towards the end of 1775? Who commanded the expedition, and how was it conducted? What reinforcement did Montgomery receive before Quebec? What was the result of the campaign against Quebec?—8. What was Washington doing during the Canadian expedition? What did the Americans resolve in the winter of 1776?—9. What had been the object of their struggle till now? What did they afterwards resolve? What motion was made in Congress on the 7th of June? Who were appointed to prepare the Act of the *Declaration of Independence?*

John Adams of Massachusetts, made a motion in Congress to solemnly proclaim the independence of the American Colonies. A commission, composed of Franklin, John Adams, Jefferson, Livingston, and Sherman, was named to prepare the Act of the *Declaration of Independence*. After a short debate, this Act was agreed on, and signed by all the members of Congress, July 4th, 1776.

10. After having renounced all allegiance, and with it, all hope of reconciliation, the Americans had need of all their strength and talents to maintain their great and sublime position; the events of the remainder of the year 1776, prove that they felt the responsibility which rested on them.

11. On the 28th of July, a fort erected on Sullivan Island, near Charleston, South Carolina, was attacked by an English squadron under Sir Peter Parker; but the fire from this fort, commanded by the valiant Colonel Moultrie, effected such great damage on the squadron, that the enterprise was abandoned. This fort was named Fort Moultrie.

12. General Howe, on leaving Boston, had gone with his troops to Halifax, to await there the arrival of the English squadron, and thence to proceed to New York. Washington had foreseen this movement, and, having provided for the safety of Boston, he hastily advanced towards New York with the main body of his army. Howe, having received a reinforcement of 20000 men of the British fleet, commanded by his brother, the Admiral Lord Howe, and having vainly essayed to settle the differences between the belligerent powers, prepared to overwhelm the American General. On August 27th, a battle was fought at Long Island, in which a detachment of the American army, under Generals Putnam and Sullivan, was defeated. Washington, perceiving the danger he was in through the unfortunate issue of this engagement, resolved to abandon Long Island; consequently, on the night of August 29th, favored by a thick fog, he effected an admirable retreat in the face of the British army, which was only at a quarter of a mile's distance.

13. In the month of September, New York was evacuate by the Americans, and October 28th, a bloody but not very decisive engagement took place at White Plains. Fort Washington on the Hudson, was taken by the English, and its garrison, of

10. What need had the Americans after this Declaration?—11. What took place on July 28th?—12. Whither did Howe go on leaving Boston? What did Washington do in the mean time? What occurred on the 27th of August? What did Washington do in the night of August 29th?—13. What took place after the evacuation of New York? By whom was Fort Washington taken? What course did Washington take?

2000 men, made prisoners. General Washington, having crossed the Hudson, retreated through New Jersey, by Newark, New Brunswick, Princeton, and Trenton; then, he crossed the Delaware and found himself in Pennsylvania, all the time being closely pursued by the English under Lord Cornwallis, who, having arrived at the Delaware, stopped his march and established his winter-quarters.

14. The American cause then appeared to be in a desperate condition, and numerous defections took place. A few men only with unshaken firmness, upheld the tottering fortunes of America, preferring the glory of dying in defending their country, to the shame of abandoning it to its oppressors. To crown their misfortunes, General Lee had been made prisoner at Baskenridge, and Rhode Island had fallen into the power of the English.

15. But the great mind of Washington remained firm and unshaken in this terrible situation; he therefore determined to effect a daring stroke. In the night of Dec. 25th, he crossed the Delaware, although that river was obstructed by floating ice, and surprised and routed the enemy at Trenton. Colonel Rahl made vain efforts to rally his troops. The sudden and unforeseen attack of the Americans had carried terror into the camp, and all the enemy's artillery fell into the hands of the colonists, who also made 1000 prisoners.

16. The fame of this victory raised the courage and spirits of the Americans, and numerous bodies of militia flocked from all quarters to join the army. Washington next hastened on to Princeton, where, January 3rd, 1777, he defeated another body of English troops. Remaining in New Jersey, he observed the enemy's movements, intercepted its convoys, and attacked isolated detachments. This campaign gained for him the surname of the American Fabius.

17. The campaign of 1777, opened under better auspices, but with a great superiority on the side of the English. General Howe had still under his orders about 30000 soldiers, and Washington had barely 7000 to oppose him; his cavalry consisted of only 130 horses. The skilful manœuvres of General Washington, prevented the enemy from proceeding to Philadelphia by land, and Howe was obliged to change his plans.

18. On the 5th of July, the latter embarked his troops at

---

14. What was now the state of the American cause?—15. What was the attitude of Washington in this terrible situation? What determination did he take, and how did he execute it?—16. What effect did the victory of Trenton produce on the Americans?—17. What aspect did the opening of the campaign of 1777 present?—18. What do you know of the battle of the Brandywine?

Staten Island, entered Chesapeake Bay, and landing near the mouth of the Elk River, he marched on Philadelphia. Washington sought to arrest his progress with a very inferior force. On the 11th of September, the two armies met on the banks of the Brandywine; the Americans sustained the first shock with intrepidity; but, overwhelmed by numbers, they wavered without their leaders being able to rally them. In this battle, two distinguished foreigners served under the American colors, the Marquis de Lafayette of France, and Count Pulaski of Poland; the former was wounded.

19. After this victory, the English General directed his steps towards Philadelphia, into which he made his entry on September 26th. Howe established his head-quarters at Germantown. On the 4th of October, Washington, having attempted to surprise the English detachment at Germantown, was repulsed with the loss of 1200 men in killed, wounded, and prisoners; the loss of the British was not so considerable. Some days after this battle, General Howe took up his winter quarters at Philadelphia.

20. Whilst these events were passing in the Middle States, important ones were taking place on the northern frontiers. In the month of June, an English army of 7000 men, without counting a considerable body of Indians, invaded the States from the Canadian side. This army was commanded by General Burgoyne, who marched on Albany by the way of Lake Champlain. He was fortunate enough until his arrival at Hudson River; but there his successes ended. On the 16th of August, a detachment of his army was defeated at Bennington, by a body of militia led by General Stark.

21. Burgoyne, having crossed the Hudson, went and encamped at Saratoga, a few miles' distance from the American camp. General Gates, who had just been named to the command of the North American army, prepared to resist any attempt. On September 19th, Burgoyne attacked him at Stillwater; the struggle was obstinate, but without any result. Soon after, Burgoyne, having allowed himself to be surrounded by the American army, was obliged to capitulate. On the 17th of October, his whole army, consisting of 6000 men, laid down their arms and gave themselves up as prisoners to General Gates.

22. This victory, one of the greatest yet gained by the Amer-

19. What happened after the taking of Philadelphia? Who gained the battle of Germantown?—20. What took place then in the North of the States? What do you know of the invasion of Burgoyne?—21. Where did Burgoyne encamp after the battle of Bennington? What did his army do on the 17th of October?—22. What effect had this victory in the country?

icans, filled the hearts of the patriots with enthusiasm. Besides the confidence it inspired the people with, it gave them numerous pieces of artillery, equipage, and arms of all sorts, and powerfully influenced the Court of France to decide in favor of an alliance, which the American Commissioners there had long been suing for. Negotiations being concluded on the 6th of February, 1778, a Treaty of alliance between France and the United States was signed.

23. During the winter of 1778, the situation of the American army encamped at Valley Forge, was a most painful one, famine made daily progress, and the greater number of the men had insufficient clothing, but the patriotism of the Americans resisted all these privations, and they resumed the campaign with undiminished courage. General Howe had been replaced by Sir Henry Clinton. Having received orders to concentrate his forces on New York, Clinton evacuated Philadelphia, crossed the Delaware and marched towards that city. Washington immediately set out after him, and, on the 28th of June, an engagement took place at Monmouth, in which the English sustained serious losses. General Clinton pursued his march to New-York and arrived there safely.

24. In the month of July, a French squadron, under the command of Count d'Estaing, arrived at the entrance of the Delaware; on board of it were 6000 sailors and soldiers, whom France sent to assist the Americans. The only important event during the rest of that year, was the expedition sent by Clinton against Georgia, where the English, after having defeated the Americans, took possession of Savannah, December 3rd.

25. During the year 1779, the operations of the war had been transported from the Northern and Middle States to the Southern ones of the Union, and the English seemed to be more bent on ruining than subjugating this unhappy country. The only event of any importance in the North, was the taking of Stony Point on the Hudson, by the Americans under General Wayne. In the South, the French and American troops, having tried to retake the town of Savannah, were defeated with the loss of more than 1000 men. Among the slain was Count Pulaski, who was in the service of the United States.

26. At the opening of the campaign in 1780, the English troops evacuated Rhode Island. Sir Henry Clinton and Lord

23. What was the situation of the American army during the winter of 1778? What took place in the spring?—24. Who arrived at the mouth of the Delaware in July? What was the last event of 1778?—25. Where was the war carried on in 1779? What did General Wayne do?—26. What did Clinton and Cornwallis undertake? What was the result?

Cornwallis undertook an expedition against Charleston, the capital of South Carolina, and, on May 17th, after a six months' siege, this town was forced to capitulate, the English then overran that State.

27. General Gates, who had just received the command of the Southern army, met the American camp in South Carolina, in the month of July, and unfortunately resolved to come to a general engagement. On August 16th, a battle was fought near Camden, in which the Americans were completely defeated by the English, under Lord Cornwallis. The losses of the Americans were considerable. Among the dead was Baron de Kolb, a Russian officer in the service of the United States. On July 10th, a second French squadron entered New Port, and there landed 6000 men headed by Count de Rochambeau.

28. This year was remarkable for the treason of General Arnold. Washington, having to go to Hartford, Connecticut, to have an interview with Count de Rochambeau, left to General Arnold, in his own absence, the command of the important post of West Point, ignorant that in so doing, he placed the fortune of the budding republic in the hands of a traitor. Arnold was brave, but lavish and dissipated. His arbitrary conduct whilst in command at Philadelphia, which had been confided to him, caused grave complaints to be made against him, and he was brought before a court-martial; his judges, out of considerations for his military glory, contented themselves with a severe reprimand. Arnold retired deeply humiliated. From that moment, he took the guilty determination of being revenged; accordingly, he opened relations with Sir Henry Clinton, concerning the giving up West Point and its garrison to the English government. This infamous project, which was on the eve of being accomplished, was providentially discovered and frustrated. The traitor however escaped, and, as a reward for his infamy, received a commission as Brigadier-General in the English army. The unfortunate Major André, of the British army, who had performed the part of Arnold and Clinton's go between, having been taken by the Americans, was condemned as a spy, and executed.

29. The campaign of 1781, was opened by an expedition under Arnold's command, who made a descent on the coasts of Virginia, and committed great depredations. After the defeat of Gates, General Greene was named to the command of the

27. What did General Gates do? What occurred on August 16th? At New Port on July 10th?—28. What made this year memorable? Relate the circumstances of the treason of Arnold.—29. Relate the campaign of 1781.

Southern army. From that time, affairs took a more favorable turn. On the 18th of January, General Morgan won a brilliant victory near Cowpens, over the English Colonel Tarlton. On the 15th of March, another battle was fought at Guilford in North Carolina; the English were victorious, but lost a great number of men.

30. In September, General Greene obtained, at Eutaw Springs, an important victory over the English, commanded by Colonel Stewart. Lord Cornwallis, after the battle of Guilford, had penetrated into Virginia, and, having concentrated his forces in Yorktown, fortified himself there. Washington, who, for some time, had been diverting Clinton's attention by feigning an attack on New York, suddenly left his camp at White Plains, marched towards the South, and soon arrived before Yorktown, after having, on the way, received a considerable reinforcement under the command of the Marquis de Lafayette.

31. Count de Grasse had just landed a body of French troops to cooperate with the Americans commanded by Washington. The Franco-American army numbered 16000 men. The siege of Yorktown was at once commenced and pursued with such vigor, that Lord Cornwallis, not being able to prolong his resistance, negotiated the terms of a capitulation, which was signed on October 19th. The English troops issued forth their flags unfurled, and went to lay their arms at the feet of the victorious army. The garrison became prisoners of the United States, and, according to agreement, the English vessels fell to the share of the French fleet. The English had lost about 700 men, and the number of prisoners was 6500.

32. This event, the most remarkable one of the War of Independence, after the surrender of Burgoyne, filled the Americans with joy, and had all the good results that might be expected; the English people and government became convinced that it was impossible henceforward to subjugate the United States to the domination of Great Britain. Soon, therefore, South Carolina and Georgia were evacuated, and the English retained only New York. Count de Rochambeau returned to France with his troops, and Congress prepared to disband a part of the army.

33. At length, a preliminary convention, which put an end to the hostilities between England and America, was signed

30. What occured in September, 1781? Where did Cornwallis fortify himself? What did Washington then do?—31. What were the Franco-American forces before Yorktown? When did Cornwallis surrender?—32. What was the effect of the surrender at Yorktown?—33. What took place on November 30th? When and where was the definitive Treaty signed?

November 30th, by the plenipotentiaries of the two powers. In this convention, England formally recognized the liberty, sovereignty, and independence of the United States. The definitive Treaty was signed at Versailles, September 3rd, 1783, by Adams, Franklin, Jay, and Lawrence, for the United States, and by Mr. Oswald, for Great Britain.

SECTION IV.

From the Recognition of American Independence, 1783, to the War of 1812.

1. The war between England and the United States had lasted more than seven years. According to the official reports, England had lost 42000 soldiers in America, and the national debt had been increased by 400000000 dollars. The United States had lost nearly 70000 citizens, and the ravages of the war, the burning of the towns, etc., had occasioned an incalculable loss.

2. The thirteen States which had just shaken off the yoke of England, had always had a separate existence and government; each of them had its individual interests, which disinclined them to a complete union. Necessity alone made them entertain the idea of a union, and so long as the war with the mother-country lasted, there existed a common bond. But, as soon as peace was concluded, the necessity of fresh legislation was being felt. A public revenue became necessary, and the foreign debts contracted during the War of Independence had to be paid. Each colony had become an independent republic, and Congress, condemned to be powerless through its very Constitution, was no longer obeyed.

3. To put an end to this painful position, the Legislative Assemblies of Virginia and Maryland convoked, at Annapolis, in 1786, a Convention of the different States, in order to come to an understanding as to the measures necessary for the public good. Only three States responded to this summons. Consequently, the Convention could take no important steps; but it was the prelude to the one which followed. A fresh convocation was made at Philadelphia for the month of May, 1787.

4. George Washington, who appeared at this Convention as

1. How long did the War of Independence last? What were the losses on both sides?—2. What was the state of affairs in the colonies?—3. What was done to put an end to this painful position? Where did the first Convention meet? Where the second?—4. What is said of George Washington? What was accepted after long deliberations?

delegate from Virginia, was unanimously elected its President. After long deliberations, the new Federal Constitution was accepted by Congress and eleven of the States, and definitively proclaimed in 1788. It thenceforward became the Constitution of the United States. The two dissentient States, North Carolina and Rhode Island, accepted it later: the former, in 1789, the latter, in 1790.

5. The new government began to function only in 1789, after an interregnum of two years. The members of the Senate and of the House of Representatives, elected in virtue of the new Constitution, met at Philadelphia on the first days of April, and proceeded to the election of a President. George Washington was unanimously chosen, and John Adams, who, after him, had the most votes, was elected Vice-President.

6. When this great citizen received the news of his election to the highest office of the Republic, he was in retirement at his farm of Mount Vernon, where he was tasting the sweets of domestic life. Washington gratefully accepted this new proof of the esteem and attachment of his fellow-citizens, and set out for Philadelphia, escorted on his way by a detachment of the militia and a deputation of the inhabitants of the States through which he passed.

7. All offices in the new government were given to men of recognized merit and patriotism, and the new administration acquired great popularity. The first care of Congress was to establish a national revenue, imposing dues on all importations, and also on tonnage and navigation, organizing likewise officers to collect the customs and other duties, the object of which was to increase the revenue of the States. In the following year, 1790, an Indian war laid waste the settlements to the north-east of Ohio. After much fighting and bloodshed, this war was brought to an end by General Wayne, who, having completely routed the Indians, concluded with them a treaty of peace, at Greenville, in 1795.

8. Before the conclusion of the Indian War, the French revolutionists, who found themselves entangled in the violent disturbances which they had themselves excited in Europe, came to demand help from the United States. But the wise tactics of Washington frustrated all attempts to drag the Union into a war with any European power whatever. The strict neutrality

5. When did the new government begin to function? Who was chosen its first President?—6. Where was Washington when elected President?—7. To whom were all offices in the new government given? What was the first care of Congress? What war occurred in 1790?—8. What did the French revolutionists demand of the United States? Where did Washington retire at the end of his second term? When did he die?

which he observed, met with lively opposition on the part of the democratic party. At the expiration of his second term as President, this great man would not accept his re-election; he retired to Mount Vernon to spend the rest of his days in the repose of private life. Washington died two years after, December 14th, 1799, in the 68th year of his age. He was always an utterly disinterested citizen, and entirely devoted to his country. His memory will ever be blessed by the Americans, of whose liberty and prosperity he laid the foundation.

9. The successor of Washington in the presidency, was John Adams, in 1797. Under his administration, serious difficulties arose between the United States and France, growing out of the refusal of the former to take part in the revolutionary struggles of the latter. However, these difficulties were amicably arranged in a few months' time. Many of Adams' administrative measures met with great opposition; such, for instance, as the establishment of a permanent army, the levying of a direct tax, etc.

10. Adams' successor was Thomas Jefferson, in 1801, the latter was elected by the republican party. He commenced his administration with very different views from those of his two predecessors. During his first term of presidency, the United States flourished. Jefferson was again elected in 1805. The war which sprang up in Europe, in 1807, between Great Britain and France, took an aspect which threatened involving the United States in its vortex. By the Berlin decree, Napoleon declared the British Isles to be in a state of blockade, and interdicted all communication with them. But England went further, and forbade all neutrals to trade with ports which were closed to her, and, by a law of November 7th, 1807, she declared every neutral vessel subject to right of search and impressment. The English law was followed by the Imperial Milan decree of December 17th, which declared every vessel denationalized that should submit to being searched by a British vessel, or which should pay any tax whatever to the British government. This exchange of rigorous acts and regulations between France and England, destroyed the trade of neutrals, and consequently, that of the United States, as also their navigation.

11. Jefferson, not being able to obtain any relaxation in the arbitrary measures of these two powers, on the 1st of March, 1809, published an Act, closing the American ports to all English and French vessels, under pain of seizure and confiscation; he also forbade all importation into the United States of English or

9. Who succeeded Washington in the presidency? What took place under Adams' administration?—10. Who was the successor of Adams? What took place in 1807?—11. What did Jefferson publish in 1809?

French merchandise, during such time as the measures taken against them should remain in force. Great Britain, at the same time, gave another subject of discontent to the United States, by arrogating to herself the right of searching American vessels. It was during these vexatious events, that Jefferson's second term of presidency expired.

12. Madison, who held the same political principles as Jefferson, was elected President, and entered into functions in March, 1809. The restrictions upon commerce lasted till 1812; until then, no amicable arrangements with Great Britain had been possible, and the causes of complaint against her, were always increasing. At length, urged by the majority of the nation, Congress declared war against her, June 19th, 1812. The President was authorized to increase the regular army to 35000 men, to raise the militia, impose taxes, and contract loans.

SECTION V.

From the War against England, 1812, *to the War against Mexico,* 1846.

1. As stated above, the Federal government had increased the number of the regular troops to 35000 men, and each State was to furnish a contingent of militia to the amount of 100000 men. Henry Dearborn of Massachusetts, was named Major-General and Commander-in-chief of the American forces. The fleet was composed of only a small number of brigs and frigates,

2. Hostilities commenced in the North; General Hull took the command of the army destined for the invasion of Canada. The operations of the American forces during the first year of this war, were not successful. General Hull, after having tried to enter Canada, retired to Detroit, where, on August 12th, he shamefully surrendered with his army to the English. General Van Rensselaer made another attempt, but was, in November, beaten at Queenstown and obliged to surrender. But whilst the land troops were letting themselves be beaten, the American flag was gaining brilliant victories by water. In August, the frigate, the *Constitution,* commanded by Captain Hull, captured the English frigate, the *Guerrière.* In October the frigate, the *United States,* commanded by the brave Decatur, the same who had attempted, in the port of Tripoli, to retake an American

12. Who succeeded Jefferson? What was the situation of the country until 1812?

1. Who was named Commander-in-chief of the American forces?—2. What were the principal operations of the year 1812?

vessel which had been captured by African corsairs, took the English frigate *Macedonian*. In November, an English sloop of 22 guns, was taken by the American sloop *Wasa*, of 18 guns, and in December, the *Constitution*, commanded by Bainbridge, captured the English frigate *Java*.

3. During the year 1813, the American arms met with alternate losses and successes. Towards the end of January, a detachment of 800 men, commanded by General Winchester, was defeated at Frenchtown, on the River Raisin, by General Proctor, who had 600 regulars and 1000 Indians under his orders. In the month of April, the American General Pike, by orders of General Dearborn, took York in Upper Canada, but he was killed by the explosion of a mine. In May, Sir George Prevost attacked Sackett's Harbor, but was repulsed with great loss by the American General Brown. About the same time, the Americans took possession of Fort George. The English having retired to the heights of Burlington, Generals Chandler and Winder were sent to attack them; but they met with a signal defeat, and were both taken prisoners.

4. On September 10th, Commodore Perry, after a four hours' fight, with 9 sail and 54 guns, obliged the English flotilla, on Lake Erie, of 6 sail and 63 guns, to surrender at discretion. In October, the American General Harrison, at *Moravian Town*, on Thames River, completely defeated General Proctor. In this battle was killed the celebrated Tecumseh, a great Indian chief, who commanded the Indians of the West.

5. After these victories, the army of the Centre joined that of the North, and marched on Montreal. General Wilkinson, who was commanding the army of the Centre, was completely defeated, November 11th, at Christler's Farm, by Colonel Morrison. He then retired to French Mills, where he established his winter-quarters. General Hampton, commanding the army of the North, 7000 strong, had made a movement to effect a junction with Wilkinson; but he had to retire with precipitation at Chateauguay, before a detachment of 300 Canadians, commanded by Colonel de Salaberry, who made him suffer a great loss.

6. The English were more fortunate on the Ocean than the preceding year. The frigate *Chesapeake*, commanded by Captain Lawrence, had to lower her flag before the British frigate *Shannon*. The brig *Argus*, having lost her captain in a combat

3. What do you know of the American arms for the year 1813? Relate the events of January, April, and May.—4. What did Commodore Perry do on Sept. 10th? Harrison, in October?—5. What was done by the Americans, after these victories? Who gained the battle of Christler's Farm? Of Chateauguay?—6. What was done by the navy in this campaign?

with the English brig *Pelican*, was captured by the latter. In the month of September, the American brig *Enterprise* forced the English brig *Boxer*, after a combat which lasted forty minutes, to strike her colors. In this fight, the commanders of both vessels perished, and were both buried with military honors at Portland. These checks, which the American navy met with, were compensated by numerous victories; and, on several occasions, vessels belonging to the United States, and even corsairs, took English vessels of superior force to their own.

7. In the spring of 1814, hostilities were renewed. General Wilkinson's army left its quarters at French Mills, in the month of March, and received orders to attack the English, who were intrenched in a strong position, protected by stone works, known by the name of *Lacolle Mill*. The Americans were defeated; General Wilkinson was shamefully displaced at the demand of the people, and the command was given to General Izard.

8. On May 6th, the English, commanded by General Drummond, fell unexpectedly on Oswego, and set fire to that town. The Americans soon had their turn at Chippewa, where, after a severe battle, they completely routed the enemy. Drummond took his revenge on the 25th of the same month, at Lundy's Lane, where he made great havoc in the American lines. But the American Generals Brown and Scott, were not long in repulsing the English. General Drummond, having received reinforcements, attacked the American army, which had retired to Fort Erie; but he was repulsed with the loss of nearly 1000 men in killed, wounded, and prisoners.

9. On August 24th, an English army, under General Ross, landed about forty miles from Washington; defeating the American General Winder, at Bladensburg, on the Potomac, he entered the city of Washington, and burned the capitol together with the principal edifices. Some weeks later, General Ross tried to take Baltimore, but his army was repulsed and himself killed. The English were then obliged to renounce their project, and retired with considerable loss.

10. Whilst the inhabitants of Baltimore were victoriously driving back the English, from before their city, the Americans in the North were gaining a more decisive victory. On September 11th, the naval forces of England, on Lake Champlain, were completely defeated by the American squadron under Commodore McDonough. The English forces were far superior

7. What occurred in the spring of 1814?—8. By whom was the battle of Chippewa gained? That of Lundy's Lane? Of Erie?—9. What occurred on August 24th, 1814?—10. What took place on Lake Champlain, on September 11th?

to the American ones. Whilst the combat between the two fleets was going on, General Prevost had several times tried to cross the river to attack the American lines; but being always repulsed, he had to retreat, after having lost many soldiers.

11. The superiority acquired on the Ocean by the American vessels, was maintained during this campaign. The English government had given orders to the English captains, not to accept battle on equal terms, but to join their squadrons in order to crush the Americans. The frigate *Essex* was taken by an English flotilla, and the *President*, by a squadron. But the *Constitution* attacked alone two English vessels carrying 64 guns, and captured them both.

12. For several months, negotiations for peace had been commenced in London; subsequently, a Treaty was signed at Ghent, December 24th, 1814. But, during the course of these negotiations, a considerable English force, under General Sir Edward Packenham, penetrated into Louisiana and advanced on New Orleans. General Andrew Jackson fortified the neighborhood of that city, and then awaited with firmness the English army; this latter commenced the attack on January 8th, but was so warmly received, that it had very quickly to beat a retreat. The English lost 2000 men in either killed or wounded, among whom were Generals Packenham, Gibbs, and Keane. This was the last important event of the war.

13. Mr. Madison, having filled the office of president for two terms, had as successor, in 1817, James Monroe. The administration of this latter was so popular, that he was unanimously re-elected in 1820. This year, was taken the census of the population of the United States; it already amounted to 9638226 inhabitants, of whom, 1538118 were slaves.

14. The successor of James Monroe to the presidency, was not elected by the people, on account of the too great number of candidates; the choice was left to the Chambers, the majority of whom were for John Quincy Adams, who was awarded the first place in the magistrature, in 1825, and Mr. Calhoun was named Vice-President by the votes of the people. John Quincy Adam's administration offered nothing of any importance.

15. In 1829, General Andrew Jackson was elected to the supreme rank of the Republic, replacing Mr. Adams, and Mr. Calhoun was re-elected Vice-President. Jackson showed himself hostile to the *United States Bank*, and succeeded in preventing

11. What do you remark on the superiority of the American marine? —12. When was the Treaty of Ghent signed? What took place in Louisiana during these negotiations?—13. Who was Madison's successor?—14. Who succeeded Mr. Monroe?—15. Who was Mr. Adams' successor? To what did Jackson show himself hostile?

the renewal of its charter, which was about expiring. He held the presidency for two terms.

16. General Jackson's successor was Mr. Martin Van Buren, in 1837. The new President followed his predecessor's policy. Under his administration, commenced the long and expensive war against the Indians of Florida, and treaties were entered into with the Sioux and the Winnebagoes, by which the United States acquired, of the Indian, titles to a great extent of territory, east of the Mississippi.

17. General William Henry Harrison succeeded Mr. Van Buren in the month of March, 1844; but he had filled the presidential Chair only a month, when he died. The Vice-President, John Tyler, in virtue of his office, replaced him. The administration of Mr. Tyler greatly disappointed the party which had elected him, for he put his veto on nearly all the measures which they were defending, and for which they had struggled.

On March 4th, 1845, Mr. Tyler was succeeded in the presidency by James K. Polk, of Tennessee.

SECTION VI.

From the War against Mexico, 1846 to the end of the Civil War, in 1865.

1. The administration of Mr. Polk, was remarkable for the difficulties which arose between Great Britain and the United States, concerning the limits of the Oregon Territory; by the annexation of the Republic of Texas to that of the United States; and by a war with the Mexican Republic. The Oregon question was settled at the commencement of 1846; the northern limits of the United States was fixed at the 49th parallel of north latitude. Texas were annexed to the United States, in 1845, and the Mexican War commenced in May, 1846.

2. The war with Mexico was caused by the annexation of Texas. This country, which had been a Province of Mexico, had separated from her, March 2nd, 1836, and had constituted itself an independent Republic. The inhabitants of Texas, having manifested a desire of being admitted into the American Union,

16. Who was Jackson's successor? Whose policy did Van Buren follow? What took place under his administration?—17. How long did General Harrison fill the presidential Chair? Who succeeded him? What is said of the administration of Mr. Tyler? Who succeeded him?

1. What was Mr. Polk's administration remarkable for?—2. What caused the war with Mexico?

their request was complied with in 1845. Mexico, which had never recognized the independence of Texas, loudly protested against this union, and declared that, as this Republic had annexed itself to the United States with limits which did not belong to it originally, and comprised a considerable extent of territory to which it could in no way lay just claim, every attempt, on the part of the United States, to take possession of it, would be looked upon as a just cause of war. The territory in dispute is situated between the Nueces River and the Rio Grande.

3. In September, 1845, General Zachariah Taylor, by the order of President Polk, crossed the Nueces with an army of occupation, hoisted the American flag on the disputed limits, and, subsequently, by virtue of fresh orders, marched across the contested territory, and advanced to the north bank of the Rio Grande, opposite the Mexican town of Matamoras, which he reached on March 28th, 1846. A Mexican army immediately crossed the Rio Grande in order to dislodge the Americans from their position, and from that time, hostilities commenced.

4. The subsequent events shed a brilliant lustre on the American arms. In modern times, there had been no war which, until then, had presented a series of such rapid and brilliant victories. At the battles of Palo Alto, Resaca de la Palma, Monterey, and Buena Vista, the Americans, under General Taylor, fought against superior forces; but in all they came off victorious. At the battle of Buena Vista, fought February 22nd, 1847, General Taylor, with an army of 4000 men, nearly all volunters, defeated an army of 20000 Mexicans, commanded by the celebrated General Santa Anna. A short time before, Colonel Doniphan, in command of the Missouri volunteers, in New Mexico, defeated the Mexicans at the battle of Sacramento, and took the town of Chihuahua.

5. Another division of the American army, commanded by General Winfield Scott, at the same time, obtained equally brilliant results. This distinguished officer commenced his campaign by the taking of Vera Cruz, and the famous chateau of San Juan d'Ulloa, which was followed by a march towards the city of Mexico. During this march, took place the battle of Cerro Gordo, the occupation of Puebla, and the battles of Molino del Rey, Contreras, Chapultepec, and Churubusco. In

3. What did General Taylor do in Sept., 1845?—4. What is said of the subsequent events? What battles were fought under Gen. Taylor, and what was the result? What do you know of the battle of Buena Vista? What had taken place a short time before?—5. What were the operations of Gen. Scott?

all, the Americans were victorious. These last battles took place in September, 1847, in the immediate neighborhood of the city of Mexico, where the Mexicans, commanded by Santa Anna, fought desperately. General Scott made his triumphal entry into the city of Mexico, September 15th, 1847. This was the last important event of the war.

6. Immediately after the entry of the Americans into Mexico, the Commissioners of the United States and the Mexican government opened negotiations for peace. The war was at length terminated by a treaty, which, taking the circumstances into consideration, was advantageous to Mexico. By this treaty, however, Mexico ceded a considerable portion of territory to the United States, which became possessors also of California. This latter State, through the discovery of its apparently inexhaustible gold mines, has become of the greatest importance; San Francisco, its principal town, according to all appearances, will soon rival the most prosperous American cities.

7. Mr. Polk's successor as President, was General Taylor, in 1849; the latter, after having filled that office a little more than a year, died in the summer of 1850, and the Vice-President Millard Fillmore, in virtue of his office, became President.

8. Fillmore's successor, in 1853, was Franklin Pierce, under the administration of this latter, the territory of Kansas, after much agitation, was admitted into the Union as a State, but to the exclusion of slavery. In 1857, Mr. James Buchanan succeeded Mr. Pierce. His administration was peaceable; nevertheless, the clouds which for years had been gathering on the political horizon, arrived at their culminating point towards the end of his presidential career, soon to burst and plunge the country into all the horrors of a fratricidal war.

9. In fact, at the end of 1860, on the occasion of the election of an abolitionist President, Abraham Lincoln, a great rupture was made between the Southern States, which favoured slavery, and the Northern States, which were opposed to that institution. Ten States, viz: the two Carolinas, Florida, Georgia, Alabama, Mississippi, Louisiana, Texas, Arkansas, Tennessee, and a part of Virginia, successively separated themselves from the Union (December 20th, 1860, June 12th, 1861), and constituted themselves a separate *Confederation*; elected a President, Jefferson

6. What territory did the Americans obtain by the Treaty of Mexico? What have you to say of California?—7. When did General Taylor become President? When did he die? Who succeeded him?—8. Who succeeded Fillmore? Whom did Buchanan succeed?—9. What occurred at the end of 1860? What was the cause of the secession of the South from the North? What were the consequences? Name the principal Confederate Generals. The Federal Generals. Which party triumphed?

Davis; adopted a new capital, Richmond; and brought an army in the field against that of the Union. For four years, the *Confederates*, commanded by Beauregard, Jackson, and Lee, fought against the *Federals*, commanded by Scott, MacClellan, Burnside, Sherman, and Grant, a series of sanguinary battles, whose successes and reverses were for a long time equally balanced; at length, the cause of the Union triumphed: the taking and burning of Richmond, April 1st, 1865, brought about the capitulation of the various corps of the Confederate army.

DOMINION OF CANADA.

1. The English claim the discovery of Canada for one of their navigators. According to them, Sebastian Cabot, in 1497, discovered the coasts of North America, on the Atlantic Ocean, from the 34th to the 66th degrees of north latitude, but, any way, he must have confined himself to reconnoitering the coasts, and can not have penetrated into the St. Lawrence River. This is incontestably proved by the fact, that, in 1534, when Jacques Cartier was sent by Francis I. to North America, this navigator was ignorant that the Island of Newfoundland was separated from the Continent, and he at first took the mouth of the St. Lawrence for a gulf. As soon as he recognized his error, he ascended the river for 300 leagues from the sea, and took possession of the country in the name of France. Canada may, therefore, be looked upon as a French discovery. Even before Jacques Cartier, Verazzani, the Florentine, had received a commission from Francis I. to explore these latitudes.

2. Henry IV. and Sully occupied themselves with founding many considerable establishments in Canada, and, in 1603, Champlain set out at the head of an expedition. In 1608, this latter laid the foundation of Quebec, which became the capital of the colony, and which is now one of the first fortresses of the New World.

3. Cardinal Richelieu, who had at heart the re-establishment of the French navy, as well as the prosperity of the colonies, the essential bases of all maritime developement, fixed his attention on Canada, which had been an object of solicitude to Francis I., Henry IV., and Sully. Unfortunately, he gave up the colony to a private Company, which was invested with

1. By whom was Canada discovered?—2. What did Henry IV. and Sully do for Canada? By whom was the town of Quebec founded?—3. To whom did the French government give up the colony? To what did the Company engage?

excessive powers. A decree of April 29th, 1627, ceded to this company, as their property, the fort and habitation of Quebec, its circumstances and dependencies, with right of justice and seigniory, upon condition, that they should do homage for it, and present to the King, and to each of his successors on his accession to the throne, a gold crown weighing eight marks. The Company had further the right of erecting seigniories, duchies, marquisates, and baronies, on taking out letters of confirmation. They had also the disposal of the establishments, already formed or to be formed, the right of fortifying and ruling them at their will, of *making peace or war* according to their own interests. With the exception of the cod and whale fisheries, declared free to all the French, the Company had the trade which might be carried on by sea and by land for fifteen years, whereas the fur trade was granted them in perpetuity. An engagement was entered into with the Company, to have a certain number of inhabitants, exercising various trades, sent to Canada, and these were to be all Catholics, who where to be accompanied by a sufficient number of ecclesiastics. This organization, which rendered New France too independent of the mother-country, was not favorable to its increase.

4. At the time of the arrival of the French in Canada, this vast country was inhabited by the Hurons and Algonquins, savage and barbarous races. To the south of the great lakes, dwelt the Iroquois, a ferocious nation, bold and powerful, with whom the Canadian Savages were continually at war. From 1609, Champlain had espoused the cause of the former; but his intervention in the disputes of the Indians, doubtless necessary, cost the young colony dearly, and for a long time, paralized its progress. Dating from this period, in fact, the French had not a moment's respite, so to say, until the treaty of peace signed at Montreal, in 1701.

5. Before their definitive conquest of Canada, the English had endeavored to take it several times. They became masters of it in 1629; but France recovered it in 1632, by the Treaty of St. Germain-en-Laye. Colbert adopted the same system as Richelieu, and the colony fell under the yoke of the mother-country.

6. The colonists of New England renewed their attempt in 1690; but their forces, aided by those of the mother-country, failed completely before the heroic valor of the French. During

4. What tribes inhabited Canada when discovered?—5. When did the English become masters of Canada the first time?—6. When did the New England colonists renew their attempt? What was the result of the Treaty of Utrecht? Of that of Aix-la-Chapelle?

the Spanish War of Succession, the English however succeeded in conquering Acadia, now Nova Scotia, which was a dependence of the Canadian colony. The Treaty of Utrecht, 1713, confirmed to them its possession, and France even abandoned to them the Island of Newfoundland and Hudson Bay. Later, the Island of Cape Breton also fell into their power; but they had to restore it by the Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle, 1748.

7. The Seven Years' War, so disastrous to France on many accounts, made her lose the finest and most prosperous of her colonies, Canada. The Treaty of Paris, February 10th, 1763, sanctioned this loss, as well as that of Cape Breton, and, since, these two colonies have ceased belonging to France. The latter, it is stated in that unhappy Treaty, can never revoke this cession, nor disturb Great Britain in her new possessions, under any pretext. The King of England granted to the inhabitants of Canada, full liberty to practise the Catholic religion, and gave the most precise and effective orders, that his new Roman Catholic subjects should be allowed to follow their own religious worship, according to the Roman rite.

8. It was not without great efforts and enormous sacrifices of men and money, that England supplanted France in the possession of Canada, and ended by taking it from her forever. Her numerous attacks were always energetically met; the numerical superiority of the forces of Great Britain, was unquestionably the principal reason of her success; and, from Champlain's fine defence until Montcalm's, who only yielded by death, the city of Quebec, in particular, was the scene of a number of heroic exploits.

9. England governed her precious conquests by military law, until 1764. But the hostile attitude that her old colonies assumed in 1774, made her fear losing all North America, and forced her to restore to the French Canadians, their laws and institutions. At the commencement of the War of Independence, in 1775, the Americans invaded Canada, but had no success. In 1791, a decree of the British Parliament separated Upper and Lower Canada. These two Provinces were, from that time, independent of each other, ruled by local Houses, and by Governors sent from England. From 1812 to 1815, Canada was the theatre of hostilities between the English and the Americans. In consequence of the restrictions placed on commerce and liberty, great discontent grew up, particularly among

7. What was the result of the Treaty of Paris?—8. Was it an easy matter for England to take Canada?—9. How did England govern her new conquest? What did England do in 1774? In 1791? What took place in 1837, 1838, and 1841?

the population of French extraction, and, in 1837 and 1838, there broke out insurrections which England managed to suppress. The two Provinces were reunited February 10th, 1841, by virtue of a Royal Proclamation.

10. Upper and Lower Canada were again separated in 1867, and formed, with the Provinces of Nova Scotia and New Brunswick, a Confederation under the name of *Dominion of Canada*. In 1870, a portion of the North-West Territory was received into the new Confederation, under the name of Province of Manitoba, and, in 1871, Vancouver Island and British Columbia were likewise admitted, under the name of Province of British Columbia. The Constitution of this new government, was founded on that of the mother-country. The Parliament is composed of a Governor-General, representing the Queen, of a Senate and a House of Commons. Each Province has its own Executive and Legislature, presided over by a Lieutenant-Governor named by the Governor-General. The Provincial Parliaments have the power of amending their Constitutions when they judge it necessary.

MEXICO AND THE SOUTH AMERICAN STATES.

1. **Mexico.**—The history of Mexico comprises three great periods: 1st, the period anterior to the conquest of Mexico by Cortez; 2nd, the colonial period; 3rd, the period of independence. During the first, many races probably succeeded one another on the vast territory of Mexico: the principal ones were the Toltecs, who appear to have been the most ancient; then, the Chichimecs and the Aztecs: these last had for their capital Tenochtitlan, or Mexico, which they founded in 1325, and they extended their suzerainty over nearly all the other races of Mexico.

2. Two rival empires however sprang up beside the Mexican, though far less powerful; those of Tezcuco and Tlacopan. All these nations had arrived at a remarkable state of civilization, particularly the Aztecs; they were acquainted with architecture, painting, sculpture, and astronomy; constructed roads and canals; and possessed a hieroglyphic writing. The very curious Mexican antiquities, the remains of this epoch, are still numerous,

10. What was done in 1867? What do you know of the new government?

1. How is the history of Mexico divided?—2. Which two empires sprang up beside Mexico? What was the decree of civilization of this States? What do you know of the Mexican antiquities?

notwithstanding the great destruction made of them by the Spaniards.

3. The second period opens with the landing of Cortez. In less than two years, from 1519 to 1521, as we have already seen, he made the conquest of the Empire of Mexico, over which Montezuma had reigned from 1503. This conquest was soon followed by that of the surrounding country. Spain made a Viceroyalty of this Empire in which Guatemala was included. Mexico has furnished Spain with an immense amount of gold and silver. Acapulco, on the Pacific Ocean, was the place where all the riches were brought to be sold, and thence, they were sent to Europe in galleons.

4. The third period commences in 1810. There were first three useless efforts at independence: under Hidalgo, 1810; under Morelo, 1815; under Mina, 1816. In 1821, Augustine Iturbide, a General of the royal army, went over to the insurgents, beat the Viceroy Apodaca, took Mexico and had himself proclaimed *Emperor*, in 1822, under the name of Augustine I., but he was overthrown the following year, and Mexico made into a Federative Republic: the victory of Tampico, gained in 1829, over the troops of Ferdinand VII., assured her independence.

5. From that time, Mexico, which, by her natural resources, is eminently fitted to rank among the most flourishing countries, has not ceased being a prey to internal dissensions. A number of ambitious men have succeeded one another in the presidency, overthrowing or killing one another: Vittoria, 1824, Pedrazza and Guerrero, 1828, Bustamento, 1829 and 1836, Santa Anna, 1832, Paredes, 1841 and 1846, Santa Anna again, 1843, 1847, and 1853. This last had for a time succeeded in restoring authority; but he was again overthrown in 1855, and, since, the country has been given up to the most frightful anarchy; several parties savagely dispute for power.

6. To the evils of civil war, those of foreign war have been added: in 1838, the bad treatment of the French in Mexico, was punished by the bombardment of St. John d'Ulloa and Vera Cruz. In 1846, the secession of Texas, which annexed itself to the United States, brought on a war with that power, after which, Mexico, everywhere vanquished, was obliged to sign, at Guadaloupe, a Treaty, which took from her the territory east of the Rio del Norte, New Mexico, and New California, 1848.

7. In 1861, under the presidency of Juarez, the spoliations

3. Who was reigning in Mexico when Cortez landed there? What did Spain make of Mexico?—4. Relate the chief events from 1810 to 1829.—5. What presidents succeeded one another till 1855?—6. What war had Mexico to sustain in 1838? In 1846?—7. What occurred in 1861? What was the result of this War?

which the Europeans had to suffer, determined France, England, and Spain to unite in demanding a reparation. France was not satisfied with that which was offered, and, alone, undertook a war, at the end of which, Maximilian of Austria was elected Emperor. But the French having withdrawn, this Prince was conquered and shot by Juarez, who re-established the Republic, 1866.

8. **Peru.**—This country, comprising it all under the name of Lower Peru and Upper Peru, or Bolivia, was formerly inhabited by the Quichuos or Peruvians and some other races; it formed, from the 12th to the 16th century, a vast Empire, that of the Incas, which seems to have comprised, for a time, the present State of Equador and a part of New Granada, Venezuela, and Brazil. Their edifices, forts, and temples; splendid roads from 400 to 500 leagues in length, which they had made across the Andes; numerous canals for irrigation; their vases, dresses, and ornaments; their political and religious institutions: all show the degree of civilization to which they had attained. Their principal divinity was the Sun, worshipped under the name of Pachakamak. The King, called *Inca*, pretended to be descended from that god by Manco Capac, the first legislator of Peru. The government was despotic; under the kings were governors called *Caciques*. Cuzco was the capital of the Empire.

9. The Incas Atahualpa and Huascar, thirteenth successors of Manco Capac, were reigning over Peru, when the Spaniards first knew the country. We have seen that Pizarro and Almagro explored and conquered Peru from 1526 to 1533: Huascar perished while fighting, Atahualpa was perfidiously put to death by the Spaniards. Peru then became a large Viceroyalty of their monarchy, which they divided into three *audiences*, Los Reyes, Quito, and Charcas, or La Plata.

10. For three centuries, Peru furnished Spain with an immense quantity of precious metals; but the Spaniards treated its inhabitants with unheard of cruelty, causing an immense number of men to perish by overwork. The Peruvians revolted in 1780, and massacred 20000 men at the taking of Sorata; but they were soon again subjugated.

11. Of all the Spanish colonies in America, Peru was the last to hoist the flag of independence: a Chilian army, commanded

8. What do you know of the origin of Peru? What was Peru from the 12th to the 16th century? What was the sovereign called? What was the government of Peru?—9. By whom was Peru conquered? What government did the Spaniards establish?—10. What did Peru furnish the Spaniards? What did the Peruvians do in 1780?—11. When did Peru hoist the flag of independence? What division took place shortly afterwards?

by General St. Martin and Admiral Cochrane, took Lima in 1821, and proclaimed the independence of Peru, under the protection of Bolivar. The victory of this latter at Junin, 1824, and that of General Sucre at Ayacucho, 1824, consolidated the liberty of Peru; but discord soon broke out in the new Republic, and a violent scission separated Upper Peru, protected by Bolivar, and which took the name of Bolivia, from Lower Peru, which kept its former name. The two Republics long disputed over their respective limits; they were also for a long time ravaged by internal dissensions and frequent revolutions.

12. Lower Peru is governed by a President, elected for six years, and by a Senate and Chamber of Deputies. Among the Presidents of this Republic, may be remarked Gamara, elected in 1830, who, after having directed the affairs of the country for eleven years, was driven from Lima in 1841, and General Santa Cruz, who was elected in his place, but soon after abdicated, 1842. From 1821 to 1861, Peru had 21 different heads, who governed the country under various titles. In 1844, Don Ramon Castilla was elected President; under his firm and enlightened administration, the country enjoyed peace, and was properly organized. Don Ramon was succeeded in 1851, by General Rufino Jose Echenique, but the people soon became dissatisfied, and Castilla was reinstated in 1855.

13. **Bolivia.**—This country, under the name of Upper Peru, as we have just seen, was, at first, a part of the Spanish Viceroyalty of Lima, afterwards, of that of Rio de la Plata. It rose against Spain in 1808, but was constituted a separate State by the Congress of Chuquisaca, only after the victory of Ayacucho, 1825. This country took its present name in honor of Bolivar. In 1836, Bolivia, with Lower Peru, formed a Confederation, of which General Santa Cruz was the President; but it lasted only three years. Since then, the Republic of Bolivia has been for a long time rent by internal dissensions, and by the contests of the candidates for the presidentship.

14. **Chili.**—Before its conquest by the Spaniards, Chili had been invaded by the Incas, and was nominally a part of the Empire of Peru, but without having really been submitted. In 1536, Almagro, sent by Pizarro, penetrated into this country, but vainly tried to remain there. Valdivia, in 1540, attempted a new expedition; he laid the foundations of the towns of Santiago, Conception, and Valdivia, but was defeated and put to death by the Araucanians, 1550. Spain, however, annexed Chili to the Viceroyalty of Peru, but continual wars with the

12. How is Peru governed? Who were its chief Presidents until 1855? —13. What do you know of Bolivia?—14. What do you know of Chili?

nations retarded its subjection till 1773. In 1810, Chili threw off the yoke of the mother-country, and proclaimed its independence. Having, in 1814, fallen again under the Spanish domination, it got up an insurrection in 1817, under General St. Martin. The victory of Maypo, in April, 1818, confirmed its independence, and Chili became a Republic. However, the new State was difinitively constituted only in 1826, through the efforts of Ramon Freire and O'Higgins. Its independence was recognized by Spain, in 1844. This country is one of the most flourishing of South America; many railroads intersect its surface.

15. **New Granada.**—Before Columbia's declaration of independence, 1819, New Granada formed a Spanish Viceroyalty, which comprised the present Republics of New Granada and Equador. Since 1857, it has been a Federative Republic, administered by a President. The sovereign power is vested in a Congress, composed of a Senate and a Chamber of Deputies. Catholicism is the religion of the State.

16. **Equador.**—This country was formely a part of the Empire of Peru; after the conquest, it belonged to Spain. Freed by Bolivar in 1822, it was for some years a part of Columbia, forming the three departments of Ecuador, Guayaquil, and Assuay. It separated from Columbia in 1831, and formed an independent State, divided into seven provinces. Its Constitution framed in 1835, modified in 1838, was reconstructed in 1850. This country has constantly been troubled by intestine disturbances.

17. **Venezuela.**—Venezuela, which name means *Little Venice*, was thus called by the Spaniards, on account of a resemblance of some Indian towns situated on Lake Maricaybo, with the city of Venice built on lagoons. Under the domination of Spain, this country formed the western half of the Captaincy-General of Caraccas. Independent since 1811, it was from 1819 to 1831, a part of the Republic of Columbia, which, at this latter period, was divided into three distinct States. From that time, Venezuela has formed an independent State. According to its Constitution of 1858, the supreme power is vested in a Congress, composed of a Senate and a House of Representatives; the Executive power has a President, elected for four years. The majority of the inhabitants are Catholics.

18. **Confederation of La Plata, or the Argentine Republic.**—The greater part of the United Provinces

15. What do you know of New Granada?—16. What do you know of Equador?—17. What do you know of Venezuela?—18. What do you know of the Confederation of La Plata till 1826? What took place in La Plata from 1826 to 1860?

of Rio de la Plata, first formed a part of the immense Viceroyalty of Peru; but in 1778, they formed a separate Viceroyalty, called that of Rio de la Plata. From 1810, they followed the insurrectionary movement which pervaded the Spanish possessions. In 1811, the royal troops were beaten at Las Piedras, and an independent government established at Buenos Ayres; but it experienced many changes until 1816, when the Congress of Tucuman promulgated a Constitution; a Republic was constituted with two Chambers, the *Junto* and the *Senate*, with a President. This did not prevent the country from being still, for a long time, a prey to anarchy: the *Unitarians* and *Federalists* were incessantly fighting.

From 1826 to 1828, the Confederation had to sustain a disastrous war against Brazil, concerning the possession of Uruguay, which country was finally recognized as independent. The internal quarrels of the Republic favored the ambitious projects of Rosas, who, in 1829, got himself named Governor of Buenos Ayres, and who, from 1835 to 1852, exercised a real dictatorship. In 1838, this Dictator had grave difficulties with France, on account of having refused to satisfy the just claims of the French residents. After a long blockade, these differences were happily arranged by Admiral Mackau, Oct. 29th, 1840; but new difficulties sprang up on the occasion of President Rosas' attempts against Monte Video, and the obstacles he offered to the navigation of the Parana: defeated at Obligado, in 1845, by an Anglo-French fleet, Rosas was obliged to renounce his pretentions. His power was overthrown in 1852, and a new Federal Constitution voted in 1853; this did not prevent Buenos Ayres separating from the Confederation that same year; she however entered it again in 1860.

19. **Paraguay.**—Paraguay was discovered in 1526 by Sebastian Cabot, and conquered in 1536 by the Spaniard Alvaro Nunez, who there practised horrible cruelties. The Jesuits established, in 1556, on the right bank of the Parana, to the south-west of Assumption, the celebrated *missions*, which formed a sort of Theocratic Independent State, although attached to the Viceroyalty of La Plata; they converted the greater part of the Guarani, and induced them to devote themselves to agriculture; the Jesuits remained there till their Order was expelled from the Spanish States, in 1767.

20. In 1750, Spain ceded this country to the Portuguese, in exchange for the colony of San Sacramento; Portugal, however, could not render her government acceptable, and, in 1777,

19. What do you know of Paraguay?—20. What took place in Paraguay from 1750 to 1868?

Paraguay was restored to Spain. This country became independent in 1811; soon afterwards, Francia gained possession of the power, first with the title of Consul, 1813, then with that of Dictator, 1814. He managed to retain the power to his death, which happened in 1840, and turned his despotism to the profit of the industry of his country. He closed Paraguay to all foreigners. After his death, communications were re-established by Lopez, 1844, who carried on against Brazil a severe and disastrous struggle, which caused his own downfall, 1868.

21. **Republic of Uruguay.**—This country was formerly a part of the Spanish Viceroyalty of Buenos Ayres, under the name of *Banda Oriental;* it was afterwards ruled for nine years, 1816-1825, by Artigas, who had invaded Buenos Ayres; it passed partly under the Brazilian protection, in 1821, and formed the *Cisplatine Province* of Brazil; but in 1825, it rose against that protection, and, with the aid of Buenos Ayres, got itself recognized as an independent Republic in 1828. Its first President was Riveira, 1828-1832. After him, this country had to suffer as much from the long disputes between Oribe and Rosas, between Aguirre and Flores, disputes which ceased only through the military intervention of Brazil, as also from the frequent difficulties between this country, and the Confederation of La Plata. This Republic is administered by a President, a Senate, and a House of Representatives. The French code is the basis of its legislation.

22. **Brazil.**—Discovered in 1500 by the Spaniard Vincent Pinzon, and by the Portuguese Cabral, explored the following year by Americus Vespucius, in the name of the King of Portugal, Brazil was, at first, only a place of transportation for Portugal. Its colonization commenced in 1531. The Dutch entered there the following century, and by degrees conquered nearly all the country, 1624 to 1640; but the natives, together with the former colonists, drove them out in 1654, and the Portuguese retook their place. The Kings of the House of Braganza called themselves Kings of Portugal and Brazil. Driven from Europe, in 1807, by Napoleon, they fixed themselves at Rio, but they remained there only till 1821. The return of the Royal Family to Lisbon, caused Portugal to lose Brazil.

23. This country declared itself independent in 1822, adopted a Constitution, and elected as *Emperor* Don Pedro I., son of John VI., King of Portugal. When the death of this latter, 1826,

21. What do you know of Uruguay?—22. When was Brazil discovered? What people first possessed Brazil?—23. When did Brazil declare its independence? What form of government has Brazil?

left two thrones to Don Pedro, this Prince gave up Portugal to his daughter Dona Maria, and himself remained in Brazil; but, in 1831, after some disturbances, he abdicated in favor of his son Don Pedro II., born in 1825, whose minority expired in 1840. The government is a Representative Monarchy, with a Senate and a House of Deputies.

Letters, arts, and sciences, in the 17th and 18th centuries.

The seventeenth century, or the age of Louis XIV., was the Golden Age of French Literature. In all its branches, it was cultivated and brought to the highest degree of perfection. Dramatic Poetry attained to nobleness, force, and sublimity in the hands of Corneille, and to these, were added grace and pathos in the hands of Racine. Comedy, as portraying individual character, a style unknown to the ancients, was created by Molière. Under Quinault, the Opera was raised to the dignity of a literary composition. The Didactic Poetry of Boileau, was a prodigy of elegance and cleverness. The inimitable La Fontaine painted nature in his fables, and drove his future rivals to despair, by surpassing his predecessors. Lyric Poetry was heard only later, but then, in the person of J. B. Rousseau, it uttered accents filled with harmony and enthusiasm. Epic Poetry, it is true, was wanting to France, but Fenelon consoled her by giving her *Telemachus*.

In Pulpit-Eloquence, Bossuet surpassed all that had been heard before, by creating funeral Orations. Massillon and Bourdaloue, by their powerful words, touched every heart, and inspired vice with terror. Descartes and Pascal, at the same time, opened a new career to Philosophy, and the great Bossuet, the Eagle of Meaux, with a bold hand, retraced God's designs on the world, in his *Discourse on Universal History*.

Erudition produced, then, most astonishing men, and Latin Poets, like Santeuil and Vaniere, appeared to have found again in all its freshness and grace the admirable language of Horace and Virgil. Arts did not shine less than Literature. Architecture, Painting, and Sculpture, joined with one another to adorn the great monuments of that period.

It is well to remark, that the 17th century was neither a stranger to great discoveries in mathematics and Natural Sciences. Descartes was not only a great writer and philosopher, but also a profound geometrician and a bold natural philosopher. Following in his footsteps and in those of the German Kepler, the English Newton laid the foundations of the study of

celestial mechanism, by exposing the laws of *gravitation* or *universal weight*. The method of observation which Bacon had defined, and which Galileo was the first to practise with brilliant success, gained numerous disciples, and gave rise to fruitful discoveries. Torricelli, Pascal, Huyghens, Cassini, extended the domain of Physics and Astronomy. The barometer, the reflecting telescope, the application of the pendulum to clocks, date from this period. The English physician Harvey discovered the circulation of the blood. Papin and Solomon de Caus, both Frenchmen, divined the fundamental principles of the steam-engine.

The eighteenth century counted a great number of writer in France, but its fecundity was not joined to that perfection to be found in the master-pieces of the preceding century. Superior intelligences aspired to a sort of universality, which entailed their becoming superficial, and all their productions show an unmistakable falling off. Voltaire excelled in Tragedy, without equaling either Racine or Corneille; in the place of Molière, Comedy had only Destouches, Gresset, and Marivaux; among moralists, Vauvenargues succeeded to La Bruyère; Philosophy, after having been honored by such names as Descartes, Malebranche, Bossuet, and Fenelon, was reduced to Condillac, who humbly avowed himself a disciple of Locke and Bacon; funeral Orations were no more; Abbé de Boismont, Abbé Poulle, and Père Neuville replaced Bossuet, Bourdaloue, and Massillon in the pulpit; Lefranc de Pompignan tried to soar as high as Rousseau in the Sacred Ode, but he rarely succeeded.

The errors of Sensualism, the false theories that were broached as to the nature of language, authorized a disregard of form. Style was deprecated in favor of *ideas*, as if the two were not inseparable, and a sort of algebraic language was dreamt of, the use of which would have been fatal to any display of imagination, and which would have robbed human speech of all charm and coloring.

During this century, the only progress made was in the various sciences, but this in a most remarkable degree. Almost every one of them received fresh developments at the hands of men of genius, who applied themselves to studying them. Thus, Physics was honored by the discoveries of Franklin and Volta, whose experiments caused Electricity to become better known, and important use made of it. Lavoisier created Modern Chemistry, Buffon made the study of Natural History popular, and Linnæus gave a new classification of the sciences, which were further reduced to order by that of Jussieu; Astronomy and Mathematics found in Lagrange and Laplace able interpreters,

as remarkable for their depth as for their lucidity. Cook and Bougainville enriched Geography with new discoveries by means of the journeys they took round the world. Haüy created Crystallography, to which he gave his own name, and the observations of Dulac, Saussure, and Dolomieu, made a science of Geology.

In the seventeenth century, when France had its golden age, Italian Literature had already begun to decline, and the literature of the Northern nations was only in a state of formation. Germany could boast of the genius of Leibnitz, who was a prodigy through his vast knowledge. In England, Newton rivaled Leibnitz, and Milton wrote his *Paradise Lost.* But these great men were, in a way, exceptions, who outstripped and rose above their times, whilst their contemporaries were struggling against those difficulties, which are encountered, when the language of a people is not perfectly formed.

France, which was then set off by all the brilliancy of the reign of Louis XIV, exercised an immense influence over all other nations. Every one thought, acted, and dressed in the French manner. The French language, being perfected, became European. It was spoken in all the courts, and, from that time, it was made use of for drawing up the treaties concluded between different nations. The philosophers of the eighteenth century, profited by this general disposition of mind, to spread their impious doctrines. To them, France was a tribune, whence their words were heard throughout Europe. Unfortunately, this influence only served to propagate error, and to enable Incredulity to battle against Faith.

State of the Church and of Social Institutions during the Seventeenth and Eighteenth Centuries.

During the last period of the seventeenth century, the Church had brilliant defenders. Bossuet, Fenelon, Flechier, Bourdaloue, and Massillon had made Pulpit-Eloquence illustrious. Arnauld, Nicole, Maistre de Sacy, and other Port-Royal writers, had the misfortune to fall into *Jansenism,* which was nothing less than disguised Calvinism; but they met with rude adversaries, who victoriously refuted their errors. St. Vincent de Paul founded the admirable Order of the Sisters of Charity; missionaries went to evangelize the newly discovered countries, and all the religious Orders rivaled one another in zeal for enlisting the treasures of science in the service of Faith. Let us add that, towards the end of that same century, a holy priest of Rheims, the Venerable John Baptist de La Salle founded in that city the

Institution of the Brothers of the Christian Schools, for the civil and religious education of youth.

In the eighteenth century, there was, unfortunately, a considerable abatement in ecclesiastical studies. After the death of Massillon, the Pulpit remained unoccupied, or at least, filled only by orators of an inferior degree of eloquence. Bergier was the most distinguished among the apologists of religion. After him, there can only be mentioned Guénée's letters, very clever ones indeed, Guérin du Rocher's Works, and Père Nonotte's Historical Compilations. If we place these names side by side with those of Voltaire, Rousseau, Montesquieu, and Buffon, the fact becomes evident, that the defence of the Church must have been less sought after, than attacks upon her.

In this century too, sovereigns, in general, declared against the Church. Their ministers, imbued with philosophical doctrines, conspired against spiritual power, without perceiving that they could not injure the authority of the Church, without shaking their own. At first, they directed their attacks against the Jesuits, whom they looked upon as the firmest supporters of Catholicity and the Papacy. Portugal banished them from the Kingdom, confiscated their possessions to the crown, and forbade their re-entering the Kingdom under pain of death. This example was followed in France by the famous Duke of Choiseul, minister of Louis XV. The Count of Aranda did the same thing in Spain. There, these priests were falsely accused of having conspired against the State, and on this pretext, they were driven from the Peninsula. The suppression of the Order was decreed that same year at Naples, and the following year at Parma. All the Bourbon Family thus took on themselves the responsibility of this iniquitous measure. Pope Clement XIV. was weak enough to cede to the representations of all these courts, and he abolished the Order throughout Christendom, to the great delight of the infidel philosophers. This concession encouraged the enemies of Catholicism to go still further. The Count of Aranda attacked the other monastic institutions in Spain, and Joseph II., Emperor of Austria, tried to establish a National Church.

These attempts brought about such modifications, as could only be injurious to Faith. But it must be acknowledged, that, by the side of these disastrous innovations, in the civil order useful reforms were proposed, which reforms contributed to the material progress of civilization. The internal administration of States was enlightened by principles of order and unity; military art was brought to perfection; commerce, stimulated by the development of colonies in other parts of the world,

made rapid growth, and thence, there resulted such a material well-being, as ameliorated the position of the lower classes. Political economists, like Vauban, Quesnoy, and Smith, occupied themselves with the state of the working classes, and strove to point out the way of developing the material resources of nations.

The disagreement reigning between the new doctrines and the social institutions, gave cause for uneasiness as to the future. In all the European States, Monarchy had become absolute; England was the only exception. In France, in Spain, in the Northern States, everywhere, Royalty was sovereign and independent. Still the philosophers incessantly proclaimed, under every form, the necessity of liberty, and their writings were only directed to reminding the people of their rights. These theories could not fail in bringing on revolutions throughout Europe. For, no sooner were these ideas universally recognized, than an application of them was sought after, and as they were in contradiction to existing institutions, there resulted such a struggle, as could not fail entailing the most disastrous consequences.

INTRODUCTION

TO THE

COMPENDIUM

OF THE

HISTORY OF CANADA.

EARLY VOYAGES, PRINCIPAL DISCOVERIES, AND CONQUESTS IN AMERICA (1492-1534).

1.—Christopher Columbus.—2. Object of his voyages.—3. His first efforts.—4..13. His discoveries.—14. Voyages of John and Sebastian Cabot.—15. Americus Vespucius.—16. Discoveries of Pinzon and Cortereal.—18..20. Fernando Cortez and Mexico.—21. Magellan—.22. Verrazzani.—23..28. Pizarro and Peru.—29..31. Origin of the North American Indians.

1. **Christopher Columbus.**—America was discovered by Christopher Columbus, a native of Genoa. This skilful navigator was led, by reading ancient works on Cosmography, to conjecture the existence of undiscovered land in the western ocean, and also a passage to India by the north-west. He submitted his theory to Paulo Toscanelli, one of the leading mathematicians of the day, who told him that India could be reached by a westerly course; that, by sailing four thousand miles in a direct line from Lisbon, he would arrive on the coast of Mangi, near the Cathay (China) of which we have such romantic descriptions by Marco Polo; finally, that he should meet at the distance of six hundred and seventy-five miles from each other, the few famous islands of Antilla and Cipango (Japan).

1. By whom was America discovered? To whom did Columbus submit his theory? What was Toscanelli's answer?

2. Nothing more was required to change into a firm conviction the conjectures of Columbus, and to kindle within his breast the twofold enthusiasm of science and of faith. Columbus was a man not only of extensive acquirements but also of genuine piety. It is said that he was in the habit of conversing with certain monks whose garb he sometimes assumed. The principal motive by which he was swayed in his great enterprise, was a desire of saving a multitude of benighted souls, coupled with the hope of finding mineral treasures sufficient to defray the expenses of another attempt towards the deliverance of the holy Sepulchre, and the destruction of Mahometanism.

3. Wishing his native country to have the honor of his discoveries, he laid his plans before the government of Genoa; but, instead of meeting with encouragement, he was treated as a visionary, and coldly dismissed. He then applied to Portugal, England, and France, but without receiving any substantial aid. He finally had recourse to Spain, and, after eight years of solicitation, obtained from Ferdinand and Isabella, a little squadron of three vessels with the title of Admiral of all the seas he might explore, and Viceroy of all the lands he might discover.

4. On the 3rd of August, 1492, Columbus set sail from Palos, a sea-port town in Andalusia. Delaying a month at the Canaries to refit, he started thence, on the 6th of September, over unknown seas. His crew soon began to interpose their timid fears, and, when these were unavailing, to express their open discontent; but, equally disregardful of both, Columbus bore steadily westward; himself, however, not without misgivings as to what the variation in the needle (not before discovered) portented. On the 12th of October, his perseverance was rewarded with the sight of land, which proved to be one of the Bahama Islands. As soon as he landed, he cast himself on his knees to thank God for the happy termination of his voyage, and, in memory of the dangers he had escaped, gave the island the name of San Salvador. He then erected a cross, and, in presence of the natives, took possession of the country in the name of Ferdinand, and Isabella.

5. The natives came in great numbers to see the Spaniards whose hands, faces, and beards they eagerly examined, being in their turn no less subjects of curiosity for their new visitors. "To induce them to be friendly towards us," said Columbus, "and con-

2. What was the effect of this answer? What prompted Columbus to this enterprise?—3. Of what countries did Columbus solicit aid?—4. When and from where did he set sail? What was the first land discovered?—5. How were the Spaniards received by the natives of San Salvador? What did Columbus distribute among them?

vinced that to reclaim them from idolatry, the best means were mildness and persuasion rather than violence and terror, I gave some of them colored caps and glass beads, which they strung around their necks; I also distributed other trifles which greatly pleased them and secured us their friendship. They were quite unarmed, and seemed to ignore the use of weapons. When I showed them a sword, they seized it by the edge, and thus unwittingly cut themselves."

6. Putting again to sea, Columbus discovered Cuba, and shortly after, the Island of San Domingo. These islands were called the Indies, from the belief entertained by Columbus that he had reached the western shores of India. The natives received in consequence the appellation of Indians—a name under which they have been known to the present day. After building a fort on the Island of San Domingo, Columbus sailed for Spain; and, on the 15th of March, 1493, re-entered Palos whence he had started seven months before.

7. During this homeward voyage, the little craft was assailed by a furious tempest which, during fifteen days, threatened Columbus and his crew with destruction. In order to preserve, if possible, the memory of his great discovery, he hastily wrote a short account; and, wrapping it in waxed cloth, enclosed the whole in a cask which he committed to the sea, hoping that some good fortune might wash it ashore.

8. The citizens of Palos received Columbus with transports of joy. The bells pealed forth; the shops were closed; and the people vied with one another in doing honor to the man who, some months before, they had treated as visionary.

9. The King and Queen, then at Barcelona, granted Columbus a public audience; and, filled with admiration, bade him sit down and relate the details of his marvellous expedition,—it seeming, says Las Casas, as though they enjoyed at that moment the delights of Paradise. They ennobled his family, confirmed his title of Admiral, and authorized him to emblazon on his arms the motto: "To Castile and Leon, Columbus gave a new world."

10. Columbus made three other voyages to the New World, during which he visited the group of islands since called the Antilles. In his second voyage, in 1493, he discovered Dominica, Guadaloupe, Porto Rico, Jamaica, and the Leeward Islands.

---

6. What large Island did Columbus now discover? By what name are the natives of these islands known? What did Columbus after taking possession of San Domingo?—7. What happened during his homeward voyage?—8. How was he received at Palos?—9. How was he received by the King and Queen of Spain?—10. How many voyages did Columbus still make to the New World? What was the chief discovery made in his third voyage? What place did he visit in his fourth voyage?

On his third, in 1498, he cruised along the shores of South America from the mouth of the Orinoco to Caraccas; and, in his fourth, in 1502, he visited the Gulf of Darien.

11. Columbus was several times obliged to exert his authority to quell the mutinous excesses of his crew; and he had much to suffer from jealous rivals. On his return from his first voyage, he was unjustly accused by those whom he had been obliged to punish in order to enforce discipline, but he easily cleared himself of their accusations. In his third expedition, however, he fell a victim to an atrocious calumny, and was in consequence deprived of his command and replaced by Bovadilla, who sent him back to Spain in chains. And this great man was thus compelled to cross that ocean, whose hitherto impassable barriers he had swept away, a prisoner bound with ignominious fetters. The captain of the vessel, moved with respect for his illustrious captive, wished to set him at liberty; but, animated with the lofty heroism which a genuine piety inspires, Columbus replied: "No; I wear these chains by order of their Majesties, the Sovereigns of Spain. I will wear them until they shall order them to be taken off, and I will preserve them afterwards as relics and memorials of the gratitude of princes."

12. When Columbus arrived in Spain, public indignation rose to such a pitch, especially at the sight of the irons with which he was loaded, that Ferdinand and Isabella, not only restored him to liberty, but received him with great demonstrations of sympathy, and recalled Bovadilla. Notwithstanding such seeming protestations, Columbus was never reinstated in his offices of emolument and honor. He could never blot from his mind the remembrance of the cruel treatment he had received. We are told that during the rest of his life, he hung up the chains in his cabinet, and requested that they should be laid beside him in the grave. On his return to Spain, in November 1504, from a fourth expedition, during which he had to suffer much from famine and hardship, he lay sick some months, and recovered only to have his claims for redress finally rejected by the King, Queen Isabella being now dead.

13. Columbus, now 70 years old, overwhelmed by chagrin and infirmity, died at Valladolid, in 1506. His last moments were devoted to prayer and the reception of the rites of the religion which he had cherished and practised all his lifetime. His last words were those of the Royal Prophet: Into Thy hands, O Lord,

11. What had Columbus to suffer during this third voyage? How did he bear the treatment of his envious rivals?—12. What were the feelings of the Spaniards at seeing Columbus in chains? How was he received by Ferdinand and Isabella? What did he do with his chains?—13. When did Columbus die?

I commend my spirit. In 1513, his remains were removed to Seville, whence they were transferred, in 1536, to San Domingo, from which place they were conveyed with great pomp to Havana, on the 15th of January, 1795.

14. **John and Sebastian Cabot.**—The first navigators who followed in the wake of Columbus, were John Cabot and his son Sebastian. Henry VII., King of England, having been convinced by them of the importance of the discovery of a north-west passage, fitted out an expedition for that purpose, and placed it under the command. They sailed from Bristol, in 1496; and, in the course of their voyage, discovered Newfoundland and Labrador, about a year before Columbus had reached the mainland.

15. **Americus Vespucius.**—Though Columbus had every right to give his name to the New World, yet he has been deprived of that honor by a seeming freak of fortune. In 1499, Americus Vespucius, a native of Florence, and a clever cosmographer, sailed for the New World in a little Spanish fleet commanded by Alonzo of Ojeda, one of the companions of Columbus. He distinguished himself in this expedition by the active part he took in every enterprise. It was during this voyage, that he explored the northern shores of South America. Vespucius, says the learned Abbé Ferland, dedicated to the Duke of Lorraine an exaggerated account of his voyages, which, falling into the hands of Martin Hylacomylus, a printer of St. Dié, was there published in 1507. Hylacomylus, by error, placed the first voyage of Vespucius in 1497; and, concluding that he had thus preceded Columbus in the discovery of *terra firma*, proposed to call the new continent America. This publication, in a place so far from Spain, remained unknown even to Vespucius himself. The name proposed by the obscure printer of St. Dié, was adopted by contemporary cosmographers, and, shortly afterwards, came into general use. It is customary to treat Vespucius with a certain amount of severity on this score; but, if the above version is true, it is unjust to charge Vespucius with an error in which he had no share whatever.

16. **Vincent Pinzon; Gaspard Cortereal.**—In 1500, Vincent Pinzon of Palos discovered Brazil and the Amazon River, and sailed along 400 miles of sea-coast. The Amazon is said to derive its name from the impression of its first navigators, who fancied they saw bands of female warriors on its

14. What navigators followed in the wake of Columbus? What discoveries did the Cabots make?—15. After whom is the New World called?—16. What discoveries were made in 1500?

shores. In the same year, Gaspard Cortereal, a Portuguese navigator, first entered the Gulf of St. Lawrence.

17. It seems very probable that the first who visited Newfoundland, were Basques and Bretons. Some of them were to be seen there as early as 1504. They were attracted to this bleak region by the immense profits realized by the cod-fishery.

18. **Baron de Léry.**—The first European, who attempted a settlement in North America, was the Baron de Léry. He left France for this purpose, in 1518; and steering a northerly course, arrived at Sable Island. Finding the soil but little adapted to agricultural pursuits, he abandoned his project and returned to France.

19. **Fernando Cortez.**—In Nov. 1518, F. Cortez, a Spanish officer, commanding a fleet of 11 vessels, carrying 600 men, 16 horses, and 10 brass guns, sailed for Mexico, which, after incredible hardships, he succeeded in conquering. This country, forming a vast empire, was, then, under the sway of Montezuma.

20. As Cortez approached the shores, he saw a great number of canoes filled with Indians, who, by their hostile demonstrations, gave him to understand that they meant to dispute his landing; but a closer view of the ships, and, above all, the roaring of the artillery, struck them with such terror, that they instantly fled to avoid certain destruction.

21. Mexico was the richest country of North America. It teemed with fruits and odoriferous flowers; there were immense plantations of lemon and orange-trees; and the whole face of nature was covered with a luxuriant vegetation. The forests were tenanted with birds of brilliant plumage; and the air itself was impregnated with the sweet perfume that rose from the groves and prairies. Besides these alluring advantages, the country abounded in rich mines of gold and silver.

22. **Magellan.**—In 1520, Magellan, a Portuguese navigator then in the service of Spain, discovered the Strait that bears his name, and was the first to sail on the waters of the Pacific.

23. **Verazzani.**—About the year 1523, Francis I. despatched to the New World, Verazzani, a Florentine navigator, who, in 1524, visited the eastern shores of North America, from the 30th degree of North latitude to Newfoundland, of which tract of country he took possession for the crown of France.

---

17. Who were the first navigators that visited the banks of Newfoundland?—18. Who was the first European that attempted a settlement in North America?—19. What did Fernando Cortez do, in 1518? What did Mexico then form?—20. How were the Mexicans impressed by the aspect of the ships and the roars of the Spanish artillery?—21. Describe Mexico.—22. What did Magellan do, in 1520?—23. What was the first voyage of discovery undertaken for the French crown?

24. **Francis Pizarro.**—Shortly after the conquest of Mexico, a similar attempt was made on the rich and powerful Empire of Peru, by Francis Pizarro. This adventurer embarked at Panama in November 1524, and commenced an exploration of the shores of the Pacific. Having at last found the country he was in quest of, he returned to Spain.

25. Pizarro obtained from Charles V. the title of Governor and Captain-General of the country he had discovered, and some troops to enable him to effect its subjugation. Following up his first success, he penetrated into the very heart of Peru, then a vast empire governed by sovereigns called *Incas*. Fortunately for the adventurer, the country was split into two parties headed by Huascar and Atahualpa, sons of the late monarch. Atahualpa defeated his brother and took him prisoner.

26. Pizarro sent an embassy to the successful prince; and, not scrupling to sacrifice good faith to self-interest, he profited by the interview granted his envoys to put himself at the head of a resolute band, and attack the unsuspecting monarch, whom he made prisoner, 1532. It was in this treacherous way, that perfidy and audacity obtained possession of a powerful empire,—the adventurer's available force consisting only of 160 men and 3 guns. Four thousand Peruvian troops were slaughtered in this affray, while the Spaniards did not lose a single man.

27. Informed of the offer that his brother Huascar had made to Pizarro's ambassadors, Atahualpa gave orders to have him strangled. Perceiving then that the ruling passion of his captors was a thirst for gold, he offered, as the price of his ransom, to fill with that precious metal, as high as he could reach, the room he was in, which was 22 feet by 16; but, being accused of treacherous machinations and of the murder of his brother, he was put to death. The Peruvian Monarchy thus overthrown, was reduced to a Spanish Province, 1533.

28. The lucky adventurers could not amicably share their booty, and great contentions ensued. Almagro, the rival of Pizarro, was condemned and executed; and, shortly afterwards, Pizarro himself fell by the blade of the assassin.

29. **The Mexican and Peruvian Empires.**—The Empires of Mexico and Peru, at the time of the Spanish invasion, had some tincture of civilization. Their pyramids, palaces, and

24. What expedition was undertaken shortly after the conquest of Mexico?—25. What did Pizarro obtain from Charles V.?—26. How did Pizarro conquer the Peruvian Monarchy?—27. What was the fate of Atahualpa?—28. How did the rivals divide the spoils?—29. Describe the state of the Mexican and Peruvian Empires, at the time of the Spanish invasion.

magnificent temples, showed a fair knowledge of the principles of architecture. They were acquainted with sculpture, and understood the art of working mines and the precious metals. Agriculture was in a flourishing state. They had a regular system of government and a code of civil and religious laws. They worshipped the sun as their principal divinity. The religion of the Peruvians was, however, less cruel and sanguinary than that of the Mexicans, who were in the habit of sacrificing human victims.

30. **North American Indians.**—The aborigines of North America were tall, straight, and well proportioned. Their complexion was copper-color; their eyes were black; their hair long, black, and coarse. They were quick of apprehension and not destitute of genius. When irritated, they became sullen; and once determined upon revenge, neither absence nor obstacles could cool their resentment. They had no written language save a few rude hieroglyphics.

31. Education, among the Indians, was limited to the arts of war, hunting, and fishing. Their language was rude but sonorous and metaphorical. It does not appear that they had any particular form of government. Their chiefs owed their authority in great part to their eloquence. Though they might sometimes advise with their counsellors, their decision was peremptory. The religion of the Indians, was a mixture of obscure traditions and superstitious practices. Like the Hindoos and some other ancient nations, they believed in the existence of two spirits, the one good and the other evil. The former, called the Great Spirit, was invested with superior attributes. They worshipped both; and, fashioning uncouth statues, paid them religious homage. They had some confused notions of future rewards and punishments. The principal of their religious ceremonies consisted in singing and dancing around a large fire; to this, they added prayer, and sometimes, they offered in sacrifice, blood, tobacco, and a sort of fragrant powder.

32. The origin of the Indians has long been a subject of investigation, but without any decisive result. The most probable opinion is, that in some remote age, they crossed over from the North of Asia. Behring's Strait, which separates the two continents, is only 40 miles wide, and, frequently frozen over in winter. Storms, shipwrecks, and earlier voyages of discovery may have cast on the shores of America people from Gaul, Scandinavia, and other countries of Northern Europe. Writers are inclined to this conclusion from the great difference in point of civilization between the natives of Mexico and Peru, and those of the other parts of the New World.

COMPENDIUM

OF THE

HISTORY OF CANADA.

PART FIRST.

FRENCH RULE.

FIRST PERIOD.

FROM THE ARRIVAL OF JACQUES CARTIER IN CANADA, 1534, TO THE FOUNDATION OF QUEBEC, 1608.

CHAPTER I.

From the arrival of Jacques Cartier in Canada, 1534, to the nomination of De Roberval, 1541.

1. Canada.—2..6. Jacques Cartier chosen to command an expedition to the New World.—6. Cartier in the Gulf of St. Lawrence.—6. *Baie des Chaleurs.*—7. Cross erected at Gaspé.—3. Return to France.—19. Cartier's second voyage.—13. Origin of the name of the River St. Lawrence.—14..17. Cartier and Donnacona.—18. Stadacona.—19..21. Cartier at Hochelaga.—22..25. Mount Royal.—26..27. Cartier returns to France.

1. Canada comprises an extensive region in the North-East of North America. At the time of its discovery, it was inhabited by many tribes since known by the general appellation of Indians.

2. **Jacques Cartier.**—Jacques Cartier, a distinguished navigator of St. Malo, in France, was the first to explore this large tract of country. As we have already seen, Canada was

1. Where is Canada situated? By whom was it inhabited at the time of its discovery? Who was the first to penetrate into the interior of the country? Had Canada been unknown up to that time?

not unknown to the French,—Newfoundland, Prince Edward Island, Labrador, and the Gulf of St. Lawrence having been successively discovered by the Cabots, Cortereal, and Verazzani.

3. France was prevented from following up the discoveries of Verazzani on account of her war with Spain. When Francis I. heard of the success of the Spanish and Portuguese in the New World, he resolved to send colonies thither. In a moment of good humor, he was heard to exclaim: "What! they quietly share the New World between themselves; I should like to see the clause in Adam's will which bequeaths America to them."

4. Francis I. fitted out an expedition, and authorized Jacques Cartier to take possession of all the lands he might discover, in order to carry thither the light of the Gospel and the blessings of Christian civilization.

5. Cartier sailed from St. Malo, the chief seaport of Britany, on the 20th of April, 1534. He had but two vessels of 60 tons each, with a crew of 61 men.

6. On the 9th of June, Cartier entered the gulf which was afterwards called the Gulf of St. Lawrence. Taking a southerly course, he sailed into a bay which, on account of the intense heat he there suffered, he called *Baie des Chaleurs*. He thence continued his exploration, but was soon obliged, by the violence of sweeping gales, to take shelter in the Bay of Gaspé.

7. As soon as his ships appeared in the bay, great numbers of the natives flocked to see them. As they made no show of hostile intentions, Cartier erected a wooden cross thirty feet high, to which he attached the royal arms, with the motto: LONG LIVE THE KING OF FRANCE! The crew knelt before the cross, and, respectfully saluting it, pointed towards Heaven as if to tell the astonished spectators that this was the sign of salvation.

8. Fearing lest the winds which began to blow, should compel him to take up winter-quarters in Canada, Cartier gave immediate orders to prepare for departure. After assisting at Mass, on the 15th of August, he set sail, and re-entered the Port of St. Malo, on the 5th of September. He brought back with him two Indians, Taignoagny and Domagaya, sons of a Gaspé chief.

---

3. Why did not France follow up the discoveries commenced by Verazzani? What did Francis I. say on hearing of the success of the Spaniards and Portuguese in the New World?—4. What navigator did Francis I. send to the New World?—5. From what port did Cartier sail for America?—6. When did Cartier enter the Gulf subsequently called St. Lawrence?—7. What did Cartier encouraged by the friendly demonstrations of the natives?—8. What did Cartier do, fearing lest the winds might compel him to pass the winter in Canada? When did he set sail?

9. The King was so pleased with the result of this expedition, that, on the following year, 1535, he invested Cartier with ampler powers, and furnished him with a more considerable armament.

10. The new squadron consisted of three vessels: the *Grande Hermine*, carrying 120 tons, the *Petite He... ...ne*, 60; and the *Emerillon*, 40.

11. Cartier tells us that, before leaving St. Malo, he and his companions, several of whom were noblemen's sons, having confessed, received Holy Communion in the cathedral of that city, on Pentecost day, the 16th of May; and that, to draw down the benediction of God upon their enterprise, they also wished to receive the episcopal blessing. As in his preceding voyage, Cartier had taken with him a certain number of priests; he now provided himself with many objects of piety to distribute among the Indians, as also a statue of the Most Blessed Virgin for his own and his crew's use.

12. The little fleet set sail on the 19th of May, 1535. After having been separated by furious squalls, the three vessels met again on the 26th of July, the rendez-vous being Blanc-Sablon, at the mouth of the river then called the *Great River of Canada*.

13. On the 1st of August, he was obliged to take shelter in a port on the north bank of the river. Having erected a cross, he called the place the *Haven* of St. Nicholas. On the 10th of August, Feast of St. Lawrence, he entered a narrow bay to which he gave the name of that martyr. This name was subsequently extended to the whole river, whilst the inlet received that of St. Genevieve. On the 15th of August, he sighted Anticosti, which, in honor of the day's solemnity, he called the Island of the Assumption.

14. Cartier then ascended the river, and stopped at an island which he called *Isle-aux-Coudres*, because of its great quantity of hazel-nut trees; further up, he met a far larger island (Orleans) which he named *Isle of Bacchus*, on account of its many wild grapes. He noted that, at this place, the country began to bear the name of Canada*. Cartier's intention in sailing up the river,

* The opinion that this name is derived from the Iroquois word: *Kanata*, which signifies a gathering of huts or a village, appears to be well founded; for the Hurons, who are said to have formerly inhabited this country, often use the sound of D when the Iroquois use that of T, so that the word Kanata of the Iroquois, would be equivalent to that of Canada in the Huron language, to signify a village.

9. How was the King of France impressed by Cartier's account?—10. How many ships composed the new expedition?—11. What did Cartier do before leaving port?—12. When did the little fleet set sail?—13. What happened to Cartier in the 1st of August? Why was the Gulf of St. Lawrence so called?—14. Whence come the names of *Isle-aux-Coudres* and *Isle of Bacchus*? What was Cartier's object in sailing up the ...?

was to reconnoitre the country, and especially, to visit Hochelaga, so much spoken of by Taignoagny and Domagaya, as these were now able to speak French, and could be serviceable to him as interpreters to the Indians.

15. Having found, at the extremity of the Island of Orleans, a small river, which seemed to offer good harborage for his vessels, he called it, from the feast of the day, *Ste. Croix*, which name it has since exchanged for that of *St. Charles*.

16. On the following day, Cartier was visited by Donnacona, the chief of a neighboring village called Stadacona. This chief, who bore the title of *Agouhanna*, which, in the Huron language, signifies head of a tribe, was accompanied by more than 500 followers. Stadacona was situated on the eminence on which the Upper Town of Quebec now stands.

17. Donnacona repeated his visits, and conversed with Cartier by means of the two Indians of whom we have already spoken. As Cartier was anxious to proceed to Hochelaga, he anchored his two larger vessels in the River Ste. Croix, and started on board the *Emerillon* with all the gentlemen of his suite, fifty sailors, and two small boats.

18. On reaching that part of the river since called Lake St. Peter, he was forced, through shallowness of water, to leave there the *Emerillon*,—having apparently taken the northern instead of the southern channel. He armed his two shallops ; and storing them with provisions, continued his route. As he proceeded, he saw on each bank many rudely fashioned huts put up by those of the natives then occupied in fishing. These exchanged their fish with the French for objects of trifling value.

19. The little expedition arrived at Hochelaga on the 2nd of October. The inhabitants came out to the number of a thousand to meet their visitors, received them kindly, and made them copious presents of fish and Indian corn. Moved by such friendly dispositions, Cartier went ashore ; and, having disposed the women on one side, and the men on the other, he distributed little trinkets among them.

20. On the following day, which was Sunday, having left eight men to guard the boats, he started with the rest for the village. They crossed a fine forest of oak-trees, and emerged into a beautiful open country, very fertile and thickly planted with maize, in the centre of which stood the huts of Hochelaga.

15. What did Cartier find at the extremity of the Island of Orleans ?—16. By whom was he visited at St. Croix ?—17. How did the Indian chief hold intercourse with Cartier ?—18. When did Cartier leave Stadacona ? What was he obliged to do on arriving at Lake St. Peter ?—19. When did Cartier reach Hochelaga ?—20. What did he do on the following day ?

21. This village, says Cartier, was surrounded with three circular palisades, about two lances in height. It enclosed 50 huts, each about 50 paces long by 12 or 15 wide,—all built of wood, and roofed with large pieces of bark somewhat artistically strung together. Each hut was divided into several apartments, the loft being used for the storage of the corn reserved for bread.

22. Cartier and his suite were received in a public square with great demonstrations of joy. Accompanied by several of the inhabitants, they went to the neighboring mountain from whose top they had an extensive view of the surrounding country. Cartier called this mountain Mount Royal, whence is derived the name Montreal, now applied to that city, as well as to the whole Island.

23. Fearing lest some mishaps might befall the *Emerillon* at Lake St. Peter, the expeditionists re-embarked the same evening, and reached their vessel on the following day, the 4th of October. Finding all on board safe and sound, they immediately sailed down the river as far as Three Rivers. There, Cartier had a cross erected on the foremost of the islands in the mouth of the St. Maurice, after which he continued downwards, and arrived at Ste. Croix Harbor on the 11th of October.

24. During this expedition of Cartier, the men left behind for the safe-keeping of the ships, erected a kind of fort, mounted with a few pieces of artillery, so as to protect themselves against all attacks from the Indians.

25. In the ensuing winter, the French suffered much, not only from the intensity of the cold, to which they were quite unaccustomed, but also from the scurvy which became epidemic. Twenty-five died, and the rest were reduced to such a state of prostration, as almost to have lost all hopes of again returning to France. They were suddenly relieved from this state of despondency by an Indian, who gave them a remedy which restored them to health in a few days.

26. In the following spring, 1536, Cartier sailed for France with two vessels, abandoning the third for want of hands to man her. He reached St. Malo about the middle of July. Shortly before his departure, on the festival of the Finding of the Cross, he erected in his little fort a cross 25 feet high, and placed on its centre the armorial bearings of the royal family, with the motto: FRANCIS I., BY THE GRACE OF GOD, KING OF THE FRENCH, REIGNS. Informed of the hostile dispositions of the Stadacona

21. Describe the village of Hochelaga.—22. How was Cartier received? 23.—What did Cartier and his suite do after their visit to Hochelaga?—When did they re-enter the Harbor of Ste. Croix?—25. How were Cartier and his companions tried during the following winter?—26. What did Cartier do in the spring of 1536?

Indians, Cartier seized their chief, Donnacona, with the principal leaders, and brought them to France.

27. On his arrival, Cartier found France involved in a war with Spain, the immediate consequence of which was, that more than four years elapsed before another expedition was fitted out for Canada.

CHAPTER II.

From De Roberval, 1541, to the Marquis de la Roche, the second Viceroy, 1578.

1. M. de Roberval.—2..3. Cartier is appointed Captain-General and Pilot-Master; his arrival at Ste. Croix.—4. Charlesbourg Royal.—5..6 Cartier is again at Hochelaga; his return to Charlesbourg Royal.—7..8. He sets sail for France and meets De Roberval at Newfoundland.—9..11. De Roberval at Charlesbourg Royal; he explores the Saguenay.—12. Cartier returns to Canada to bring back De Roberval to France.—13. Portrait of Cartier.—14..15. Canada when discovered; the tribes inhabiting it.

1. **De Roberval.**—Hostilities having ceased between France and Spain, Francis I. organized a new expedition for Canada, and appointed John Francis de la Roque, Sieur de Roberval, his Lieutenant in that country.

2. The command of the expedition was given to Jacques Cartier with the title of Captain-General and Pilot-Master of the vessels. The flotilla, consisting of five ships, awaited in the port of St. Malo the signal to weigh anchor; but, as De Roberval saw that the military stores would occasion more delay, he reviewed the crews, and ordered Cartier to take the head. The fleet had provisions for two years.

3. Cartier sailed on the 23rd of May, 1541, and arrived at Ste. Croix on the 23rd of August. The neighboring tribes hastened to visit him; and, among the most eager, was the successor of Donnacona. When told that the latter was no more, he appeared but little grieved by the tidings.

4. Wishing to find a safer place for his ships than the Harbor of Ste. Croix, Cartier went up the river to Cape Rouge, which

27. In what state did Cartier find France?

1. When peace was restored, what did Francis I. do?—2. To whom was the command of the new expedition entrusted?—3. When did Cartier set sail? When did he reach Ste. Croix?—4. What did Cartier do, wishing to put his ships in safer anchorage than at Ste. Croix.

with the desired advantages, offered a better site for a settlement. Three of his ships anchored under cover of the guns of a fort, which he there built and called *Charlesbourg Royal.* On the 2nd of September, he sent the other two vessels back to France, to acquaint the King with what had been done and to inform him of De Roberval's delay.

5. After the departure of the vessels, Cartier sailed up to Hochelaga, to examine more carefully the rapids, so as to be able to proceed further in the ensuing spring. The care of the forts and the general administration of affairs, he entrusted to the Viscount de Beaupré.

6. Returning to Charlesbourg Royal, and perceiving that the Indians were preparing for hostilities, he put the forts in a state of defence, and ordered every one to be on the alert.

7. The molestations of the Indians and the prolonged delay of De Roberval, exerted such a dispiriting influence on the colonists, as to determine Cartier, upon the reopening of navigation, to embark with them all for France, 1542.

8. On reaching Newfoundland, Cartier met De Roberval, who was bringing on board of three large ships, 200 colonists of both sexes, among whom were a few noblemen. He told De Roberval that he could no longer oppose the incursions of the Indians. The Lieutenant-General remonstrated ; but Cartier was not to be prevailed upon changing his determination of returning to France ; and, in order to prevent any open rupture, he secretly weighed anchor the following night.

9. De Roberval reached Charlesbourg Royal in the month of July. He at once commenced the buildings necessary to lodge and defend the colonists. He erected a fort enclosing a tower, a well, a bakery, two houses, and mills. On the 14th of September, he sent two ships to France, to inform the King of the issue of the voyage, and to bring back provisions and articles of furniture.

10. The little colony was soon subjected to a very severe trial. Either for want of proper food or through the rigor of the season, the scurvy broke out with such violence, that fifty persons were carried off. It must be admitted, that these colonists were but little qualified to form a model society worthy the French name, as many of them had tenanted the prisons of France. De Roberval, therefore, was but little sanguine of a brilliant future.

---

5. What did Cartier do after the departure of the ships ?—6. What precautionary measures did he take on his return to Charlesbourg Royal ?—7. What determination did he take on the reopening of navigation ?—8. By whom was he met at Newfoundland ?—9. When did De Roberval arrive at Charlesbourg Royal ?—10. To what severe trial was the new colony subjected

11. In the beginning of June, 1543, De Roberval started with eight small boats and seventy men to visit the Saguenay, leaving behind thirty men under the command of De Royeze to defend the fort.

12. Francis I., being unable to send to De Roberval the required supplies, ordered Cartier to undertake a fourth voyage to Canada for the purpose of bringing him and the shattered remains of his colony home. The King, moreover, then at war against Charles V., judged that De Roberval would be of some service to him. For the honor of France and of Canada, this attempt at colonization by means of such wretches, completely failed. After De Roberval's departure, Canada was for many years visited only by vessels engaged in the fisheries and the fur trade.

13. The discoveries of Jacques Cartier, as well as his personal accomplishments, entitle him to be ranked among the most distinguished men of his age. The learned Abbé Faillon says, that in throwing open to Apostolic men the great highway to lands hitherto unknown, he deserves to be classed with those who have most contributed to the diffusion of the Catholic Religion. The zeal displayed by Francis I. for the conversion of the Indians, well merited to be seconded by a man as intrepid, persevering, prudent, and, above all, as religious as was Jacques Cartier. If he was the first pioneer to explore those distant lands, if he so resolutely braved the fury of the waves, if he faced the cruelty and perfidy of so many savage tribes with whom he spent two winters; if he endured so many discomforts, hardships and privations, it was because he found in his lively and ardent faith, the magnanimity, the firmness of purpose, and the holy audacity that make the Christian hero.

14. When the French discovered Canada, they found it every where covered with dense forests. The climate was very severe in winter; the air was salubrious, but the transition of temperature sometimes very sudden. The forests abounded with game, and the lakes and rivers afforded a plentiful supply of fish of all kinds.

15. **The Aborigenes of Canada.**—The tribes that inhabited this vast extent of country, differed but little from one another in the principal traits of character, manners, and customs. They belonged to one of the three principal races: the Esquimaux, the Algonquins, and the Abenakis. The first, a weak tribe resembling in some respects the Laplanders, occu-

11. What did De Roberval do in the beginning of June, 1543?—12. What commission did Cartier receive shortly after his return to France?—13. What does Abbé Faillon say of Cartier?—14. Describe Canada as it was when discovered by the French?—15. What tribes inhabited the country?

pied Labrador, Newfoundland, and the Hudson Bay Territory. The second, more numerous than the other two, may be subdivided as follows: 1. The Micmacs or Souriquois, in Acadia. 2. The Abenakis, the Cannibas, and the Malecites, in New Brunswick, and the present state of Maine. 3. The Betsiamites, on the north bank of the St. Lawrence, a little to the east of the mouth of the Saguenay. 4. The Montagnais, in the valleys of the Saguenay and Lake St. John. 5. The Algonquins, properly so called, who occupied the tract of country from the east of Stadacona (Quebec), to the west of Hochelaga (Montreal). 6. The Attikamegues and Ball-Heads, on the banks of the St. Maurice. 7. The Ottawas, near the river of that name. 8. The Nipissings, around the lake of that name. 9. The Mistassins, who lived in the neighborhood of the large Lake Mistassini.

The Hurons, who inhabited the peninsula situated between Lake Simcoe and Nataouasagué Bay in Lake Huron, were divided into three distinct branches, viz: those of the Bear, those of the Rock, and those of the Tortoise.

South of the St. Lawrence and Lakes Ontario and Erie, lived the Iroquois or Huron-Iroquois, so called on account of their supposed descent from the Hurons. They were divided into five tribes, which together formed a powerful confederation. Their names were: the Agnier, the Onnontagué, the Goyogouin, the Onneyouth, and the Tsonnonthouan.

CHAPTER III.

From the Marquis de la Roche, 1578, to the Foundation of Quebec, 1608.

1. The Marquis de la Roche.—4. Chauvin.—5. De Chates.—6..9. Pontgravé and Champlain.—10. De Monts.—11. First settlements in Acadia—12..15. Revocation of De Monts' Commission.

1. **De la Roche.**—The second Lieutenant-General and Viceroy of Canada was the Marquis de la Roche, a lord of Brittany, who received his title from Henry III., in 1578, and which Henry IV. confirmed, in 1598. This nobleman, a most fervent Catholic, "fired, says Champlain, with a noble zeal to raise the standard of Christ in those remote regions," wished before equipping a fleet, to get himself thoroughly acquainted with the geography and customs of the country. This he did in the spring of 1598. He left France with a single ship, which, be-

1. Who was the second Lieutenant-General and Viceroy of Canada?

sides the crew, carried fifty individuals who, for some misdemeanor or other, were amenable to the rigors of the law, but whose sentence had been commuted in favor of their expatriation. He was obliged to accept these, as no other persons would join the expedition, owing to the unfavorable impression entertained of Canada by the French people throughout the Kingdom.

2. At Sable Island, De la Roche disembarked his fifty colonists, left them goods and provisions, and promised to come for them as soon as he should have found on the continent a place suitable for a settlement. With this intention, he sailed towards Acadia; but, on returning for them, he was assailed by such violent squalls, that, in less than twelve days, he was driven on the coasts of France. The agitated state of the Kingdom compelled him to remain at home, and even to abandon his plans for America.

3. After an interval of five years, the King, hearing of the forlorn condition of the poor wretches at Sable Island, ordered Chetodel, a French pilot bound for Newfoundland, to take them on board as he passed. The latter found only twelve survivors: these wore shaggy beards and long dishevelled hair; their only protection against the rigors of the climate being seal-skins.

4. **Pierre Chauvin.**—The commission of De la Roche was given to Pierre Chauvin, captain of a vessel, who, at the same time, obtained the monopoly of the fur trade,—the conditions being that he would found a colony and establish the Catholic Religion. As Chauvin was both a merchant and a protestant, he gave himself but little concern about the last two clauses. He made two voyages to Canada, the first, in 1599, and the second, in 1600. He died in 1601, while making preparations for a third voyage.

5. **De Chates.**—The successor of Chauvin was De Chates, Governor of Dieppe, a man of eminence and merit. Though advanced in age, he was anxious to devote his declining years to the service of God and of his country. He formed a Company of noblemen and merchants, entrusting the ships to De Pontgravé, a navigator of St. Malo, who was commissioned by the King to continue the exploration of the St. Lawrence.

6. De Chates sent out, with Pontgravé, Samuel de Champlain, a nobleman of high attainments, born at Brouage in Saintonge.

---

2. What did De la Roche do at Sable Island?—3. What commission did Chetodel receive from the King a few years later?—4. To whom was the Commission of De la Roche given?—5. By whom was Chauvin succeeded? What means did De Chates take to found a colony in Canada? To whom did he give the command of the vessels?—6. Whom did De Chates associate with Pontgravé?

Champlain had served two years and some months as a naval officer in the West Indies, and, afterwards, in the south of France, against the Spaniards.

7. The expedition left Honfleur on the 15th of March, 1603, and safely reached its destination. Leaving the fleet at Tadoussac, the intended centre of the fur trade, Pontgravé and Champlain sailed up the St. Lawrence in small boats as far as the St. Louis Rapids, which presented an impassable barrier to their further progress. They descended the river to Tadoussac, carefully studying the topography of the various districts, and collecting information about the more remote parts of the country. They were particularly pleased with the beautiful haven into which juts out the promontory then known by the name of Kebec.

8. In the account of this voyage, Champlain relates that, having put several questions to the Indians about their religion, he found that their notions of God were confused and ridiculous; he then availed himself of this opportunity to explain to them the principles of the Catholic Faith, without omitting the worship of the Saints, a point then controverted by the Huguenots.

9. On their return to Honfleur, in 1603, Pontgravé and Champlain heard of the decease of De Chates. The demise of that sagacious and influential man was a serious loss to Canada, and a grievous disappointment to Pontgravé and Champlain.

10. **De Monts.**—De Chates was succeeded by De Monts, a calvinist nobleman. Henry IV. conferred upon him, besides the title of Lieutenant-General, that of Vice-Admiral. He also allowed him and his followers the free exercise of their religion, on the usual conditions of establishing a colony, and planting the Catholic Faith.

11. De Monts preserved and even augmented the Company formed by his predecessor. He freighted four ships and sailed from Havre on the 7th of March, 1604, accompanied by Champlain and Poutrincourt, several noblemen, Catholic priests, Protestant ministers, and 120 soldiers and artisans. On the 6th of May, they came in sight of Lahave in Acadia. There they commenced a settlement on a small island at the mouth of the Etchemins, now the Ste. Croix River; but the scurvy, brought on by a want of fresh water, carried off 36 of their number; the rest, in the spring of 1605, proceeded to Port Royal, now the

7. What haven attracted the special notice of Pontgravé and Champlain?—8. What does Champlain remark about the religion of the Indians?—9. What news did Pontgravé and Champlain hear on their arrival at Honfleur?—10. Who succeeded De Chates?—11. By whom was De Monts accompanied out to Canada? Where was the new colony established?

Annapolis, N. S. This was the first permanent settlement made by the French in North America; and, after St. Augustine, in Florida, it is the oldest in this section of the New World.

12. In the autumn of 1605, De Monts left the command to Pontgravé and sailed for France, because his monopoly of the fur trade had been revoked on account of the repeated complaints of the Breton, Basque and Norman fishermen. He did not however abandon his colonizing projects; he entered into fresh negociations with Poutrincourt, who agreed to take charge of a new expedition in the spring of 1606.

13. Not seeing any relief forthcoming, the scanty colony of Port Royal believed themselves abandoned; they so urgently pressed De Pontgravé that he acquiesced to their demand, and decided upon returning to France, leaving behind two men only to defend the fort. Pontgravé had scarcely left the bay, when he was met by a small boat which brought him the glad tidings of Poutrincourt's arrival. Encouraged by this timely assistance, he returned to Port Royal.

14. His stay was not, however, of long duration; for, Poutrincourt, hearing of the many obstacles De Monts had to contend with, and seeing himself thus disappointed in his hope of succor, determined to abandon, until better times, the settlement of Port Royal, 1607. Champlain was of the number of the homeward bound passengers. The rude dwellings of the colonists were entrusted to the care of the Indians.

15. At the King's request, Poutrincourt again put to sea on the 25th of February, 1610, with a small number of honest artisans. After a long voyage, they arrived at Port Royal, and were most welcomed by the Indians. Though three years had nearly elapsed since Pontgravé's departure, he found every thing in a comparatively good state.

---

12. What did De Monts in the autumn of 1605?—13. What did the new colony despairing of relief?—14. What decision did Poutrincourt take when he heard of the difficulties De Monts had to contend against?—15. What time elapsed between the departure of the French from Port Royal and their return thereto?

SECOND PERIOD.

FROM THE FOUNDATION OF QUEBEC, 1608, TO THE ESTABLISMENT OF THE SUPREME COUNCIL, 1663.

CHAPTER I.

From the Foundation of Quebec, 1608, *to the Formation of the Montmorency Company,* 1621.

1. De Monts undertakes a settlement in Canada; Champlain is sent thither.—2..4. Quebec founded.—5..6. Champlain accompanies the Hurons and Algonquins in their expedition against the Iroquois.—7..8. Sails for France.—7..8. Returns to Canada.—11. The Jesuits in Acadia.—12. Champlain in France.—13. At Quebec.—14. At St. Louis Rapids.—15. Returns to France.—16..20. Prince of Condé, Viceroy.—21..23. Champlain sails for Canada; arrival of the Recollet Fathers.—24..25. Expedition against the Iroquois.—26..34. Champlain's voyages to France.—35. The Duke of Montmorency, Viceroy.—36. Champlain at Quebec.

1. In compliance with Champlain's advice, Henry IV. again granted De Monts the monopoly of the fur trade for one year, dating from the beginning of January, 1608. Wishing to make another attempt at colonization, he despatched from Honfleur, on the 13th of April, 1608, two vessels which safely arrived at Tadoussac on the 3rd of June. One of the ships was commanded by Pontgravé, and the other, by Champlain. The former stopped at Tadoussac to superintend the fur trade, whilst the latter sailed up to Quebec, which he reached on the 3rd of July.

2. After having carefully examined the vicinity with a view to De Monts' settlement, Champlain selected as best suited for that purpose, the projecting piece of land called by the Indians Kebec. Indeed, he could not have chosen a site better adapted to his design of founding a New France in the New World.—An extensive harbor in which several fleets can anchor with safety; banks capped with rocks or covered with forests; two picturesque

1. What concession did De Monts obtain from Henry IV. at the suggestion of Champlain? Who commanded the two ships sent out to Canada by De Monts?—2. What place did Champlain select for the new colony?

promontories (Levis and Cape Diamond), and the Falls of Montmorency, one of the most remarkable in the world, fully justify the choice, and give to Quebec an imposing and magnificent aspect.

3. Champlain immediately set his men to work. Some felled trees; others sawed planks, dug ditches, or otherwise made themselves useful. With characteristic prudence, Champlain began by constructing a palisading, in the centre of which he erected a magazine, and three other buildings two stories high; the whole was sourrounded by a ditch six feet deep by fifteen broad.

4. The colonists were not to be knitted to the soil without undergoing severe trials. They were decimated by epidemics, molested by the Indians, and at[illegible]d by their neighbors of New England. For a long time, they were on the verge of destruction; but, with the aid of Heaven, they repaired their losses, and became ultimately reconciled to their situation.

5. In the spring of 1609, Champlain, who was anxious of becoming thoroughly acquainted with the country, accompanied a band of Hurons and Algonquins, who were going to attack the Iroquois. The expedition consisted of 60 men, including Champlain and his two companions. The two parties met on the 29th of July, at about ten in the evening, on the waters of the lake to which Champlain gave his name. The Iroquois coasted the shore whilst the allied stood out in the middle of the lake. At daybreak, the allies landed, and took great care to conceal the three Frenchmen in their centre, as they intended to surprise the enemy. The Iroquois, 200 strong, were commanded by three of their chiefs. When the contending forces were drawn up in front of each other, the allies opened their ranks, and Champlain advanced a few steps, holding to his shoulders an arquebuse loaded with four bullets. Firing, he killed a chief and one of his companions, whilst a third Iroquois fell mortally wounded. The allies then shouted for joy, and made a general discharge of their arrows without much effect. One of the other two Frenchmen, from a place of concealment behind a tree, shot down a few more of the enemy, who, seeing that their bucklers were not proof against bullets, fled with precipitation. Besides the slain, the Iroquois lost 10 or 12 men who were taken prisoners, and reserved for a still more horrible death than that which awaited them on the battle-field.

---

3. What did Champlain to protect his little colony?—4. To what rude trials was this colony subjected?—5. What did Champlain in the spring of 1609, impelled by the desire of acquiring some knowledge about the country?

This attack of the French on one of the three great nations of Canada, was the beginning and the probable cause of the hostilities which the Iroquois relentlessly carried on against the settlers of Canada.

6. Whilst Champlain was busy in establishing a colony at Quebec, the commission of De Monts, who had remained at Paris, for a second time was revoked, in consequence of the complaints lodged against him by the Breton, Basque, and Norman fishermen.

7. When the news of this transaction reached Champlain, he and Pontgravé returned to France in order to ascertain to whom belonged the colony of Quebec, which had been founded at the expense of De Monts and his associates. The general command was in the meantime entrusted to Pierre Chauvin.

8. Champlain was very well received by Henry IV., who listened with pleasure to the recital of his expeditions, and the details relative to the state of affairs in New France. Champlain presented him a belt curiously wrought with porcupine quills.

9. Unwilling to abandon the new colony, De Monts' Company fitted out two ships and gave the command to Pontgravé and Champlain, who anchored at Tadoussac on the 26th of May, 1610. Pontgravé was charged with the superintendence of the fur trade, and Champlain, with the government and exploration of the country.

10. Champlain found his little colony at Quebec in good condition. He was here received, as at Tadoussac, by a deputation of Indians, who invited him to accompany them on another expedition against the Iroquois. He accepted, and set out on the 14th of June. At Three Rivers, he met the Montagnais with whom he arrived, on the 19th, at an island near the mouth of the Iroquois River (Richelieu).

The Algonquins and Montagnais took the lead, and attacked the outposts of the Iroquois before the arrival of the French. Being rather warmly received, they were on the point of retreating, when Champlain and his four followers appeared. The attack was resumed, and met with a vigorous resistance. Champlain was wounded by an arrow. As the powder now began to fail, the intrenchments were stormed. The timely arrival of Des Prairies and other Frenchmen who brought some ammunition,

---

6. While Champlain was engaged in establishing the colony at Quebec, what did De Monts at Paris do?—7. What did Champlain do on hearing of the revocation of De Monts' commission?—8. How was Champlain received by Henry IV.?—9. What did De Monts' Company do not wishing to abandon the colony of Quebec?—10. In what state did Champlain find his little colony?

completed the defeat of the Iroquois. They were almost all slain or taken prisoners.

11. On the 12th of June, 1611, the Jesuit Fathers Masse and Biart landed at Port Royal, and applied themselves at once to learn the dialects of the natives, so as to be able to preach them the Gospel.

12. When Champlain heard of the tragic death of Henry IV., which occurred in 1610, he started for France without delay, leaving Duparc in command.

13. In the spring of 1611, De Monts and his associates, wishing to make another effort to maintain their privilege, fitted out two more vessels, and entrusted them to Champlain and Pontgravé.

14. On his return to Quebec, Champlain conceived the design of constructing a fort near the St. Louis Rapids, in order to secure his discoveries and protect the traders. With this intention, he left Quebec on the 20th of May. The site selected, which he called *Place Royale*, was the very spot whereon, thirty years later, the first houses of Montreal were built.

15. Champlain then rejoined Pontgravé at Tadoussac, whence he sailed on the 11th of August for LaRochelle, which he reached on the 10th of September, 1611. Without loss of time, he sought the patronage of some influential nobleman, to defend the interests of the colony at court.

16. **Charles de Bourbon.**—As De Monts was now Governor of the little city of Pons, having lost the influence he enjoyed under the late King, Champlain had recourse to Charles de Bourbon, Count of Soissons, who, through zeal for religion, acquiesced to his demand. This Prince obtained from the Queen Regent, Mary of Medicis, letters which invested him with the authority necessary for the maintenance of the settlement at Quebec, and, in consequence, he empowered Champlain to act as his Lieutenant in the colony by a commission dated October 15th, 1612.

17. **Prince H. de Condé.**—Charles de Bourbon, dying a few weeks after his official nomination, his nephew, Prince Henry de Condé, willingly accepted his place. He was named Viceroy of New France, and the first act of his administration was to continue Champlain in his lieutenancy. The latter, failing to form a new association, and being unwilling to lose the produce

11. In what year did the Jesuits arrive in Acadia?—12. What did Champlain do on hearing of the tragic death of Henry IV.?—13. What did De Monts and his associates do in the spring of 1611?—14. What project did Champlain conceive on his return to Quebec?—15. Where did Champlain then go? What did he do when in France?—16. To whom had Champlain recourse?—17. Who succeeded Charles de Bourbon?

of the fur trade for that year, sailed for Canada with a simple passport from the Prince for four vessels, on condition that he would be furnished with the men necessary, either to assist him in his intended exploration, or to enable him to redeem the promise he had made to the Hurons and Algonquins, in 1611, of helping them against their enemies.

18. Champlain arrived at Quebec in 1613, after an absence of nearly two years. He found every one in the enjoyment of excellent health. After a short delay, he went up to the St. Louis Rapids, where he expected to meet the Western Indians.

19. Wishing to explore the districts of the West, Champlain sailed up the Ottawa River almost to its sources. Returning to the St. Louis Rapids, he perceived that nothing further could be done in Canada during winter. He therefore resolved to go back to France, where his presence might serve to promote the interests of the colony; and, on the 26th of August, he embarked at Tadoussac for St. Malo.

20. Champlain proceeded to Fontainebleau, to meet the King and the Prince of Condé. He gave them an account of his voyage, and succeeded to make them accept his project of forming a rich and powerful Company, whose resources might enable him to continue the enterprises already commenced. After surmounting many difficulties, the Rouen Company was at last organized and constituted for eleven years, and received the approbation of Condé, as well as the sanction of the King.

21. Champlain now endeavored to realize a plan which he had long cherished, viz: to bring out missionaries to revive the faith of the colonists, and preach the Gospel to the Indians.

22. He left Honfleur for New France on the 25th of April, 1615, bringing out with him four Recollet Fathers. On the 25th of May, he reached Tadoussac, and, shortly after, landed at Quebec. The names of the Recollets were: Fathers Dennis Jamay, John Dolbeau, Joseph Le Caron, and Brother Pacific Du Plessis. They were to be furnished by the Company with all the necessaries for their mission.

23. Father Dolbeau stopped at Quebec. He and Champlain took measures for the erection of a chapel and a house for the Fathers. The site chosen was very near that of the present Church of Notre Dame des Victoires, in the Lower Town of Quebec. Father Dolbeau said the first Mass in the chapel, on

18. When did Champlain arrive at Quebec?—19. What did he do wishing to explore the West?—What did he do on his return to the St. Louis Rapids?—20. What did Champlain do in France?—21. What plan did he now endeavor to realize?—22. When did he re-embark for New France?—23. Which of the Fathers remained at Quebec, and where did the others go?

the 26th of June 1615—it being also the first said in that locality since the voyages of Cartier. Impatient to exercise their zeal, Fathers Jamay and Le Caron started for the St. Louis Rapids.

24. Shortly after his arrival at Quebec, in 1615, Champlain went up to the St. Louis Rapids, where he met the Hurons who induced him to join in another expedition against the Iroquois. Having been dangerously wounded, he was compelled to spend the winter with the Hurons. He turned this misfortune to account by applying himself to learn their language and customs. He also discovered the Lakes Ontario, Huron, and Nipissing.

25. At the reopening of navigation, he returned to Quebec, where he arrived on the 11th of July, 1616, accompanied by Father Le Caron and a party of Indians. The colonists who had despaired of ever seeing him again, received him with the greatest transports of joy.

26. On the 20th of July, Champlain started for Tadoussac, whence he sailed with Pontgravé and the Fathers Jamay and Le Caron for Honfleur, where he arrived on the 10th of September, 1616. He found the colonial interests in a very sad and precarious state; for, the Prince of Condé had just been arrested and sent to the Bastille for having taken up arms against his Sovereign.

27. The two Recollets who had consented to accompany Champlain mainly to second and further his views, were chagrined at the unfavorable reception they met with, and, after a while, wrote to him, in Normandy, about the fruitlessness of their endeavors. Father Jamay remained in France in the hope of finding some occasion, either at court or elsewhere, to promote the welfare of the colony. He was replaced in Canada by Father Le Caron who brought out with him another missionary of his Order, Father Huet.

28. In the spring of 1617, while the associates were yet at variance, Champlain set out again for Canada, bringing out with him a very precious acquisition for the colony, in the person of Louis Hébert with his family, who intended to devote himself to the pursuits of agriculture. The voyage was very perilous; the Port being reached only when the provisions were beginning to fail; and the future looked very dark and gloomy, as famine was then desolating Quebec.

---

24. What did Champlain shortly after his arrival at Quebec? What was the issue of that expedition? 25. What did Champlain at the opening of navigation?—26. Did he remain long at Quebec?—27. What did the two Recollet Fathers who accompanied him to France?—28. When did Champlain start for Canada?

29. Every year, says Abbé Ferland, the same difficulties beset the steps of the founder of Quebec. In France, embarrassments, narrow-mindedness, and delays on the part of the Company; jealousies, law-suits, and encroachments on the part of some merchants; the indifference of the Court which neither would nor could protect its distant possessions: on sea, long, tedious and sometimes dangerous voyages: in Canada, famine and sickness among the colonists, and the treachery and fickleness of the natives,—such were some of the ever growing difficulties Champlain had to contend against in the execution of his noble mission. Nevertheless, his faith in the ultimate success of his undertaking was so firm, his desire of establishing in the wilds of America a new French empire, and of bringing all the nomade tribes under the influence of Christian civilization, was so ardent and persevering, that nothing could either cool his devotedness or weaken his trust in divine Providence.

30. In the fall of 1617, he returned to France with Father Dolbeau, to dissipate certain prejudices imbibed by some of the principal members of the Company, and also to make them sensible of the true nature of their interests.

31. During the winter of this year, the little colony was again on the brink of destruction. The allied Indians, pretending to have been wronged by some Frenchmen, swore to exterminate them all. They began by discharging their fury on two of the latter whom they killed with their tomahawks. The murder having been discovered, through fear of a dreadful retaliation, they fled to Three Rivers, and there, numbering 800, they held a great Council in which it was resolved to surprise the colonists and cut their throats. But, one of them called Laforière, through sympathy for the Recollets, advised Du Plessis of the plot, the latter hastened to despatch the alarming intelligence to the French, then intrenched within their wooden fort at Quebec. Seeing themselves thus prematurely discovered, the Indians thought it better to adopt a conciliatory policy. They sent deputies to Quebec, to state that the murder was an isolated deed perpetrated without their knowledge. This excuse was accepted, as the weak state of the French did not permit them to avenge their fallen brethren; however, hostages were required and obtained.

32. In the meantime, Champlain and his friends used all their influence to induce the Company to send ampler provisions to

29. What does Abbé Ferland say about Champlain's trials?—30. What did Champlain in the spring of the same year?—31. By what was the colony menaced in the winter?—32. What was Champlain doing in France?

the colony. For many years, he had crossed and recrossed the Ocean for succors, which always fell short of his demands.

33. Finding in Champlain a plain-spoken censor, the Company determined to deprive him of his command; for, frank, honest, and loyal, he rarely failed to brand the niggardliness of their proceedings; it is not therefore astonishing, that they sought some one more pliant and tractable.

34. In the spring of 1620, the Recollets laid the foundation of their convent of Notre Dame des Anges.

35. **De Montmorency.**—In the same year, the Prince of Condé relinquished his Viceroyalty in favor of the Duke de Montmorency, who appointed Champlain his Lieutenant-General in New France. The new Viceroy advised the latter to proceed without delay to Quebec, and put that place in a good state of defence.

36. Champlain arrived at Quebec in July, 1620. Believing that better days had come at last, he had brought with him his wife and several other persons. He repaired the houses of the colonists, and built the Fort and Castle of St. Louis;—a nice precaution, as the residing population would not have been able to repel any serious attack, since, in the winter of 1620-21, there were only 60 persons, including the Fathers, the women, and children.

CHAPTER II.

From the Formation of the Montmorency Company, 1621, *to the Restitution of Canada and Acadia to France,* 1632.

1..2. A new Company formed by Montmorency; discussions between the two Companies.—3..5. Their union.—6..8. A band of Iroquois attacks the house of the Recollets.—9. Champlain brings his family back to France.—10. The Duke of Ventadour, Viceroy.—11. The Jesuits in Canada.—12..13. Champlain returns to Quebec.—14. The Company of One Hundred Associates.—15..16. Its privileges and obligations.—17. The English fit out an expedition against Quebec.—18..19. Kertk takes Tadoussac.—20..22. Capture of Quebec.

1. **Montmorency Company.**—Owing to repeated complaints against the Rouen Company, De Montmorency establish-

33. How did the Company treat Champlain?—34. What did the Recollets of Quebec do in the spring of 1620?—35. What did the Prince of Condé do in 1620?—36. When did Champlain return to Canada?—1. What did the Duke of Montmorency do in 1621, receiving new complaints against the Rouen Company?

ed another, in 1621, hoping that the new one would adhere more faithfully to the purpose for which it was organized. The appointed directors were Guillaume de Caen and his nephew, Emery de Caen.

2. The provisions of the charter granted to the Rouen Company, were: to keep in good repair the houses and the Fort of Quebec; to construct other forts when required; to provide necessaries for the missionaries; to send out to the colony cultivators, laborers, and artisans, and to maintain officers and soldiers in numbers sufficient to defend both the French and the allied Indians; but these conditions had been sadly neglected.

3. The rivalry between the two Companies was but of short duration; for, there soon emanated from the State Council a decision which composed their differences. This mutual good understanding was but of little benefit to the colony; and Champlain easily perceived that the difficulties of old would again beset his plans, both to attract new colonists, and to insure their safety.

4. Having grounds of complaint against both Companies, he resolved to lay them before the King. As his presence was necessary at Quebec, he chose for this important mission Father Le Baillif, a Recollet who had come out in 1620. This Father was well suited for this delicate negotiation, on account of his high birth, personal qualities, and influence with Louis XIII. Amongst other favors, he obtained of the State Council a decree which united the two Companies into one, and granted the monopoly of the trade to the Montmorency Company. In the spring of 1622, the discussions terminated, and friendly relations were re-established between the rival Companies.

5. In the autumn of 1621, Champlain sent two families back to France, because, though they had been upwards of two years in the country, yet they had done nothing for the cultivation of their lands. Whilst he thus dismissed those who, by their idleness or disorderly conduct, might be a burden to the colony, he took care to protect the interests of the others by nice regulations. For this purpose, he published a proclamation on the 12th of September, 1621, calculated to keep in due respect those who might be tempted to infringe good order.

6. During the winter of 1621-22, Champlain formed new alliances with some Indian tribes. When this news reached the Iroquois, they at once took the field. Some attacked the French

2. Name some of the principal obligations of the Rouen Company.—3. Did the disagreement of the two Companies last long?—4. What did Champlain do, having grounds of complaint against both Companies?—5. What measure did he take in the autumn of 1621?—6. What did he do in the winter of 1621-22? What did the Iroquois do on hearing this?

at the St. Louis Rapids, whilst others proceeded to Quebec, and attacked the establishment of the Recollets on the banks of the St. Charles where a small fort had been erected. These were repulsed with the loss of seven or eight men, by a handful of Frenchmen assisted by some of the allied Indians.

7. In 1623, Father Nicholas Viel, and Brother Gabriel Sagard, the earliest historian of the Huron missions, arrived at Quebec. They were both sent out to the Hurons, under the guidance of Father Le Caron.

8. The year 1624 is rendered memorable in the history of Canada by a religious ceremony, which took place in fulfilment of a vow made in honor of St. Joseph, who, on this occasion, was chosen the first Patron of the country.

9. As the Company became ever more neglectful of the interests of the colony—leaving it badly provisioned and but little protected against the incursions of its enemies—Champlain determined to bring his wife back to France. He left Quebec on the 15th of August, 1624, after urgently recommending to proceed with the construction of Fort St. Louis and the buildings necessary for the proper housing of the inhabitants. He left the command to Emery de Caen, the chief clerk of the colony.

10. **De Ventadour.**—Wearied with the continued dissensions of the two branches of the Company, the Duke of Montmorency gave up his Viceroyalty to Henry de Levis, Duke of Ventadour, his nephew, who had withdrawn from Court, and had received holy Orders. He undertook the administration of New France solely with the view to promoting the conversion of the Indians. He accordingly welcomed the project of sending Jesuits to help the Recollets, who had been the first to offer the proposal.

11. The first Jesuits who came to Canada were Fathers Charles Lalemant, John de Brebeuf, Edmond Masse, and two lay brothers. These pioneers, accompanied by the Recollet Father, Joseph de la Roche-Daillon, arrived at Quebec in 1625. They soon perceived however that some ill-minded persons had excited strong prejudices against them. De Caen strove to induce them to go back to France, but, to prevent this, the Recollets generously offered them hospitality until they should have erected buildings for themselves.

12. When Champlain, who was detained in France by family

7. What new missionaries arrived at Quebec in 1623?—8. By what event was the year 1624 rendered memorable?—9. What determination did Champlain take, as the Company neglected the colony? Who commanded in his absence?—10. What did De Montmorency do, wearied with the dissensions between the two Companies?—11. Who where the first Jesuits that came to Canada?—12. What did Champlain do, when he heard of the arbitrary conduct of De Caen?

and colonial affairs, heard that De Caen carried his vexatious policy towards the Catholics, so far as to compel them to assist at the Huguenot service, he complained to the King. De Caen was in consequence recalled, and De la Ralde, appointed in his place.

13. When Champlain returned to Quebec, in 1626, he found the works of the colony in the same condition as he had left them two years before. He gave immediate orders for the completion of the magazine; and, as the fort was too small to receive the inhabitants in case of an attack, he determined notwithstanding the opposition of the Company, to demolish it, and to construct in its place a more spacious one.

14. Louis XIII. and his minister, Cardinal de Richelieu, having been apprised of the negligence of the Company to fulfil its engagements, resolved to supersede it by another that would lay the foundation of a French Catholic Colony, agreeably to the intentions of Francis I. This plan was carried out on the 29th of April 1627, when the new Company of the One Hundred Associates was formed. Its principal members were: Cardinal de Richelieu, Marshal d'Effiat, De Roquemont, De Champlain, and Commander Rasilly.

15. Among other articles, it was stipulated that the Company should annually send out from 200 to 300 men to New France, so that at the end of fifteen years the colony might number 4000 French Catholics. They further engaged themselves to house and maintain the colonists during three years, to give them cleared lands and supply them with various seeds for the first crop, and finally, to provide for the missionaries during fifteen years.

16. The King gave the Company the grant of Canada and Florida together with their dependencies, reserving to himself sovereign homage with the presentation, at each succession of king, of a gold crown weighing eight marcs, and the nomination of the higher functionaries of the Supreme Court. He authorised them to manufacture fire-arms, to fortify the most important places, and to distribute the lands as they thought best. He also granted them the monopoly, not only of the fur trade, but also of every kind of commerce by land or sea, with the exception of the cod and whale fisheries, which were to be free to all Frenchmen.

17. Soon after the formation of this Company, which promised

13. In what condition did Champlain find the colony on his return to Quebec? What did he do then?—14. What did Louis XIII and Cardinal de Richelieu resolve? When was the Company of the One Hundred Associates formed?—15. To what was the new Company bound?—16. What did the King grant the Company?—17. What happened soon after the formation of this Company? What was the result of this war?

so fairly for the future of the colony, war broke out between France and England. An English fleet of eighteen sail was at once sent out to Canada under the command of David Kertk, a French Calvinist. It is quite certain that David Kertk and his two brothers, Louis and Thomas, as well as the other leaders of the expedition, were French malcontents, who sold themselves into the English service in order to fight against their own country.

18. Kertk captured Port Royal and Tadoussac, after which he sent a messenger to Quebec, July 10th, 1628, demanding the surrender of the place. Champlain's reply was toned with dignity and firmness. "As we have yet," said he, "some provisions of grain, Indian corn, pease and beans, without enumerating the produce of the country, with which our soldiers are as well satisfied as if they had the best flour of the world; and, knowing well that to give up the fort in our present condition, would render us unworthy of ever appearing in the presence of our King,.... I feel persuaded that you will more highly prize our courage in resolutely awaiting the approach of your forces, than if we cowardly abandoned a place which is so dear to us, without first seeing the effect of your guns, approaches.... We shall await your arrival from hour to hour, to foil, if we can, your pretensions to this place." The effect of this noble refusal was, to induce the enemy to abandon for the present their scheme of dislodging the French. Had they, however, at that moment attacked Quebec, it must have fallen an easy prey to them, as there was a scarcity of provisions, and no more than 50 lbs. of powder left to defend the fort.

19. Kertk now went out in search of the little fleet which the Company had laden with supplies for Quebec. De Roquemont offered a vigorous resistance during six hours, but was finally obliged to strike his colors. This loss was productive of very disastrous effects in the colony.

20. In 1629, an English squadron under the Kertk brothers, anchored before Quebec. Champlain having received no succor from France was compelled to surrender. When he first heard of the approach of the enemy, he summoned together the principal colonists, to deliberate as to what should be done. The council agreed that, as they were unable to defend themselves with any prospect of success, they should capitulate at once, hoping thereby to obtain more favorable terms. In this they were not disappointed. The inhabitants were permitted to leave

18. What was the first place captured by Kertk? What did he afterwards do?—19. What was the result of this refusal?—20. What happened in 1629?

with their clothes, their arms, and the furs belonging to them. The soldiers also were allowed to take their clothes and a beaver wrapper, and the Fathers, their cassocks and books. All were to take passage for England, and thence for France.

21. On the 20th of July, the day following the capitulation, Louis Kertk took possession of the place. He treated Champlain with much consideration, and offered protection and full liberty to a few French families in case they should consent to remain in the country. Louis Kertk, who was a Frenchman by birth, was of a kind and affable disposition. Champlain and the Jesuits sailed with Thomas Kertk for Tadoussac, where they preferred to await the departure of the fleet for Europe. David Kertk received Champlain with marked distinction.

22. On his arrival in England, Oct. 20th, 1629, Champlain heard that peace had been concluded with England two months previous to the fall of Quebec. He proceeded to the French ambassador, to whom he presented a memorial of what had taken place, together with the original of the capitulation of Quebec. But, two years had to elapse before the final settlement of the difficulty.

CHAPTER III.

From the restitution of Canada and Acadia to France, 1632, *to the formation of the Montreal Company*, 1640.

1..3. Canada restored to France.—4. Champlain appointed Governor.—4. Three Rivers.—5..7. College of the Jesuits.—8..9. Death of Champlain.—10..11. De Montmagny.—12..13. Sillery.—14..15. The Hotel-Dieu, the Ursulines.—16. The Iroquois attack the Hurons and Algonquins.

1. Shortly after Champlain's arrival at Paris, in 16 , the French Government despatched an envoy to England, to demand the restitution of Canada and Acadia. This led to a treaty between the two countries which was concluded on the 29th of March, 1632, at St. Germain-en-Laye, and by which the King of England restored to the French Crown all the places occupied by the English in New France.

2. The Company being reinstated in all their rights, thought of sending out Champlain to take possession of the country;

21. What was done on the 20th of July?—22. What did Champlain hear on arriving in England? Whither did he go? 1. What was done by the French government, shortly after Champlain's arrival at Paris? What was the result?—2. Whom did the Company sent to retake possession of Canada?

but, as they had neither funds nor vessels, they entrusted the Commission to Guillaume de Caen, a man equally remarkable for his wealth and moderation. Moreover, he had greatly suffered by the capture of Quebec, it was but just to afford him this opportunity to repair his losses. Accordingly, the King granted him the enjoyment of the revenue of the country for one year, after which Champlain was to resume his former office. De Caen was thus invested with the command not only of the fleet, but also of the colony.

3. Quebec was restored to the French after a lapse of nearly three years, on the 13th of July, 1632. The French inhabitants, who had remained, welcomed the day of their deliverance from a foreign yoke, and burst out into acclamations of joy when they saw the white flag once more floating over their rude settlement. From the time of Champlain's departure, they had been deprived of all spiritual succor, and had even been ill treated by those of their Protestant countrymen who had entered the English service.

4. **De Champlain.**—Fully appreciating the zeal and experience of Champlain, the Company again entrusted to him the government of New France, with ampler powers than before. He sailed from Dieppe on the 23rd of March, 1633, with upwards of 200 persons including the sailors. Among the passengers, were Fathers De Brebeuf and Masse. Champlain was heartily welcomed by the colonists, who all knew and admired his untiring zeal and noble character.

5. To prevent the western Indians from trafficking with the English, Champlain established a trading post at Richelieu. This was on an islet a little above the rapids of the same name, and midway between Montreal and Three Rivers, at which latter place, he sent La Violette to establish a second trading post, in 1634.

6. It was towards the end of the year 1635, that the Jesuits founded their college at Quebec. Father Charlevoix remarks, that in less than fifteen years after the restitution of Canada, there were fifteen Jesuits in the country. These missionaries every where distinguished themselves by their learning, piety, and zeal for the salvation of souls.

7. The founding of a collegiate institution at Quebec, induced several distinguished French families to emigrate to Canada,

3. When was Quebec restored to the French?—4. What did the Company do, appreciating the zeal of Champlain? When did he sail for Quebec?—5. What was done to prevent the western Indians from trafficking with the English? What did Champlain do the folllowing year?—6. What favor was granted the colony, in 1635?—7. What was the effect produced by the erection of a college?

where their children could receive a Christian education, and be instructed in all the branches necessary to their state. Even the Indians, spurred with a similar desire, came from distant regions to settle in the vicinity of Quebec.

8. But a deplorable event, now threw the colonists into mourning : the death of Champlain. This great man, who had braved so many dangers, and endured so many privations, yielded at last to the effects of paralysis, which, after two and a half years' suffering, led him to the grave. He died on Christmas day, 1635, after having received the last rites of the Church.

9. Champlain was regretted by all, for he had won universal respect and admiration. The most conspicuous traits of his character were : his activity, constancy in enterprise, firmness and courage in the midst of danger, disinterested devotedness to the interests of his country, a tender and compassionate heart, and a great stock of honor and charity. These qualities were enhanced by his truly Christian spirit, and ardent zeal for religion and the service of God.

10. **De Montmagny.**—The successor of Champlain was De Montmagny, a Knight of Malta, who united in his person a genuine piety with a rare zeal and firmness. He landed at Quebec on the 11th of June, 1636, and was most welcomed by the inhabitants, who proceeded to the Church where a *Te Deum* was sung in testimony of their joy and gratitude. De Chateaufort had been appointed to administer the affairs of the colony *ad interim*.

11. In the beginning of 1636, the Iroquois attacked the Hurons, but were defeated by the latter, being assisted by a few Frenchmen.

12. To protect the Indians who had embraced the Christian Religion, as well as those who were preparing to do so, from the insults of the Iroquois and the rigors of the winter, the little village of Sillery near Quebec was founded. The promoter of this national and religious undertaking was the illustrious Knight-Commander of Malta, Noël Brulart de Sillery, an ex-minister of State, who, having embraced the ecclesiastical life, devoted himself entirely to works of benevolence.

13. The dwellings of Sillery were at first tenanted by twelve large Christian families, and these were soon after imitated by many others. These Indians gradually adopted the manners and

8. What event produced mourning into the colony ?—9. What reputation did Champlain leave behind ?—10. Who was the successor of Champlain ? When did De Montmagny arrive at Quebec ?—11. What was done by the Iroquois in the beginning of 1636 ?—12. What was done to protect the Indians who had embraced the Christian Religion ?—13. By whom were the dwellings of Sillery at first tenanted ? What did these Indians gradually adopt ?

customs most in harmony with the mild spirit of Christianity. The proximity of Quebec exerted a favorable rather than a prejudicial influence over them; for, the inhabitants of this newly founded town, leading in general a regular life, could but inspire the neophytes of Sillery with respect and esteem for their religion.

14. About this time, the Jesuits turned their attention towards founding in Quebec a hospital to nurse the sick, and a school for the education of the girls. In these undertakings, they were greatly assisted by Madame d'Aiguillon who founded the Hotel-Dieu, and Madame de la Peltrie, who devoted herself and her resources to the establishment of the Ursulines.

15. Six religious ladies came from France to take the direction of these two institutions: three Augustinian Nuns, also called Hospitallers, for the Hotel-Dieu; and three Ursulines, who were accompanied by Madame de la Peltrie, for the school. They embarked at Dieppe, on the 4th of May, 1639, and landed at Quebec on the 1st of August. They were received in the midst of extraordinary demonstrations of joy; the governor was at the head of the troops, and salvos of artillery were fired. They were conducted to the Church, where a *Te Deum* was sung in thanksgiving for their safe arrival.

16. In 1640, the Iroquois suddenly assailed a distant tribe of Indians, and massacred a large number of them. They were so exasperated against the Hurons and Algonquins, that they made proposals of peace to the French on the sole condition that the allies should be excluded. Whilst a council was being held at Three Rivers for this purpose, the Iroquois suddenly interrupted it, to go and plunder several Huron and Algonquin canoes which had just arrived laden with furs. Such an act showed what little trust could be placed in their words; and, accordingly, negociations were at once broken off. The colony was on the eve of its destruction; nothing but prompt and powerful aid could save it. Yet in this emergency, the Company refused, and the King was unable to send the required succor. Providence, ever watchful over the interests of the colony, intervened and averted the impending danger.

---

14. To what did the Jesuits turn their attention about this time? By whom were they greatly assisted in their project?—15. To whom was confided the direction of these two institutions? When and how were they received at Quebec?—16. What was done by the Iroquois in 1640?

CHAPTER IV.

From the Formation of the Montreal Company, 1640, *to the Administration of De Lauzon,* 1650.

1. The Montreal Company.—2. De Maisonneuve.—3. Ville-Marie, or Montreal.—4. Fort Richelieu.—5. Fathers Jogues and Bressani taken by the Iroquois.—6. Peace of Three Rivers.—7. Treaty between the Company of the One Hundred Associates and the colonists.—8. Father Jogues put to death by the Iroquois; death of Fathers Masse and De Nouë.—9. The Iroquois resume hostilities.—10. D'Ailleboust.—Qualities of De Montmagny.—11. Colonial Council.—12. Destruction of the village of St. Joseph; martyrdom of Father Daniel.—13. Destruction of St. Ignatius and St. Louis; martyrdom of Father De Brebeuf and Lalemant.—14. Dispersion of the Hurons.—15..16. The village of St. John burned; death of Fathers Granier and Chabanel

1. **The Montreal Company.**—In 1640, several persons, both lay and ecclesiastical, formed themselves into an association under the name of the Montreal Company, for the maintenance and propagation of the Catholic Faith in Canada. The first project of the Society was to found in the Island of Montreal a strongly fortified French village, in which the indigent should be received and enabled to subsist by their own labor. But to insure the success of this enterprise, a man of ability was required; and the Company found such a man in the person of De Maisonneuve, a nobleman of Champagne, and one of the associates.

2. De Maisonneuve arrived at Quebec in September, 1641, with several French families. As the season was rather advanced, he delayed the execution of his project until the following spring. He had been appointed Governor of the future colony by the Montreal Company, in virtue of the power conferred upon them by the King.

3. In the spring of 1642, De Maisonneuve sailed for the Island of Montreal, which he reached on the 17th of May. The little colony landed at the place since called Pointe-Callieres, in presence of De Montmagny and the Rector of the Jesuits, who celebrated Mass on the spot. The whole Island was then placed under the protection of the Most Blessed Virgin. New colonists

1. What association was formed in 1640?—2. To whom was the government of the new colony entrusted?—3. What did De Maisonneuve do in the spring of 1642? What name was given to the new town?

arrived shortly after, and others again in the following year. The village was surrounded with a palisade, and called Ville-Marie.

4. To prevent the inroads of the Iroquois, the Governor-General ordered Fort Richelieu to be erected at the mouth of the Sorel River. This work was rapidly carried on notwithstanding the molestations of the Iroquois, who, on one occasion, banded together to the number of 700 and attacked the workmen, but were driven back with heavy loss.

The Iroquois were encouraged in their predatory excursions by the Dutch, settled at Manhattan (New York), who were supplying them with arms and ammunition, and buying from them the furs which they had taken away from the allies of the French.

5. It was not long before the Iroquois received intelligence of the settlement at Ville Marie. Instigated by some perfidious Hurons, they set out to attack it. In the affray which ensued, three Frenchmen were killed and three others taken prisoners; but De Maisonneuve slew with his own hand the enemy's chief.

About this time, these savages burned down several Huron villages and butchered the inhabitants. Fathers Jogues and Bressani fell into their hands and were most cruelly treated.

6. Shortly after this sad event, De Champflour, Governor of Three Rivers, despatched a messenger to De Maisonneuve, to inform him that the Hurons had just brought in three Iroquois prisoners. Profiting of the circumstance, De Maisonneuve proceeded to Three Rivers, and there invited the Hurons, Iroquois and Algonquins to a general assembly for the purpose of putting an end to hostilities. His proposals were accepted and peace concluded. In the ensuing winter, the Iroquois, the Hurons, and Algonquins hunted together as though they all belonged to the same tribe. The missionaries profited of this moment of tranquillity to labor with new ardor for the conversion of the Indians; but unfortunately, peace was not destined to be of long duration.

7. The differences that had arisen between the Company of the One Hundred Associates and the colonists, were finally settled by a treaty, which received the royal sanction in 1645. The Company agreed to abandon their claims to the monopoly of the

4. What measures did the Governor take to prevent the incursions of the Iroquois? By whom were the Iroquois aided in their agressive expeditions?—5. What did the Iroquois when informed of the establishment of Ville-Marie? What happened to Fathers Jogues and Bressani? How were the Huron villages treated by the Iroquois?—6. Who was De Champflour and what news did he send De Montmagny? What was the result of the assembly?—7. How were the difficulties between the Company of the One Hundred Associates and the colonists settled?

for trade or condition: 1. That the colonists would provide for the clergy and public officers including the Governor, and defray all the expenses of the administration. 2. That they would fulfil all the obligations contracted by the association towards the members of religious congregations, and would bring out at least twenty persons every year from France. 3. That they would annually pay 1000 pounds weight of assorted beaver skins.

8. On the 17th of October, 1646, as Father Jogues entered a Huron wigwam, an Iroquois, who had concealed himself within, dealt him a blow on the head, which felled him to the ground. A young Frenchman, named Lalande, who accompanied the Jesuit missionary, shared the same fate. This loss was all the more deeply felt, as the colony had lost in the preceding year Fathers Masse and De Nouë. The former died at Sillery; the latter was found frozen on the St. Lawrence, a few miles from Fort Richelieu.

9. In 1647, the Iroquois again took the field. They burned down Fort Richelieu, which the French had abandoned the preceding year, and hastened to surprise the Algonquins who, relying on the treaty of peace, had left Three Rivers and gone a hunting.

10. **D'Ailleboust.**—In the month of August, 1648, Louis D'Ailleboust, the commander at Three Rivers, succeeded De Montmagny. The new Governor was a most upright man, equally distinguished for his zeal in promoting the spiritual and temporal interests of the colony. He had held the command in the Island of Montreal, while De Maisonneuve was absent in France. De Montmagny was gifted with an energy that never failed in the midst of the difficulties that thickened round his path. "He was deeply regretted by the colony," says Father Lalemant, "and he left behind him an enduring reputation for wisdom and prudence."

11. D'Ailleboust brought with him a royal edict of the 5th of March, 1648, which provided: 1. That in future, the Governor-General's term of office should be extended to three years only. 2. That a Council should be formed, consisting of the Governor of the colony, the Rector of the Jesuits (until a Bishop should be appointed), the last Governor, and two colonists elected for three years by the members of the Council and by the syndics of Quebec, Montreal, and Three Rivers.

8. Relate the circumstances attending the death of Father Jogues.—9. What did the Iroquois do in 1647?—10. Who succeeded De Montmagny?—11. What did D'Ailleboust bring with him? State the principal articles of the royal edict.

12. On the 4th of July, 1648, the Iroquois suddenly fell upon the Huron village of St. Joseph, consisting of 400 families, and either butchered or carried off 700 of the inhabitants. During the massacre of his dear neophytes, Father Daniel baptized a great number of catechumens by aspersion; and hardly had he finished the touching ceremony, when he himself was slain and his body cast into the flames.

13. On the 16th of March, 1649, these blood-thirsty Indians, numbering nearly one thousand, armed for the most part with arquebuses supplied by the Dutch, made a descent upon the flourishing little village of St. Ignatius; and, without losing more than ten men, either killed or took prisoners all the Huron inhabitants, after which, they attacked and burned the village of St. Louis. While 500 Hurons sought to save themselves by flight, Fathers De Brebeuf and Lalemant bravely remained behind to baptize or absolve those who remained in the village. They were both taken by the enemy and most horribly tortured to death.

The hatred these barbarians manifested towards the missionaries, was ultimately directed against their religion. Hearing these two Fathers pronounce the holy Name of Jesus in the midst of their tortures, they wished to prevent them from thus invoking Him for whom they were suffering, and for this fell purpose, they several times put red-hot coals into the mouths of these heroic martyrs. Father De Brebeuf expired on the 16th of March, 1649, and Father Lalemant, on the following day.

14. On hearing of these repeated disasters, the Hurons of fifteen villages resolved to set fire to their wigwams, and to seek the protection of other tribes, or to betake themselves to the forests.

The Jesuits in charge of this mission abandoned their residence of St. Mary, to follow three hundred Huron families who took refuge into the Island of St. Joseph.

15. On the 7th December, 1649, all the inhabitants of St. John's village, consisting almost entirely of fugitive Hurons, were either massacred or taken prisoners. Father Garnier was slain in the midst of his neophytes while exercising his holy ministry. Father Chabanel died about this time, killed, it is said, by an apostate Huron.

---

12. What did the Iroquois on the 4th of July 1648? What did Father Daniel do in this trying circumstance?—13. What was the fate of the village of St. Ignatius? What was the fate of Fathers De Brebeuf and Lallemant?—14. What determination did the Hurons of fifteen villages take on hearing of these repeated disasters? What did the Jesuits of this mission decide upon, May 15th, 1649?—15. What was the fate of the village of St. John?

16. The extermination of the Hurons, the faithful allies of the French, sent a shrill of horror throughout the colony, and inspired much anxiety for the future.

CHAPTER V.

From the Administration of De Lauzon, 1650, to the Formation of the Supreme Council, 1663.

1..2. De Lauzon, Governor.—3. The Iroquois attack Montreal and Three Rivers.—4. Death of Father Buteux.—5. The Iroquois sue for peace.—6..7. The garrison of Montreal reinforced.—8. De Lauzon returns to France.—9. Viscount d'Argenson, the new Governor.—10. The Sulpicians at Montreal.—11..12. Vigorous measures of d'Argenson.—13. Arrival of Bishop de Laval.—14. The Seminary of Montreal founded.—15..16. Heroism of Dollard and his companions. 17. Massacres perpetrated by the Iroquois.—18..19. D'Avaugour.—20. Differences between the Bishop and the Governor.—21. Bishop de Laval lays his complaints before the King.—22..23. Great earthquake

1. **De Lauzon.**—At the end of the year 1650—so disastrous by the dispersion of the Hurons—D'Ailleboust was succeeded by De Lauzon, who, accompanied by two of his sons, arrived at Quebec on the 14th of October, 1651. He found the colony in a weak state of defence, and cruelly harassed by its enemies, so emboldened as they were by their late success over the Hurons.

2. On the 18th of June, 1651, a numerous band of Iroquois, having attacked a few Frenchmen at St. Charles near Montreal, De Maisonneuve at once despatched to their assistance a small force under the command of Charles Le Moine. In the engagement that ensued, twenty-five or thirty Iroquois were slain, whilst the loss of the colonists did not exceed five who were slightly wounded.

3. On the 26th of the following July, the restless Iroquois laid siege to the hospital of Ville-Marie. Major Lambert Closse, the commanding officer, with 16 men, bravely defended it from six in the morning till six in the evening against 200 of the enemy, who were finally compelled to abandon their undertaking.

---

16. What sensation was felt throughout the colony at the news of the destruction of the Hurons?

1. By whom was D'Ailleboust succeeded?—2. What did a numerous band of Iroquois do on the 18th of June, 1651?—3. What did they do on the 26th of the following July?

4. In the year 1652, the colony sustained a great loss by the death of Du Plessis Bochart, Governor of Three Rivers, who was killed, together with fifteen others of his party, in an engagement with a band of Iroquois marauders. This was the most disastrous encounter the French had as yet sustained against the Iroquois.

About this time, Father Buteux, who was going up the St. Maurice to the mission of the Attikamegues, was massacred with his guides by the Iroquois. He was the seventh of his Order who suffered for the Faith in Canada.

5. Towards the end of August, 1653, 500 Agniers surrounded Three Rivers and kept the place blockaded for some time. On the 6th of November, they made proposals for peace, which were accepted.

6. De Maisonneuve, who had sailed for France in order to demand some reinforcements, returned to Canada on the 27th of September, 1653, with 100 men, recruited for the most part from Anjou, Maine, Poitou, and Brittany. He wisely determined upon bringing out only strong and courageous young men, able to bear arms, and skilled in some trade, either necessary or useful to the colony, and above all, who were sincere Catholics. He further required satisfactory testimonials as to their character, not wishing to contaminate the others by vicious examples, and in this, it is said, he entirely succeeded.

7. Ville-Marie now assumed the aspect of a colony. The arrival of the new recruits was the beginning of a permanent settlement. Previously, it had been merely a military post, the fort being the usual residence of all its inhabitants.

8. In the summer of 1656, De Lauzon seeing that his advanced age unfitted him for the circumstances of the times, determined upon returning to France. He appointed his son, De Lauzon-Charny, to administer the affairs until the arrival of a successor. But shortly after, the latter himself started to rejoin his father, leaving the command *ad interim* to ex-Governor D'Ailleboust.

9. **D'Argenson.**—De Lauzon's successor was the Viscount d'Argenson, who was nominated on the 26th of January, 1657, but did not arrive at Quebec before the 11th of July, 1658. He was received with all the honors befitting his rank, by D'Ailleboust, who then retired to Montreal, where he died in 1660.

---

4. What loss did the colony sustain in 1652? What happened to Father Buteux in sailing up the St. Maurice?—5. What did the Agniers do towards the end of August, 1653? Did they continue their aggression?—6. When did De Maisonneuve return to Canada?—7. When did Ville-Marie assume the aspect of a colony?—8. What did De Lauzon do being now advanced in age?—Who was De Lauzon's successor?

10. About this time, four ecclesiastics were sent over to the mission of Ville-Marie by the Venerable Mr. Olier, founder of the Seminary of St. Sulpice, Paris. De Queylus, their leader, was invested by the Archbishop of Rouen with the powers of Vicar-General. After having installed his companions at Ville-Marie, he chose the capital of the colony for his residence.

Before the departure of De Queylus, the Montreal Company had ceded the whole Island of Montreal to the Seminary of St. Sulpice; but the grant was not formally made before 1663.

The colonists were delighted to see a learned and zealous body taking charge of clearing and settling an island which till then had failed, in point of prosperity, to answer the general expectation.

11. On the day following his arrival, D'Argenson heard that the Iroquois had massacred some Algonquins within reach of the guns of Quebec. Putting himself immediately at the head of twenty-five men, he pursued the assassins who, being fleeter of foot, escaped the vengeance due to their treacherous deed.

12. Shortly afterwards, the Iroquois appeared in the neighborhood of Three Rivers. Their intention was to surprise that place; but De la Potherie, the commanding officer, arrested the eight deputies they were bold enough to send under pretext of a parley. He kept one of them, and sent the other seven to the Governor-General, who treated them as they deserved. This vigorous measure procured the colony a little respite.

13. The colonists were roused from the gloom occasioned by their repeated disasters, by the arrival of the Right Rev. Francis de Laval-Montmorency, who had been consecrated Bishop of Petrea, on the 8th of December, 1658, and appointed Vicar-Apostolic of New France. He was accompanied by Father Jerome Lalemant who, after the dispersion of the Hurons, had gone to France in order to inform the Company of the One Hundred Associates of the wants of the country. He was also accompanied by several priests who were put in possession of the curacies held until then by the Jesuits, who were the only priests in the colony, with the exception of the Sulpicians of Montreal, —the Recollets not having yet returned, since the capture of Quebec by the Kertks.

14. The Seminary of St. Sulpice, at Montreal, was founded by De Queylus, . 1659. This great work met the encouragement

10. What precious acquisition did the colony now make?—11. What did D'Argenson hear on the day following his arrival? What decision did he take?—12. What did the Iroquois shortly after?—13. What consolation did the colonists receive in the midst of their disasters?—14. When did the Sulpicians found their Seminary at Montreal?

it deserved ; it was soon followed by the founding of an hospital by De la Dauversière and Madame de Bullion.

15. In the spring of 1660, the colony was again on the brink of destruction. Not receiving any succor from France, it seemed to be preserved only by a sort of miracle ; for, the settlers could not go any distance from the fort, without exposing themselves to be either carried off or massacred by the prowling enemy.

16. The danger, however, was partly averted by the heroism of seventeen Frenchmen of Montreal, who sacrificed themselves for the safety of their brethren. Before starting on their perilous expedition, these brave men, headed by Dollard, made their last will, received absolution and Holy Communion, and pledged themselves before the altar faithfully to stand by one another and never ask for quarter. By the first of May, they had reached Chaudière Falls on the Ottawa River. Here they found a small wooden fort in a rather ruinous condition, and here they determined to await the enemy. They had not long to wait, before 700 Iroquois made their appearance. The contest lasted ten days, during which the greater part of the enemy were either shot down or unfitted for further action. Exasperated at the stubborn opposition they met with, the Iroquois piled up their slain close to the palisades, and took the place by storm. The victors might well have been astonished at the prolonged resistance offered by these seventeen Frenchmen, shut up in a dilapidated fort without water, without provisions, and without a moment's respite ! Weakened by their severe losses, they judged it better to postpone their attack on Quebec.

17. In the following spring, the Iroquois reappeared at several places, and committed great depredations. A priest of the Seminary of Montreal was killed as he returned from saying Mass in the country. De Lauzon, son of the former Governor and Seneschal of New France, together with several other persons of distinction, shared the same fate. In a word, from Tadoussac to Montreal, the path of these barbarians was stained with blood.

About the same time, the colony was afflicted with a sort of distemper which spread indistinctly among the French and Indians, and particularly among children.

18. **D'Avaugour.**—D'Argenson was succeeded by Baron d'Avaugour, who arrived at Quebec on the 31st of August, 1661. The trifling succor that d'Argenson was receiving from the Company of the One Hundred Associates, his declining health as well as some private vexations, induced him to relinquish his office.

15. In what state was the colony in the spring of 1660 ?—16. By whom was the colony saved ?—17. What did the Iroquois do in the following spring ? By what scourge was the colony now visited ?—18. By whom was d'Argenson succeeded ?

19. The first step of the new Governor was to inspect all the posts of the colony, after which he decided upon asking the King for the troops and military stores that appeared to him necessary to defend the country against the inroads of its enemies. The following year, he received a reinforcement of 400 men and several officers. This timely succor revived the hopes of the colonists.

20. These hopes, however, were soon dimmed by the differences which arose between the Governor and the Bishop about the traffic of brandy with the Indians. It had always been rigorously forbidden to sell intoxicating liquors to the Indians, and the Baron D'Avaugour himself had renewed this prohibition adding severe penalties for offenders.

Bishop de Laval had fulminated a general excommunication against all who should trade in that article with the Indians. A woman of Quebec having committed herself in that respect, was lodged in prison. Through charity, Father Jerome Lalemant wished to intercede for her with the Governor. The latter, contrary to his own proclamations, answered, that if the traffic were not punishable in this case, it should not be so in any other for the future. Obstinate and inflexible, D'Avaugour refused to reconsider his indiscreet decision. It soon reached the public ear, and the shocking disorders that followed led the Bishop to renew the excommunication. The colony, which until then had promised so fairly, fell into a deplorable state of confusion and demoralization. The voice of the Bishop, the threats of preachers, and the injunctions of confessors were alike unheeded.

21. Seeing that all efforts to stem the torrent were unavailing, Bishop de Laval resolved to go and lay his complaints before the King. Accordingly, he set sail on the 12th of August, 1662, leaving many well-meaning people wavering between hope and fear.

22. Almost immediately after the departure of the Bishop, the colony was visited by one of the most terrific earthquakes on record. These convulsions of nature told more effectually on the consciences of the people, than the thunderbolts of the Church and the threats of preachers. The earthquake was accompanied by three circumstances well adapted to force the conviction on the most obdurate, that this scourge was designed by God for their conversion. These circumstances were : the length of time

19. What was the first care of D'Avaugour after his arrival? What decision did he take after that visit? Was his demand granted?—20. By what were these hopes soon dimmed?—21. What did Bishop de Laval do seeing that all his efforts to stem the torrent of evil were useless?—22. Describe the great earthquake of 1663.

it lasted; the distance to which it extended; and the visible protection of God on the French and Indians in the midst of these dire disasters.

The earthquake lasted from the 5th of February, 1663, till about the middle of March, and extended over a tract of country 600 miles in length by 300 in breath. No lives were lost, notwithstanding the unheard of violence of the shocks. The most unexpected conversions took place, and, for a while, the odious traffic of liquors completely ceased.

23. Bishop de Laval so successfully pleaded his cause before Louis XIV., that he obtained full powers for the proper regulation of the liquor trade. His influence was even such as to induce the King to recall the Governor.

THIRD PERIOD.

FROM THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE SUPREME COUNCIL, 1663, TO THE ENGLISH CONQUEST, 1760.

CHAPTER I.

From the Formation of the Supreme Council, 1663, *to the first Administration of De Frontenac,* 1760.

1. The Company of the One-Hundred Associates relinquish their grant to the King.—2. Supreme Council founded.—3. Court of Justice.—4. De Mesy, Governor.—6. Return of Bishop de Laval.—7. Death of De Mesy.—8. Arrival of De Tracy.—8. His reception.—9. Arrival of the Carignan regiment.—9. De Courcelles, Governor.—10. Works carried on by De Tracy.—11. Expedition against the Iroquois.—12. The West-India Company.—13. Tithes.—14. Impediments to the conversion of the Indians.—16. The Seminary of Quebec.—17. Firmness of De Courcelles.—18. Erection of the Bishopric of Quebec.—19. Arrival of four Recollet Fathers.—19. Changes effected in the government of Montreal.

1. The beginning of the year 1663, was rendered remarkable by the dissolution of the Company of the One Hundred Asso-

23. Did Bishop de Laval succeed in his mission?

1. What took place in the beginning of the year 1663?

ciates, who remitted to the King, on the 24th of February, their territorial grant, together with their privileges.

2. **Supreme Council.**—By an edict dated April, 1663, the King created a Supreme Council for the administration of justice, the superintendence of local trade, and the settlement of all matters pertaining to the maintenance of order. Thus, in passing from the Company to the King, the colony made a great step in the path of progress. New France became a province; and Quebec, a city, with royal courts of judicature.

The Council consisted of the Governor, the Bishop, the Intendant, who was the official President, the Attorney-General, the chief Clerk, and four Councillors nominated by the Governor, the Bishop, and the Intendant.

3. Three courts of justice were established respectively at Quebec, Montreal, and Three Rivers. Their decisions, which were to be given in accordance with the custom of Paris and the ordinances of the Kingdom, form a considerable part of the laws which, until the present day, have directed the civil courts of Canada.

4. **De Mesy.**—D'Avaugour was replaced by De Mesy, who arrived at Quebec about the middle of September, 1663, with Bishop de Laval and several officers of justice and of the army, as also a reinforcement of troops and about one hundred families.

5. It was in the year 1663, that the Montreal Company formally granted the Island of the same name to the Sulpicians, who had been there established upwards of six years.

6. Although De Mesy was indebted to Bishop de Laval for his office, he had no sooner assumed command, than he allowed himself to be duped by those who had imposed upon his predecessor. Becoming more and more at variance with the Bishop, he fell into faults which were all the more deplorable, as he wielded so extensive a power and authority.

7. De Mesy died at Quebec on the 5th of May, 1665, after being reconciled with all, and receiving the last rites of the Church with great sentiments of piety. It was his misfortune to have been misled by a few plotting and turbulent men, who sought a fortune in sowing and fomenting dissension. Once in the wrong path, he was hurried away by his natural impetuosity, and he carried things so far as to oblige the King to recall him.

---

2. What was created by the royal edict of April, 1663? Of whom was the Council composed?—3. How many courts of justice were then established?—4. By whom was d'Avaugour succeeded?—5. What did the Montreal Company do during the year 1663?—6. How did De Mesy act?—7. When did De Mesy die, and what was his character?

8. **De Tracy.**—About this time, the Marquis de Tracy, Lieutenant-General of the royal forces, was sent out to New France in quality of Viceroy. His mission was to re-establish order and curb the Iroquois. He arrived at Quebec on the 30th of June, 1665, with a few companies of the Carignan regiment. De Tracy was received in the midst of rapturous acclamations by all the inhabitants, who conducted him to the Cathedral, where Bishop de Laval, in pontifical robes, awaited him with all his clergy.

After offering holy water and presenting him the Cross, the Bishop conducted him to a kneeling desk, which had been prepared for him near the sanctuary. There, notwithstanding his great debility, the Marquis knelt down on the pavement, not wishing to avail himself of the cushion which had been offered him. The *Te Deum* was then sung, after which the Bishop accompanied the new Viceroy to the Cathedral door with the same honor as when he entered.

The Marquis was always preceded by four pages and twenty-four guards carrying the royal colors. He was followed by six footmen, and generally attended by several officers.

9. **De Courcelles.**—Shortly after De Tracy's arrival, the squadron anchored in the Harbor of Quebec. It brought the rest of the Carignan regiment with its Colonel, De Sallières; De Courcelles, the new Governor; Mr. Talon, the Intendant; a great number of families and artisans; several horses, the first seen in the country; and lastly, many head of cattle.

De Courcelles and Mr. Talon had orders to inquire, in conjunction with De Tracy, into the conduct of De Mesy; but, Providence having otherwise ordained, they turned their attention towards repairing the faults commited by that Governor in the administration of the colony.

"De Tracy, De Courcelles, and Mr. Talon," say the annals of the Hotel-Dieu, "were endowed with all the qualities one could desire. To an engaging exterior, they united great talents, mildness, and prudence; and their perfect agreement was well fitted to give a high idea of royal power and majesty. They sought out the best means to cause the country to prosper, and labored with assiduity to carry them into effect. Under their wise direction, the colony took wonderful development and promised fairly for the future."

10. The first act of the Viceroy, after receiving the expected

8. Who was sent over to New France as Viceroy? What was De Tracy's mission? When did he arrive at Quebec? How was he received? —9. What succor did the colony receive shortly after the arrival of the Marquis De Tracy?—10. What did the Viceroy do as soon as he had received the succor he awaited? What measures did he take?

succor, was to protect the colony against the incursions of the Iroquois. For this purpose, three forts were immediately built at Sorel, Chambly, and Ste. Thérèse. These constructions, which were rapidly carried on, intimidated the enemy for a time, and closed up their usual entrance into the colony; but the latter, foiled in this direction, were not slow in finding out others.

11. In the following spring, determined to show the Iroquois that the time had at last come to punish them for their cruelty and perfidy, the Viceroy marched against them with 600 of the Carignan regiment, as many Canadians, and about 100 Indians. Terror-stricken at the approach of this formidable army, the Iroquois hastily abandoned their villages, and fled into hiding-places whither it was impracticable to pursue them.

12. The last official act of De Tracy, was to transfer all the rights of the Company of the One Hundred Associates to the new West-India Company. This organization, which lasted ten years, paid no more attention to the interests of the colony than the one it superseded.

13. In September, 1667, the Supreme Council decreed that the tithes should henceforward be reduced to the 26th part payable in grain. About the same time, four Jesuit Fathers, Garnier, Bruyas, Millet, and Carheil went out as missionaries to the Iroquois districts; whilst Fathers Dablon, Marquette, Allouez, and, others visited savages tribes till then unknown: the *Poutéouatamis*, the *Miamis*, the *Outagamis*, the *Sakis*, the *Illinois*, etc. These opened missions at St. Mary's Rapids, and on the shores of Lakes Michigan and Superior.

14. The brandy traffic was always the principal obstacle the conversion of the Indians; it paralyzed the labors of the missionaries; and yet the Iroquois carried it on unmolested with the Dutch and English.

15. The King having ordered back the Carignan regiment, four companies obtained permission to remain in Canada; later on, they settled in the country, principally on the banks of the Richelieu River. Several of the officiers being of noble extraction, received seigniorial grants.

16. In 1668, Bishop de Laval established at Quebec the little Seminary; he had founded the great Seminary five years previously.

---

11. How did the Viceroy show the Iroquois that the time for chastisement had come? What did they, hearing of the approach of the French army?—12. What was the last act of De Tracy's administration?—13. What did the Superior Council decree in September, 1667?—14. What was the chief obstacle to the conversion of the Indians?—15. What became of the Carignan regiment?—16. What establishment was founded by Bishop de Laval in 1668?

17. In this same year, three French soldiers, who were convicted of having intoxicated and afterwards killed an Iroquois chief, were shot by order of the Governor in presence of the Iroquois who had lodged the complaint.

De Courcelles knew by his firmness, how to maintain amicable relations between the French and Indians, and to have the latter keep peace among themselves.

18. About this time, Mr. Talon obtained for sanitary reasons permission to return to France. His wise and active administration had greatly contributed to increase the prosperity of the country. "Mr. Talon leaves us," wrote the venerable Mother of the Incarnation, "and returns to France regretted by all. In him, Canada loses very much; for, during his tenure of office, affairs have made more progress than during all the time that elapsed from the first landing of the French." He carefully studied both the wants and resources of the country. By his direction, the north and west had been explored; the iron mines in the vicinity of the Bay of St. Paul, examined; inducements, held out to parties wishing to work those of the St. Maurice; and detailed memoirs, addressed to the Minister of the Navy.

The small-pox broke out about this time in the north of Canada, and completely depopulated those vast regions.

19. Mr. Talon returned to Canada in August, 1670, with Father Allard, a Recollet, and four other members of the same Order. Several families and considerable supplies sent by the King, arrived by the same vessel. Mr. Talon was also accompanied by Mr. Perrot, the new Governor of Montreal—De Maisonneuve having petitioned the King to allow him to retire. Mr. Perrot was provided with royal letters in which it was formally stated that they were granted in the name of De Bretonvilliers, Superior-General of the Seminary of St. Sulpice, Paris. The right of the Sulpicians to appoint the Governor of their Island, was thus solemnly recognized.

20. "The Island of Montreal," says Father Charlevoix, "resembled a religious community, because, from the beginning, none but people of exemplary conduct were allowed to settle there. Besides this, they were continually exposed to the predatory inroads of the Iroquois; and, like the Israelites on their return from their Babylonian captivity, they were obliged, while building their rude structures and clearing their lands, almost

17. How did the Governor treat three French soldiers convicted of having killed an Iroquois chief?—18. What is said of Mr. Talon's administration? What distemper ravaged the north of Canada?—19. Who arrived at Quebec in August, 1670? By whom were they accompanied?—20. How does Charlevoix describe the inhabitants of Montreal?

constantly to have their tools in one hand, and their weapons in the other, to defend themselves against an enemy that waged war only by surprise."

21. In order to oppose a new barrier to the Iroquois, De Courcelles projected to build a fort at Cataraqui; but he had scarcely drawn up the plans, when he was called to Quebec, where his successor awaited him.

De Courcelles had solicited his return to France on account of his failing health. He was sincerely regretted; his firmness and sagacity had won him the esteem of the French and the respect of the Indians.

CHAPTER II.

From the first Administration of De Frontenac, 1672, to that of De Denonville.

1. De Frontenac, Governor; his character; Fort Cataraqui.—2. Difficulties created by De Frontenac's inflexibility.—3. Louis Jolliet and Father Marquette explore the Mississippi.—4. Erection of the Bishopric of Quebec.—5..6 De la Salle completes the exploration of the Mississippi.—7. De Frontenac and Duchesnau recalled; De la Barre, Governor.—8. De la Barre heads an expedition against the Iroquois.

1. **De Frontenac.**—De Courcelles was succeeded by Louis de Buade, Count de Frontenac, Lieutenant-General of the royal forces. He arrived at Quebec in the beginning of the fall of 1672.

De Frontenac constructed in the following year the fort which had been projected by his predecessor at Cataraqui, and gave it his own name. It occupied the present site of the city of Kingston.

2. Count de Frontenac, receiving information that, notwithstanding stringent prohibitions, some royal officers were engaged in trading, sent Lieutenant Bizard to arrest them; but Mr. Perrot, Governor of Montreal, who was secretly associated with one of them, refused to give him into custody. Summoned before the Governor-General to explain his conduct, Mr. Perrot sent a peremptory refusal, and was, in consequence, imprisoned in the Castle of St. Louis, Quebec.

---

21. What did De Courcelles do in order to oppose a new barrier to the depredations of the Iroquois?

1. By whom was De Courcelles replaced? When and where did De Frontenac build a fort?—2. How did De Frontenac govern the colony?

Unfortunately, De Frontenac was not satisfied with this vigorous act for the observance of the laws, his natural impetuosity hurried him into several extreme measures. Mr. Perrot had a friend at Montreal, the Abbé de Salignac Fenelon, who was far from approving all the proceedings of the Governor-General. Suspicion singled him out as an enemy, and he was imprisoned under pretext of having said something in one of his sermons against the Count. De Frontenac next embroiled himself with the Intendant Duchesneau ; after which, he banished of his own authority the Attorney-General and two Councillors. Such arbitrary measures compelled the King to recall De Frontenac, and peace was again restored to the colony.

"Count de Frontenac," says Father Charlevoix, "was gifted with a sharp, inventive, firm, and polished mind. He was susceptible of the most unjust prejudices, and capable of carrying them to great lengths. His talents were equalled by his personal bravery. No one better knew how to gain that ascendancy, which is necessary to restrain the people within the limits of duty and respect.

3. In 1673, M. Talon commissioned Louis Jolliet of Quebec, and the Jesuit, Father Marquette, to ascertain whether the great river spoken of by the western Indians, flowed into the Gulf of Mexico, or into the Pacific Ocean.

These intrepid discoverers started for the shores of Lake Michigan, sailed up Fox River and then down the Wisconsin to its mouth. Following thence the great watercourse of which the Wisconsin is but a small tributary, they passed the confluences of the Missouri and of the Arkansas. They stopped at this latter place, fully convinced that they had reached the river called by the Indians *Michisipi*, that is, "Father of waters," and that it flowed into the Gulf of Mexico.

They now retraced their course. Father Marquette remained with some western tribes until his death, which took place two years afterwards. Jolliet finally arrived at Quebec after encountering many dangers, and losing near the St. Louis Rapids the manuscript account of his voyage.

4. In 1674, Quebec was raised to the rank of a Bishopric. Bishop de Laval, who, until then, had been Bishop *in partibus* of Petrea and Vicar-Apostolic of Canada, was its first titular occupant. Louis XIV. agreed, after some negotiations, that it

3. What commission was given to Jolliet and Father Marquette in 1673? Give a brief account of the expedition of Jolliet and Father Marquette. —4. In what year was Quebec raised to the rank of a Bishopric? Who was the first Bishop?

should depend immediately upon the Holy See, without however ceasing to be united to the Church of France.

5. During his government, De Frontenac sent out an exploring party to the interior of the new continent. Cavelier de la Salle was at the head of this hazardous enterprise. He was an active and clever man, spurred by the twofold desire of acquiring wealth and notoriety. He was accompanied by the Chevalier de Tonti and thirty men, all lately arrived from France for the purpose of completing the exploration of the Mississippi, already commenced by Jolliet and Father Marquette.

6. In 1678, De la Salle set out for Cataraqui, the seigniory of which had been granted him on condition that he would rebuild Fort Frontenac in stone. He then proceeded to Niagara where he established a trading post. On the shores of Lakes Erie and Ontario, he constructed the first vessels that ever ploughed those waters, built Fort St. Louis on the west bank of the Mississippi, and sailed down that river to the Gulf of Mexico which he reached in August, 1682. He took possession of all the country watered by the Mississippi, and called it *Louisiana* in honor of his Sovereign, Louis XIV. He then returned to Quebec, and thence started for France.

7. **De la Barre.**—As De Frontenac and Duchesneau could not live peacefully together, they were both recalled. Le Fevre de la Barre, an old officer of the navy, was appointed to succeed De Frontenac. He arrived at Quebec in the summer of 1682.

8. In 1684, De la Barre marched against the Iroquois at the head of 130 regular troops, 700 militia, and 200 Indians, as far as Lake Ontario. This expedition did not turn to the credit of the new Governor, who showed too much weakness in framing the treaty with the Iroquois.

---

5. What exploring party was sent out by De Frontenac?—6. Describe the route of De la Salle.—7. What did the King decide, seeing that De Frontenac and Duchesneau could not amicably live together?—8. What did De la Barre in 1684? What was the result of that expedition?

CHAPTER III.

From the administration of De Denonville, 1685, to the second administration of De Frontenac, 1689.

1. De Denonville, Governor; he vigorously carries on the war.—2. Expedition to Hudson Bay.—3. Several Iroquois chiefs unjustly arrested. —4. De Denonville's expedition.—5. Fort Niagara.—7. Massacre at Lachine.—8. Return of Bishop de Laval to Canada; Bishop de St. Valier, his successor.—9. Projected invasion of the English colonies. —10. French population of Canada.

1. De la Barre was succeeded by the Marquis de Denonville, a colonel of dragoons, who had on several occasions shown great skill and valor, and whose vigor and firmness were deemed equal to any emergency. His first care was to inform himself exactly of the state of affairs with the Iroquois. He was soon convinced that those tribes would never live long on amicable terms with the French, and that the best line of policy to be pursued, would be to coerce them either to submission or neutrality.

2. While silently preparing to carry on the war against the Iroquois, De Denonville sent out, in 1686, a detachment of 90 men, to retake the trading forts which had been surprised by the English in the vicinity of Hudson Bay. The chiefs of this little band were the three sons of Charles Le Moyne, D'Iberville, De Ste.-Hélène, and De Maricourt, all brave officers and well skilled in Indian warfare. During this campaign, the English lost all their positions, Fort Nelson alone excepted.

3. De Denonville drew the principal Iroquois chiefs, under various pretexts, to Cataraqui. There they were seized by his officers, put in chains and brought to Quebec, whence they were sent to France to work in the galleys. The most deplorable part of this nefarious transaction, was the implication of the two missionary fathers, Lamberville and Milet. De Denonville did not consider that, by so doing, he not only exposed these two priests to the tomahawks of the Iroquois, but also, discredited, perhaps for ever, the Christian religion in the eyes of the Indians.

4. Having received, in 1687, the reinforcements he was await-

1. By whom was De la Barre succeeded? What was the first object of the new Governor's attention?—2. What did De Denonville, whilst silently preparing an expedition against the Iroquois?—3. What act of perfidy did De Denonville commit towards the Iroquois chiefs?—4. What did the Governor in the beginning of 1687? Who commanded the expedition? Of how many men did it consist? What happened on entering a narrow defile?

ing from France, De Denonville took the field against the Iroquois. His army consisted of 2000 men including 300 Indians. He sailed from the Island of Ste. Hélène, on the 13th of June, in 200 barges and as many canoes. Near Sable River, he threw up an intrenchment in a commanding position, and left there 400 men to cover his retreat in case of any ill success. On entering a narrow defile, he was vigorously attacked by 800 Iroquois, who were finally repulsed with a loss of 60 men. De Denonville pursued the fugitives as far as Tsonouthouan, which he found completely deserted. During ten days, he scoured the country, burning or destroying every village he met with, together with a vast quantity of Indian corn and swine.

5. To insure the success of his victory, De Denonville built Fort Niagara, and garrisoned it with 100 men under the command of De Troyes: but the commander and the garrison shortly afterwards fell victims to a distemper, caused by the want of wholesome food.

6. The Governor had no sooner returned to Quebec, than the Iroquois resumed the war track. They overran the country, but were repelled from Fort Chambly. It was soon discovered, that these hostile movements were encouraged by the New England settlers, who were not overscrupulous in their observance of the treaty of neutrality. The Iroquois finally made proposals of peace, which were accepted.

7. Instead, however, of coming to conclude the treaty as was expected, 1500 of them, instigated by a Huron chief, suddenly appeared in the Island of Montreal; and, in the night of the 5th of August, 1689, butchered the inhabitants without distinction of age or sex, and carried off to their villages, from Lachine alone, nearly 200 prisoners, whom they condemned to the stake.

8. The colonists were somewhat consoled in their difficulties, by the arrival of Bishop de Laval, who returned to Canada to end his days in the midst of his flock. The virtues of this eminent prelate, his long and arduous labors in New France, and his sincere love for her children, endeared him to all the Canadians. He was succeeded by the Right Rev. Bishop de St. Valier,

9. The English settlement of New York was an eyesore to the Governor, who saw therein a constant source of danger to the colony. In consequence, he despatched De Callières, Gov-

5. What did De Denonville to insure his victory over the Iroquois?—6. What did the Iroquois do as soon as the Governor had returned to Quebec?—7. Was the peace demanded by the Iroquois concluded?—8. Where did Bishop de Laval die and by whom was he succeeded?—9. How did the Governor consider the settlement of New York?

ernor of Montreal, to France, to lay before the King a plan for the conquest of New England. Louis XIV. approved the plan, and entrusted its execution to Count de Frontenac; De Denonville being recalled to France.

10. In 1688, there were upwards of 12000 French inhabitants in Canada and Acadia.

CHAPTER IV.

From the second Administration of De Frontenac, 1689, *to the Treaty of Ryswick,* 1697.

1. De Frontenac at Quebec.—2. Fort Frontenac is razed.—3. The Abenakis in New England; D'Iberville at Hudson Bay.—4. Expeditions against New York and New England.—5..6. Phipps besieges Quebec.—6. The attack on Montreal fails.—7. Inroads of the Iroquois.—8. De Courtemanche's mission.—9. Battle of La Prairie.—10. Attack on Fort Plaisance.—11. Fort Ste. Anne taken by the English.—12..13. Capture of Fort Nelson.—15. De Frontenac's expedition against the Iroquois.—16..17..18. D'Iberville's exploits.—19..20. Treaty of Ryswick.

1. **De Frontenac 2°**—The Marquis De Denonville was succeeded by Count de Frontenac, who arrived at Quebec on the 12th of October, 1689. On the 27th of the same month, he paid a visit to Montreal, which had just been ravaged by the Iroquois.

2. Having heard that De Denonville had given orders to raze Fort Frontenac, the new Governor hastened to send counter-orders to the Commandant De Varennes; but the envoys had hardly left Lachine, when the garrison came in sight. They had blown up the fort, after having destroyed the provisions and ammunition. De Frontenac was much chagrined, as the hopes he had founded on this fort, were thus wantonly blasted.

3. The campaign of 1689 was not altogether unsuccessful; the Abenakis defeated the English in Acadia, whilst D'Iberville upheld the honor of the French flag in the neighborhood of Hudson Bay.

The Abenakis took fourteen rude forts and considerable booty, slaying over 200 persons.

---

10. What was the French population of Canada in 1688?

1. Who was the successor of the Marquis De Denonville? What place did De Frontenac visit on the 27th of the same month?—What did the Governor do on hearing that his predecessor had given orders to raze Fort Frontenac?—3. Was the campaign of 1689 altogether unsuccessful?

D'Iberville captured two vessels with their cargoes, one of which he brought to Quebec, leaving the other to De Maricourt, his brother, to whom he also entrusted the ports on the south side of the Bay.

4. In the winter of 1689-90, De Frontenac made his first attempt at carrying out his predecessor's plan of invasion. Three divisions were equipped and sent out to attack the English at three different points.

The first division consisting of 200 Canadians and Indians, commanded by Lemoyne de Ste. Hélène, and D'Ailleboust de Mantel, marched towards New York. On the 18th of February, at about eleven o'clock in the night, they arrived at the Dutch village of Corlear (Schenectady). The attack was to be made at about two in the morning, but the intensity of the cold made them anticipate that hour. They silently stole into the village, surrounded every house, and, at a preconcerted signal, assailed the inhabitants who offered but a very weak resistance. During the struggle which lasted wo hours, sixty persons perished, a few house were burned, and a good number of prisoners taken.

The second division was organized at Three Rivers. It consisted of 28 Canadians and 24 Indians, commanded by the brave Hertel. After a tedious mid-winter march of two months, Hertel reached Salmon Falls, which he took by storm. This place was defended by 84 men, 30 of whom were slain, and the rest taken prisoners. The victors lost only one man, a Canadian. On the evening of this successful day, they were apprised of the approach of a body of 200 English troops. Hertel hastily drew up his scanty forces on the banks of a river, close by a bridge—the only one that spanned the stream. His men fought bravely, and succeeded in repelling the enemy.

The third division was sent out from Quebec under the command of De Portneuf. It consisted of Canadians, a company of regular troops from Acadia, and a small number of Abenakis. It was despatched to Casco Bay, at the mouth of the Kennebec River, where it arrived at the end of May. Portneuf was successful in his operations against this strongly fortified place, the principal fort of which was well provisioned and defended by eight pieces of artillery. The fortifications were razed and all the houses burned to the ground.

5. These hostilities did not, however, intimidate the English settlers, but rather roused them to the importance of prompt and united action. They equipped a fleet of seven vessels and en-

4. What did De Frontenac do in the winter of 1689-90? How was the expedition divided? What was the issue?—5. Did these incursions intimidate the English settlers?

trusted the command to Sir William Phipps, who captured nearly all the French possessions in Acadia, in May, 1690.

6. Emboldened by this success, the New Englanders fitted out a second and more powerful armament, and sent it against Quebec. This expedition was likewise commanded by Sir William Phipps, and consisted of 35 sail carrying 2000 troops destined to cooperate on land. The fleet reached Quebec on the 16th of October, 1690. The Admiral summoned De Frontenac to surrender; but, receiving a bold and defiant answer, he opened a fire on the works, which was so briskly replied to, as to induce the Admiral, after a four days' bombardment, to abandon the enterprise. He lost 600 men, 10 ships, several guns, and a large quantity of ammunition. To complete the disaster, most of his vessels were wrecked in sailing down the river.

In the meantime, General Winthrop had been despatched against Montreal at the head of 3000 British and Iroquois; but sickness breaking out in his army, he was compelled to return without having effected any thing.

7. In the summer of this year, the Iroquois made several incursions into the colony, and massacred many of the inhabitants, soldiers, and several officers of distinction. De Frontenac did his best to check them, but the means at his disposal did not allow him to carry on a vigorous warfare against this irrepressible enemy.

8. After the defeat of the English before Quebec, De Courtemanche was sent with the news to the Hurons and Ottawas, in order to reanimate their bellicose dispositions. He passed through the territory of the Iroquois, attended by no more than 10 men, showing by this feat, an admirable skill and courage.

9. In the beginning of May, 1691, a thousand Iroquois pitched their camp at the mouth of the Ottawa River, whence they extended their ravages to the Island of Montreal. De Callières mustered seven or eight hundred Indians who, with a mere handful of French troops, fought a desperate battle at La Prairie, and finally succeeded in routing the enemy. De Varennes won great distinction in this engagement.

Other bands of Iroquois, aided by some Englanders, ravaged the country from Repentigny to Lake St. Peter, inflicting great tortures on the hapless French who fell into their hands.

---

6. What did the New Englanders do in the same year 1690? When did the fleet appear before Quebec? How was Phipps received?—7. What did the Iroquois do in the summer of 1690?—8. What mission was entrusted to De Courtemanche after the defeat of the English fleet?—9. What took place in the beginning of May, 1691? What did De Callières, Governor of Montreal do?

10. In September, 1692, an English squadron of five vessels appeared before Placentia in Newfoundland. The fort which was very ill-conditioned, was garrisoned by 50 men who had consumed mostly all their supplies. The English kept up a brisk fire during five hours; but, seeing that their cannonade produced but little effect, they abandoned the undertaking.

11. In the spring of 1693, three English vessels captured Fort Ste. Anne in Hudson Bay, which was defended by five men only, who had to contend against 40 British foot.

12. The Governor left the Canadian militia scarcely a moment's respite, numerous companies being scattered over the country, carrying on a sturdy warfare against the English.

13. In 1694, Fort Nelson in Hudson Bay surrendered to D'Iberville, who was accompanied by his two brothers, Serigny and Chateauguay, and assisted by 120 Canadians.

14. In the following year, the Iroquois made another irruption into the colony. One of their marauding parties was almost exterminated at Boucherville by Canadian volunteers, and a few French troops commanded by De la Durantaye.

15. Anxious to put a stop to these continual inroads, De Frontenac, in the spring of 1696, set out against the Iroquois, at the head of a formidable army. At his approach, they fled to the woods. De Frontenac, by way of retaliation, burned the fort and all the villages of the canton of Onneyout, and delivered thirty prisoners, after which he returned to Canada.

16. Whilst De Frontenac was scouring the Iroquois districts, D'Iberville captured a vessel of 24 guns, without losing a single man, and reduced Fort Pemmaquid by capitulation.

17. From Acadia, D'Iberville proceeded to Newfoundland, where, towards the end of November, he took the Fort and City of St. Johns, and nearly all the trading posts in the Island, taking, with a handful of brave Canadians, six or seven hundred prisoners.

18. From Newfoundland, D'Iberville was sent to Hudson Bay, where he arrived in the beginning of August, 1697. On the 5th of September, a sharp naval action took place, in which the advantage remained to D'Iberville. He had but one vessel of 50

10. By whom was Placentia attacked in September, 1692?—11. What success attended the British arms near Hudson Bay?—12. What is said of the Canadian militia?—13. What advantages were gained by the French near Hudson Bay, in 1694?—14. What did the Irroquois do the following year?—15. What did De Frontenac do in the spring of 1696? What did the Iroquois do at the approach of the French?—16. What took place in the other parts of New France, whilst De Frontenac was scouring the Iroquois territories?—17. What success attended D'Iberville's operations against Newfoundland?—18. Where did D'Iberville now go?

guns to contend against three of the enemy, one of which was larger than his, the other two were frigates of 32 guns. The larger ship was sunk, and one of the frigates being captured, the third was compelled to take flight.

19. About this time, the King of France sent out a plan for another invasion of the English colonies; but the project completely failed.

20. The Treaty of Ryswick, concluded at the end of 1697 between the European powers, put an end at length to the hostilities waged between the rival colonies of New France and New England.

CHAPTER V.

From the Treaty of Ryswick, 1697, *to that of Utrecht,* 1713.

1. Death of De Frontenac.—2. De Callières, Governor.—3. Treaty of 1701—5. Death of De Callières.—6. The Marquis de Vaudreuil, Governor.—6 He maintains peace with the Iroquois.—7. The English at Port Royal.—8. Capture of the *Seine;* Bishop de St. Valier brought to England.—9. Second failure of the English at Port Royal.—10. De St. Ovide retakes St. Johns.—11. Port Royal capitulates.—12. New expedition against Canada.—13. Treaty of Utrecht.

1. In November, 1698, the colony sustained a great loss by the death of the Governor-General. The brave and energetic De Frontenac died at Quebec, in his 78th year.

"De Frontenac," says Charlevoix, "was a man of deep religious convictions; but it was not an easy task to reconcile his piety with his severity towards those against whom he had imbibed any prejudice. The acrimony of his splenetic humor, detracted somewhat from the nobleness and elevation of his character."

2. **De Callières.**—De Frontenac was succeeded by De Callières, Governor of Montreal. The new Governor was the right man for the difficult circumstances of the times. By his firmness, prudence, and sagacity, he kept the Iroquois in check, and, at last, effected a reconciliation among them, the French, and the other tribes.

---

19. What plan did De Frontenac now receive?—20. What put an end to hostilities with New England?

1. What loss was sustained by the colony in November, 1698? What does Charlevoix say of De Frontenac?—2. By whom was De Frontenac succeeded? When and by whom was Detroit founded?

The settlement of Detroit was begun in June, 1700, by De la Mothe Cadillac, assisted by a missionary priest and 100 Canadians.

3. The year 1701 is famous in the annals of the colony, by a treaty of peace signed at Montreal by the deputies of all the Indian tribes. The meeting was held in an open plain outside the town. The deputies, numbering 1300, were orderly disposed within a guarded enclosure 120 feet by 72. The Governor-General was surrounded by the principal officers, and placed in an elevated position from which he might easily be seen and heard by all.

4. This much desired peace was not, however, of long continuance; for, in 1703, France and England were involved in the war of the Spanish Succession, and their American colonies also picked up the quarrel.

5. This same year, the colony had to mourn the loss of De Callières, who died at Quebec on the 26th of May. De Callières was a skilful general, an upright man, and a true friend of the country in which he had spent the greater part of his life.

6. **De Vaudreuil.**—The new Governor-General was the Marquis de Vaudreuil, Governor of Montreal. The first act of his administration was to confirm and strengthen the treaty with the Iroquois, who were now threatened with hostile visitations from their English neighbors.

7. In 1704, an English fleet appeared off the coast of Acadia. It consisted of 10 vessels, the largest carrying 60 guns, and the smallest, 12. It had sailed from Boston and anchored before Port Royal, there landing 1500 men. Some lively skirmishes ensued, in one of which the English lost their commanding officer. Meeting every where with a spirited resistance, they abandoned the expedition.

8. In the year 1705, the English captured a valuable prize, the *Seine*, which had sailed for Quebec with Bishop de St. Valier, the successor of Bishop de Laval, several ecclesiastics, and a cargo valued at 1000000 *livres tournois*. Bishop de St. Valier was brought to England. He was treated with distinction, but however detained five years.

The disaster turned eventually to the advantge of the country. Hitherto, the growth of flax had been entirely neglected,

---

3. For what was the year 1701 remarkable?—4. Was this peace of long continuance?—5. When did De Callières die, and what was his character?—6. Who succeeded De Callières? What was the first act of De Vaudreuil's administration?—7. What attempt did the English make in 1804? Of how many vessels did their fleet consist? What was the result of this expedition?—8. What prize was taken by the English, in the year 1705?

but the loss of the *Seine* with her supplies of this commodity, impressed the necessity of raising it in the colony. Accordingly, large quantities of flax and hemp were sown and the most sanguine expectations were soon realized.

9. In 1707, another fleet of 25 sail, carrying 3000 men, was despatched against Port Royal. It likewise proved unsuccessful, owing principally to the timely arrival of a reinforcement of 60 Canadians.

10. Flushed with these successes, the French resumed the offensive in 1709, and sent De St. Ovide against Newfoundland. His party consisted of 160 men—soldiers, sailors, militia, and Indians,—and, with this motley force, he took by storm the town of St. Johns, which was defended by 900 men, 50 guns, and three forts.

11. Intent upon obtaining possession of Acadia, the English fitted out another fleet in 1710. It consisted of 54 sail, and carried 3500 men under the command of General Nicholson. The fleet anchored before Port Royal on the 10th of October. De Subercase, the French Commandant, having only 300 men to oppose such an overwhelming force, at first made a brave resistance; but was finally obliged to capitulate. Port Royal was henceforth called Annapolis, in honor of Queen Anne.

12. Encouraged by this success, the English extended their plans for the conquest of Canada; but the fleet they sent against Quebec was partly wrecked near the Seven Islands, in the St. Lawrence, on the 22nd of August, 1711; several of the largest ships were driven upon the rocks, and upwards of 3000 men perished. The fleet was commanded by Admiral Walker and carried 6500 troops, seven regiments of which had seen glorious service under Marlborough.

At the news of this disaster, Nicholson who was advancing on Montreal with an army of 4000 British and 600 Iroquois, hastened to effect his retreat.

13. In the meantime, a new enemy appeared in the West, the Outagamis or Foxes, a warlike and very savage tribe. During twenty-five years, their neighbors carried on a ceaseless war against them, without being able to effect their subjugation. The English secured their friendship, and entered into a treaty of alliance with them.

---

9. What did the English undertake in 1707?—10. What did the French do flushed with these successes? What was the result of their expedition?—11. What force did the English send against Acadia, in 1710?—12. What did the English do, encouraged by their success in Acadia? What was the result? What did Nicholson do, when he heard of the loss of the fleet?—13. Who were the Outagamis? What was the result of the expedition against them?

Informed of their hostile intentions, Du Buisson, commander of Fort Detroit, gave immediate warning of the coming danger to the confederate tribes, who hastened to gather round him. The campaign which followed greatly weakened the Outagamis, their loss amounting to 2000, whilst that of the Allies did not exceed 60 men.

This campaign prevented the English from carrying out their scheme of forming a settlement at Detroit, and thus possessing themselves with the trade of the West.

14. In 1712, the Governors of Canada and New England, received, from their respective sovereigns, orders to put an end to hostilities.

15. By the treaty of Utrecht, 1713, concluded between Louis XIV. and Queen Anne, France ceded to Great Britain, Acadia, Newfoundland, and Hudson Bay, retaining only Cape Breton, the Island of St. John (Prince-Edward's Island), and the neighboring islands.

CHAPTER VI.

From the treaty of Utrecht, 1713, *to that of Aix-la-Chapelle,* 1748.

1..2. Louisbourg founded.—3. Progress of the colony.—4. The English attack the Abenakis.—4. Death of Father Rasle.—5. Wreck of the *Chameau.*—6. Death of De Vaudreuil.—7. De Beauharnais, Governor. 8. Death of Bishop de St. Valier.—8. Bishop Dosquet, coadjutor to Bishop Mornay.—9..10. Expedition against the Outagamis.—11..13. Fort Crown Point.—14. De Pontbriand, Bishop of Quebec.—15. Capitulation of Louisbourg.—16..18. Dispersion of the French fleet under the Duke of Anville.—19. The Marquis de la Jonquière taken by the English.—19..20. De la Galissonnière, Governor *ad interim.*—21. Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle.

1. The cession of Acadia induced the French to make a settlement in the Island of Cape Breton, then called Isle Royale, and to found, in a favorable position, a strongly fortified city. This was the beginning of Louisbourg.

2. The Marquis de Vaudreuil, in conjunction with the Inten-

14. What directions did the Governors of Canada and New England receive from their respective sovereigns, in 1712?—15. What did France cede to England by the treaty of Utrecht?

1. What did the cession of Acadia induce the French to do? What name was given to the new town?—2. What did the Marquis de Vaudreuil, in 1714?

dant Begon, made all endeavors to fortify the colony and to increase its population. In 1714, they wrote to the French Minister, demanding a reinforcement of troops and the supplies necessary to augment the population of the country. They stated that, as there were in the colony but 4484 persons from 16 years to 50 able to bear arms, whilst their neighbors of New England could muster 60000, they had no doubt but at the first rupture, the latter would make strenuous efforts to reduce the whole country.

3. The peace, which the country now enjoyed, enabled the Governor to extend the fortifications of Quebec. In 1720, this city contained 7000 inhabitants, and Montreal, 3000. In 1723, two men-of-war and six merchantmen were built at Quebec; the latter sailed for France, freighted with the produce of the country, viz. staves, furs, tar, tobacco, flour, pease, and salt pork. This commerce of exportation, flourishing for the time, was due to the peace then enjoyed in Canada.

4. In August, 1728, a party of 230 New Englanders and a band of Iroquois, surprised one of the Abenakis villages, and butchered the inhabitants. Alarmed by the unusual noise, Father Rasle hastened out of the chapel; and, seeing his dear neophytes engaged in an unequal contest, boldly advanced towards the assailants with the hope of diverting their attention from the women and children, who were endeavoring to effect their escape. He was received with a shower of bullets, and fell at the foot of a cross which he had erected. Seven Indians, who rushed to his assistance, fell by his side.

"The Indians," says Charlevoix, "found Father Rasle scalped and pierced with bullets, his skull fractured, his mouth and eyes filled with mire, and all his body mutilated. Such was the manner in which a priest was treated in his own mission, and at the foot of a cross, by men who were ever loud in their outcries against the pretended inhumanities of the converted Indians, who were never known to perpetrate such atrocities on their fallen enemies."

5. In 1725, the *Chameau*, a French vessel bound for Quebec, was wrecked on the coast of Isle Royal (Cape Breton), near Louisbourg. The passengers, 250 in number, and all the crew were lost. Among the former, there were several colonial officers, secular priests, Jesuits, and Recollets. On the morning following the wreck, the shores were covered with bodies and fragments of the vessel.

---

3. How did this peace contribute to the prosperity of the country?—4. What did the English in August, 1724? Relate the circumstances attending the death of Father Rasle.—5. What was the fate of the *Chameau*?

6. This year, the colony lost its able Governor, the Marquis de Vaudreuil, who died at Quebec, on the 10th of October, after governing the country 21 years. De Longueuil, Governor of Montreal, headed the administration *ad interim*.

7. **De Beauharnais.**—The Marquis de Vaudreuil was succeeded by the Marquis de Beauharnais, who arrived at Quebec at the end of August, 1726, with the new Intendant, Mr. Dupuy, a man of distinguished ability and great familiarity with the general routine of business, who came to replace Mr. Begon.

8. At the end of December, 1727, Canada had to mourn the loss of its second Bishop, De St. Valier, who died in the General Hospital of Quebec. He was succeeded by the Right Rev. Bishop de Mornay, his coadjutor, who was then detained in France by infirmity. The new Bishop obtained for his coadjutor the Rev. Mr. Dosquet, who was consecrated Bishop of Samos; and who, four years later, became Bishop of Quebec by the resignation of Bishop de Mornay.

9. Shortly after his arrival, the Governor-General renewed the war with the Outagamis or Foxes, who were continually molesting the allied tribes. His army numbered 1200 men—French, Canadians, Hurons, Iroquois, Ottawas, and Nipissings. Commanded by De Ligneris, they embarked in canoes at Montreal, on the 5th of June, 1728; and, after sailing up the Ottawa River, Lake Nipissing, and French River, they entered Lake Huron, crossed Lake Michigan, and finally reached the territory of the Sakis, the allies of the Outagamis.

10. They found the villages deserted, for the enemy had fled at their approach. After having burned the wigwams and razed the fort, the army returned to Canada.

11. In 1731, a new fort was erected at Crown Point, on Lake Champlain. This fort was intended as an outpost to watch the English settlements on the Hudson and Connecticut rivers.

12. In the years 1732 and 1733, the colony was visited with floods, earthquakes, and the small-pox. This dreadful distemper against which no preservative was then known, swept away whole families, both among the French and Indians.

13. Nothing of importance took place during the twelve following years. This peace and tranquillity greatly contributed to

---

6. What loss did the colony sustain this same year?—7. Who was the successor of De Vaudreuil?—8. When did the demise of Bishop de St. Valier take place? By whom was he succeeded? Who was Bishop Dosquet?—9. What did the Marquis de Beauharnais do shortly after his arrival?—10. In what state did the army find the villages?—11. What did the Marquis de Beauharnais do in 1731?—12. What took place in the years 1732 and 1733?—13. Relate the principal occurrences from 1733 to 1745.

the prosperity of the country. In 1721, the total population was 25000, whilst in 1744, it reached 50000.

In the meantime, the colony made some progress concerning industry. In 1733, public attention was turned towards the iron mines of St. Maurice; and, in 1739, these mines fully realized the expectations of the company formed to work them.

14. On the 20th of August, 1740, Bishop de l'Auberivière arrived at Quebec as successor to Bishop Dosquet, who had resigned the previous year. The new Bishop survived his arrival but eight days, having contracted on board a pestilential fever while attending the sick. He was succeeded by the Right Rev. Henri-Marie de Pontbriand, who arrived at Quebec on the 30th of August, 1741.

15. Louisbourg was a constant subject of uneasiness to the inhabitants of New England. Accordingly, on the 5th of February, 1745, the General Assembly of Massachusetts declared it expedient to fit out an armament against that stronghold, in order to deprive the French of the easy means of aggression it afforded them. This armament consisted of 100 sail and 4000 men under the command of Commodore Warren. On the 30th of April, it anchored before Louisbourg, which capitulated after a siege of 49 days. The garrison marched out with the honors of war, and were sent back to France at the expense of the English government. The loss of Louisbourg produced a great sensation not only in Canada, but particularly in France.

16. An expedition was immediately sent out from France, under the command of the Duke of Anville, to retake Louisbourg. It consisted of 41 men-of-war and carried 3000 troops. It sailed from Rochefort on the 22nd of June, 1746. The shores of France had scarcely disappeared, when the fleet was assailed by a furious squall, which so dispersed the vessels, that the Duke reached Chebucto (Halifax) at the end of three months only, and with no more than seven ships.

17. The Duke died a few days after his arrival at Chebucto, and was succeeded in the command by d'Estourmel, who, in a moment of delirium brought on by his irritation at the rejection, by the council of war, of his proposal to abandon further operations, stabbed himself with his sword. De la Jonquière, who had been appointed to succeed De Beauharnais, took the com-

---

14. Who was the successor of Bishop Dosquet? By whom was Bishop de l'Auberivière succeeded?—15. What was the chief event of the year 1745? What force was despatched against Louisbourg?—16. What did the French government do on hearing of the capture of Louisbourg? What was the fate of that expedition?—17. Who took the command of the fleet, after the death of the Duke of Anville? What did De la Jonquière do?

mand of what remained of the shattered fleet. The new commander had resolved upon attacking Annapolis ; but, hearing that an English squadron had sailed for America, he hastened to abandon the enterprise. Near Cape Sable, he encountered a severe storm which dispersed his vessels, and compelled him to return to France.

18. The English profited by these disasters to make an attempt on Beaubassin, commanded by De Ramezay ; but, on the 11th of February, 1747, they were defeated by a much inferior force of Canadians and Indians.

19. The French were not discouraged by the ill success of their first expedition ; they knew that Louisbourg was the key to Acadia, and therefore, they resolved to make another vigorous effort to retake it. A fleet, consisting of 30 transports and 6 ships of the line, was equipped and placed under the command of De la Jonquière. It met the English fleet, consisting of 17 ships of the line, off the coast of Galicia (Spain). De la Jonquière fought bravely ; but was compelled, owing to the great disparity of forces, to strike his colors.

20. **De la Galissonnière.** — During the captivity of De la Jonquière, the administration was entrusted to Count de la Galissonnière. The same vessel that brought the Count, on the 19th of September, 1747, sailed with the Marquis de Beauharnais, on the 4th of the following October.

21. As soon as De la Galissonnière had taken into hands the reins of government, he diligently applied himself to procure exact information about the country. Like a clever, skilful, and enterprising man, he studied the nature of the soil, its productions, the climate, population, trade, and resources. He reorganized the militia and raised it to 12000 men. He also fixed upon the Alleghanies as the boundary of Canada.

22. The most important event of 1748, was the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, by which France recovered the places she had lost during the war,—Louisbourg, Cape Breton, etc.

---

18. What did the English do after the disaster which happened to the French fleet ?—19. Were the French discouraged by the failure of their first expedition against Louisbourg? Who commanded the new fleet ? What result was achieved by this expedition ?—20. By whom was the administration attended to during the captivity of De la Jonquière ?—21. What did De la Galissonnière do on assuming the reins of government ?—22. What was the most important event of the year 1748 ?

CHAPTER VII.

From the Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, 1748, *to the Administration of De Vaudreuil* 1755.

1. The Marquis de la Jonquière, Governor.—2. Complaints against the colonial government.—2. Death of the Marquis de la Jonquière.—3..4. The Marquis Duquesne de Menneville, Governor.—5..7. Washington commissioned to dislodge the French from Ohio.—8. Death of De Jumonville.—9. De Villiers avenges his brother.—10. Capture of the *Alcide* and the *Lys*.—11. Plans for the reduction of Canada.—12..15. Expedition of Monckton, Braddock, Johnson, and Shirley.

1. **De la Jonquière.**—Shortly after the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, Canada was governed by De la Jonquière, who, having been restored to liberty, took possession of his government on the 2nd of September, 1749.

2. It was not long before there arose complaints against the new administration. Hitherto the Canadians had no grounds of suspecting the probity of their Governors; but it appears that, about this time, public men were not proof against peculation. The Court, being informed of the state of affairs, severely reproached the Marquis, who was so nettled that he insisted upon his recall; but, before this could be effected, he died at Quebec, May 17th, 1752, aged 67 years. Charles Le Moyne, second Baron of Longueuil, directed the administration until the arrival of the new Governor.

3. **Duquesne de Menneville.**—De la Jonquière was succeeded by the Marquis Duquesne de Menneville with the title of Governor-General of Canada, Louisiana, Cape Breton, and the Island of St. John, together with their dependencies. He arrived at Quebec two months after the demise of his predecessor.

4. The new Governor, foreseeing that peace could not be of long duration, sought to prepare for coming contingencies, by enforcing a more rigid discipline among the troops and militia.

5. About this time, the English claimed the valley of the Ohio as forming an integral part of Virginia. Ready to support their claims by an appeal to the sword, they sent out a young officer

1. By whom was Canada governed after the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle?—2. What complaints were lodged against the new Governor-General? Who succeeded him *ad interim*?—3. By whom was De la Jonquière succeeded?—4. To what did the new Governor devote his attention?—5. What did the English claim about this time? Who was George Washington and what commission did he receive?

to demand the evacuation of the territory in question. This young man was George Washington, a major in the Virginian militia, then in his twenty-first year. He had already rendered himself remarkable by the ardor of his patriotism and the firmness of his character.

6. In the meantime, the French were building a fort at the confluence of the Alleghany and Monongahela rivers, and called it, in honor of their Governor, Fort Duquesne. It stood near the site of the city of Pittsburg.

7. Receiving a punctilious but evasive answer from the French commandant, the Governor of Virginia raised a regiment, and appointed Washington Lieutenant-Colonel. Washington started in the month of April, 1754, with two companies to occupy the disputed territory.

8. Informed of his approach, De Contrecœur, the commander of Fort Duquesne, despatched De Jumonville to request him to retire. The French envoy was escorted by 34 men, nearly all Canadians. Early on the morning of the 28th of May, this little detachment was surrounded by the English troops, which immediately opened fire, though the former carried a flag of truce. De Jumonville and nine of his party fell, the rest were taken prisoners, with the exception of one who effected his escape, and brought the sorrowful news to the fort.

This deplorable affair excited great indignation in French quarters; but it is however just to say, that Washington's noble character does not appear compromised. Being still young, and having some uneasiness about Fort Necessity, it is likely that Washington had not sufficient resolution to hold back his undisciplined troops.

9. At the news of De Jumonville's death, De Villiers, his brother, was despatched with 600 Canadians and 100 Indians, to avenge the outrage and repel the enemy. Fort Necessity, which had been previously thrown up, though defended by 500 men and nine guns, capitulated after a resistance of ten hours. The loss of the besieged was 90 in killed and wounded; that of the besiegers, 2 killed and 70 wounded.

10. In the spring of 1754, an English and a French squadron arrived almost at the same time off the banks of Newfoundland. Two French vessels, the *Alcide* and the *Lys* which, in a fog, had separated from the rest of the fleet, yielded to a superior force

6. What did the French do in the meantime?—7. What sort of answer did the Governor of Virginia receive, and what did he do in consequence?—8. What did De Contrecœur do, informed of his approach?—9. What did he do at the news of De Jumonville's death?—10. What did the French and English governments do in the spring of 1754? What was the fate of the *Alcide* and the *Lys*?

after a spirited resistance. Count Rostaing was killed on board the *Alcide*. Rigaud de Vaudreuil, several officers, and eight companies of regular troops, were taken prisoners.

11. General Braddock arrived in Virginia in February, 1755. He at once assembled all the colonial governors to draw up the plan of the ensuing campaign. The assembly concerted four expeditions: the first, under General Braddock, against Fort Duquesne; the second, under Shirley, against Niagara; the third, under Johnson, against Fort St. Frederic; and the fourth, under Monckton, to reduce Acadia.

12. Monckton, with 3000 men, made himself master of Acadia. His conduct during this campaign was such as to leave an indelible stain on his memory. Having decoyed many of the inhabitants to Grand Pré, he declared them prisoners, embarked them pell-mell on his vessels and dispersed them throughout the British colonies, from Massachusetts to South Carolina, thus casting them on a foreign land without bread nor protection. By this unworthy treatment, the English wished as it were to punish the Acadians both for their attachment to France, their mother-country, and for their inviolable fidelity to the Catholic religion.

13. Braddock left Virginia at the head of 2200 troops to retake Fort Necessity. Having rather incautiously entered a ravine, he was surprised and defeated after a desperate struggle, by De Beaujeu who had under his orders 146 Canadian militia, 72 marine soldiers, and 650 Indians. In the heat of the engagement, Braddock was mortally wounded. More than 1300 of his men, among whom were several distinguished officers, remained on the field or were drowned in the Monongahela. De Beaujeu was killed in the beginning of the action; the command then devolved upon Mr. Dumas, who displayed great vigor and activity. The shattered remains of Braddock's army safely effected their retreat under the command of Colonel Washington, who evinced, on this trying occasion, the high military talents which marked his subsequent career. Braddock's artillery, stores, and baggage, as well as his plans and instructions, fell into the hands of the French, who lost in this action 40 men only, including their Commander De Beaujeu.

14. At the news of Johnson's advance with 5000 men, Dieskau, who was at Fort St. Frederic with 3000 men, marched out with half the garrison to meet him. He soon met and routed a detachment of 800 British; and, following up this advantage,

11. What plan was adopted on the arrival of General Braddock in Virginia?—12. Describe the progress of Gen. Monckton in Acadia. What is said of his conduct during this campaign?—13. What did Gen. Braddock do?—14. What was the issue of Johnson's campaign?

he pursued the fugitives who hastily fell back on their rudely intrenched camp near Lake George, Dieskau was here defeated with a loss of 800 men, being himself in the number of the wounded prisoners.

15. General Shirley, having been detained at Chouaguen (Oswego) until the season was far advanced, postponed his attack on Fort Niagara to the following year.

CHAPTER VIII.

From the Administration of De Vaudreuil, 1755, to the Capitulation of Montreal, 1760.

1. The Marquis de Vaudreuil-Cavagnac, Governor.—2. Capture of Fort Bull.—3. Arrival of the Marquis de Montcalm, Chevalier de Levis, De Bougainville, and De Bourlamaque.—4..5. Capture of Forts Ontario, Oswege, and William-Henry.—6. Military strength of the colony in 1758.—7. Louisbourg and Fort Frontenac capitulate; evacuation of Fort Duquesne.—8. Battle of Carillon.—9..10. Plan of the campaign of 1759.—Wolfe before Quebec.—11. Strength of the French army. 12..13. Battle of Montmorency.—14. Demolition of Forts St. Frederic and Carillon.—15. Wolfe ascends the Heights of Abraham.—17. Battle of the Plains of Abraham.—16..17. Heroic death of Wolfe and Montcalm.—18. De Levis takes command of the army.—18. Capitulation of Quebec.—20..21. Battle of Ste. Foye.—22. De Levis invests Quebec.—24. The English at Montreal.—25. Capitulation of this city.—26. Chief articles of capitulation.

1. **De Vaudreuil-Cavagnac.**—The Marquis Duquesne was succeeded as Governor-General of Canada by the Marquis de Vaudreuil de Cavagnac, the Governor of Louisiana. The letters of the latter, dated January 1st, 1755, were registered at Quebec, on the 13th of the following July.

The Canadians were highly gratified by this nomination, for, De Vaudreuil was a native of this province, and had spent here the greater part of his youth.

2. In March, 1756, De Léry was sent with a small force against Fort Bull, which surrendered after a resistance of an hour and a half. In the meantime, the Governor fortified Fort Carillon, in order the better to protect the approaches to Fort St. Frederic.

---

15. What did Gen. Shirley do?

1. Who was the successor of the Marquis Duquesne?—2. What did De Vaudreuil do in March, 1756?

3. In the spring of 1756, the Marquis de Montcalm arrived from France as commander-in-chief of the forces. He was accompanied by Chevalier de Levis, afterwards Duke of Levis and Marshal of France, De Bougainville, and De Bourlamaque. He brought with him two battalions of the regiments of the Sarre and Royal-Roussillon.

4. On August 15th, 1756, Montcalm took Forts Ontario and Oswego with 1600 prisoners, 113 guns, 5 men-of-war, and a large quantity of ammunition. The English lost 150 men in killed and wounded, and the French, 30.

Weakened by famine and maladministration, Canada could not long hold out against the supplies of men and money sent over to New England. In 1757, Canada received in reinforcement 1500 men only, whilst the American colonies received 10000 from England.

5. In the same year, 1757, Montcalm took Fort William-Henry, near Lake George. The garrison defended themselves bravely during six days, at the end of which time, losing all hope of succor and seeing their ammunition failing, they surrendered. Unable to provide for his 2300 prisoners, Montcalm dismissed them, on condition that they would not take up arms against the French before the end of eighteen months.

This victory was unfortunately tarnished by the cruelties perpetrated by the Indian allies of the French, who plundered and killed great numbers of the prisoners. The inconsiderate haste of the latter in setting out before the arrival of the escort destined to protect them, must be reckoned among the immediate causes of the massacre. Nor must we overlook the insatiable ferocity of the Indians, their independent spirit, and their intense hatred of the English. Besides this, their passions were stimulated by the intoxicating drinks which the English had the imprudence to give them, notwithstanding the remonstrances of the French officers.

6. In the spring of 1758, Montcalm had only 6000 troops to oppose the 40000 of General Abercromby, who could moreover reckon on a reserve of 20000 militia.

7. The French lost this same year Louisbourg, Cape Breton, Prince-Edward Island, Forts Frontenac and Duquesne.

The garrison of Louisbourg, consisting of 6500 men, held out for two months against a beleaguering force of 12000 soldiers

2. What succor did the colony receive from France, in 1756?—4. Relate the success of Montcalm in August, 1756.—5. What places did Montcalm take in 1757?—6. What force had Montcalm to oppose the English, in 1758?—7. What places did the French lose in 1758? How did the garrison of Louisbourg defend the place? Who took Fort Frontenac and what did the French do with Fort Duquesne?

and marines, under Gen. Amherst and Admiral Boscawen ; and it was only on the eve of the day fixed for the assault, that De Drucourt determined to surrender.

Fort Frontenac, defended by 70 men only, was taken, after a resistance of two days, by Col. Bradstreet with a force of 3000 men. De Ligneris, who was at Fort Duquesne, seeing himself threatened by Gen. Forbes and Col. Washington with a force of 6000 men, set fire to the place and withdrew to Fort Machault.

8. This series of reverses was however interrupted by the brilliant victory of Carillon. The English, under General Abercromby, numbered 16000 men,—7000 regular troops and 9000 provincials. Montcalm defended the place with 3600. The British marched against the intrenchments with all the confidence that superior numbers could inspire. The French guns thundered from the parapets ; yet, notwithstanding the galling fire, the British long maintained their ground, but were finally obliged to retreat. They lost 5000 men ; and the French, 377, including 37 officers. The Canadians, divided into four detachments won great credit to themselves on this memorable day.

Such was the glorious battle of Carillon, where 3600 men stood victoriously against 16000 brave soldiers. This momentary check, far from dispiriting the British, made them more ardent and earnest in their design of reducing the whole country.

9. The campaign of 1759 is the most remarkable in the military annals of Canada. Great Britain had long set a covetous eye on the country, yet it was only after more than half a century of warfare, that she finally got possession of it. Three army corps were organized to carry on operations simultaneously at three different points. Wolfe was to sail from Louisbourg for Quebec, with 20 ships of the line, 13 frigates, and 18 other vessels, carrying 18000 marines and 10000 troops ; Gen. Amherst, who replaced Abercromby, was to cross Lake Champlain with 12000 men, descend the St. Lawrence and unite with Wolfe ; whilst Gen. Prideaux, with an army of provincials and Indians, should march towards the Lakes, and cut off all communication with Louisiana.

10. To oppose 40000 British troops and 20000 reserves, the French had only 5600 regular troops, their militia, and a few bands of Indians. According to the census of that year, the colony could furnish no more than 15229 militiamen, from 16 to 60 years of age.

---

8. By what was this series of reverses interrupted ? Describe the battle of Carillon.—9. What plan was adopted by the English, in 1759 ? 10. What force had Canada to oppose the English ?

11. The English fleet appeared before Quebec on the 27th of June, 1759. The French army was intrenched on the heights of Beauport, from the St. Charles to Montmorency Falls; it consisted of 12000 men: 3500 regular troops, and the rest, miliamen and Indians. The town was garrisoned by 650 men drawn out of its inhabitants.

12. Wolfe disembarked on the upper extremity of Orleans Island. He sent a detachment to bombard the city from the heights of Point Levis, whilst other small parties were detached to scour the country.

13. As Wolfe saw that his attempts to draw the French out of their intrenchments were ineffectual, and that Amherst was long delaying, he resolved to begin the attack. The main body of his army now occupied the heights of Ange-Gardien, where batteries were erected. On the 31st of July, he attacked with 8000 men Montcalm's left wing, posted at the Falls. The rapid volleys of the French greatly told on the English ranks, which were soon thrown into such disorder, that all the efforts of their generals failed to rally them. Wolfe lost 600 men in this action.

14. In the meantime, Amherst was steadily advancing. He compelled Bourlamaque to blow up Forts Carillon and St. Frederic, and to intrench himself on Isle-aux-Noix. All the fortified positions on the great lakes were successfully abandoned, the garrison falling back on Fort Niagara, which was finally obliged to capitulate.

15. As the season was now rapidly advancing, Wolfe resolved to hasten the decisive blow. For this purpose, he sailed up the river to Cape Rouge, and, on the night of the 12th of September, outwitting the vigilance of the sentries, he dexterously landed his troops at Wolfe's Cove, climbed the shelving steep, and, on the morning of the 13th, had his army in order of battle on the Plains of Abraham.

It is said that Wolfe received a plan of the weakest part of the fortifications from Daniel Stobo, a prisoner taken at Fort Necessity, who had been allowed to circulate freely in the town.

16. At the news of this unexpected movement, Montcalm hastened from Beauport with 4500 men; and, impelled by a

---

11. When did the British fleet appear before Quebec? Where was the French army intrenched and what force was left to garrison the town?—12. Where did Wolfe land his troops? What did he do during the bombardment of the town?—13. What did Wolfe do seeing that his attempts to draw the French out of their intrenchments were ineffectual? Describe the battle of Montmorency.—14. What was taking place in the meantime on the lakes?—15. What resolution did Wolfe take seeing that the season was rapidly advancing? Where did he land?—16. What did Montcalm do when apprised of Wolfe's movement?

fatal impetuosity, moved on to the attack contrary to the advice given him. The British, 8000 strong, remained masters of the field. In the heat of the action, both generals were mortally wounded. Wolfe expired before the end of the battle, and Montcalm, on the morning following, with all the sentiments of a Christian hero.

The French lost, in this decisive engagement, about 1000 men including 250 prisoners; the English, 700 men, among whom were several of their chief officers.

17. After the battle of the Plains of Abraham, the defeated army passed through the town, crossed the St. Charles, and re-entered their camp at Beauport. De Vaudreuil assembled a council of war, in which it was decided to remove to the River Jacques Cartier. A courier was despatched to De Ramezay, who still held the city, to tell him that the French army was marching to his succor.

18. When De Levis heard of the issue of the battle, he started at once for Jacques Cartier, and there took command of the army, on September 17th. He represented to the Governor that either the city should be burned, or, by a prompt victory, saved from falling into the hands of the enemy. He countermanded the retreat to Three Rivers; and, just as his van had crossed the St. Charles, he received the sad intelligence of the surrender of Quebec.

De Ramezay had capitulated the previous evening, though assured of speedy relief, and even before the English had put a battery in position. Greatly depressed by the course of events, he had hoisted the white flag—much to the astonishment of the enemy. Only one officer opposed this measure in the council of war. The brave De Levis could not restrain his indignation at this precipitancy, which defeated all his projects. The main body of the army withdrew to Jacques Cartier, where a fort was thrown up and well garrisoned; the rest of the troops marched to Montreal, to devise means for wiping out the shame of the late events.

Among the articles of capitulation, it was stipulated that the garrison should march out with the honors of war, and be embarked for France as conveniently as possible; that the inhabitants should not be dispersed as had been the Acadians; that they should retain their property, and enjoy the free exercise of their religion.

---

17. Describe the retreat of the defeated army. What did De Vaudreuil do in this critical conjuncture?—18. What did de Levis do when he heard of the result of the battle of the Plains? What did he represent to the Governor? What news was brought him as his van was crossing the St. Charles?

19. The English army, 9000 strong, wintered at Quebec under Gen. Murray, who was appointed Governor.

20. In the spring of 1760, De Vaudreuil collected 6000 troops —the remains of his shattered army—and gave the command to De Levis, whose gallant spirit led him to make a vigorous effort to retake Quebec.

21. At Ste. Foye, near the Plains of Abraham, De Levis was met by Murray with an equal force, April 27th, 1760. The battle was contested, both parties displaying equal valor; the advantage, however, remained to De Levis who lost 800 men, whilst Murray's loss amounted to 1500.

22. Flushed by this success, the victorious army advanced under the very walls of the city, and erected batteries with the design of beginning a regular siege. These opened fire on the 10th of May, and for five days, bombarded the town without any result. On the 15th of May, De Levis, hearing of the approach of two English vessels, and despairing of receiving any succor, raised the siege and withdrew to Montreal.

23. After the fall of Quebec, De Vaudreuil had established his head-quarters at Montreal, which he now fortified and defended with his collected forces.

24. On the 8th of September, Montreal was invested by three British corps, forming an effective force of 20000 men with several parks of artillery.

25. To meet this overwhelming force, De Vaudreuil had no more than 3500 men. In consequence of this great disparity, he held a council of war in which it was decided, that the safest policy was to secure favorable terms by an immediate capitulation. Gen. Amherst granted all, with the exception of the honors of war claimed for the garrison.

De Levis, indignant at this refusal, was determined to seek a glorious death on the battle-field, rather than submit to such a humiliation; but, on a formal order from the Governor, he laid down his arms after burning his colors, and protesting in his own name and in that of his army.

26. In the capitulation of Montreal, it was stipulated: 1. That the Canadians should be allowed the free exercise of their

---

19. What was the strength of the English army left in Quebec, and who was appointed Governor of the place?—20. What did De Vaudreuil do in the spring of 1760?—21. What victory did De Levis gain near Quebec? What is said of that battle?—22. What did the French army do after the battle of Ste. Foye?—23. Where did De Vaudreuil establish his head-quarters after the capitulation of Quebec?—24. What was the strength of the English army investing Montreal?—25. What force had De Vaudreuil? What decision did he take in consequence?—26. What were the chief articles of the capitulation of Montreal?

religion, should be governed by their own laws, and not be dispossessed of their property. 2. That all places occupied by the French should be evacuated without delay, and given over to the troops of His Britannic Majesty. 3. That the French troops, after pledging themselves not to serve again in the war, should be conveyed to France. 4. That the Governor, the Intendant, and government officers, should likewise be sent to France at the expense of the British Government.

27. France thus lost, after a century and a half of possession, a country as vast as the continent of Europe; and that, by the neglect of the metropolis to send timely succor.

In the late struggle, the colonists had to contend against a force quadruple their own; and well may we be astonished, that they held out so long. The Marquis De Vaudreuil, in a letter to the minister of Louis XV., gives out the solution of the case in these remarkable words: With this vast and beautiful country, France loses about 70000 souls of the rarest kind, as no other people have ever been more brave, docile, and firmly attached to their sovereign. The vexations they have undergone for several years past, especially, during the five years preceding the capitulation of Quebec, without murmuring, nor attempting to lay their just complaints before the King, prove forcibly their noble conduct and admirable docility."

---

27. How long had the colony been established, and what is said of its extent?

PART SECOND.

ENGLISH RULE.

FIRST PERIOD.

FROM THE CAPITULATION OF MONTREAL, 1760, TO THE CONSTITUTIONAL ACT, 1791.

CHAPTER I.

From the Capitulation of Montreal, 1760, to the Quebec Act, 1774.

1..2. The country under military government.—3..5. State of the country.—6. Census.—7. The laws are modified.—8. Murray forms a Council.—9. Difficulties of his position.—10..11. He is recalled.—12. Bishop Briand.—13. Carleton, Governor.—15. Menacing attitude of the British colonies.

1. **Gen. Murray.**—Having acquired possession of Canada by force of arms, the British established a military government which lasted until 1764. Gen. Murray, Gen. Gage, and Col. Burton were appointed Governors of Quebec, Montreal and Three Rivers. Gen. Amherst, the Governor-General, remained at New York.

2. The Canadians considered this military government a violation of the articles of capitulation, which guaranteed them the rights of British subjects, in virtue of which, they could not be removed from the ordinary judges without their own consent.

3. After the cessation of hostilities, a profound peace reigned throughout the country. The inhabitants, ruined and decimated, now turned their attention to the reparation of their losses and to agricultural pursuits.

4. At the time of the English conquest, the population of Canada was 75000 French inhabitants and 8000 Indians, nearly all Catholics.

---

1. What form of government did the English establish in Canada?—2. How did the Canadians consider this military government?—3. What was the aspect of the country after the cessation of hostilities?—4. What was the population of Canada when it passed under English rule?

5. The cession of Canada was confirmed on the 10th of February, 1763, by the Treaty of Paris. This event turned the tide of emigration; for upwards of 1200 persons of distinction either returned to France or sailed for San Domingo, after having either sold or abandoned their property. But the clergy generously remained in the midst of their flocks, to console, encourage, and maintain them in the Catholic Faith. By their firmness and prudence, they have always been the champions of the rights and liberties of the people, thus greatly contributing to preserve and consolidate the Franco-Canadian nation.

6. After the Treaty of Paris, Great Britain proceeded to reorganize the colonial governments. Labrador, Anticosti, and the Magdalen Islands, were annexed to Newfoundland; Prince-Edward Island and Cape Breton, to Nova Scotia; and the territories bordering on the great lakes, to the neighboring colonies. New Brunswick, shortly afterwards, received a separate government. What remained of Canada was called the Province of Quebec.

7. This partition of the country was followed by the imposition of new laws. By proclamations of the 7th of October, and the 17th of December, 1763, George III. abolished of his own authority, and without the sanction of Parliament, all French laws, substituting in their place those of Great Britain.

8. Gen. Murray was now appointed Governor-General of Canada. Pursuant to instructions received from England, he formed a Council, invested, conjointly with himself, with executive, legislative, and judiciary powers. This Council consisted of thirteen members, one only—an obscure and uninfluential man—being a native of the country.

9. These unfair measures seemed to forebode no good to the Canadians. Their discontent at first spoke in low murmurs, but it soon broke forth in loud complaints from all classes. To allay this irritation, Murray allowed the use of French laws in cases relative to moveable property; and, in compliance with another part of his instructions, he convoked an Assembly of the representatives of the people; but, as these refused to take the Test Oath, * no session was ever held.

* All persons holding office were obliged to take this *Oath*, by which they abjured the doctrines of transubstantiation in the Sacrifice of the Mass, and the invocation of the Blessed Virgin and the Saints. It was abolished in 1828.

5. When was the conquest of Canada confirmed?—6. What did Great Britain do after the Treaty of Paris? What name was given to the remaining portion of Canada?—7. By what was this partition followed? 8. Who was now appointed Governor-General of Canada? What did Murray do pursuant to his instructions?—9. How were these measures considered by the Canadians? What did Murray do in order to allay this irritation?

10. As the Governor defeated the hopes of the English malcontents, who aimed at monopolizing the administration, their vexation rose to such a pitch that they accused the Governor of favoring the Catholics, and ultimately succeeded in having him recalled.

11. Murray's administration was troubled by the revolt of the Western Indians under Pontiac, a distinguished Ottawa chief. The British at first lost many of their fortified posts near the great lakes; but the Indians having been defeated at Bushy Run near Pittsburg and at other places, sued for peace which was accordingly granted them at Chouaguen, in 1766.

12. The year 1766 was rendered remarkable by the arrival of the Right Rev. John Oliver Briand, the new Bishop of Quebec. The primatial see of Canada had been left vacant from the death of Bishop de Pontbriand, in 1760.

13. **Gen. Carleton.**—Gen. Murray was succeeded in the government of Canada by Gen. Carleton, in 1766. On his arrival in London, Gen. Murray presented to the ministers the census which he had taken in 1765, to show them the flagrant injustice of excluding an overwhelming Catholic majority—150 Catholics to 1 Protestant—from sharing in the government of the country. The commissioners appointed to carry on the investigation, acquitted the General of all the charges brought against him; but this acquittal, however, did not procure his reinstatement into office.

14. Shortly after Gen. Carleton's arrival, Great Britain adopted a more just and liberal policy towards Canada. The royal mandates for the banishment of all who should refuse to take the Test Oath were suspended. Their enforcement would ultimately have led to the depopulation of the country.

15. The adoption of this conciliatory policy by Great Britain, was principally due to the well-grounded fear with which the menacing attitude of the other colonies inspired her, of losing all her possessions in North America. The American colonies assumed this attitude in consequence of the passing of the Stamp Act, and the imposition of taxes on them, without their having any parliamentary representation.

---

10. What did the malcontents do?—11. By what was Murray's administration troubled? What was the result of this revolt?—12. What took place in the year 1766?—13. By whom was Murray succeeded? What did he do on his arrival in London?—14. What policy did Great Britain adopt shortly after Carleton's arrival?—15. What was the cause of this change?

CHAPTER II.

From the Quebec Act, 1774, to the Constitutional Act, 1791.

1..4. The Quebec Act.—5. The Canadians reject the proposals of the revolutionary party.—6. Commencement of hostilities.--6..7. Capture of Forts Carillon, St. Frederic, Chambly, and St. John.—8. Montgomery advances on Montreal.—8, Carleton abandons the place.—9..10. Surrender of Montreal.—11..12. Montgomery besieges Quebec.—13. Retreat of the American army.—14. General Burgoyne 15..16. Defeat of Gen. Thompson.—17. Naval fight on Lake Champlain.—18. Burgoyne's expedition.—19. Carleton's administration. 20..21. Haldimand's despotism.—25. Treaty of 1783.—28. Arrival of Lord Dorchester.—30. Constitution of 1791.—31. Population of Canada.

1. **Quebec Act.**—At the news of the American rebellion, the British Parliament passed a law, in 1774, entitled the *Quebec Act*, for the reorganisation of the Provincial Government of Quebec. This new law extended the frontiers of the Province, confirmed the rights guaranteed to Catholics by the capitulation of Montreal, and exempted them from the Test Oath. It reintroduced the former civil laws and sanctioned the use of English law in criminal courts; finally, it established a Legislative Council to be composed of not less than 17, nor more than 23 members, either Protestants or Catholics.

2. After the promulgation of this Act, the Protestants in Canada demanded its repeal; but their petition was rejected by Parliament. The neighboring English colonies testified their dissatisfaction of the late proceedings of the British Parliament, in a Congress held at Philadelphia, September 4th, 1774.

3. The Quebec Act, by conciliating the Canadians, greatly contributed to strengthen their allegiance to the British Crown.

4. While the Congress of Philadelphia set forth the grievances of the colonists, Gen. Carleton inaugurated the new Constitution in the city of Quebec. He wisely thought that the critical circumstances of the times, required him to win and increase the attachment of the Canadians by acts of favor and justice. Of the 23 members of the Legislative Council, one-third were Catholics. Besides this, several Canadians were appointed to offices

1. What law was passed in the British Parliament at the news of the American rebellion?—2. What did the Protestants do after the promulgation of the Quebec Act? How did the other colonies testify their dissatisfaction?—3. What effect did the Act produce on the Canadians?—4. What did Gen. Carleton do whilst the Congress of Philadelphia set forth the grievances of the colonies?

of emolument. Indeed, no time was to be lost, the American Congress had already issued an address, soliciting the Canadians to unite with the colonies, in the defense of their rights and liberty.

5. The address of the American Congress caused considerable sensation, especially among the English fraction of the population, who, having now lost all hopes of swaying the government, were ready to join the revolutionary party. Carleton's situation was becoming more and more critical; but the gentry and clergy, who were afraid of exposing their religion and nationality, in becoming an integral part of the contemplated Republic, maintained the people in neutrality.

6. Failing to secure the cooperation of the Canadians, the American Congress resolved to commence hostilities. In the early part of May, 1775, Forts Carillon, St. Frederic, Chambly, and St. John, were captured. General Washington now took the command of the army.

7. After this first success, the Congress caused a second address to be circulated throughout Canada, without enlisting more sympathizers than before.

8. After taking St. John, General Montgomery sent detachments to occupy Sorel and Three Rivers, whilst he himself marched on Montreal. Deeming it impossible to defend this city, Carleton withdrew to Quebec.

9. Here the Governor found the inhabitants divided in their sympathy. The moment was very trying; for, had the Canadians gone over to the insurgents, Canada, and most probably all North America, would have been irretrievably lost to the British Crown.

10. While the Governor fled in disguise to Quebec, Montreal surrendered to Montgomery, who immediately directed his march on Quebec. Early in December, he appeared with about 1200 men before this stronghold, having been rejoined by General Arnold, who came through the valleys of the Kennebec and Chaudière rivers.

11. During the night of the 30th of December, the Americans attempted to take the city by storm; but they were so hotly received, that they had to retire, after having lost their General and several other officers.

---

5. How was the address of the American Congress received?—6. What did the American Congress do failing to secure the cooperation of the Canadians?—7. What did Congress do after the first successes won by the troops?—8. What did Gen. Montgomery do after capturing Fort St. John?—9. In what state did the Governor find the city of Quebec?—10. What took place at Montreal while the Governor fled in disguise?—11. What was attempted in the night of December 30th?

12. On the death of Montgomery, the command devolved upon Gen. Arnold, who drew off his forces to a short distance, awaiting the arrival of the reinforcements which he had demanded of Congress. Gen. Thomas' corps having arrived, the siege was resumed in March, 1776, but the fire of the American batteries took no effect.

13. The news of the approach of an English fleet, compelled the American General to abandon the siege. Profiting by the disorder attending the retreat, the Governor made a sortie, and captured all the artillery, stores, and baggage of the enemy.

The siege of Quebec cost the Americans 426 prisoners, and 100 in killed and wounded including six officers.

14. Wishing to quell the rebellion of her colonies, Great Britain sent over 8000 veterans under the command of General Burgoyne, who arrived at Quebec in May, 1776. The General's plan was to effect a junction with Sir William Howe at New York, in order to cut off the Southern from the Eastern States.

15. On the 8th of June, the American General Thompson, who was in full march on Three Rivers, was met by Brigadier Fraser. A bloody conflict ensued, in which Gen. Thompson was taken prisoner, together with Colonel Irwin and 200 of his men. The rest saved themselves by flight.

16. Gen. Burgoyne reached Sorel, and thence continued in pursuit of the fugitives, who, having burned Forts Chambly and St. John, fell back on St. Frederic and Carillon.

17. On the 13th of October, an engagement took place on Lake Champlain, between the English and American fleets. Four American ships escaped by flight, a fifth struck her colors, the remaining eleven were stranded and burned by orders of Gen. Arnold, who blew up Fort St. Frederic, and shut himself up within Fort Carillon.

18. In the spring of 1777, General Burgoyne entered the State of New York at the head of 9000 men. He was successful in some slight encounters near Lake Champlain, but he was signally defeated at Bennington, and again, in the vicinity of Albany. He thence retreated to the Saratoga heights, where he was soon hemmed in by superior forces and compelled to surrender. This took

12. On whom did the command of the American army devolve after the death of General Montgomery? What did the Americans do after receiving a reinforcement from Congress?—13. What did the Americans do on hearing of the approach of an English fleet?—14. What did Great Britain do, wishing to quell the rebellion?—15. How was the attempt of the Americans on Three Rivers defeated?—16. Describe the route of General Burgoyne.—17. Describe the engagement on Lake Champlain.—18. What did Gen. Burgoyne do in the spring of 1777? Where did he retreat to and what was the result?

place on the 17th of October, 1777,—5800 men laying down their arms. In this inglorious manner, was terminated the expedition of Gen. Burgoyne, on which the British had founded the most brilliant hopes.

19. Meanwhile, Governor Carleton convened the Legislative Council, which had been prevented from assembling the preceding year. The more important measures of the session related to the militia and judicial administration. The militia regulations being of a tyrannical nature, excited great outbursts of popular discontent.

20. **Gen. Haldimand.**—Mortified by the preference shown to Gen. Burgoyne, Carleton tendered his resignation to the Government. Gen. Haldimand, a Swiss by birth, replaced him in July, 1778.

21. Haldimand's instruments of government were despotism and terror. Attributing to revolutionary motives, the complaints made against his arbitrary administration, he imprisoned hundreds of citizens, without distinguishing between the innocent and the guilty. Such despotic rigor soon rendered him very unpopular.

22. Aided by France, the American Congress successfully carried on the War of Independence.

23. The campaign of 1778 was signalized by advantages won by both parties; but that of the following year was more in favor of the Americans.

About this time, Ireland assumed a threatening attitude. Spain recognized the American belligerents, whilst France sent to their assistance over 6000 troops under the command of Count of Rochambeau.

24. In 1781, the British were defeated at Cowpens, Guildford, and Eutaw Springs. After this last battle, Lord Cornwallis collected all his forces at Yorktown, having in view to make a vigorous stand. Here he was besieged by the army of Gen. Washington, and a French corps under the Marquis de Lafayette; he was finally obliged to surrender, October 19th, 1781. This victory virtually ended the war and assured the independence of the United States.

25. While Canada was moaning under the despotic rule of

19. What did Governor Carleton do in the meantime? What measures were adopted by the Legislative Council?—20. What did General Carleton do mortified by the preference shown to Gen. Burgoyne?—21. How did Haldimand govern Canada?—22. By whom were the Americans abetted?—23. What was the result of the campaigns of 1778 and 1779?—24. Where were the British defeated in 1781?—25. What did England do while Canada was groaning under the despotic rule of Haldimand and his Council?

the Governor and his Council, England, by the Treaty of 1783, despoiled the Province of some portions of its territory in favor of the Americans. By this treaty, Great Britain recognized the independence of her revolted colonies.

26. The population of the Province of Quebec, in 1784, was about 113012.

27. Gen. Haldimand was succeeded in 1785, by Henry Hamilton, who was superseded in the following year by Colonel Hope.

It was during Hamilton's administration that the *Habeas Corpus Act* * was introduced into the country.

28. **Lord Dorchester.**—General Carleton was reappointed Governor-General of all the Provinces of British North America. He had been raised to the peerage under the title of Lord Dorchester. He arrived at Quebec on the 21st of October, 1786.

29. The Franco-Canadian population now bestirred themselves to obtain from the Imperial Parliament the reform of their political institutions. Lord Dorchester commissioned the Legislative Council to enquire into the judicial administration, the militia, trade, police, and education.

30. In 1791, the Imperial Parliament took into consideration the petitions of the partisans for representative government. The Act establishing that form of government, divided the country into two Provinces, Upper and Lower Canada, each section to be governed by a Legislative Council and a House of Assembly. The Lower Canadian Legislative Council consisted of 15 members nominated by the Crown; and the Legislative Assembly, of 50 members elected by the people.

Four governments had now succeeded one another since 1760; viz: martial law, from 1760 to 1764; military government, from 1764 to 1774; civil and absolute government, from 1774 to 1791; and finally, representative government, from the last date.

31. The population of Canada, in 1791, was about 135000 including 15000 Anglo-Canadians, of whom 10000 belonged to Upper Canada.

---

* In virtue of this law, a prisoner has the right, in certain cases, to get his liberty by giving bail.

26. What was the population of the Province in 1784?—27. To whom was the administration entrusted after the recall of General Haldimand? 28. Who succeeded Colonel Hope?—29. For what purpose did the Canadian population now bestir themselves What did Lord Dorchester do? —30. What did the Imperial Parliament do in 1791?—31. What was the population of Canada, in 1791.

SECOND PERIOD.

FROM THE CONSTITUTIONAL ACT, 1791, TO THE UNION OF THE TWO PROVINCES, 1840.

CHAPTER I.

From the Constitutional Act, 1791 to the Arrival of Sir George Prevost, 1811.

1. Inauguration of the Constitution of 1691.—2. Parliamentary debates —2. The Educational question.—3..5. The Upper Canadian House. —7..8. Return of Lord Dorchester; new Executive Council.—6..10. Governor Prescott.—11. First champions of the liberty of the Press. —12. Arrival of Governor Craig.—13. Ministerial responsibility.— 14..16. Political persecution.—17. Firmness of Bishop Plessis.

1. **Constitutional Act.**—The new Constitution was inaugurated on the 26th of December, 1791. The elections in Lower Canada took place in June, 1792. Out of 50 members returned by the Canadians, they elected 16 English, showing, by this act of confidence, their lively desire to see all sections of the community cordially united together.

2. Notwithstanding this conciliatory act, all the English members, at the beginning of the session of 1792, proposed the nomination of a Speaker from their own ranks, and voted even the abolition of the French language. In both these, however, they failed,—Mr. Panet being elected Speaker, and the proceedings of the House being published in both languages. A part of this first session was devoted to the important question of education.

3. The Upper Canadian Parliament assembled at Niagara, September 17th, 1792. It was opened by Lieutenant-Governor Simcoe. The Legislative Council consisted of seven members, and the Legislative Assembly of sixteen. In its first session, the Assembly adopted trial by jury, and the application of English law to all matters relating to property and civil law.

---

1. When was the new Constitution inaugurated? When did the elections take place?—2. What did the English members, at the beginning of the session of 1792? How did they succeed? To what did the House devote attention?—3. Where did the Upper Canadian Chambers assemble? Of how many members did they consist, and what matters did they consider?

4. In the session of 1793, the Upper Canadian Assembly abolished slavery.

5. In 1796, the seat of government in Upper Canada, was transferred by Governor Simcoe from Niagara to Toronto.

6. The Lower Canadian Legislative Assembly, in its sessions of 1792 and 1795, imposed a duty on liquors and groceries, in order to keep, as far as possible, on a par, the provincial revenue and the public debt. The revenue varied from £7000 to £8000, whilst the outlay amounted to £25000.

7. In 1793, Lord Dorchester took the reins of government for the third time. He was provided with ample instructions, which authorized him to form a new Executive Council of nine members, two only being Canadians, and to favor the diffusion and perpetuity of seminaries and religious institutions.

8. The session of 1795 settled the question relating to seigniorial revenues, specified the currency to be adopted in the Province, and the rate of exchange for sterling money.

9. **Gen. Prescott.**—Lord Dorchester was succeeded in the summer of 1796 by General Prescott, who opened the second Provincial Parliament on the 24th of January, 1797. Mr. Panet was re-elected Speaker.

During Gen. Prescott's administration, a treaty of amity, commerce, and navigation, was concluded with the United States.

On the occasion of Mr. Panet's re-election, several defections were noticed in the Canadian ranks, Messrs. De Bonne and De Lanaudière, for instance, voted with the English party. It is just to say, however, that the people, in the preceding elections, endeavored to overrule the return of those members, who had shown themselves disposed to proscribe the use of the French language.

10. General Prescott was replaced in July, 1799, by Robert Shore Milnes as Lieutenant-Governor. It was during his administration in 1800, that, despite the energetic remonstrances of the Assembly, the property of the Jesuits was confiscated to the Crown. Robert Shore Milnes was succeeded by Thomas Dunn, president of the Executive Council.

11. In 1805, the *Mercury* was established at Quebec. Its

4. What did the Upper Canadian Assembly abolish in 1793?—5. When was the Seat of Government transferred from Niagara to Toronto?—6. What did the Lower Canadian Assembly do in its sessions of 1792 and 1795? What was the provincial revenue?—7. Who assumed the reins of government in 1793?—8. State the principal labors of the session of 1795?—9. By whom was Lord Dorchester succeeded? When was Parliament opened? What was the chief event of General Prescott's administration?—10. What was there noticed on the occasion of Mr. Panet's re-election?—11. What newspapers were founded at Quebec, in 1805 and 1806? What took place in Montreal in consequence of the enforcement of the road laws? What was the fate of McLane?

chief line of policy tended to show that it was high time for Canada to be anglicized. In the following year, the Canadians brought out the *Canadien*, to defend their language and institutions. The publication of this paper marks the era of the liberty of the press in Canada.

In the district of Montreal, some dissatisfaction was rife in consequence of the enforcement of certain clauses of the road laws. In the meantime, Mr. Adet, the French ambassador to the United States, made an appeal to the Canadians inviting them to join the American Confederation; but their discontent did not degenerate into open hostilities; and, accordingly, there was nothing to justify the severe repressive measures to which the Governor had recourse on this occasion.

An American enthusiast, named McLane, attracted to Quebec by a ship-carpenter, named Black, was accused of revolutionary intentions; for this imaginary crime, he was condemned to death. His execution, attended with a great military display, took place on an elevated part of the town, from which it might be seen at a considerable distance. This was intended, no doubt, to strike terror into the breasts of the people.

12. **Sir J. Craig.** — On the 21st of October, 1807, Sir James Craig arrived at Quebec. The new Governor was a General of some reputation, but a despotic administrator, and strongly prejudiced against the Canadians and their religion.

13. In the following year, the Assembly, having, by a majority of 22 against 2, carried a bill disqualifying judges as candidates for the Legislative Assembly, had the mortification of seeing this measure thrown aside by the Council. Shortly afterwards, the names of the leading members were cancelled from the list of the militia officers. During the next session, the Governor dissolved Parliament for having insisted on the liberty of discussion and the necessity of a responsible ministry.

14. The new Parliament was convoked at the end of January, 1810. An energetic protest was immediately drawn up against the offensive language used by Sir James Craig in proroguing the last Parliament. The Council having proposed an amendment to the Bill for the exclusion of judges, the House declared, by a three-fourth majority, the seat of Judge de Bonne vacant.

15. The Governor, unable to control his irritation, dissolved the new Parliament, seized the presses of the *Canadien*, and arrested its proprietor on a charge of high treason. A few days

12. What new Governor arrived at Quebec, in October 1807?—13. What occurred in the following year?—14. When did the new Parliament meet? How did it treat the amendment of the Council?—15. What did the Governor do on this occasion?

later, the Council, composed of Judge Sewell, the Anglican Bishop, Messrs. Dunn, Baby, Williams, Irvine, and Young, issued orders to arrest Messrs. Bédard, Taschereau, Blanchet, Papineau, Laforce, with several other leading citizens.

16. Notwithstanding these violent proceedings, the same members were re-elected. In his account of these troubles to the ministry, Craig proposed as the most efficacious remedy: 1. To change or suspend the Constitution. 2. To render the government independent of the people, by using the revenues of the Jesuits and Sulpicians to pay off the public expenses. 3. To reserve to the King all appointments to vacant curacies.

17. When the government sought to encroach upon the rights of the Church, the Right Rev. Plessis, Bishop of Quebec, showed such an unflinching firmness, that the Governor deemed it prudent not to tamper with the religious affairs of the country; but, what greatly contributed to shape the policy of the colonial government, was the hostile attitude of the United States.

18. The citizens imprisoned by the Governor, were restored to liberty without undergoing any trial. The Bill for the exclusion of the judges, received the royal sanction; and finally, Craig started for Europe on the 11th of June, 1811, leaving the administration to Thomas Dunn, ex-President of the Council.

CHAPTER II.

From the Arrival of Sir George Prevost, 1811, *to his Departure,* 1815.

1. Sir George Prevost, Governor.—2. The Governor with the clergy.—3..5. Measures adopted at the commencement of the war,—6..22. Campaigns of 1812, 1813, 1814.—23. Treaty of Ghent.—24..25. The last days of Prevost's administration.

1. **Sir G. Prevost.**—Sir James Craig was succeeded by Sir George Prevost, Governor of Nova Scotia. The latter arrived at Quebec in September, 1811, and found the country distracted by internal dissensions, while it was externally threatened

16. What was the result of the following elections? What did Craig propose in his account of the late troubles?—17. How did Bishop Plessis meet Craig's encroachments in the rights of the Church? What contributed to shape the policy of the colonial government?—18. What became of the Bill for the exclusion of the judges? In what year was Craig recalled?

1. By whom was Craig succeeded? In what state did Sir George find Canada? What policy did he pursue?

by the United States. He ardently set to work to reconcile parties, and to conciliate the Canadians by assuring them of his entire confidence in their fidelity. In this manner, he gained the sympathy and support of the people.

2. Believing the clergy to have been estranged from the government by the vexatious policy of his predecessor, Sir George Prevost endeavored to re-establish amicable relations; and, for this purpose, he had several interviews with Bishop Plessis. This prelate profited by these friendly dispositions of the Governor, to have the Catholic Church in Canada legally recognized.

3. In the month of June, 1812, the United States declared war against Great Britain. During her war with France, England had arrogated to herself the right of searching foreign vessels, under pretext of ascertaining whether they concealed any of her deserters; she even pretended to prevent American vessels from entering the ports of the north of France and of the Low Countries, which she held in a state of blocade. Unable to submit any longer to such a humiliation, the Americans took up arms to maintain their rights, after having, however, endured these molestations for upwards of five years.

4. Though the Parliament of Lower Canada had held its regular session in the preceding winter, it was again convoked by Sir George Prevost, who readily obtained whatever was necessary for the defence of the Province.

5. The Legislature of Upper Canada also voted the measures that were deemed necessary to meet the emergency. The population of Lower Canada was estimated at 200000; that of Upper Canada, at 80000.

6. The first blow of the campaign of 1812, was struck by the British. On the 16th of July, a company of regulars assisted by 160 Canadian volunteers and a few Indians, took Fort Michilimakinac; and, on the 25th of the same month, General Hull, the American Commandant at Fort Detroit, surrendered with his army, called the army of the West.

Shortly afterwards, the American central army under Van Rensselaer, was thrown into disorder by General Sheaffe, and forced to surrender at Queenstown. General Brock, the officer in command at this place, being mortally wounded at the begin-

2. How did Sir George Prevost treat the clergy?—3. What did the United States in June 1812? What were the causes of this war?—4. What measures did Sir George Prevost immediately take?—5. What did the Legislature of Upper Canada do at the same time? What was the population of the two provinces?—6. By whom was the first blow of the campaign of 1812 struck? Describe the military operations of the campaign.

ning of the battle, the honors of the day were won by his successor, General Sheaffe.

The American army of the North, numbering 10000 men under General Dearborn, was despatched against Montreal. Hearing that Major De Salaberry had intrenched himself at Lacolle, Dearborn detached 1400 men to drive in his outposts; but, in the darkness of the night, the two divisions mistook each other for the enemy, and discovered their mistake only after a sharp firing. This determined the retreat of the American army.

7. The Americans were more successful on sea. The *Constitution* and the *United States* captured several English frigates after severe conflicts.

8. In the spring of 1813, the Americans determined to carry on the war with renewed vigor; and, accordingly, they divided their forces into three armies.

9. After some slight advantages over the American General, Harrison, General Proctor was defeated on the 5th of October, at Moravian Town. This victory restored to the Americans the territory they had lost in the preceding campaign, deprived the British of the valuable services of Tecumseh, who was killed in the battle, and ruined the military reputation of Proctor.

10. The American flag was also triumphant on Lake Erie. Commodore Perry with 9 sail and 54 guns, captured, after a fight of four hours, an English flotilla consisting of 6 sail and 63 guns.

11. The English arms were likewise unsuccessful on Lake Ontario. On the 27th of April, General Dearborn landed near Toronto with 1700 men, repulsed Gen. Sheaffe and took that important place. Dearborn thence directed his march on Fort George, compelling General Vincent to evacuate that stronghold, and pursuing him to the heights of Burlington. Here on the night of the 5th of June, the Americans were surprised by Colonel Harvey, and driven from their position with the loss of Generals Chandler and Winder, who were taken prisoners.

12. Sir George Prevost, who was then at the eastern extremity of the lake, profiting of the absence of the American fleet, made an abortive attempt on Sackett's Harbor.

Commodore Chauncey ended the Ontario campaign by a brilliant victory over the British Commander, Sir James Yeo.

---

7. How did the Americans fare on sea?—8. What did they in the spring of 1813?—9. What was the result of General Proctor's campaign?—10. What other success did the Americans obtain?—11. What took place on Lake Ontario?—12. What did Governor Prevost, who was then at the eastern extremity of the lake? Who ended the Ontario campaign?

13. The Americans now concentrated their northern and central armies on Montreal.

General Wilkinson, who commanded the central army, was defeated at Christler's Farm, on the 11th of November, by Col. Morrison, whose forces were greatly inferior to those of his adversary.

14. General Hampton, who commanded the northern army of 7000 strong, had begun his march to join Wilkinson, when he heard that Col. De Salaberry had been sent out to retard his progress. De Salaberry intrenched his Spartan troop of 300 Canadians near Chateauguay, and was here attacked by General Hampton, who was routed with severe loss. These 300 brave men gained this glorious victory in the space of four hours. The Governor praised the military talents of Col. De Salaberry, and complimented the Canadians on their bravery, fidelity, and patriotism. The Canadian militia were subsequently presented with flags, and about twenty years ago, commemorative medals were struck and distributed to the surviving heroes of that memorable day.

15. The battles of Christler's Farm and Chateauguay not only impeded the progress of the American armies, now 16000 strong, but decided their retreat. Thus ended the most skilfully planned, and the most formidable attempt hitherto made by the American Republic, for the subjugation of Canada.

16. As soon as the Americans had evacuated Upper Canada, Col. Murray, with 600 men surprised Fort Niagara, took 300 prisoners, and a large quantity of ammunition.

17. Hostilities were resumed in the spring of 1814. On the 30th of March, General Wilkinson made an attack on Lacolle Mill, with 5000 men; but, after an ineffectual cannonade of two hours and a half, he retired to Plattsburg.

18. This check induced the Americans to direct their whole operations against Upper Canada.

19. On the 6th of May, the British General Drummond surprised and burned Oswego, one of the chief emporiums of the Americans. At Chippewa, the British were defeated on the 5th of July, with considerable loss, but were victorious at Lundy's Lane, in a well contested battle fought on the 24th of July. Shortly afterwards, the operations against Fort Erie were aban-

---

13. What did the Americans now do? And with what result?—14. What is said of the battle of Chateauguay?—15. What was the result of the battles of Christler's Farm and Chateauguay?—16. What did the British troops in Upper Canada after the retreat of the Americans?—17. What did the Americans in the spring of 1814?—18. What did this check induce the Americans to do?—19. What is said of the victories and defeats of the Americans?

doned in consequence of a panic which cost the English 1000 men, whilst the Americans lost only 80.

20. In July and August, General Prevost received a reinforcement of 14000 veterans from England, with orders to invade the United States by way of Lake Champlain. He concentrated his forces at Laprairie and Chambly, and thence marched to Plattsburg, which he reached on the 6th of September; but the flotilla which should have cooperated with the land forces, was defeated by Commodore McDonough. This reverse obliged Prevost to abandon his plan of invasion.

21. About the same time, the Americans were repulsed at Bladensburg on the Potomac; Washington was taken, and the Capitol and several others of the principal buildings were set on fire. A few weeks later, the troops reimbarked, and the British fleet sailed down the Chesapeake after an unsuccessfull attempt to reduce Fort McHenry.

22. In December, 6000 Americans, commanded by General Jackson, defeated 12000 British near New Orleans, inflicting the heavy loss of 1700 men.

23. Peace was finally concluded between the United States and Great Britain at Ghent, December 24th, 1814. By this treaty, all the conquests made during the war were to be respectively restored.

24. Hostilities having ceased, Sir George Prevost issued orders for the meeting of Parliament, in January, 1815. The political discussions which had been forgotten during the war, now recommenced. Louis Joseph Papineau, a young man in his 26th year, was elected Speaker of the House of Assembly in lieu of Mr. Panet, who was transferred to the Legislative Council. The father of Papineau had made himself conspicuous by his ardor in parliamentary debate, and in this respect, he was not only emulated, but surpassed by his son. The Assembly passed a resolution declaring that, during the late crisis, Sir George Prevost had distinguished himself by his energy, skill, and wisdom. This public recognition was accompanied by the presentation of a handsome table-service, valued at £500.

25. Sir George sailed for England towards the end of 1815, in order to refute the charges brought against him by Sir James

---

20. What was the issue of Prevost's expedition against Plattsburg?—21. What victory did the British gain on the Potomac and what were its consequences? What fort was attacked by the English fleet?—22. What took place in December?—23. When and where was peace signed between England and the United States?—24. What did Sir George Prevost as soon as peace was concluded? Who was elected President of the House? What resolution was then passed by the Assembly?—25. Why did Sir George Prevost return to England, at the end of 1815?

L. Yeo, Commander of the fleet in Canada; but he died shortly after his arrival, from the fatigues of the voyage. Sir George Prevost was regretted by all, especially by the Canadians.

CHAPTER III.

From the Departure of Sir George Prevost, 1815, *to the Arrival of the Royal Commissioner,* 1835.

1..2. Drummond's administration.—3. Sir J. C. Sherbrooke, Governor-General.—4..5. The subsidies—6. Arrival of the Duke of Richmond. 7. Earl of Dalhousie, Governor-General.—8. Quebec, a metropolitan see.—9..10. Division between the two branches of the Legislature, on the question of the civil list.—11. First project of union.—12..14. Unpopularity of Dalhousie.—15. Agitation in Upper Canada—16..17. Kempt, Governor.—18. Lord Aylmer, Governor.—19. The Cholera.—20. The 92 Resolutions.—21..22. Dissolution of Parliament; Aylmer recalled.

1. Sir George Prevost was succeeded in the government of Canada by General Drummond with the title of Administrator. He soon discovered that great abuses had crept into the administration of the land and postal departments. In the twenty-two years intervening between 1793 and 1815, more than 3000000 acres of land had been distributed to favorites.

2. In the beginning of the session of 1816, the Assembly being informed of the accusations made against Judges Sewell and Monk, were about to vote an address to the Prince Regent, when the Governor came to the House, and, after a discourse full of invectives, dissolved it. The people were not daunted by this sweeping measure, for they re-elected nearly all the same members.

3. **Sir J. C. Sherbrooke.**—Meanwhile, Drummond was replaced by Sir John C. Sherbrooke, a much cleverer and more prudent administrator. The new Governor inaugurated his advent by acts of justice and generosity. Among other equitable measures, he suggested to the Imperial Governement the expediency of officially recognizing the title of the Catholic Bishop of Quebec.

4. The people were now greatly excited by the financial de-

1. By whom was Sir George Prevost succeeded?—2. What occurred in the beginning of the session of 1816?—3. By whom was Drummond replaced? How did the new Governor inaugurate his administration?—4. What contributed to excite the popular mind?

bates. The Legislative Assembly claimed the right of introducing all questions relating to the public moneys. The Parliament of Upper Canada was likewise engaged in discussing this vexed question.

5. Shortly after the session of 1816, Sir John Sherbrooke, despairing of reconciling parties, tendered his resignation.

6. **Duke of Richmond.**—Sir John Sherbrooke was succeeded by one of the first noblemen of Great Britain, the Duke of Richmond, who had previously been the Governor of Ireland, and had extravagantly squandered his fortune. He arrived at Quebec on July 29th, 1818, accompanied by his son-in-law, Sir Peregrine Maitland, who was appointed Lieutenant-Governor of Upper Canada. The administration of the Duke of Richmond was short; nevertheless, he had time to tread in the footsteps of Craig, at least, in the policy he pursued towards the Assembly. Failing to obtain the immediate consent of Parliament to a bill for the maintenance of the Royal household, he had recourse to extreme measures and prorogued the House. He openly blamed the Assembly, whilst he approved the proceedings of the Legislative Council. As he returned from Upper Canada with his secretary, Mr. Ready, in the month August, 1819, he was suddenly taken ill and died in the midst of excruciating torments. Some say he had an attack of hydrophobia occasioned by the bite of a fox, while others maintain that he was poisoned.

7. **Earl of Dalhousie.**—After the demise of the Duke of Richmond, the reins of government passed successively to the Hon. James Monk, who dissolved Parliament and ordered new elections; then to Sir P. Maitland; and, finally, to the Earl of Dalhousie, who arrived at Quebec, on the 18th of June, 1820, in quality of Governor-General of the British Colonies of North America.

8. Convinced though somewhat tardily of the impossibility of converting the Canadians to the Protestant Creed, Great Britain adopted the wise policy of allowing them to follow the religion of their fathers.

On the 12th of Jan. 1819, the see of Quebec was raised to the rank of metropolitan, and the title of Archbishop was conferred upon Bishop Plessis. Rev. Mr. McDonald was appointed to the see of Regiopolis (Kingston); and Rev. McEachern, to that of Rose, for New Brunswick and the Magdalen Islands.

---

5. What did Sir John Sherbrooke, shortly after the session of 1816?—6. By whom was he succeeded? What is said of the Duke of Richmond's administration?—7. Who assumed the reins of government after the demise of the Duke of Richmond?—8. What wise policy did Great Britain adopt about this time? When was the see of Quebec raised to the rank of metropolitan?

9. The Earl of Dalhousie convoked the new Parliament on the 14th of December, 1820. The Assembly drew up a bill for the regulation of the public expenditure, which was rejected by the Council,—much to the vexation of the deputies of the people. From this moment, discord and chicanery reigned between the two branches of the Legislature. The Governor, who sided with the Council, maintained the nullity of the bill unless sanctioned by that body. To counteract the opposition of the French Canadians, he now devised the scheme of reuniting the two Canadas. For this purpose, after visiting Upper Canada, he again convoked the Parliament; but his financial scheme met with as little support as before—5 votes only being in his favor in the Assembly.

10. The debates occasioned by the expenditure question, were conducted with rare talent and great political science by Messrs. Papineau, Nelson, and Cuvillier.

11. In 1822, a bill for the union of the Provinces of Upper and Lower Canada, was presented to the Imperial Parliament, but was rejected at the second reading, thanks to the generous intervention of MacIntosh, Burdett and other influential members. This bill emanated from the English party, ever hostile to the interests of the Canadians. It provided more representatives for Upper than for Lower Canada, proscribed the use of the French language, restrained the liberty of worship, and the rights of the members over the public moneys.

12. When the articles of the bill transpired among the people, they energetically protested against a measure so diametrically opposed to their interests. Committees were every where formed to draw up petitions; Upper Canada even showed itself unfavorable to the union. Papineau and Nelson were delegated to London to lay the petitions before Parliament.

13. In the session of 1826, the Legislative Assembly voted the subsidies in the same form as in the preceding year, in consequence of which, it was prorogued on the following day. Shortly afterwards, the Earl appealed to the people by a general election. The dissolution of the Assembly caused great dissatisfaction, and this was increased by the publication of an address to the electors, engaging them to return the members of the majority.

9. When did the Earl of Dalhousie convoke the new Chambers? What was done during this session and the next?—10. By whom were the financial debates conducted?—11. What bill was presented to the Imperial Parliament in 1822? By whom was it presented, and what were its chief articles?—12. What did the people do when acquainted with the nature of the bill?—13. What did the Lower Canadian Legislative Assembly do, in the session of 1826? What did the Earl of Dalhousie do in this conjuncture? What effect did the dissolution produce?

14. At the meeting of the new Assembly, in 1827, the Governor refused to confirm the election of Papineau as Speaker; and, on the following day, he prorogued the Assembly. These arbitrary proceedings filled up the measure of the Governor's unpopularity; and, accordingly, petitions, signed by more than 80000 persons demanding his recall, were sent to England with Messrs. Nelson, Viger, and Cuvillier.

15. While Lower Canada was thus a prey to dissensions and party strife, Upper Canada was also agitated by violent debates bearing on the same cause.

16. **Sir James Kempt.**—To facilitate the re-establishment of peace and concord, the Earl of Dalhousie was removed to India, and Sir James Kempt, Lieutenant-Governor of Nova Scotia, appointed in his place. The new Governor endeavored to steer a neutral course between the Council and the Assembly; he recognized Mr. Papineau as Speaker, and permitted the Assembly to dispose of all moneys granted by the Imperial Parliament, with the exception of the salary of the judges and Governor.

17. The instructions given to Sir James Kempt by the Colonial Minister, were not calculated to afford full satisfaction to the members of the Assembly. However, as they did not wish to retard the progress of the country by their opposition, they voted £200000 to be applied to ameliorations of all kinds. In the next session, £20000 were apportioned to build a prison at Montreal; £12000, to found a marine hospital at Quebec; £38000, to improve roads and highways; and £8000, to promote public instruction.

Amongst the most important improvements, were: the amelioration of the port of Montreal, the introduction of steam navigation between Quebec and Halifax, the establishment of a custom-house at Quebec, and the erection of several light-houses. In a word, the representatives of the people showed that, if they wished to control the public expenditure, they were impelled by an ardent desire to advance more the interests of the country, than had hitherto done the time-serving creatures of the Governors.

18. **Lord Aylmer.**—Sir James Kempt was replaced by Lord Aylmer, who arrived at Quebec in October, 1830. Lord Aylmer, in the beginning, sought to heal the wound caused by

14. What took place at the meeting of the new Parliament, in 1827?—15. What was the state of Upper Canada?—16. What did the Imperial Government in order to facilitate the re-establishment of concord? What policy did Sir James Kempt pursue?—17. What sum of money did the Assembly vote?—18. By whom was Sir James Kempt succeeded? What did Lord Aylmer endeavor to do, in the beginning of his administration?

party strife; but the past misgovernment had rendered these inveterate. The long and stormy debates that arose out of the financial question, had left behind a hatred and an acrimony of feeling difficult to temper. Having embraced the cause of constitutional rights, the members did but their duty in contending so ardently for one of their most important privileges; but, perhaps it would have been better for them, had they adapted themselves more to the circumstances, and had they clung less tenaciously to the *immediate* and *complete* enjoyment of that privilege. Their obstinacy prevented the possibility of any compromise between the Governor and the Assembly, and thus, at last, caused those difficulties which degenerated into open rebellion against the established authority.

19. Serious disturbances occurred in Montreal, on the occasion of the election of a member on the 21st of May, 1832, during which three Canadians were slain by the English troops.

Shortly after this event, the country was first visited by the cholera, which raged with great violence, especially in Quebec, where it decimated the population. This dreadful epidemic reappeared in 1834, when it made again numerous victims.

20. In the session of 1834, the Legislative Assembly drew up, after a violent and protracted debate, a series of ninety-two resolutions embodying their principal grievances. Inspired by Mr. Papineau and worded by Mr. Morin, they were presented by Mr. Bedard and adopted by the Assembly, notwithstanding the opposition of several influential members, among whom were Messrs. Nelson, Quesnel, and Cuvillier.

In the meantime, a part of the inhabitants of Upper Canada testified their adhesion to the policy of the Legislative Assembly of Lower Canada.

After several warm debates, the Imperial Parliament left the solution of all these questions to the Colonial Department.

21. In October, 1834, the Canadian Parliament was dissolved. The new elections were attended with great disorders, despite the efforts of the constitutional associations formed in many towns for the maintenance of the laws.

22. **Lord Gosford.**—In the session of February, 1835, the new Parliament protested against the discourse delivered by Lord Aylmer at the close of the preceding session, and renewed

19. What disturbances took place in Montreal, during the election of a member? By what was the country visited shortly after this event?—20. What did the Legislative Assembly do in its session of 1834? What was the attitude of Upper Canada?—21. What occurred in October, 1834?—22. What did the new Parliament do in the session of February, 1835? What took place after the prorogation of Parliament?

all their demands; but the Governor, incensed at their proceedings, prorogued at once the Parliament. Lord Aylmer was now recalled and succeeded by Lord Gosford, who arrived at Quebec in August, 1835.

CHAPTER IV.

From the Arrival of the Royal Commissioner, 1835, *to the Union of the two Canadas*, 1841.

1..2. Lord Gosford.—3. New governments in the other Provinces.—4. Popular disturbances.—5. Insurrection of 1837.—6..7. Troubles in Upper Canada.—8..9. Lord Gosford succeeded by Lord Durham. 10..11. Lord Sydenham, Governor.—12..13. The Union Bill; its object.—14. Canada at the time of the Union.

1. Lord Gosford was accompanied by Sir Charles Gray and Sir James Gipps. Being appointed Royal Commissioner to inquire into the state of affairs, he, in consequence, wrote a detailed account remarkable for its hostility to the Canadians, which, however, was approved by the British ministry and the House of Commons.

2. Shortly after his arrival, the new Governor convoked the Assembly for the 27th of the following October. This Parliament refused to recognize the commission sent out by the Imperial Government. However, the members voted a civil list for six months, in return for the readiness with which Lord Gosford had granted the moneys necessary to defray the current expenses.

3. Upper Canada, which had at first solicited political reforms, now returned a majority in favor of the government. New-Brunswick and Nova Scotia accepted the proposals made by England, and thus Lower Canada was left isolated.

4. Lord Gosford convened the Assembly on the 18th of August, 1837; but, as the majority protested against the hostile resolutions of the Imperial Parliament, the House was prorogued after a session of six days. Lord Gosford then dismissed Papineau and several militia officers, but the people paid them triumphal honors.

5. After the prorogation of Parliament, the leaders of the

1. With what powers was Lord Gosford invested?—2. What did the new Governor do shortly after his arrival? What attitude did this Parliament assume?—3. What is said of the other Provinces at this time?—4. When did Lord Gosford convene the Legislative Assembly? How long did this session last?—5. What took place after the prorogation of Parliament? Describe the events that followed.

popular party scattered themselves over the country, delivering inflammatory harangues and organizing secret associations. The Right Rev. Lartigue, Bishop of Montreal, issued a pastoral letter in which he warned his flock against "being misled by persons seeking to engage them in rebellion against the established authority." The Governor, alarmed at the approaching crisis, dismissed several magistrates and militia officers, called for the troops from New Brunswick, and ordered the English to take up arms.

The insurrection broke out at Montreal on the 7th of November. The troops met with a stout resistance. The cavalry suffered a humiliating defeat at Chambly, and Colonel Gore was repulsed by Dr. Nelson, at St. Denis, after a combat of six hours. At St. Charles, the insurgents, though inferior in point of numbers, made a desperate stand, many preferring to die on the field rather than submit to the victors. The Canadians, commanded by T. S. Brown, were abandoned by their leader, at the beginning of the action and though fighting like desperadoes, they were obliged to surrender to Witheral, who had 300 infantry, some cavalry, and two cannons.

Martial law was now proclaimed in the district of Montreal. Sir John Colborne marched on St. Eustache with 2000 men, dispersed the insurgents, who, to the number or 250, had fortified themselves in the Church and Convent. Dr. Chenier, their commander, was found among the slain.

6. About this time, Mr. McKenzie, who headed the rebellion in Upper Canada, was defeated at Toronto, and obliged to take refuge in the United States.

7. The rebellion of 1837 caused a sensation not only in England, but also in the United States and in France. The Imperial Government took stringent measures for its suppression. Lord John Russel introduced a bill in 1838 to suspend the Constitution of 1791, which passed with a small majority. Sir John Colborne who had temporarily replaced Lord Gosford, was ordered to carry out the provisions of this bill, and to form a special council for the despatch of the most urgent affairs.

8. **Lord Durham** —Lord Gosford was succeeded as Governor-General by Lord Durham, who arrived at Quebec on the 27th of May, 1838. The most remarkable act of Lord Durham's administration, was the amnesty he granted to those who had

5. What took place in the meantime in Upper Canada?—6. What was the effect of the rebellion of 1837? By whom was Lord Gosford temporarily replaced? How did Sir J. Colborne treat the disaffected districts?—8. Who succeeded Lord Gosford as Governor-General? What was the most remarkable event of Lord Durham's administration? What did he afterwards do?

been imprisoned for political offences during the late troubles; but the Imperial Parliament shortly after vetoing this act, Lord Durham was so offended that he gave in his resignation, and sailed for England with his family, on the 1st of November, 1838.

9. Sir John Colborne now took the reins of government. After the departure of Lord Durham, the political refugees in the United States, encouraged by some Americans, fomented a rebellion in both Canadas; but the partial insurrections that broke out at Beauharnais, Napierville, and Chambly, were soon suppressed by Sir John Colborne, who, at the head of nearly 8000 men, marched through the disaffected districts with fire and sword, leaving but ruins and ashes wherever he passed. All prisoners taken during the insurrection were tried by court martial; 89 were sentenced to capital punishment, 47 to banishment, and all their goods confiscated.

The Upper Canadian insurgents abetted by American sympathizers, attacked, in the spring of 1838, Prescott, Detroit, Windsor, and other places; but they were almost everywhere repulsed.

10. **Hon. C. P. Thompson.**—Sir John Colborne was succeeded by the Hon. Charles Poulett Thompson, President of the Board of Trade. He took the oath of office as Governor-General of the British North American Provinces, on October 13th, 1839. In the following year, he was created Baron of Sydenham.

11. On Lord Durham's return to England, he suggested to the ministry the expediency of uniting both Canadas. The bill for the union of the two Provinces was soon carried through both Houses of Parliament, despite the protestations of Lord Gosford, the Duke of Wellington, and the petitions of the clergy and the Canadians. This bill, which was introduced into the Commons in 1839, received the royal sanction on the 23rd of July, 1840; but it was not enforced until the 10th of February, 1841.

12. The Union Bill provided: that English should be the official language; that £45000 should be permanently set apart for the salary of the Governor and judges; that £30000 more should be voted in each reign for the ministers and certain other public officers; that each Province should return 42 members; and that a vote of two-thirds of the Legislative Assem-

9. To whom did Lord Durham leave the government? What broke out after Lord Durham's departure? What was the fate of the partial insurrections that broke out at several places? How were the prisoners treated?—10. By whom was Sir John Colborne succeeded?—11. What did Lord Durham on his arrival in England? When did the Union Bill receive the royal sanction?—12. What were the chief articles of this Bill?

bly would be necessary to legalize a change in the electoral division of the Province, or in the number of representatives.

13. This Bill seems to have been suggested by the same policy, which produced the Constitution of 1791; namely: a desire to anglicify the French Canadians, and to annihilate the Catholic religion.

The Constitution of 1791 had been voted by the British Parliament, in order to withdraw the English population of Upper Canada, from the overpowering majority of the French Canadians of Lower Canada; whereas, its revocation appears to have had no other purpose, than to subject the same French Canadians to the domination of the now greater English population.

14. At the moment when this flagrant act of injustice was consummated, the population, trade, agriculture, and manufactures had taken great development. Lower Canada, which had succeeded in paying off nearly all its debt, was obliged to share in that of Upper Canada, which amounted to more than $1000000.

The population of Lower Canada, which was 125000 in 1791, had now increased five-fold. In 1844, there were in Lower Canada 524000 French Canadians with 156000 English and foreigners,—in all 691000 inhabitants, of whom 573000 were Roman Catholics. There were 76000 property-holders and 113000 houses; this shows that almost every family held property.

13. What policy was introduced by the Union Bill?—14. What was the state of Canada at the time of the Union?

THIRD PERIOD.

FROM THE UNION, 1841, TO THE CONFEDERATION, 1867.

CHAPTER I.

From the Union, 1841, to the Arrival of Lord Elgin, 1847.

1,.3. The Union Bill.—4. Session of 1841.—6..8. Lord Sydenham succeeded by Sir Charles Bagot.—9. Sir Charles Metcalfe, Governor.—9, Seat of government transferred to Montreal.—10. Great fires in Quebec.—11. Lord Elgin, Governor.

1. **The Union of the two Canadas.**—The Act of Union introduced into the Constitution of the country: 1. A responsible government, that is to say, one composed of men selected from the Legislature and accountable to the Assembly for their official acts, and for the advices given the Governor in their capacity as ministers. 2. It recognized the right for the deputies of the people to control the public revenue and expenditure.

This was granting, rather at a late hour, the claims which we had acquired on becoming English subjects, and for the obtaining of which, many of our countrymen had struggled hard in the former House of Assembly, and others had shed their blood on the field of battle.

2. **Lord Sydenham.**—The inauguration of the new Constitution was entrusted to Lord Sydenham, who had been one of the most ardent promoters of the Union of the Provinces.

3. The special Council of Lower Canada, composed for the greater part of venal men, gave their adhesion to the Union Bill after a brief interview with the Governor. The Upper Canadian House of Assembly followed in the same wake after a few days' discussion.

4. The first Parliament of the United Provinces was held at Kingston, June 13th, 1841. In its very first session, there was laid the foundations of the most important of our civil institutions: the municipal system, popular education, currency, custom-

1. What dit the Union Bill introduce into the Constitution?—2. Who was chosen to inaugurate the new Constitution?—3. Did the Legislatures of Upper and Lower Canada readily accept the Union Bill?—4. Where was the first Parliament held? What occurred in the first session? How did it terminate?

duties, &c. The labors of this memorable session, were terminated amidst universal regrets caused by the loss of Lord Sydenham, who died from the effects of a fall from his horse, September 17th, 1841.

5. To establish the Board of Public Works, and to consolidate the debt of Canada, £1500000 were raised in England and transferred to the credit of this Province.

6. **Sir Charles Bagot.**—Lord Sydenham was succeeded by Sir Charles Bagot, who arrived at Kingston, the new Capital, in January, 1842. It was under Sir Charles Bagot that the Constitutional government was inaugurated.

7. New dissensions now arose, and divided the Parliament into two parties: the *tories*, who sought more to flatter the men in power, than to promote the interests of the country; the *reformers*, who insisted upon the application of the Constitution in its integrity, complete responsible government, and the well-being of all classes. Parliament was again the scene of stormy debates, which bade fair to recall the bitter party strife of former years.

8. The Governor showed great prudence in gathering round him the leaders of the reform party, which had the advantage of numbers, talents, and principles. Two members, equally distinguished for their ability, energy, and political knowledge, were chosen to form the cabinet; they were Robert Baldwin and L. H. Lafontaine.

9. **Sir Charles Metcalfe.**—Sir Charles Bagot's health failing, he was replaced by Sir Charles Metcalfe, who arrived at Kingston on the 25th of March, 1843. The chief events of his administration, were: the resignation of the Lafontaine-Baldwin Ministry, the dissolution of Parliament, the general elections in the fall of 1844, the formation of a new cabinet, and the removal of the seat of government from Kingston to Montreal the same year.

The Lafontaine-Baldwin Ministry resigned because the Governor had refused to sanction some of their plans, and had also nominated several public officers without the consent of his councillors.

10. The new elections gave a majority favorable to the Governor's policy. However, one of the chief leaders of the rebellion of 1837, Dr. Wolfred Nelson, was returned by a great majority.

5. What sum was raised in England and put to the credit of the country?—6. Who was the successor of Lord Sydenham? For what was Sir Charles Bagot's administration noted?—7. How was the Parliament now divided?—8. How did the Governor deal with the two parties?—9. Who was sent out to replace Sir Charles Bagot? What were the chief events of Sir Charles Metcalfe's administration? Why did the Lafontaine-Baldwin Cabinet resign?—10. What was the result of the new elections?

In 1845, two great conflagrations occurred in Quebec; the first, on the 28th of May, in St. Roch's suburb, consuming more than 1200 houses; the second, on the 28th of June, in St. John's suburb, destroying nearly the same amount of property.

11. Lord Metcalfe's health obliging him to return to England, he was succeeded by Lord Cathcart, commander of the forces. Lord Cathcart administered the government until the arrival of Lord Elgin, in January, 1847.

CHAPTER II.

From the Arrival of Lord Elgin, 1847, *to the Confederation*, 1867.

1. The typhus.—2..3. Burning of the Parliament buildings at Montreal —4..5. First ecclesiastical Council of Canada.—6. Destructive fires in Montreal.—8. Lord Elgin's administration.—8. Sir Edmund Head Governor.—9. Events of 1855.—10. The Council elective.—12..13. Ottawa, the capital.—14..15. Lord Monck succeeds Sir Edmund Head.—16..17. The Confederation.—20. Sir J. Young, Governor,—21. Manitoba and British Columbia.—22. Lord Dufferin, Governor.

1. **Lord Elgin.**—In the beginning of Lord Elgin's administration, the general elections returned a decided preponderance in favor of the reform party. The Governor entrusted the formation of a cabinet to the leaders of that party; and, under his skilful direction, the Lafontaine-Baldwin Ministry framed several laws of great importance.

The year 1847 was sadly made remarkable by the appearance of a terrible scourge, the typhus, which, after desolating Ireland and Scotland, cast on the banks of the St. Lawrence 70000 emigrants, exhausted by hunger, and prostrated with the contagion.

2. In the session of 1849, the Legislature passed a law, to indemnify the Lower Canadians for the losses they had sustained during the troubles of 1837-38. This law was modelled on that which had previously been framed in favor of the Upper Canadians. The enemies of the government were so exasperated at this act of justice, that they instigated the people to riotous excesses, insulted the Governor in the streets of Montreal, set fire to the Parliament buildings, which were almost totally des-

---

11. By whom was Lord Metcalfe succeeded?

1. What measures did Lord Elgin take in the beginning of his administration? How did he form his ministry?—2. What law did the Legislature pass, and what did the enemies of the government do in consequence?

stroyed with their two valuable libraries, and plundered several of the principal edifices of that city.

3. After such disgraceful proceedings, it was decided that the Parliament should sit alternately at Toronto and Quebec.

During the summer of 1849, the Asiatic cholera made many victims in Quebec and Montreal. However, it was not so violent as in 1832 and 1834.

4. On the 15th of August, 1851, the first Provincial Council of Canada was convened and presided by His Grace, P. F. Turgeon, Archbishop of Quebec. The decrees of this Council settled several questions which greatly needed a solution.

5. In 1851, the five-cent postage was introduced.

6. In 1852, the city of Montreal suffered greatly from fires, the most disastrous of which occurred in the month of July, During two days, the flames raged with ungovernable fury, consuming 1400 houses in St. Lawrence, St. Louis, and St. Mary's suburbs.

In the same year, the Catholics of Canada had an opportunity of testifying, in the person of Bishop Bedini, Apostolic Nuncio, the unbounded respect and filial devotedness they ever cherish for the Holy See.

About the same time, the violent declamations of Gavazzi against Catholicism excited universal indignation. On one occasion, his ranting was followed by such disorders, that the troops had to be called out; several persons were killed and wounded.

The Laval University was founded in 1852, by the directors of the Seminary of Quebec; and Lord Elgin, who had obtained a liberal Charter from Her Majesty, Queen Victoria, presided at its inauguration, in 1854.

7. In 1853, the number of members for the Legislative Assembly was raised from 84 to 130—65 for each Province.

8. **Sir Edmund Head.**—Lord Elgin was succeeded by Sir Edmund Head, in December, 1854. During his administration, Lord Elgin gave many evidences of statesmanlike qualities. Few Governors have identified themselves more intimately with the interests of the country than he.

Among the Legislative acts sanctioned by Lord Elgin, and which greatly contributed to the prosperity of the country, were:

3. What was decided after the disgraceful excesses that took place in Montreal?—4. What took place at Quebec, in August 1851?—5. What was introduced in 1851?—6. From what did the city of Montreal suffer in 1852? How was the Papal Nuncio received? What was the effect of Gavazzi's violent declamations?—7. How was the Legislative Assembly modified in 1853?—By whom was Lord Elgin succeeded?

those which abolished the seigniorial tenure, secularized the reserves of the Protestant clergy, and assisted the Grand Trunk Company in covering the Province with several railways. He also concluded a Reciprocity Treaty with the United States, in July, 1854.

9. Three remarkable events occurred in the year 1855: 1. The arrival of the French corvet *Capricieuse* in Canadian waters. The presence of this sloop-of-war awoke in the minds of the Canadians the remembrance of the country of their fathers. The ovation with which they received Mr. de Belvèze, showed that they still looked on France as a fond mother, from which they had been separated by violent events.

2. The celebrating, with great pomp, of the 8th of December, by the Catholics of every city and town throughout the country, in honor of the promulgation of the Dogma of the Immaculate Conception of the Most Blessed Virgin Mary.

3. Great public rejoicings on the occasion of the fall of Sebastopol.

10. In 1856, the Legislative Council was rendered elective. The former members were appointed councillors for life ; but all others were to be returned by one of the 48 new electoral districts.

11. Three Normal Schools were established in 1857,—one at Quebec, and the other two at Montreal. The Hon. P. O. Chauveau, Superintendent of Education, greatly contributed to the organization and prosperity of these Institutions.

12. In 1858, the city of Ottawa was selected by the Queen for the seat of the Provincial Government.

13. In 1860, Canada and the other British North American Provinces were honored by the visit of the Prince of Wales. The Prince inaugurated the Victoria tubular bridge at Montreal, and laid the first stone of the Parliament buildings at Ottawa. He every where received enthusiastic testimonies of the loyalty of the Canadian people.

14. **Lord Monck.**—Sir Edmund Head was succeeded by Lord Viscount Monck, in 1861.

15. Towards the end of 1861, the country was almost involved in war with the United States, in consequence of the latter having arrested on board the English steamer *Trent*, Messrs. Mason

9. What occurred in the year 1855 ?—10. What important modification did the government undergo in 1858 ?—11. What establishments were founded in 1857 ?—12. What was the chief events of the year 1858 ?—13. What took place in 1860 ?—14. Who was the successor of Sir Edmund Head ?—15. How was Canada nearly involved in war with the United States ? What effect was produced by the prospect of a war with the United States ?

and Slidell, who had been sent by the Confederate States as ambassadors to Europe. The prospect of a war created an intense excitement, which resulted in the prompt organization of a volunteer force, which, a few years later, 1866, 1870, rendered great service to the country by repelling the Fenian raids.

16. In 1864, the spirit of antagonism between Upper and Lower Canada reached its culminating point, and the crisis which followed, put the whole government machinery out of gear. It was then evident that the Union did not produce all the beneficial results that had been anticipated.

17. A new system of government was divised, which left to each Province the management of its own affairs, and secured to all the advantages arising from the union of forces. The following were the Provinces invited to form the projected Confederation: both Canadas, Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, Prince Edward Island, and Newfoundland. The last two, however, preferring entire self-government, declined the invitation.

18. The bases of the new Federal Constitution were drawn up in 1865, at Quebec, where the principal delegates assembled.

19. The Confederation, or Dominion of Canada, was sanctioned by royal proclamation, May 23rd, 1867, and inaugurated on the 1st of the following July. The Confederation was divided into four Provinces: Upper Canada, or Ontario; Lower Canada, or Province of Quebec; New Brunswick, and Nova Scotia.

20. **Sir J. Young.**—Lord Monck was succeeded, as Governor-General of the Dominion, by Sir John Young, in 1868.

21. The Dominion has since been extended by the acquisition of the North-West Territory, July 1st, 1870; the Province of Manitoba, July 1st, 1870; and British Columbia, July 20th, 1871.

22. **Lord Dufferin.**—At the end of June, 1872; Lord Dufferin arrived at Quebec, as Governor-General of the Dominion, in lieu of Sir John Young, since raised to the peerage under the title of Lord Lisgar.

---

16. What occurred in 1864?—17. What new system of government was divised? What Provinces were invited to form the Confederation?—18. Where were the bases of the new Federal Constitution drawn up?—19. When did the Dominion of Canada receive the royal sanction? How was it composed?—20. By whom was Lord Monck succeeded?—21. When did the North-West join the Confederation?—When Manitoba? When British Columbia?—22. By whom was Sir John Young succeeded?

NOVA SCOTIA.

From the fall of Port Royal, 1710, to the present day.

1. Fall of Port Royal.—2..3. Treaty of Utrecht.—4. American expedition against Louisbourg.—5. Failure of the French expedition against Louisbourg.—6. Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle.—7..8. Colonization of Acadia.—9..11. Lord Cornwallis, Governor; he is succeeded by Hobson.—12. Recapture of Louisbourg.—13. New Government.—14. Treaty of 1763.—15. Prince Edward's Island.—17. New Brunswick.—18. The Confederation.

1. Nova Scotia, or Acadia, fell into the hands of the British, by the surrender of Port Royal (Annapolis) to General Nicholson, in 1710.

2. Weakened by continual wars, France was obliged, in 1713, to sign the Treaty of Utrecht, by which she ceded to Great Britain Acadia, Newfoundland, and Hudson Bay Territory. She retained only Cape Breton Island.

3. After the loss of Acadia, the French fortified Louisbourg, in order to protect their possessions in Cape Breton. This Island rapidly grew into importance; its geographical position being very favorable to the fisheries.

4. An insurrection breaking out in the garrison of Louisbourg, the American colonies profited of the circumstance to fit out an armament against that fortress. The command of the expedition was given to General Pepperell, who sailed from Boston, and arrived on the 5th of April, 1745, at Canso, where he was joined by Commodore Warren. Shortly afterwards, he appeared before Louisbourg, which capitulated on the 16th of June, after a siege of 49 days. The whole Island shared the fate of Louisbourg, its bulwark.

5. Alarmed at the loss of that stronghold, the government of Canada solicited aid from France to retake it. A formidable

---

1. When did Nova Scotia pass into the hands of the English?—What did France cede to England by the Treaty of Utrecht?—3. What did the French after losing Acadia? How did Cape Breton grow into importance?—4. What did the American colonies on hearing of the insurrection of the garrison of Louisbourg? From what port did Gen. Pepperell sail?—5. What did the Governor of Canada, alarmed at the loss of that stronghold? What was achieved by that expedition?

force was in consequence sent out the following year under the Duke of Anville; but it achieved nothing, the greater part of the vessels having been dispersed in a violent gale.

6. In 1748, Cape Breton was restored to France by the Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle. The boundaries between the English and French possessions not being explicitly determined by that treaty, there arose from time to time disputes and differences between the colonists, which occasionally led to open hostilities.

7. In order to prevent any encroachment on the disputed territory, the French government induced 3000 Acadians to remove to the north bank of Fundy Bay and to the Island of St. John, since called Prince Edward's.

8. To colonize this vast tract of country, Great Britain sent out emigrants at her own expense, and offered to soldiers consenting to settle there, a free grant of lands, and even arms and rations for one year. Taking advantage of such liberal offers, 4000 soldiers, who had just been disbanded, sailed with their families for the port of Chebucto, where they arrived in June, 1749. In recognition of the services of Lord Halifax, President of the Board of Trade, they called their new settlement Halifax.

9. The first Governor of the new colony was Lord Cornwallis. He established a Council of six members, to aid in the administration. Lord Cornwallis was succeeded, in 1752, by Thomas Hobson.

In 1752, 1500 German emigrants settled in the county of Lunenburg.

10. Meanwhile, the boundary disputes continued,—the English were claiming the lands south of the St. Lawrence, including the Gaspé Peninsula. Shortly afterwards, the Seven Year's War, 1756-1763, began, which ended in the cession of Canada to Great Britain.

11. In 1755, an expedition from Boston, commanded by General Winslow assisted by Captain Monckton, took Fort Beauséjour, on the north bank of Fundy Bay.

This same year witnessed a very sorrowful event, the expulsion of the Acadians. The English colonial authorities assembled the Acadians at different places under pretext of conferring with them, embarked them pell-mell on several vessels, and then dis-

6. When was Cape Breton restored to France? What arose after the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle?—7. What did the French government in order to avoid any encroachment on the disputed territory?—8. What did England in order to colonize the country?—9. Who was the first Governor of that colony? By whom was he succeeded? What emigrants arrived in 1752?—10. What is said of the boundary disputes? What did the English claim?—11. What took place in 1755? What very sorrowful event also took place in that year?

persed them throughout their colonies, from Boston to the Carolinas. About 7000 of these unfortunate people were thus violently torn from their homes, and sent adrift without protection, and even without the necessaries of life.

12. The most remarkable event of 1758, was the fall of Louisbourg. This important fortress surrendered to a force of 40000 men, commanded by Generals Amherst, Wolfe, and Admiral Boscawen. The fortifications were razed, and the inhabitants sent to France. St. John's Island (Prince Edward's) was taken about the same time and annexed to Nova Scotia.

13. Nova Scotia received a Constitution in 1758; and on the 27th of October, the first Provincial Parliament assembled under the auspices of Governor Lawrence. The new government consisted of a Legislative Assembly of 22 members elected by the people, and of an Executive combined with a Legislative Council of 12 members nominated by the Crown. From the year 1719, the Governor and his council had attended to the administration of public affairs.

14. In 1763, a treaty of peace was concluded with the Indians. From this moment, the colony made rapid progress. Cape Breton was then annexed to Nova Scotia; and two years later, this Island formed a distinct county.

After the treaty of 1763, several of the Acadian exiles returned to their homesteads.

15. In 1770, Prince Edward's Island was detached from Nova Scotia, and formed into a separate government. A few years later, 1755-56, the inhabitants of several parts of Nova Scotia, having openly expressed their sympathy for the principles of the American Revolution, were deprived of their representation in the Legislative Assembly.

16. Towards the end of the American Revolution, 20000 royalists left the revolted States, and settled in Nova Scotia.

17. In 1784, that part of Nova Scotia lying north of Fundy Bay, was formed into a separate colony under the name of New Brunswick. Cape Breton was also constituted into an independent government, with Sydney for its capital.

18. The events that occurred between 1784 and 1867, were of a pacific nature, and related chiefly to the development and progress of the Province. They are: The visit to Halifax of Prince William Henry, afterwards William IV., in 1787; the opening

12. What was the chief event of 1758?—13. What did Nova Scotia receive in 1758? Of what did the new government consist?—14. What was the result of the treaty of 1763?—15. What did Prince Edward's Island become in 1770?—16. Who settled in Nova Scotia towards the end of the American Revolution?—17. What modification was introduced in 1784?—18. Name the chief events that occurred from 1784 to 1867.

of the Pictou highway, in 1792; the formation of the militia, in 1806; the opening of a stage line between Halifax and Windsor, in 1816; the reunion of Cape Breton with Nova Scotia, in 1820; the admission of the Catholics to the enjoyment of the same civil rights with the Protestants, in 1823; the dissolution of the Executive Legislative Council, and the nomination by the Crown of an Executive Council of nine, and a Legislative Council of nineteen members, in 1838; the introduction of responsible government, in 1848; the revision of the public statutes, in 1857; the visit of the Prince of Wales, in 1860. In 1864, Nova Scotia united with the other Provinces to consider the plan of Confederation. In 1866, the delegates from Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and Canada, met at London; and, on the 28th of March, 1867, the Bill for the Confederation of the Provinces, received the Royal sanction.

NEW BRUNSWICK.

From its separation from Nova Scotia, 1784, to the present day.

1. A separate Province.—2. Legislative Assembly.—2. Fredericton.—2..4. The lumber trade.—5..6. Great fires in the forests of Miramichi, and the town of St. John.—7. The Ashburton Treaty.—8. Principal events.

1. At the time of its separation from Nova Scotia, the population of New Brunswick was 11457. Thomas Carleton was the first Governor.

2. In the month of January, 1786, the first Legislative Assembly was held at St. John. Two years later, Fredericton was chosen for the seat of government, and has since remained the capital. This town consisted only of irregularly built huts; and St. John, now a flourishing city, was then not more considerable.

Carleton was recalled in 1803, after governing the Province for nearly twenty years. The administration now passed into

1. What was the population of New Brunswick at the time of its separation from Nova Scotia? Who was appointed first Governor?—2. What was the principal event of the year 1786? What took place two years later? When was Carleton recalled? How was the country governed after the departure of Carleton?

the hands of officers called Presidents. In 1809, the British Parliament laid a tax on lumber imported from the Baltic, whilst those of her American colonies were exempted from all duties. This trade becoming yearly more profitable, attention was soon turned to ship-building in this Province.

3. In 1815, New Brunswick received a considerable number of military colonists, who had retired from the British service in America.

4. Governor Carleton was succeeded in 1817, by Major General G. S. Smith, who was replaced in 1824, by Major General Sir Howard Douglas. The population of New Brunswick was now estimated at 74176 inhabitants.

5. In the following year, a great fire devastated the entire coast of Miramichi, extending over a surface of 6000 square miles. About 500 lives were lost, and $1000000 worth of property was destroyed.

6. Sir H. Douglas was succeeded, in 1832, by Sir Archibald Campbell. Five years later, a disastrous fire broke out in the town of St. John, destroying 115 houses, and damaging property to the amount of $1000000.

7. In 1842, the boundary line between Maine and New Brunswick was finally settled by a treaty between Great Britain and the United States, negociated by Lord Ashburton.

8. The chief events that occurred from the Ashburton Treaty to 1867, were: the survey of a route for an intercolonial railway, from Halifax through New Brunswick to Quebec, in 1845; the introduction of a government modelled on that of Quebec, in 1848; the visit, in 1860, of the Prince of Wales, who everywhere met with a cordial reception; a delegation sent to the Conference of Quebec, in 1865; and finally, the admission of New Brunswick into the Confederation, in 1866.

---

3. Was not the population increased in 1815.—4. By whom was Carleton succeeded as Governor? What was the population in 1824?—5. What took place in 1825?—6. Who succeeded Sir Howard Douglas? What occurred in 1837?—7. What was the most remarkable event of 1852?—8. Name the chief events that occurred from the Ashburton Treaty to 1866.

PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND.

From its separation from New-France, 1758, to the present day.

1. Treaty of 1763.—2. Separate government.—2. A constitution granted. 3..5. Charlottetown plundered by American cruisers.—6. Justice done to Catholics.—7..8. Modifications of the Constitution.—9. Chief events from 1850 to 1873.

1. Prince Edward Island was finally ceded with Cape Breton to England, by the Treaty of 1763, and annexed to the government of Nova Scotia.

2. In 1770, the Imperial Parliament granted the Island a separate government, and Walter Patterson was appointed the first Governor. In 1773, it received a Constitution framed after those of the other Provinces of North America, Canada excepted. The government consisted of a Lieutenant-Governor, assisted by both Executive and Legislative Councils combined, and a House of Assembly composed of 18 members. This Constitution was modified in 1851.

3. In 1775, two American cruisers finding the Island defenceless, attacked and plundered Charlottetown, taking the Governor and several other officers prisoners.

4. Patterson was succeeded, in 1786, by General E. Fanning, who was replaced, in 1805, by Colonel J. F. W. Desbarres.

It was in the year 1800, that the Island was called Prince Edward in honor of the Duke of Kent, father to Queen Victoria.

5. Desbarres was succeeded by Charles D. Smith, in 1813. The despotic proceedings of the latter caused such agitation in the colony, as to oblige the Imperial Government to recall him in 1824.

6. During the administration of Colonel J. Ready, the successor of Charles D. Smith, the Catholics were placed on an equal footing with the Protestants. Ready was succeeded, in 1831, by Sir A. W. Young, who was replaced by Sir John Harvey, in 1836.

1. When was the Island ceded to England ?—2. What was granted in 1770 ? What sort of a Constitution did it receive in 1773 ? Of what did the government consist ?—3. What occurred in 1775 ? When did this Island receive its present name ?—4. Who was the successor of Walter Patterson ?—5. What is said of Charles D. Smith ?—6. What took place during the administration of Colonel J. Ready ?

7. Under Sir Charles Fitzroy, the successor of Sir John Harvey, in 1837, the Executive and Legislative Councils became two distinct bodies. Sir Charles Fitzroy was succeeded by Sir H. V. Huntley, in 1841.

8. In 1844, the Colonial Building was commenced; and, in 1846, a geological survey of the Island was made. Sir Donald Campbell replaced Sir H. V. Huntley, in 1847, and was himself succeeded, in 1850, by Sir A. Bannerman.

9. The chief events from 1850 to 1873, were: the introduction of a responsible government, in 1851; the free education Act, in 1852; the universal suffrage Act, in 1853; the administration of Sir Dominick Daly, and the increase of six members to the Legislative Assembly, in 1854; the arrival of Governor Dundas, in 1859; the increase of the Legislative Council of five members, and the visit of the Prince of Wales, in 1860; the meeting at Charlottetown, in 1864, of the delegates of the British Provinces, to consider the expediency of forming a Confederation; and in 1873, the admission of this Province into the Dominion of Canada.

---

7. What took place under Sir Charles Fitzroy?—8. What occurred in 1844 and 1846? Who succeeded Sir H. V. Huntley?—9. Name the chief events from 1850 down to 1873.

NEWFOUNDLAND

From its separation from Nova Scotia, 1713, to the present day.

1. A separate Province.—2. Division of the Island.—2. Annexation of Labrador.—3. Great disasters.—4..5. Courts of justice.—6..8. Progress of events, from 1803 to 1817.—9. Justice done to Catholics.—10..11. Chief events from 1832 to 1866.

1. Newfoundland was constituted a distinct Province, in 1728, Captain Henry Osborne was nominated Governor, and invested with ample powers to appoint magistrates and organize a government. He divided the Island into districts, and introduced several salutary reforms in the legal administration.

2. In 1762, a French fleet captured St. Johns, which was retaken shortly afterwards by Lord Colville. The claim of Great Britain to the Island was confirmed by the Treaty of Paris, in 1763. The French, however, retained the privilege of fishing along the coasts, which privilege had been granted them by the Treaty of Utrecht. In 1763, Labrador was annexed to Newfoundland, and Captain Cook surveyed the coasts of the Island. The population of Newfoundland was then about 13000.

3. In 1775, a furious storm broke over Newfoundland. The sea rose twenty feet, hundreds of vessels were driven on the coasts, and more than 300 lives were lost.

4. In 1789, a Supreme Court and several courts of justice were established.

5. In 1796, England and France being again involved in war, Newfoundland suffered much from the hostile attacks of French vessels. The small town called the Bay of Bulls was taken and destroyed.

6. In 1803, schools were opened in several localities, and benevolent societies formed for the relief of the poor. In 1805, a post-office was established in St. Johns. In 1808, the first volunteer militia corps were enrolled at St. Johns, and Labrador was reannexed to Newfoundland.

1. In what year was Newfoundland formed into a separate Province? Who was the first Governor? How did the Governor divide the Island?—2. What took place in 1762? What was confirmed by the Treaty of Paris? What was then the population of Newfoundland?—3. What took place in 1775?—4. What was established in 1789?—5. To what was the Island exposed in 1796?—6. What occurred in 1803, 1805, and 1808?

7. During the war of 1812-13, the Island had much to suffer from the scarcity of provisions. Flour sold at $30 and $35 a barrel; pork from $38 to $50 a barrel, and all other articles in proportion.

8. In 1817, two fires broke out in St. Johns, which destroyed 200 houses and a vast quantity of provisions. The population of Newfoundland then reached 80000.

9. Vigorous efforts were made in 1826, to ameliorate the condition of the Province. The judicial system was revised; public roads were opened; grants of lands were made, and attention turned to agricultural pursuits. Four years later, the Catholics were admitted to enjoy equal rights with the dissenting sects.

10. In 1832, a House of Assembly, consisting of 15 members, was granted the colony. Nine members formed the Legislative Council.

11. The most remarkable events that took place between 1832 and 1866, were: in 1838, the geological survey of the Island; in 1843, the union of the two branches of the Legislature, forming a Chamber of 25 members; in 1854, the separation of the Executive and Legislative Councils, and the establishment of a responsible government, with a Legislative Assembly of 30 members; in 1860, the visit of the Prince of Wales; in 1865, the sending of two deputies to the Conference of Quebec, but the question of the Confederation was afterwards adjourned by the Legislature; and in the summer of 1866, the connection of the Island with Ireland by a telegraph cable, which was successfully laid down across the Atlantic by the Great Eastern.

---

7. What had the Island to suffer during the war of 1812?—8. What occurred in St. Johns in 1817? What was then the population of the Island?—9. What were made in 1826? What was the chief event of 1830?—10. What occurred in 1832?—11. State the principal events that occurred from 1832 to 1866.

THE NORTH-WEST TERRITORY.

From the Treaty of Utrecht, **1713,** *to the present day.*

1. The North-West Company.—2. Explorations.—3. Colony of Lord Selkirk—.4. The rival Companies.—5. Territorial divisions.—6. The Confederation.

1. The Company of the North-West was formed in 1784, for the purpose of carrying on trade with the North-West territories, *via* Lake Superior, towards the Pacific Ocean and the Columbia River. The vessels of this Company even doubled Cape Horn.

2. The North-West Company sent out several exploring parties. In 1793, Sir Alexander Mackenzie undertook a journey through Canada to the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific. He discovered Fraser River and explored the one which bears his name. In 1801, the astronomer Thompson discovered the principal branches of the Columbia River, which he sailed down to the Pacific Ocean.

3. In the same year, Lord Selkirk bought from the Hudson Bay Company a section of country situated between Lake Winnipeg and the United States boundary. In 1821, he sent out some Scotch colonists; and two years later, several French Canadians commenced an establishment there, called Red River.

4. About this time, the two rival Companies of Hudson Bay and the North-West, were united into one.

5. The Hudson Bay Territory was divided into several districts, comprising altogether four emporiums and 112 trading posts.

6. The North-West Territory was admitted into the Confederation, in July, 1870. The Red River Section was then detached and formed into a new Province, under the name of Manitoba.

---

1. What took place in the year 1784?—2. What explorations were carried on by the North-West Company?—3. What colony was founded by Lord Selkirk?—4. How did the differences between the two rival companies terminate?—5. How was Hudson Bay Territory divided?—6. When was the North-West admitted into the Confederation, and when was the Province of Manitoba formed?

VANCOUVER'S ISLAND
AND BRITISH COLUMBIA.

1. Vancouver's Island was discovered, in 1792, by Captain Vancouver of the British navy. It is 300 miles in length, and from 30 to 50 in breadth. It derives its importance not only from its natural resources, but also from its geographical position, which, from a military point of view, gives it the command of the Pacific Ocean.

2. In 1771, John Hearn, in the service of the Hudson Bay Company, explored the west of the continent towards the Arctic Ocean. Sir Alexander Mackenzie in his first expedition, discovered the great River Mackenzie which flows into the Arctic Ocean. In 1806, Simon Fraser explored the interior of the country from Lake Athabaska; he crossed the Rocky Mountains, and established a trading post at the lake which bears his name.

3. Vancouver's Island was first occupied by the Hudson Bay Company, in 1843, when Victoria, the capital, was founded. James Douglas was appointed Governor by the Company.

4. In 1859, Vancouver's Island and British Columbia, two separate colonies, were united under one government, James Douglas being appointed first Governor.

5. In 1863, the two colonies received separate governments, and New Westminster, the capital of British Columbia, was founded. The new government, for each, consisted of an Executive and Legislative Councils, with a House of Assembly. Vancouver's Island and British Columbia were divided into electoral districts.

6. Vancouver's Island and British Columbia were admitted into the Confederation, July 20th, 1871, under the name of the Province of British Columbia.

---

1. When was Vancouver's Island discovered? From what does it derive its importance?—2. What discoveries did Fraser and Mackenzie make?—3. By whom was Vancouver's Island first occupied? Who was the first Governor?—4. What did the English government in 1852? Who was appointed Governor of both colonies?—5. When did the two colonies receive separate governments? Of what did each government consist?—6. When did Vancouver's Island and British Columbia join the Confederation?

CHRONOLOGICAL

AND

SYNOPTICAL TABLES

OF THE

PRINCIPAL EVENTS RECORDED IN THIS COMPENDIUM

OF THE

HISTORY OF CANADA,

gether with the most important Synchronisms of the Histories of the great European Powers, the United States of America, and the Church.

QUEBEC:
ELZÉAR VINCENT, PRINTER
18 St. John Street, (Without).

1874.

A.D.	CANADA.—INTRODUCTION.
1492	**CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS** discovers the Island of San Salvador, and, shortly after, Cuba, and San Domingo.
1493	Columbus discovers Dominica, Guadaloupe, Porto Rico, Jamaica, and the Leeward Islands.
1497	**JOHN** and **SEBASTIAN CABOT** discover Newfoundland and Labrador.
1498	Columbus discovers South America.
1499	**AMERICUS VESPUCIUS** explores the northern shores of South America.
1500	**VINCENT PINZON** discovers Brazil and the Amazon River.
1518	Baron **DE LÉRY** arrives at Sable Island.
1519	**FERNANDO CORTEZ** sails for Mexico and conquers that Empire.
1520	**MAGELLAN** discovers the strait that bears his name.
1524	**VERAZZANI** takes possession of Newfoundland for the crown of France.
1532	**FRANCIS PIZARRO** penetrates into Peru, and treacherously obtains possession of that Empire.
	CANADA.—FRENCH RULE.
	CIVIL AND POLITICAL PART.
1534	**JACQUES CARTIER** enters the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and discovers the *Baie des Chaleurs.*
1535	Cartier's second voyage; he sails up the St. Lawrence as far as Montreal (Hochelaga), and passes the winter at St. Charles Harbor before Quebec (Stadacona).
1541	**DE ROBERVAL** (De la Roque) is appointed the King's Lieutenant-General in Canada.—Cartier's 3rd voyage; he passes the winter at Cape Rouge.
1542	De Roberval lands at Cape Rouge with 200 colonists of both sexes.
1543	De Roberval visits the Saguenay.
1544	De Roberval returns to France with the shattered remains of his colony.
1598	**DE LA ROCHE** (Marquis), second Lieutenant-General and Viceroy of Canada, disembarks at Sable Island, 50 convicts brought over as colonists.

A.D.	THE CHURCH.
1492	ALEXANDER VII., Pop
1503	PIUS III., Pope, 27 d
	JULIUS II., Pope.
1506	Construction of St. Pe
	Bramante and Mi
	Angelo, Architects.
1513	LEO X., Pope; he giv
	name to his age.
1516	Concordat with Franc
1517	Martin Luther, an A
	tinian monk, apost
	and dogmatizes.
1521	ADRIAN VI., Pope, s
	Protestantism triu
	ing, dies broken he
1523	CLEMENT VII., Pope.
1527	Sacking of Rome by
	Imperialists. Con
	of Bourbon, the tr
	is slain.
1534	PAUL III., Pope.—C
	commences to preac
	errors in France.
	Society of Jesus fou
	by St. Ignatius.
1545	Convocation of the Co
	of Trent.
1547	JULIUS III., Pope
	Francis Xavi
1550	Bull for resuming
	Council of Trent.
1556	{ MARCELLUS II., Pop
1557	{ PAUL IV., Pope.
	Paul IV. erects Irela
	to a kingdom.
1559	PIUS IV., Pope.
1560	Bull for resuming
	Council of Trent.
1563	Close of the Counc
	Trent.
1564	St. Charles Borromeo
	first to adopt all th
	cisions of the Coun
	Trent.
1566	PIUS V., Pope. He ex
	municates Queen
	abeth.—Publication
	the Catechism of
	Council of Trent,
	Roman Breviary,
	Missal.
1571	Victory of Lepanto.
1572	GREGORY XIII., Pope

FRANCE.	ENGLAND.	SPAIN.	GERMANY.
CHARLES VIII., King since 1483.	HENRY VII., King since 1485.	ISABELLA and FERDINAND V. —*Castile and Arragon united*, 1483.	FREDERIC III., Emperor since 1440.
			MAXIMILIAN I., Emperor.
Battle of Fournoue, gained by Charles VIII.	Execution of Perkin Warbeck and Warwick.	PHILIP I., of Austria. FERDINAND V. of Arragon.	
Louis XII., King.			
Treaty of Blois.			
The States General of Tours.		Death of Columbus.	
Battle of Agnadel.	Henry VIII., King.	Ximenez; expedition against Oran	Maximilian I. is the ally of Henry VIII. at Guinegate.
	Battles of Flowden and Guinegate, won by Henry VIII.		
FRANCIS I., King.—Battle of Marignan.		CHARLES I.; same as CHARLES V. in Germany.	Maximilian delivers Brescia.
	Henry VIII. refutes Luther and receives the title of *Defender of the Faith*.		
			Charles V., Emperor.
The Field of the Cloth of Gold.			
Battled of Pavia; Francis I., a prisoner.			The Teutonic order secularized.
Britanny returns to the Crown of France.	On the Pope's refusal to sanction his divorce, Henry VIII., breaks off with Rome, and throws England into a schism.		
Battle of Cerisoles, gained over the Imperialists; treaty of Crespy.			Charles V. defeats the Protestant party at Mülberg.
HENRY II., King....	EDWARD VI., King		
	MARY TUDOR, Queen.		Siege of Metz.
		PHILIP II., King.	FERDINAND I., Emperor.
Capture of Calais.	ELIZABETH, Queen	Treaty of Cateau-Cambresis.	
FRANCIS II., King. CHARLES IX., King. —War between Catholics and Protestants.			
			Maximilian II., Emp.
Peace of Longjumeau.	Captivity of Mary Stuart.	Death of Don Carlos.	

CANADA.—FRENCH RULE.

A.D.	CIVIL AND POLITICAL PART.	A.D.	RELIGIOUS PAR
1603	**DE CHATES** sends De Pontgravé and Samuel de Champlain to Canada; they sail up the St. Lawrence as far as the St. Louis Rapids.	1611	Fathers Masse and B Jesuits, land at Royal.
1604	**DE MONTS** succeeds De Chates, and begins the settlement of Port Royal (Annapolis) in Acadia (Nova Scotia).	1615	Fathers Dennis Jam John Dolbeau, Jos Le Caron. and Bro. cific Du Plessis, lan Quebec.—A chapel erected very near site of the pre Church of Notre D des Victoires, in Lower-Town, in w Father Dolbeau the first Mass, on 26th of June.
1608	**DE CHAMPLAIN** lays the foundation of Quebec (July).		
1609	Champlain joins the Algonquins and Hurons to fight against the Iroquois.		
1612	**CHARLES DE BOURBON,** Count of Soissons, Lieutenant-General and Viceroy of New France.		
1612	**HENRY DE CONDÉ** (Prince) succeeds Charles de Bourbon in his Viceroyalty.		
1613	Champlain sails up the Ottawa River almost to its sources.	1618	First Jubilee in Can
1615	Champlain discovers Lakes Ontario, Huron, and Nipissing, and passes the winter with the Hurons.	1620	The Recollets lay foundations of t monastery at Que (General Hospital).
1620	**DE MONTMORENCY** (Duke) purchases from the Prince of Condé the Viceroyalty of New France, and appoints Champlain his Lieutenant-General in that country.	1621	The first marriage is ebrated in Canada.
1621	De Montmorency forms the Company that bears his name in opposition to the Rouen Company.	1625	Arrival at Quebec of thers C. Lalemant de Brebeuf, and Masse, Jesuits.
1622	Some Iroquois attack the French at the St. Louis Rapids, whilst others proceed to Québec, and attack the establishment of the Recollets.	1626	The Duke of Ventad gives the Jesuits Seigniory of Our L of Angels.
1624	**DE VENTADOUR** (Duke), a priest, buys the Viceroyalty of New France.	1629	All the Religious in ada return to Fran
1627	The Company of the One Hundred Associates obtains the grant of New France with its dependencies.	1632	De Noüe and Lej Jesuits, come bac Canada with De —An English Cath colony, conducted Leonard Calvert, ther of Lord Baltim settles in Maryland
1628	David Kertk captures Port Royal and Tadoussac.		
1629	Champlain is compelled to surrender Quebec to Louis and Thomas Kertk, French malcontents and Calvinists.	1635	Fathers De Brebeuf Masse return to da with Champlain
1632	Restitution to France of Canada and Acadia by the Treaty of St. Germain-en-Laye.	1635	Father Rohaut lays foundations of the uits' College at bec.
1633	**CHAMPLAIN** returns to New France as Governor, for the second time.	1637	Founding of the A
1635	Death of Champlain at Quebec.		

SPAIN.	GERM.	ENGLAND.	FRANCE.	THE CHURCH.
.....	.....	.....	Massacre of St. Bartholomew. HENRY III., King.	Elizabeth is staining the soil of England with the blood of her Catholic subjects.—Ireland is not spared.
.....	Rodolph II. E.	.....	Holy League.	
.....	.....	.....	Death of the Duke of Anjou. War of the Three Henrys.	Publication of the Roman Martyrology.
.....	.....	.....		SIXTUS V., Pope. He institutes the Congregations of Cardinals.—Mary Stuart, the Queen of Scots, a prisoner of Elizabeth, writes to the Pope a touching letter, declaring her fixed resolve to live and die a Catholic.
.....	.....	Death of Mary Stuart.	Battle of Coutras, gained by Henry IV.	
.....	.....	The Invincible Armada	Murder of the Duke of Guise.	
.....	.....	.....	*House of Bourbon* HENRY IV.	
.....	.....	.....	Battle of Ivry.—Siege of Paris.	URBAN VI., Pope. GREGORY XIV., Pope.
.....	.....	.....	.....	INNOCENT IX., Pope.
.....	.....	.....	.....	CLEMENT VIII., Pope.
.....	.....	.....	Henry IV. abjures Protestantism.	Annexion of the Duchy of Ferrara to the Pontifical States.
Philip III., King	.....	.....	Treaty of Vervins. Edict of Nantes. The Minister of State is the celebrated Sully. Under Henry's reign, colonists are sent to Canada and Guyane.	LEO XI., Pope.—PAUL V. Pope.—Persecution in Japan.—Chinese Missions.—Father Ricci in Pekin.—The Jesuits in Paraguay.
.....	.....	East India Company.		
.....	.....	*House of Stuart.* JAMES I., King.		
.....	.....	Gunpowder Plot.	.....	PAUL V. approves the following new Institutions: the Ursulines; the Congregation of Priests of the Oratory, established by Card. De Berulle; the Nuns of the Visitation, instituted by St. Francis of Sales.—Founding by St. Vincent of Paul, of the Sisters of Charity, in Paris.
.....	.....	.....	Assassination of Henry IV. Louis XIII., King	
.....	Matthias Em.			
.....	.....	.....	Convocation of the States Gen.	
.....	30 *yrs' war* Palatine period.		The Protestant Party, commanded by De Rohan, threatens to dismember France.—Siege of Montauban.	GREGORY XV., Pope.—Foundation of the Propaganda.—Canonization of St. Ignatius of Loyola, St. Frs. Xavier, St. Theresa, and St. Philip Neri.
.....	FERD. II. Em.			
PHILIP IV. Kg.	.....	.....	.....	
.....	.....	.....	.....	

CANADA.—FRENCH RULE.

A.D.	CIVIL AND POLITICAL PART.
1635	DE CHATEAUFORT administers the colony *ad interim*.
1636	DE MONTMAGNY, a Knight of Malta, Governor-General.
1637	The village of Sillery near Quebec is founded by Brulart De Sillery, a priest, and an ex-minister of State.
1642	Founding of Ville-Marie (Montreal) by De Maisonneuve. The European population in Canada, is then not more than 200 souls.
1644	The Iroquois burn down several Huron villages and butcher the inhabitants.
1645	The Company of the One Hundred Associates abandon to the Colonists the monopoly of the fur trade.
1648	D'AILLEBOUST succeeds de Montmagny.
1649	The Iroquois suddenly fall, at three different places, upon Huron villages, and either butcher and carry off most of their inhabitants.
1651	DE LAUZON succeeds D'Ailleboust—The Iroquois are becoming more and more formidable; they attack Montreal and Three Rivers.
1653	De Maisonneuve brings from France a recruit of 100 men, skilled in some trade, and sincere Catholics.
1656	DE LAUZON-CHARNY governs *ad interim* after his father's departure for France.
1657	D'AILLEBOUST governs also *ad interim* after de Lauzon-Charny.
1658	D'ARGENSON (Viscount) succeeds de Lauzon as Governor-General.
1660	Seventeen brave Frenchmen of Montreal, headed by Dollard, sacrifice themselves for the safety of the Colony.
1661	D'AVAUGOUR (Baron) succeeds d'Argenson. He gets into difficulty with Bishop De Laval about the traffic of brandy with the Indians.
1663	The Colony is visited by one of the most terrific earthquakes on record in Canada.
1663	DE MESY succeeds d'Avaugour.—European population, 2500; Quebec alone, 800.—An edict of the King creates at Quebec a Supreme Council composed of the Governor, the Bishop, the Intendant, the At-

A.D.	RELIGIOUS PA
1637	quin Mission an the Hotel-Dieu Quebec; the first Brulart de Sillery second, by the D ess d'Aiguillon.
1639	The convent of the sulines in Quebe founded by Mm la Peltrie.
1642	On May 17th, Fa Vimont, a Jesuit, the first Mass Montreal. The Is is placed under protection of the B. Virgin.—The H Dieu of Montre founded by Manse and Mrs. Bullion.
1646	Father Jogues is sacred by the quois, Oct. 17th.
1647	Father Lequeu di ers Lake St. John Saguenay. — Fa Druillettes re the sea through Chaudière and nebec Rivers.
1649	Fathers Daniel, De beuf, Lalemant, Garnier, are c horribly tortured death, or massa by the Iroquois, Lake Huron.
1652	Father Buteux is sacred by the quois on the St. rice River.
1653	Founding of the gregation of N. D Montreal, by S Bourgeois, Sept.
1654	Mrs. De Champlain an Ursuline Meaux, France.

D.	SPAIN.	GERM.	ENGLAND.	FRANCE.	THE CHURCH.
623	.....	.....	.....	.....	URBAN VIII.—This Pope cultivates Latin and Ital. Poetry and corrects the liturgical hymns. He publishes the Bull *Eminente* condemning Jansenism.—His pontificate sees the founding of the Congregation of St. Lazarus, by St. Vincent of Paul. That of the Seminary of St. Sulpice, by Mr. Olier.—St. Francis Regis, Apostle of Vivarais, Cevennes, &c.—Horrible persecution in Japan against the Christians.
624	.....	Danish *War.*	.....	Richelieu, minister of State.	
625	.....	.....	Charles I King.		
628	.....	.....	.....	Siege of LaRochelle.	
630	.....	Swedish *War.*	.....	*Journée des Dupes.* Alliance with Sweden.	
635	.....	Fr. *War.*	.....	The French Academy founded by Card. Richelieu.	
637	FERD. III., E.		Rising of the Scotch against England		
639	.....	.....		Foundation of the Bourse in Paris.	
642	.....	.....	Battle of Keynton	Death of Richelieu.	
643	Olivarès is disgraced.	.....	Battle of Newbury.	LOUIS XIV., King.—Ann of Austria, Regent.—Mazarin minister.—Battle of Rocroy, gained by Condé.	INNOCENT X., Pope. He combats nepotism.—The fanatical sect of Puritans, in Scotland, draw up and sign a new *Covenant*, "sealed", do they say, "by Heaven itself", and take Ol. Cromwell for their leader.—Issuing of a Bull condemning Jansenism.
644	.....	.....	.....	Battle of Fribourg gained by Conde.	
645	.....	.....	.....	Battle of Wordlingue, gained by Condé.	
647	Siege of Lerida	.....	Charles I a prisoner		
648	.....	.....	.....	Battle of Lens, gained by Condé.—Treaty of Westphalia.	
			Charles I beheaded.		
649	.....	.....	O. CROMWELL.	The fronde.—Condé besieges Paris defended by Turenne.	ALEXANDER VII., Pope.—He receives in the Church Queen Christina of Sweden.—The Sorbonne condemns Jansenism.—Bull confirming every point of those published by Urban VIII and Innocent X. for the condemnation of Jansenism.—Death of St. Vincent of Paul, aged 85.
650	.....	.....	Ireland is laid waste.		
655	.....	.....	.....	.....	
658	.....	Leopold I. E.	R. Cromwell.	Battle of the Dunes, gained by Turenne.	
659	.....	.....	.....	Treaty of the Pyrenees.	
660	.....	.....	CHARLES II., King.		
661	.....	.....	.....	Death of Mazarin.—Colbert succeeds him.	

CANADA.—FRENCH RULE.

A.D.	CIVIL AND POLITICAL PART.
1663	torney-General, and five Councillors.—Three courts of justice are established respectively at Quebec, Montreal, and Three Rivers.—The Montreal Company grants the Island of Montreal to the Sulpicians.
1664	The rights of the Company of the One Hundred Associates are transferred to the West-India Company.
1665	**DE TRACY** (Marquis), Viceroy. **DE COURCELLES**, Governor.—Talon, Intendant.
1666	Three forts are built, viz.: at Sorel, Chambly, and Ste. Thérèse.—The Viceroy marches against the Iroquois and obliges them to sue for peace.
1672	**DE FRONTENAC** (Louis de Buade, Count) succeeds De Courcelles, as Governor-General.
1673	De Frontenac constructs a fort at Cataraqui (Kingston), and gives it his own name. He has M. Perrot, Governor of Montreal, arrested.—Louis Jolliet of Quebec, and Father Marquette, a Jesuit, discover the Mississippi.
1679	De la Salle launches on Lakes Erie and Ontario the first vessels that ever ploughed those waters.
1682	**DE LA BARRE** (Le Fêvre) succeeds Count de Frontenac.—De la Salle explores the Mississippi River down to the Gulf of Mexico, and calls the country which it waters, *Louisiana*, in honor of Louis XIV.
1685	**DE DENONVILLE** (Marquis) succeeds De la Barre.
1686	D'Iberville and his brothers (Canadians) take from the English all their posts in Hudson Bay, Fort Nelson excepted.—De Denonville has some Iroquois chiefs unjustly arrested.
1687	De Denonville defeats the Iroquois, burns and destroys a great number of their villages.
1689	In the night of the 5th of August, the Iroquois suddenly appear in the Island of Montreal, and butcher a great many of its inhabitants without distinction of age or sex.

A.D.	RELIGIOUS PART.
1660	DE LAVAL-MONTMORENCY (Francis Bishop of Petrea, arrives at Quebec, Vicar-Apostolic New France, June Until then, Canada was under the jurisdiction of the Archbishop of Rouen.—Founding by Queylus, of the Seminary of St. Sulpice at Montreal.
1663	Founding of the Seminary of Quebec by Bp De Laval. Incorporation of the Parish to the Seminary.
1666	Dedication of the Quebec Cathedral to the Immaculate Conception, July 2.
1667	The tithes, from the 13th, are reduced to the 26th part.
1668	Foundation of the little Seminary of Quebec.
1670	The Recollet Fathers return to Canada.—Death of the Ven Mother of the Incarnation, first Superioress of the Ursulines of Quebec.
1674	Clement X. erects Quebec into a Bishopric.
1679	The irremovability of parish priests proclaimed.
1682	Bishop De Laval excommunicates the traffickers in brandy.
1684	Erec. of a Chapter in the Cathedral of Quebec.—The opposition Bishop De Laval encounters from the Governors and

	Spain.	Germ.	England.	France.	The Church.
		Battle of St. Gothard.		Devolution War.—Conquest of Flanders and Franche-Comté. Condé, Turenne, Louvois, Vauban, command the King's army	Clement IX., Pope.—The *Clementine Peace*, in the affair of Jansenism.—Alliance between Jansenism and Gallicanism.—The celebrated *Lettres Provinciales*; a work, said Voltaire, resting on a false ground.—Capture of Candia by the Turcs.
	Chs. II., Kg.		Great fire in London.		
				Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle.	
					Clement X., Pope.—The *Regale*, in France.—Philosophy of Descartes.
				Holland War.	
				Battle of Senef gained by Condé.	
				Turenne is killed by a cannon ball at Salzbach, after having successively defeated the Imperialists in 5 battles.	Innocent XI., Pope.—Gallican liberties. Difficulties between the Pope and Louis XIV. concerning the *Regale*.—Founding, in France, 1681, of the Institute of the Brothers of the Christian Schools, by the Ven. J.-B. De La Salle, a priest.—General Assembly of the Clergy of France, 1682.—Innocent XI. condemns the "Declaration of the Clergy of France", and annuls all the acts of this Assembly.—He suppresses the *Franchises*.—Condemnation of Molinos' errors, 1687.
				Naval Battle of Messina won by Duquesne.	
			Bill of the *Habeas Corpus*. Whigs and Tories.	Peace of Nimeguen Louis XIV. is surnamed *the Great*.	
			Test Bill.		
		Siege of Vienna by the Trks		Death of Colbert.	
			Charles II. abjures Protestantism and dies. James II. King.	Revocation of the Edict of Nantes.	
				Germany, Spain, Holland, Savoy, Italy, and Sweden, league against France which remains victorious.	
			Mary & William III.		
					Alexander VIII. Pope.
				Battle of Fleurus gained by Luxembourg.	

CANADA.—FRENCH RULE.

A.D.	CIVIL AND POLITICAL PART.	A.D.	RELIGIOUS PART.
1689	**DE FRONTENAC,** Governor-General for the second time.—D'Iberville upholds the honor of the French flag in the neighborhood of Hudson Bay.	1684	tendants in the administration of his diocese, engages him on a journey to France to choose his successor.
1690	De Frontenac invades the English Colonies at three different points at the same time. But these colonies promptly equip a fleet the command of which they entrust to Sir William Phipps, who captures nearly all the French possessions in Acadia. Soon after, Phipps, with a second and more powerful armament, appears before Quebec; but after a four days' bombardment, he is obliged to abandon the enterprise.	1688	**DE ST. VALIER** (John Baptist Chevrière), 2nd Bishop of Quebec, succeeds Bishop De Laval who resigns.
		1689	.....
		1692	The "Hôpital Général" of Quebec is founded by Bishop de St. Valier.
1691	De Callières, aided by the brave De Varennes, routs 1000 Iroquois at La Prairie.	1694	Foundation of the "Hôpital-General" of Montreal by Bro. CHARON.
1692	An English squadron is obliged to retreat from Placentia in Newfoundland.	1697	The Ursulines at Three Rivers founded by Bishop de St. Valier.
1693	The English capture Fort Ste Anne in Hudson Bay.		
1694	Fort Nelson, in Hudson-Bay, surrenders to D'Iberville.	1698	Foundation, by the Seminary of Quebec, of a Mission in Illinois.
1695	A band of Iroquois is exterminated, at Boucherville, by Canadian volunteers.	1700	Death of Sr. Bourgeois, at Montreal, at the age of 80, Jan. 12. Mr. Dollier de Casson, Superior of the Seminary of Montreal, also 80 years old, pronounces the funeral oration.
1696	D'Iberville captures Fort Pemmaquid with St. Johns, Newfoundland, and nearly all the trading posts in that Island.		
1697	D'Iberville drives the English out of Hudson Bay.		
1698	**DE CALLIÈRES,** Governor of Montreal, becomes Governor-General.—Settlement of Louisiana, by D'Iberville who is named its Governor.		
1700	De La Motte Cadillac, with 100 Canadians, lays the foundation of Detroit—Population of Canada, 20000; English colonies, 260000.	1701	First conflagration of the Seminary of Quebec.
		1703	.....
1703	**DE VAUDREUIL** (Marquis), succeeds de Callières.	1705	Second conflagration of the Seminary of Quebec.
1704	Fresh hostilities between the French and English colonists.	1708	Bishop De Laval, who

RUSSIA.

A.D.	SPAIN.	GERM.	ENGLAND.	FRANCE.	THE CHURCH.
1690	.....	.....	Battle of the Boyne lost by James II.	Battle of Staffarde gained by Catinat.	Louis XIV. resumes the right of the *Franchises*.—Bull of Alexander VIII. condemning the "Declaration of the Clergy of France".
1691	.....	.....	.....	.....	INNOCENT XII., Pope.-Bull against nepotism.—Louis XIV. disavows the acts of the Assembly of 1682. Letter of the French bishops to Innocent XII., declaring the decrees of 1682 null and void.—Submission of Fenelon to the condemnation of his work the *Maximes des Saints*.
1692	.....	Hanoverian electorate.	.....	Naval Battle of La Hogue, lost by Tourville.--Battle of Steinkerque gained by Luxembourg.	
1693	.....	.....	.....	Battles of Nerwinde and la Marsaille gained, the 1st by Luxembourg, the 2nd by Catinat.	
1694	.....	.....	Founding of the Royal Bank of London.		
1697	.....	Victory of Zentha won over the Trks	.....	Peace of Ryswick.	
1700	PHILIP V., King	.....	Death of JamesII. in Fruce.	War of the Spanish succession.—Austria, England, Holland, Portugal, and Prussia, league against France and Spain.	CLEMENT XI. Pope. He energetically protests against the unjustifiable aggression of Joseph I. of Austria, against Italy. Issuing of the Bull *Unigenitus* condemning 101 propositions drawn from the *Réflexions Morales* of Quesnel, the Jansenist; it is received by the Clergy of France, and supported by Louis XIV. Questions of the *Chinese Rites*. The Plague in Marseilles, 1720, and Bishop De Belzunce.—Clement XI. sends three ship-loads of corn to the city of Marseilles.
1702	.....	.....	ANNE (Stuart), Queen.	Battle of Friedlingen gained by Villars.	
1703	.....	.....	.....	First battle of Hochstadt gained by Villars.—Revolt of the Protestants in the Cevennes.	
1704	.....	Second battle of Hochstadt gained over the Fr. Jos. I. Emp.			
1705	.....	.....	.....	Battle of Ramillies gained by the English under Marlborough. —Defeat of Marsin near Turin.	
1706	.....	.....	.....	.....	
1707	Batt. of Almanza.	.....	Union of England and Scotland.		
1709	.....	.....	.....	Battle of Malplaquet gained by Prince Eugene and Marlborough.	

CANADA.—FRENCH RULE.

A.D.	CIVIL AND POLITICAL PART.	A.D.	RELIGIOUS PART.
1705	The English capture the French ship, *Seine*, on her way to Quebec, having on board Bishop de St. Valier.	1708	had resigned since 1688, dies in the Seminary of Quebec at the age of 86.
1710	The English take Port Royal and name it Annapolis.	1709	.....
1711	The English fail in their new attempt of invading Canada.—Du Buisson, commander of Fort Detroit, beats several times the Outagamis.	1711	.....
1713	By the Treaty of Utrecht, France cedes to Great Britain, Acadia, Newfoundland, Hudson Bay, and the country of the Iroquois.	1714	De Mornay, Bishop *in partibus* of Eumenies, is named coadjutor to Bishop De St. Valier.—Death of Miss LEBER, for 20 years a recluse
1721	European popul. of Canada, 25000; Quebec, 7000; Montreal, 300: 5600 horses.	1716	.....
1723	The first building of ships at Quebec.		The Hospitallers of Montreal reckon five missions (schools) in the country: they are Pointe-aux-Trembles, Boucherville, Longueuil, Batiscan, and Three Rivers.—
1725	DE LONGUEUIL (Baron), Governor of Montreal, heads the administration of the colony *ad interim*.		
1726	**DE BEAUHARNAIS** (Marquis), Governor-General.	1721	
1731	De Beauharnais erects a Fort at Crown Point on Lake Champlain.		Father Charlevoix visits Canada and writes its history.—Father Rasle, the missionary of the Abenaquis, is massacred by the English.
1733	Public attention is turned towards the iron mines of St. Maurice.		
1737	Founding of the Grey Nuns, at Montreal, by Mrs. d'Youville.		
1744	European popul. of Canada, 50000.	1722	Erection of 82 parishes from Kamouraska to Chateauguay.
1745	The English colonists take Louisbourg.		
1747	**DE LA GALISSONNIÈRE** (Count) administers the Colony during the captivity of De la Jonquière.—De Ramezay repulses the English at Beaubassin.	1725	.....
			Death of Bishop De St. Valier at the "Hôpital-General", Quebec, at the age of 74.—Foundation, at Louisbourg, of an establishment for the Sisters of the Congregation of N.-D.
1748	Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle by which Canada recovers the places lost during the last war,—Louisbourg, Cape Breton, etc.	1727	
1749	**DE LA JONQUIÈRE** (Marquis), Governor-General. Under his administration, public men in Canada commence not to be proof	1728	**DE MORNAY** (L. F. Duplessis), 3rd Bish-

RUSSIA.

Batt
of Pu
tava
gaine
by P
ter I.

Battl
of
Pruth
lost b
Peter

Secon
voya
of P
ter
thr'gl
out
Euro

Peac
of N
tadt

Cath
rine
Emp

PET
II.
Em

D.	GERMAN.	ENGLAND.	FRANCE.	SPAIN.	THE CHURCH.
710	.....	.....	.....	Battle of Villa-viciosa gained by Vendome	
711	CHS. VI., Emp.	.....	Battle of Denain gained by Villars over Prince Eugene.		
713	.....	.....	Treaty of Utrecht.		
714	.....	*House of Brunswick.* GEORGE I. King.	Peace of Rastadt.		
715	.....	The son of James II. attemps to recover the throne.	Death of Louis XIV.—Under his reign, styled the *Augustan Age* of French literature, flourished in France a constellation of eminent personages, such as Condé, Turenne, Luxembourg, Vauban, Villars, Duquesne, Tourville, Colbert, Bossuet, Fenelon, Massillon, Pascal, Descartes, Corneille, Racine, &c.—Louis XV., King.—The Duke of Orleans, Regent.		
716	Battles of Peterwardein and Belgrade gained by Pr. Eugen. over the Turks.	.....	Financial Scheme of Law.		
718	Passorowitz Peace.	.....	The Quadruple Alliance.		
721	.....	.....	.....	.....	INNOCENT XIII., Pope.—Peter the Great expels the Jesuits from Russia.
724	.....	.....	.....	.....	BENEDICT XIII., Pope.—He confirms the Bull *Unigenitus* in a council assembled at Rome.—Card. de Noailles submits to the Holy See.—The Pope condemns the decrees of the Parliaments of France forbidding the celebrat. of the feast of St. Gregory VII.—The Jansenists propagate liturgic novelties in many dioceses in France.
726	.....	.....	Ministry of Card. Fleury.		
727	.....	GEORGE II., Kg.			
730	.....	.....	.....	.....	CLEMENT XII., Pope.—The sophist Voltaire is entering upon his long career of literary and immoral triumphs by an unequalled hypocrisy, corruption, and infamy.—Clement XII. condemns Freemasonary.
733	.....	.....	War of the Polish succession.		

CANADA.—FRENCH RULE.

A.D.	CIVIL AND POLITICAL PART.	A.D.	RELIGIOUS PART	RUSSIA.	PRUSSIA.
	against corruption.	1728	op of Quebec. He never came in Canada.		*Raised a Kingdom* (1701). FREDERIC I., King.—FREDERIC-WILLIAM I., King (1713.)
1752	**DUQUESNE DE MENNEVILLE** (Marquis) succeeds De la Jonquière who was detested for his avarice.		M. **DOSQUET**, Sup. of the Congregation of N.-D., at Montreal, Bishop *in partibus* of Samos, coadj. of Bishop De Mornay, and administrator of the diocese of Quebec.	ANNE, daughter of Iwan V., Emp.	
1754	De Contrecœur builds Fort Duquesne (Pittsburg).—De Villiers obliges Washington to capitulate at Fort Necessity.				
1755	**DE VAUDREUIL-CAVAGNAC** (Marquis), third son to the first Governor of that name, succeeds to Marquis Duquesne.—Battle of the Monongahela won by De Beaujeu and Dumas on Braddock and Washington.—The English become master of Acadia. Decoying many of its inhabitants to Grand Pré, they declare them prisoners, embark them pell-mell on their vessels and disperse them throughout their colonies.—English population in America, 1,200,000; French popul. 80000.	1730	.....		
		1733	**DOSQUET** (Peter Herman), 4th Bishop of Quebec, succeeds Bishop De Mornay who had resigned. Father Anneau and M. De la Verendrye are massacred by the Sioux.		
1756	Fort Bull surrenders to De Lery.—The Marquis de MONTCALM arrives in Canada as commander-in-chief of the forces. He is accompanied by the Chevalier de Levis, De Bougainville, and De Bourlamaque.—Montcalm takes Forts Ontario and Oswego.	1739	**DE L'AUBERIVIÈRE** (F. L. De Pourroy), 5th Bishop of Quebec, dies on his arrival in the Port, at the age of 29. He was the successor to Bishop Dosquet who resigned for reasons of health, and returned to France.		
1757	Montcalm takes Fort William-Henry.				
1758	The French lose Louisbourg, Cape Breton, Prince-Edward Island, Forts Frontenac and Duquesne.—Battle of Carillon in which Montcalm, with 3600 men, defeats 16000 English troops commanded by Abercrom-	1740	.....	IWAN VI., E.	FREDERIC the Great King
		1741	**DE PONTBRIANT** (Henry Mary Du-	ELIZABETH Emp.	

	GERMAN.	ENGLAND.	FRANCE.	SPAIN.	THE CHURCH.
35	.....	.....	Treaty of Vienna.		BENEDICT XIV., Pope.—Scandalous conduct of the Parliament of Paris in ecclesiastical affairs. Brief requiring respect and submission to the Bull *Unigenitus*.—Issuing of briefs for the regulation of the various jurisdictions of Maronite, Coptic and Melchite Christians, as also for the Catholics of Albania and Servia.
40	Maria Theresa.	Supports Maria Theresa.	War of the Austrian Succession.	.....	
42	Chs. VII., Emp.	Fall of Walpole prime Minister.	Sickness of Louis XV., at Metz. He is surnamed the *Belored*, a title of which he afterwards showed himself unworthy		
43	.....	Battle of Dettingen gained by the Duke of Cumberland.			
45	House of Lorraine. Francis I., Emp.	War of the 2nd pretender.	Battle of Fontenoy gained by Marshal of Saxe.	Ferdinand VI., Kg.	CLEMENT XIII Pope.—Conspirac of the Philosophy the 18th century against the Church, headed by Voltaire. —Condemnation of the Emile of J. J. Rousseau and other most immoral and impious books spread in profusion by the anti-Christian Philosophy of that time. The learned, pious, and ven. Society of Jesus is lamentably persecuted and finally expelled from Portugal, Spain, France, Naples, Parma and Malta. Clement XIII. annuls the decree of the Parliament of Paris suppressing the Soc. of Jesus.
46	.....	Battle of Culloden gained by Cumberland.	Battle of Rocoux gained by Marshal of Saxe.		
47	.....	.....	Battle of Lawfeld gained by Marshal of Saxe.		
48	.....	.....	Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle.		
56	.....	.....	Capitulation of Closter-Severn.		
58	.....	.....	Ministry of the Duke of Choiseul.	.....	
59	.....	.....	.....	Chs. III., King	
60	.....	George III., King.	France loses Canada and most of her Colonies.—*Family compact* Treaty.		
61	.....	.....			
63	.....	.....	Treaty of Paris.		
64	Jos. II. E.				
66	.....	Ministry of Lord Chatham.	Reunion of Lorraine to France.		CLEMENT XIV., Pope.—The Catholic States of Europe, all then under the influence of Freemasonry, obtain a brief for the suppression of the Society of Jesus.
68	.....	.....	Reunion of Corsica to France.		
69	.....	.....	Birth of Nap. Bonaparte, at Ajaccio (Cor.)	.....	

CANADA.—ENGLISH RULE.

A.D.	Civil and Political Part.
1758	bie; the French lost 377 men, including 37 officers: and the English loss is said to have been from 4 to 5000 men.
1759	The English forces in America are now 40000 regular troops and 20000 reserve; the French, only 5600 regular troops and 1500 militiamen, from 16 to 60 years of age.—The English before Quebec; Wolfe disembarks on Orleans Island, and is soon after repulsed from Montmorency with a loss of 600 men.—Fort Niagara capitulates, and Bourlamaque is compelled to blow up Forts Carillon and St. Frederic.—Battle of the Plains of Abraham, Sept. 13, in which Montcalm and Wolfe are mortally wounded: Quebec surrenders to the English.
	Part Second.
	ENGLISH RULE.
1760	**GEN. MURRAY,** Governor of Quebec.—Popul. of Canada, 75000 French, and 8000 Indians.—Battle of Ste Foye won by De Levis on Murray, April 28.—The English establish martial law.—General capitulation signed at Montreal, Sept. 8.
1763	Treaty of Paris by which Canada is ceded to England.—Gen. Murray is appointed Governor-General.—1200 persons of distinction, either return to France, or sail for San Domingo.
1764	Exclusion of the Canadians from the Government offices.
1766	**GEN. CARLETON** succeeds Gen. Murray.—The Test Oath is suspended.
1774	Promulgation of the Quebec Act confirming the rights guaranteed to Catholics by the capitulation of Montreal.—First Legislative Coun-

A.D.	Religious Part.
	breuil), 6th Bishop of Quebec.—Bishop De Mornay dies at Paris, at the age of 78.
1753	Founding by Mrs. DE YOUVILLE of the Grey Sisters of Montreal (Hôpital-Général)
1755	Conflagration of the Hôtel-Dieu, Quebec; one of the Religious perishes in the flames.
1759	A flag taken from Phipps, in 1690, had remained until then hung up at the vault of the Cathedral of Quebec.
1760	Death of Bishop De Pontbriand, at Montreal (June 8), at the age of 51.
1761	The English Government refuses to recognize the Catholic Bishop of Quebec.
1762	.....
1764	The chapter of the Cathedral of Quebec chooses Mr. Briand, one of its members, to be Bishop of Quebec, M. Montgolfier having been refused by the government.
1766	**BRIAND** (John Oliver), 7th Bishop of Quebec, the see having remained vacant

RUSSIA.

D.	SPAIN.	ENGLAND.	FRANCE.	GERM.	PRUSSIA.	THE CHURCH.
72	.....	.....	.....	League for the 1st partition of Poland.	League for the 1st partition of Poland	PIUS VI., Pope.—The Jesuits are received in Prussia and Russia.—The Pope condemns the Jansenistic Synod of Pistoja held by Bishop Ricci.—Condemnation of the *Civil Constitution of the Clergy* in France, and courageous bearing of most of the French clergy.—Pius VI. addresses the Cardinals in a consistory, on the occasion of the execution of Louis XVI.—The French Convention proscribes Catholicism and its ministers throughout France, and establishes the *Worship of Reason*.—The prisons are soon filled with faithful priests, and thousands of these die on the scaffold. Many remain in concealment, whilst an immense number choose exile.
74	.....	Revolt of her American colonies.	LOUIS XVI., King.—Count of Maurepas, Prime Minister.			
75	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	
76	.....	.....	Ministry of Necker, a protestant banker. Two years later Louis XVI. espouses the cause of the American Colonies.			
81	.....	Gen. Cornwallis is beaten by Washington at Yorktown.			FREDERIC—WILLIAM II., King.	
83	.....	.....	Treaty of Versailles.			
86	.....	.....	.....	.....		
88	CHS. IV., King	.....	2nd Ministry of Necker.			
89	.....	.....	Reunion of the States General.—National Assembly.—Constituent Assembly.	Revolt of Belgium.		
90	.....	.....	Civil Constitution of the Clergy.	LEOPOLD II. Emp.	Publication of the *Declaration of Pilnitz.*	
91	.....	.....	Legislative Assembly.	.....		
92	.....	.....	Battles of Valmy and Jemmapes, gained by Dumouriez.—NATIONAL CONVENTION.—REPUBLIC.	FRS. II., Emp.	The Duke of Brunswick is defeated by Dumouriez and Kellermann.	
93	.....	.....	Louis XVI. and Mary Antoinette beheaded.—The Reign of Terror.—1st Coalition.—Vendean War.—Ls. XVII.—Taking of Toulon.	League for the 2nd partition of Poland.		

CANADA.—ENGLISH RULE.

A.D.	CIVIL AND POLITICAL PART.	A.D.	RELIGIOUS PART.
1774	cil of 23 members, of which one third are Catholics.—Rising of the American English colonists against their Metropolis. General Congress at Philadelphia: commencement of hostilities.—The Canadians reject the proposals of the revolutionary party.	1766	since the demise of Bis De Pontbriand.—Tran tion of Sr. Bourgeois' mains from the Pa church, to the Chapel the Congregation of N.
1775	The Americans capture Forts Carillon, St. Frederic, Chambly, and St. John. They give the command of their armies to Gen. Washington.—Gen. Montgomery & Arnold invade Canada, they occupy Sorel, Three Rivers, Montreal, and march on Quebec, which place they besiege. On Dec. 30, Gen. Montgomery and several other officers fall in attempting to carry the city by storm.	1768	Governor Carleton for Religious Communities women to receive po lants before the age of and to admit any to Religious profes without his permiss this prohibition is repe only two years later.
1776	The Americans raise the siege of Quebec and withdraw, march.—Brigadier Fraser beats at Three Rivers the American General Thompson.—On July 4, the Americans declare themselves independent.	1772	D'Esgly. Bishop *in par* of Dorylee, coadj. to B op Briand.
1777	Gen. Burgoyne is completely beaten by Gen. Arnold. at Saratoga.	1773	Last Assembly of the Qu Chapter.
1778	**GEN. HALDIMAND** succeeds Carleton and governs with despotism and terror. He imprisons arbitrarily hundreds of citizens.	1775	Fruitless Mission of Carroll, since 1st Bi of Baltimore, to rall Canadians to the Amer Revolution.
1783	Great Britain recognizes the independence of the United-States.	1776	The College of the Jes in Quebec, is conv into a Barrack.
1784	HENRY HAMILTON, Lieutenant-Governor.—Introduction of the *Habeas Corpus Act*.—Popul. of the Province of Quebec, 113,012.	1777	Bishop Dosquet dies Paris, at the age of 8
1785	COL. HOPE, Lieutenant-Governor.	1784	**D'ESGLY** (L. P. M cheau), 8th Bishop of bec, succeeds to B Briand who had jus signed.
1786	**DORCHESTER** (Carleton, Lord), Governor-General for the 2nd time.—The French Canadians are bestiring themselves to obtain the reform of their political institutions.	1786	J. F. Hubert, Bishop *in tibus* of Almyre, Coad Bishop D'Esgly.
1791	Constitutional Act, establishing a representative government, and dividing the country into two Provinces, Upper, and Lower Can-	1788	**HUBERT** (John Fra 9th Bishop of Quebec, ceeds to Bishop d who had just died.
		1789	BAILLY DE MES (ch. F.), Bishop *in bus* of Capse, and C tor to Bishop Hubert in the General Ho aged 53.
		1794	Bishop Briand dies i

A.D.	SPAIN.	GERM.	PRUSS.	RUSSIA	FRANCE.	ENGL.	CHURCH.
1794	Ministry of Manual Godoï.	.....	.....	.....	Battle of Fleurus gained by Jourdan.—Fall of Robespierre.	Lord How defeats the Fr. fleet.	Pius VI. is barbarously removed from Rome in a sickly state by order of the French Directory and brought to Valence, in France, where he dies of ill-treatment (1799). Pius VI was styled by the Romans the "Father of the Poor."
1795	.....	Last partition of Poland.	Last partition of Poland. Alliance with the Frch. Republic.	Last partition of Poland.	Holland invaded—Death of Louis XVII.—Disaster of Quiberon.—Victory of the Convention; Gen. Nap. Bonaparte.—THE DIRECTORY.		
1796	.....	.....	.....	PAUL I., Emp.	Campaign against Italy conducted by Gen. Bonaparte who is victorious at Montenotte, Dego, Mondovi, Lodi, Mantua, Castiglione, Arcole.	Nelson is victorious over the Frch. fleet at Aboukir.	
1797	Jervis and Nelson defeat her fleet.	Peace of Campo-Formio.	FREDERIC WILLIAM III.	.....	Battle of Rivoli won by Gen. Bonaparte.—Treaty of Campo-Formio.	— Irish insurrection supported by the Fr. Republic.	
1798	.....	.....	.....	.....	Gen. Bonaparte's expedition against Egypt. He gains the battles of the Pyramids and Aboukir.		
1799	.....	War with Fr.	.....	War with Fr.	Another coalition against France.—Gen. Brunne defeats the English at Bergen, and Gen. Massena, the Russians, at Zurich.—CONSULATE, with Napoleon Bonaparte as 1st. Consul.	Ireland is incorporated to England.	PIUS VII., Pope. His election takes place at Venice. Unbelief, Schism, and Heresy are much disappointed.
1800	.....	.....	.....	.....	2nd Campaign against Italy.—Battles of Montebello and Marengo gained by Napoleon.—Battle of Hohenlinden gained by Moreau.		

CANADA.—ENGLISH RULE.

A.D.	Civil and Political Part.	A.D.	Religious Part.	U.-States.
	ada with an elective House of Assembly for each one.		Seminary of Quebec, at the age of 79.	Declaration of independence (1776).
1792	Popul. of Canada, 135000, including 15000 Anglo-Canadians, of whom 10000 belong to Upper Canada.—In Lower Canada, out of 50 members returned by the Canadians for the Legislative Assembly, 16 are English P. A. Panet is elected Speaker by 28 votes against 18.—Attempt to abolish the use of the French Language.	1795	DENAUT (Pierre), Bishop *in partibus* of Canathe, and Coadjutor to Bishop Hubert.	The independence recognized (1783).
		1796	Death of the last canon of the Quebec Chapter.—Newfounland becomes a Vicariate Apostolic.	G. Washington, President (1789).
1793	The Upper Canadian Assembly abolishes slavery.—Lord Dorchester forms a new Executive Council of 9 members, 2 only being Canadians.	1797	DENAUT (Pierre), 10th Bishop of Quebec.—Death of Bishop Hubert in the General Hospital, at the age of 58.	Vermont becomes a state (1791).
1795	Settlement of the question relating to seigniorial revenues.—Specification of the currency, and rate of exchange for sterling money.	1800	Death, in Quebec, of Father J. Cazot, the last Canadian Jesuit, and of Felix De Berry, the last Recollet Father in Canada. The English Crown takes possession of the Jesuits' properties.	Kentucky becomes a state (1792).
1796	**GEN. PRESCOTT** succeeds Lord Dorchester.			John Adams President (1797).
1797	Mr. Panet is re-elected Speaker of the House of Assembly. Several defections are noticed in the Canadian ranks; for instance, De Bonne and De Lanaudière.	1801	PLESSIS (Jos. O.), Bishop *in partibus* of Canathe, and Coadjutor to Bishop Denaut.	Death of Washington (1799).
1799	MILNES (Sir R. Shore), succeeds Gen. Prescott as Lieutenant-Governor. Death of Washington.	1804	Founding of the Seminary of Nicolet by Mr. J. M. Brassard, curate of this place.	Jefferson President (1801).
1804	DUNN (Hon. Thos.) succeeds Milnes.	1806	Death of Bishop Denaut, in Longueuil, at the age of 62.	Abolition of the slave trade (1808).
1805	Apparition of the *Mercury*.			
1806	Apparition of the *Canadien*. The publication of this paper marks the era of the liberty of the press in Canada.	1806	**PLESSIS** (Jos. Octave), 11th Bishop of Quebec.—Sollicitor General Sewell attempts to give the Catholic parishes to Protestants.	Jefferson forbids French and American vessels to enter into American ports (1809).
1807	**CRAIG** (Sir James), Governor-General. He is a despotic administrator, and strongly prejudiced against the Canadians and their religion.	1807	JANET (B. C.), curate of Rivière-	
1808	The names of the leading			

A.D.	GERM.	RUSSIA.	FRANCE.	ENGLAND	THE CHURCH.
1801		ALEXANDER I., Emp.	Quadruple alliance of the Northern States against France.—Peace of Luneville.	Insurrection in Ireland under the leadership of Robert Emmett.	Concordat with France (1801).—Schism of the "Little Church."—The churches are reopened in France.—Pius VII. protests against the *Organic Articles* (1802). He goes to Paris to anoint Napoleon Emperor of the French (1804). He refuses to annul the marriage of Jerome Bonaparte with Miss Patterson (1805). Napoleon, displeased, orders the occupation of several places in the Pontifical States, and, finally, of Rome herself.—Card. Pacca prime minister to the Holy see (1808). Napoleon is excommunicated (1809). Pius VII. is rudely taken from Rome and led to captivity (1809).—Napoleon, of his own authority, divorces with Josephine, and marries Archduchess Marie Louise.—First sessions of the Council of Paris (1811): the faithful Bishops are thrown into prisons by Napoleon's order and their sees are filled by intruded impcrialists.—Second Period of the Council of Paris.—The Pope revokes the Concordat lately wrung from him by violence.
1802			Peace of Amiens.—Napoleon is Consul for Life.—Founding of the Legion of honor.—Murder of the Duke of Enghien.		
1803			Expedition against St. Domingo.		
1804			The first Consul becomes Emperor under the name of NAPOLEON I.	Nelson destroys the French and Spanish fleet at Trafalgar.	
1805			Napoleon, King of Italy.—Third coalition.—Capitulation of Ulm.—Battle of Austerlitz.—Peace of Presburg.		
1806	*Austria.* FRANCIS, Emp.		Confederation of the Rhine.—*Fourth coalition.*—Battle of Jena gained over Prussia.—The *Continental blockade.*	Death of W. Pitt. The Fox Ministry.	
1807		Loss of the Batt. of Friedland.	Napoleon is victorious at Eylau and Friedland.—Treaty of Tilsitt.—Invasion of Portugal.	Copenhagen is bombarded.	
1808	Forced abdication.		Joseph Bonaparte, King of Spain.		
1809		Treaty of Friedrichshamn	Siege of Saragossa.—*Fifth coalition.*—Battles of Essling and Wagram gained by Napoleon.—Treaty of Vienna.	Conquest of the Ionian Islands	
1811			Birth of a son to Napoleon; he receives the name of *King of Rome.*	Wellington beats Marmont and takes possession of Madrid	
1812			Campaign of Moscow—Taking of Smolensk, Battle of Moskowa. Entry Nap. to Moscow and his retreat from Russia with the remnants of his *Gr. Arm.*		

CANADA.—ENGLISH RULE.

A.D.	CIVIL AND POLITICAL PART.	A.D.	RELIGIOUS PART.	U.-STATES.
	members of the Legislative Assembly, such as Panet, Bedard, Taschereau, etc., are cancelled from the list of the militia officers.		Ouelle, becomes Bishop *in partibus* of Sardes, and Coadjutor to Bishop Plessis.	
1809	The Governor dissolves Parliament for having insisted on the liberty of discussion.—The first steamboat on the St. Lawrence, called the *Accommodation*.	1809	.....	Madison, President.
1810	The new Parliament energetically protests against the offensive language used by Sir J. Craig in proroguing the last Parliament.—The House declares, by a three-fourth majority, the seat of Judge de Bonne vacant. The Governor dissolves the Parliament, seizes the presses of the *Canadien*, and has its proprietor together with Messrs. Bedard, Taschereau, Papineau, etc., arrested on charge of high treason.	1812	Founding of St. Hyacinthe College by M. Girouard.	War against Gr. Brit.
		1817	A Vicariate Apostolic is established in Nova Scotia.	Monroe, President.
		1818	Messrs. Provencher and Dumoulin start for the Red-River Mission.	Commercial Treaty with Great Britain.
1811	**PREVOST** (Sir George) succeeds Sir J. Craig. He wins the sympathy and support of the people.	1819	Bishop Plessis starts for Rome.—Quebec is erected into an Archbishopric.—Frightful darkness and hurricane at Montreal.—Mr. McDonald is appointed to the see of Kingston, and Mr. McEachern, to that of Rose, for New Brunswick and the Magdalen Islands, both as suffragants of Quebec.	Acquisition of Florida. First steamship sailing to Europe.
1812	War with the United States.—Taking of Fort Michilimakinac by the English, and surrender of the American armies of the West and of the Centre.—Retreat of the Northern American army under Gen. Dearborn. The Americans are more successful on sea. The *Constitution* and the *United States* capture several English frigates.	1820	.....	Populat. 9.625.734. In 1810, it was 7.239.903.
		1821	Mr. Lartigues is consecrated first Bishop of Montreal and becomes suffragant of Quebec.	
		1822	Consecration of Bishop Provencher, as suffragant of Quebec for Red-River.	
1813	The Americans defeat Gen. Proctor at Moravian Town. Commodore Perry captures the British flotilla on Lake Erie. The American Gen. Dearborn takes Toronto and Fort George. The British	1824	Founding of the College of Ste. Thérèse by Mr. Ducharme.	Lafayette visits the country.
		1825	Death of Archbishop Plessis in the General Hospital, aged 62.	John Quincy Adams, President.

A.D.	Austr.	Russia.	France.	England	The Church.
1813	.....	.....	*Sixth Coalition.*—Napoleon gains the battles of Lutzen, Bautzen, and Dresden; but he is completely defeated at Leipsick.—The allies invade France.		Return of Pius VII to Rome. The ven. Pontiff makes his solemn entrance into the eternal City having at his side, Card. Pacca, the faithful companion of his exile.
1814	.....	.....	Battle of Paris.—Napoleon is forced to abdicate.—1st *Restoration.*—Louis XVIII.—Treaty of Paris.	.....	—The Bull *Sollicitudo* officially restores the Society of Jesus, and the decree is hailed with joy by all the true friends of the Church and of religion.
1815	Treaty of Vienna.	.....	Return of Napoleon. The "Hundred days".—*Seventh Coalition.*—Napoleon is defeated at Waterloo; he abdicates for the 2nd time.—*Second Restoration.*—Louis XVIII.	Celebrated battle of Waterloo gained by Wellington	Divine Providence punishes in the prisoner of St. Helena, the persecutor of Pius VII.
1816	.....	Rebuilding of Moscow.	Captivity of Napoleon. Reorganization of the French Institute.	Suspension of the *Habeas Corpus.*	
1817	.....	.....	Great famine during the winter.—A new Concordat with the Holy See.		Concordats concluded with France and Bavaria.
1818	Napoleon's son named Duke of Reichstadt.	.....	The army of occupation quits the French territory.—First gas-lighting in Paris.	.....	Concordat with the Two Sicilies.
1819	Secret associations amg. the students	.....	Political troubles and condemnations.—Recall from exile, of all political offenders, the regicides excepted. Assassination by Louvel of the Duke of Berri, son of the Count of Artois, since Charles X.—Birth of Count of Chambord, son to the Duke of Berri.—	Death of Watt the inventor of steam-engine.	A Brief to all the Bishops of France, puts an end to the difficulties caused by the Concordat of 1817.
1820	Congress of Troppau.	.....	Death of M. DeMontyon.	George IV., King.	A Bull stamped with a truly Apostolic energy, is launched against the secret society of the Carbonari.—Forgetting all Napoleon's wrong Pius VII. remembers only his benefits, and prays for his persecutor.
1821	.....	.....	Death of Napoleon I. at St. Helena.—Champollion deciphers the Egyptian Hyeroglyphics.	.....	

CANADA.—ENGLISH RULE.

A.D.	CIVIL AND POLITICAL PART.	A.D.	RELIGIOUS PART.	U.-STATES.
	surprise the American army, near Burlington, and make Gen. Chandler and Winder prisoners.—Commodore Chauncey, on Lake Ontario, is victorious over the British Commander, Sir J. Yeo.—Defeat of the American General Wilkinson at Christler's Farm.—De Salaberry, with 300 Canadians, routs, near Chateauguay, the American Gen. Hampton who commands 7000 men.	1825	**PANET** (Bernard-Claude), 2nd Archbishop of Quebec.	Death of the Ex-Presidents, John Adams and Thomas Jefferson (1826).
1814	Ineffectual attack of the Americans on Lacolle Mill.—The British Gen. Drummond burns Oswego.—The Americans are victorious at Chippewa, and defeated at Lundy's lane.—The British retreat from Fort Erie with considerable loss.—Their flotilla on Lake Champlain is defeated by Commodore McDonough.—Gen. Ross repulses the Americans at Bladensburg, takes Washington and burns the Capitol, but is soon obliged to re-embark his troops.—At New Orleans, Gen. Jackson defeats the British, inflicting on them a heavy loss.—Peace is concluded at Ghent (Dec. 24th).	1827	SIGNAY (Joseph), Curate of Quebec, becomes Bishop *in partibus* of Fussala, and Coadjutor to Archbishop Panet.—Founding of Ste Anne Lapocatière College, by Mr. Painchaud.	
		1829	Erection of the Bishopric of Charlottetown, Prince Edward Island.	Andrew Jackson, President (1829).
		1830	.....	Popul. 12,850,240.
		1832	Founding of Assumption College.	
		1833	Death of Archbishop Panet, in the Hôtel-Dieu, aged 80.	Jackson *vetoes* the Bill passed for re-chartering the *Bank of the United States* (1832).
1815	GEN. DRUMMOND succeeds Sir G. Prevost with the title of Administrator.	1833	**SIGNAY** (Joseph), 3rd Archbishop of Quebec.—Bishop Gaulin is made Coadjutor to Bp. McDonald of Kingston.	
1816	Drummond dissolves the Legislative Assembly, but the people re-elect nearly all the same members.	1834	TURGEON (P. F.) of the Quebec Seminary, Bp. *in partibus* of Sydime, and Coadjutor to Archbishop Signay.	
1818	**SHERBROOKE** (Sir John C.), Governor-General, shows himself a clever and prudent administrator.—The Imperial Government recognizes the title of the Catholic Bishop of Quebec.	1836	The Work of the Propagation of the Faith established in Canada.	
1819	**RICHMOND** (Duke of) succeeds to Sir J. Sherbrooke; like Craig, he has recourse to extreme measures and prorogues the House.			
1819	MONK (Hon. James) and MAIT-			

AUSTR.	RUSSIA	FRANCE.	ENGLAND	THE CHURCH.
		Progress of the secret Societies and particularly of Carbonarism.	Troubles in Ireland	Leo XII., Pope.—A new ennemy, the so-called *liberalism*, an offshoot of the spirit of revolution, is now threatening Christian Europe and the Church.—Two illustrious names, Jos. De Maistre and De Bonald, now show forth, in full splendor, the great apologetic glories of Catholicism.—Some members of the French clergy try to ressuscitate Gallicanism.—Concordat with Hanover.
		Spanish expedition commanded by the Duke of Angouleme.	.....	
		Charles X., King.		
	Nicholas, Emp.	The Martignac or semi-liberal Ministry.—Ordinances forbidding the Bishops to employ religious in their ecclesiastical schools, and to receive pupils beyond a limited number.	The Cathol. Emancipation due to the efforts of Dan. O'Connell.	
	War with Turkey.			
	Taking of Varna.			
	Treaty of Adrianople	The Polignac Ministry.		Pius VIII., Pope. By his Encyclical letter, he gives warning of approaching danger, and points out to the reprobation of the world, among many evils, that of the secret Societies already condemned by Popes Clement XIII., Benedict XIV., Pius VII., and Leo XII.
	Insurrection in Poland.	Conquest of Algiers.—*Revolution*—LOUIS PHILIPPE I., King.	WILLIAM IV., Kg.	
	Poland loses her nationality.	Sacking, by the Mob, in Paris, of the Archiepiscopal palace.—Insurrection in Lyons. The French army expels the Hollanders from Belgium.	.....	Gregory XIV., Pope. With the help of Austria, he puts down the symptoms of revolt in the Pontifical States. He brings into the Sacred College the finished scholar Angelo Mai, and the philologist Mezzofanti.—Condemnation of de Lamennais' doctrine.—Prussia and Switzerland persecute the church.—Founding, in France, of the admirable Work of the Propagation of the Faith.—The clergy of France wins the admiration of the world
Dth. of the Duke of Reichstadt (Napoleon II.)	.....	The cholera ravages the whole country.—The Duchess of Berri in La Vendée.—Republican insurrection.—Taking of the citadel of Antwerp.	O'Connell continues fighting for Ireland's rights.	
		.....		
		Republican insurrection.		
Ferd. I., Emp.	.....	Fieschi's attempt on the King's life.—Abd-el-Kader in Algiers struggles against the French Dominat.		

CANADA.—ENGLISH RULE.

A.D.	Civil and Political Part.	A.D.	Religious Part.
	LAND (Sir P.) govern successively *ad interim*; the first dissolves Parliament.	1837	Bishop Bourget, Coadjutor to Bp. Lartigue.—Arrival, at Montreal, of the Brothers of the Christian Schools.
1820	**DALHOUSIE** (Earl of), Governor-General.		
1822	Papineau and Nelson are deputed to London to oppose the Union of the two Canad.		
1826	The Governor dissolves the Legislative Assembly to the great dissatisfaction of the people.		
1827	Dalhousie refuses to confirm the election of Papineau as Speaker, and, using offensive language like Craig and Richmond, prorogues the Assembly. Nelson, Viger and Cuvillier are deputed to England by the people.	1838	Messrs. Blanchet and Demers commence the Columbian Mission.
		1839	De Forbin-Janson, Bp. of Nancy, gives Missions throughout Canada.
1828	**KEMPT** (Sir James) succeeds to the Earl of Dalhousie. Mr. Papineau is recognized as Speaker.		
1830	**AYLMER** (Lord), a man of limited intellect replaces Sir J. Kempt. The Legislative Assembly is then composed of 60 Canadians and 24 English men.	1841	Arrival of the Oblates of Mary at Montreal.
1832	First apparition of cholera in Canada; death of 3300 persons in Quebec.	1842	Return of the Jesuit Fathers and arrival of the Ladies of the Sacred Heart in Canada.—Erection of the Bishoprics of St. John, N. B., and Halifax.—Arrival of the Brothers of the Christian Schools at Quebec.
1833	Seeing that Mr. Papineau is going too far in his opposition to the government, Messrs. Nelson, Cuvillier, Duval, etc. separate from him.		
1834	Founding of the Society of St. John Baptist, at Montreal, by L. Duvernay.—A series of 92 resolutions embodying the principal grievances of the Canadians against the government are adopted by the Assembly.—Second apparition of Cholera; it carries off 20000 persons in Canada.		
1835	**GOSFORD** (Lord) succeeds Lord Aylmer.		
1835	The Governor prorogues the House after a session of six days, and dismisses Papineau and several militia officers.—The Clergy tries, but in vain, to cool the popular excitement. The British troops are *defeated* at Chambly and St. Denis; but, at St. Charles, they oblige a party of insurgents to surrender, and burn the village. Soon after, Sir J. Colborne disperses, at St. Eustache and St. Benedict, 2000 insurgents, and burns these villages.	1843	Bp. Phelan, administrator of the Bishopric of Kingston.
		1844	Most Rev. F. N. Blanchet, Abp. of Oregon-City.—Rt. Rev. Power, 1st. Bp. of Toronto.—Rt. Rev. Fraser, 1st.
1838	**COLBORNE** (Sir John) administers the country *ad interim*.—The Constitution of		

Austr.	Spain.	France.	England	The Church.
.....	.....	Louis Nap.'s first attempt to seize the power, at Strasburg.		by their learning, zeal, and piety. The pulpit of Notre-Dame, in Paris, is then filled by those two princes of sacred oratory, Fathers de Ravignan and Lacordaire. The Catholic tribune has the illustrious Count de Montalembert.—The Science of history is beginning to do justice to the names of St. Gregory VII. of Innocent III., and of St. Pius V. Pope Gregory XVI.'s wisdom, firmness, and constancy, have won him an immortal name in history.
.....	Civil War	Taking of Constantine by Gen. Vallée.	Victoria. Queen.	
.....	.....	Treaty with England, Russia, Austria, and Prussia.—Paris fortified.—Second attempt of Louis-Nap. at Boulogne, against Louis-Philippe's government.—Translation of Napoleon I.'s remains to the Invalides.		
.....	Esparteto regent.	.....	Capitulation of Canton.	
.....	.....	Tragical end of the Duke of Orleans.		
.....	.....	Battle of Isly gained by Bugeaud.		
Troubles in Gallicia.	.....	Ls.-Napoleon makes his escape from the fort of Ham. Le Verrier discovers the new planet, *Neptune*.	.....	Pius IX., Pope.
.....	.....	Abd-el-Kader surrenders to Gen. Lamoricière.	.....	Encyclical letter on the contemporary errors.—Encyclical letter to Religious.
Revolut. at Vienna. Rising of Hungary.	.....	Fall of Louis-Philippe.—Proclamation of the Republic.—Constituant Assembly elected by universal suffrage.—Insurrection in Paris, in Mar; 2nd and more formidable Insurrection, in June.—The Archb. of Paris is assassinated on a barricade.—Gen. Cavaignac, named chief of the Executive Power, crushes the Insurrection.—Louis-Napoleon Bonaparte President of the Rep.	.....	A Letter, to the Catholic and Schismatic Eastern Christians.—Troubles in Rome.—Assassination of Count Rossi.—Flight of the Pope to Gaeta.
Hungarian War. -Kossuth.	.....	Siege and taking of Rome by the French.	.....	A Republic is proclaimed in Rome.—Protestation of Pius IX.—Rome is taken by the French, and the authority of the Pope is re-established.

CANADA.—ENGLISH RULE.

A.D.	Civil and Political Part.	A.D.	Religious Part.
	1791 is suspended.		Bp. of Arichat.
1838	**DURHAM** (Lord) succeeds Lord Gosford as Governor-General.—A general amnesty is proclaimed.	1845	Rt. Rev. Prince, Coa jutor to the Bp. Montreal.
1838	**COLBORNE** (Sir John) succeeds Lord Durham.—He suppresses partial insurrections with fire and sword. Many of the insurgents are sentenced to capital punishment, others, to banishment, and all their goods confiscated.	1846	Society of St. Vince of Paul established Quebec.—Rt. Rev. M. Blanchet, Bp. Walla-Walla.
1839	**THOMPSON** (Hon. C. P.) since Lord **SYDENHAM**, Governor-General.	1847	Rt. Rev. Demers, Bp. of Vancouver. Rt. Rev. Fleming, Bp. of St. Johns, Ne foundland.—Rt. Re Provencher, 1st. B of St. Boniface.—R Rev. Guigues, 1 Bp. of Bytown, sin Ottawa.—The B thers of Holy Cr at St. Laurent.
1840	The Bill for the Union of the two Canadas, receives the royal sanction.		
1841	The first Parliament of the United Provinces is held at Kingston.—Laws are passed relative to Municipal Systems and Public Education.—Dr. Meilleur is appointed Superintendent of Education of Lower Canada.	1848	Founding of the J uits' College at Mo real.
1842	**BAGOT** (Sir Charles) succeeds Lord Sydenham.—Inauguration of the Constitutional government. The *Tories* and the *Reformers*.—The Lafontaine-Baldwin Ministry.	1849	Establishment of t Sisters of Charity Quebec.
1843	**METCALFE** (Sir Charles) replaces Sir C. Bagot.—The "Ashburton Treaty" relative to boundary line between Canada and the U. S.—Resignation of the Lafontaine-Baldwin Ministry, and dissolution of the Parliament.—The seat of government is removed from Kingston to Montreal.	1850	**TURGEON** (Pe Flavian), 4th Abp. Quebec.—Rt. Rev. Charbonnel is con crated by Pius I 2nd Bishop of Toro
1844	CATHCART (Lord) administers the government *ad interim*.	1851	Eight Provincial Co cil of Quebec.
1847	**ELGIN** (Lord), Governor-General.—The typhus carries off, on the banks of the St. Lawrence, thousands of Irish emigrants.	1851	BAILLARGEON F.) is consecrated Rome Bp. *in parti* of Tloa, and nam Coadjutor to A Turgeon.
1849	Riots at Montreal; the Parliament buildings are set on fire.—Reappearance of Cholera.—Riots at Toronto and other places.	1852	Erection of the ec siastical Province Halifax;—Most R W. Walsh, 1st. A
1850	Parliament seats at Toronto.		
1852	Great fire in Montreal.		
1854	The Seigniorial tenure is abolished; the reserves of the Protestant clergy, secularized; and a Reciprocity Treaty is con-	1853	Archbishop Bed Apostolic Nuncio, sits Canada.— Rev. Prince, 1st

	Russia	France.	England	The Church.	U.-Sts.
50	.....	.....	.....	Re-establishment of the Catholic Hierarchy in England.	Annexation of Texas (1845).
51	.....	Louis-Napoleon Bonaparte's *Coup d'État* of Dec., 2. He is selected President for ten years.	Universal exposition in the Crystal palace.	Anti-Catholic policy of Sardinia.—Question of the Classics: Bp. Dupanloup, abbé Gaume.—Councils of Amiens, and Baltimore.—Persecution in New Granada.	Mexican War (1846).
52	.....	Louis-Napoleon Bonaparte is proclaimed Emperor under the name of Napoleon III.		Re-establishment of the Catholic Hierarchy in Holland.—Persecution in the Grand-Duchy of Baden.	Treaty with Mexico yielding to the U. States, New Mexico and Upper California (1848).
53	War agst. Turkey. The Turkish fleet is destroyed at Sinope.	The Eastern War.—Alliance of France with England against Russia, in behalf of Turkey.—Victory of Alma, in Crimea, won by Marshall St. Arnaud.—Gen. Canrobert succeeds St. Arnaud.—Siege of Sebastopol.—Battles of Balaklava and Inkermann.	Alliance with France against Russia.	Encyclical letter to the Catholic Armenians of Constantinople.—Definition and proclama ion of the dogma of the Immaculate Conception.	Gen. Taylor, President (1849).
54	.....			Persecution in Spa n.—Piedmont pe secutes the Religious.—Marriage question in Switzerland.—Concordat with Austria.	Millard Fillmore, Vice-President becomes President (1850).
55	Alexander II., Emp.	Gen. Canrobert is replaced by Gen. Pelissier before Sebastopol.—Taking of Fort Malakoff by Gen. Bosquet and MacMahon.—Fall of Sebastopol.—Pelissier is created Marshall of France and Duke of Malakoff.—Universal Exposition in Paris.	.....	Persecution in Mexico and in Piedmont.—The Feast of the Sacred Heart of Jesus becomes obligatory for the universal Church.	F. Pierce, President (1853).
56	.....	Birth of the *Imperial Prince*.—Congress of of Paris.—Great inundations in the Rhone and Loire basins.	.....	Triumphal journey of Pius IX. through his States.—The martyrs of the extreme East.	James Buchanan, President (1857).
57	.....	Assassination of the Abp. of Paris.—Conquest of the great Kabylie.	Indian insurrection.		

CANADA.—ENGLISH RULE.

A.D.	Civil and Political Part.	A.D.	Religious Part.
	cluded with the United States.		of St. Hyacinthe.—Rt. Re Cook, 1st Bp. of Three Rive —Rt. Rev. Taché, 2nd Bp. St. Boniface, Red River.—G vazzi, an apostate Itali
1854	**HEAD** (Sir Edmund) succeeds Lord Elgin.		Monk, preaches in Canada.
1855	Arrival of the French corvet *Capricieuse,* in Canadian waters.	1851	Second Provincial Council Quebec.—Inauguration of t
1856	The Legislative Council is rendered elective.		**LAVAL UNIVERSITY**, founde by the Seminary of Quebe —Rt. Rev. Baillargeon, admi istrator of the Archdiocese Quebec.
1857	Three Normal Schools are established,—Hon. P. O. Chauveau, Superintendent of Education for Lower Canada.	1856	Rt. Rev. Farrell, 1st Bp. of Ha ilton; Rt. Rev. Pinsonnau 1st Bp. of Sandwich.
1858	The city of Ottawa is selected by the Queen for the seat of the Provincial Government.—Adoption of the Monetary-Decimal System in Canada.—Atlantic Cable laid.	1857	Death of Bps. Gaulin and Phela of Kingston.
1860	The Prince of Wales visits Canada and the other British North American Provinces. He then inaugurates the Victoria tubular bridge at Montreal, and lays the first stone of the Parliament buildings at Ottawa.	1858	Rt. Rev. E. J. Horan, 4th Bp. Kingston.
1861	**MONCK** (Lord Viscount) succeeds Sir E. Head.	1859	Rt. Rev. Grandin, Coadjutor Bp. Taché.—Mt. Rev. T. Connolly, 2nd Abp. of Halifa
1865	Delegates from the British North American Provinces assemble at Quebec to devise a new system of government. The bases of a Federal Constitution are drawn up.	1860	Rt. Rev. J. Laroque, 2nd. Bp. St. Hyacinthe.—Rt. Rev. Lynch, 3rd Bp. of Toronto.—Rt. Rev. J. Sweeney, 3rd Bp of St. John, N. B.—Rt. Rev. Rogers, 1st Bp. of Chatham N. B.—Rt. Rev. P. McIntyr 3rd Bp. of Charlottetown.
1866	The British regulars, aided by the Canadian Militia, repel the Fenian raids.	1863	Third Provincial Council of Que bec.—Rt. Rev. H. Faraud, Vica Apostolic of Arthabaska.
1867	The Confederation, or Dominion of Canada, is sanctionned by royal proclamation, May 23rd, and inaugurated on the 1st of the following July.—The Confederation is divided into four Provinces: Upper Canada or Ontario; Lower Canada, or Province of Quebec; New-Brunswick; and Nova Scotia.	1864	Rt. Rev. D'Hergomez, Vic. Apost of the British Columbia.
		1866	Rt. Rev. C. Laroque, 3rd. Bp of St. Hyacinthe.
		1867	Rt. Rev. Lafleche, Coadjutor t the Bp. of Three Rivers.—Rt Rev. J. P. F. L. Langevin, 1s Bp. of St. Germain of Rimouski Rt. Rev. J. Walsh, 2nd Bp. o Sandwich.—Rt. Rev. Clut Coadjutor to the Vic. Apost. o Arthabaska.
1868	**YOUNG** (Sir J.) succeeds Lord Monck as Governor-General of the Dominion.	1867	**BAILLARGEON**(Most Rev. C.F.) 5th Abp. of Quebec.

D.	UNITED-STATES.	FRANCE.	THE CHURCH.
58		Attempt against the life of Napoleon III. —Expedition in Cochin China.	Perpetual adoration in Paris.—Protestant intolerance in Sweden.
59		Campaign of Italy. The Austrians are defeated at Montebello, Magenta, and Solferino.—Treaty of Zurich.	Encyclical letter of Pius IX. on the revolt of Romagna.—Consistorial allocution of the Holy Father against those who usurp and take what belongs to the Church.—Beatification of the Ven. Benedict Joseph Labre.—Alarms of the French Episcopacy.—The French Government forbids the reproduction in newspapers of the Episcopal Circulars and treats with rigor the religious press.
60	Abraham Lincoln, President.	Free exchange Treaty between France and England.—Annexation of Savoy and Nice to France.—Anglo-French expedition against China. Victory of Pei-Ho and capture of Pekin.	Bull of excommunication against the invaders and usurpers of the States of the Church, March 26.—Garibaldi invades the Two Sicilies with the support of Piedmont.—Piedmont invades the Pontifical States and crushes or rather assassinates the Pontifical volunteers at Castelfidardo.—Conversion of the Bulgarians.
61	Civil War.—The Southern States secede.—Battles of Great Bethel and Manassas.	Joint expedition of the French, English, and Spanish against Mexico	
62	Battles of Shiloh, Seven Pines, Beaver's Dam, Gaines' Mill, Savage Station, Frazer's Hill, Malvern Hill, Ball's Bluff, Manassas (2nd), Antietam, Fredericksburg, Murfreesboro.	Expedition against Cochin China. The Emperor of Annam recognizes the free exercise of Christianity in his realms, cedes three Provinces to France, and opens three sea-ports to European trade in Tonquin.	Solemn canonization, at St. Peter's, by Pius IX., of a great number of Martyrs in Asia.
63	Battles of Chancellorsville and Gettysburg.—Surrender of Wicksburg and Port Hudson to the Federals.		Concordat concluded with Nicaragua.—Encyclical letter accompanied by a *Syllabus* or *Resumé*, including the principal errors of the time.—Apostolic letters prescribing a universal Jubilee for 1865.
64	Gen. Sherman captures Atlanta and Savannah.—A. Lincoln is re-elected President.	.....	

CANADA.—ENGLISH RULE.

A.D.	Civil and Political Part.	A.D.	Religious Part.
1870	Extension of the Dominion by the acquisition of the North-West Territory, and the Province of Manitoba.—The Federal militia repels a Fenian raid.	1868	Fourth Provincial Council of Quebec.
		1870	Erection of the Ecclesiastical Province of Toronto:—Most Rev. Lynch, 1st Abp.—Rt. Rev. J. Cameron, Coadjutor to the Bp. of Arichat.—Rt. Rev. T. J. Power, Bp. of St. Johns, N. F.—Rt. Rev. H. Carfagnini, Bp. of Harbor Grace.
1871	The Province of British Columbia is received in the Dominion.	1871	**TASCHEREAU** (Elzear Alexander), 6th Abp. of Quebec.
1872	**DUFFERIN** (Lord), Governor-General, who shows himself, at the beginning of his administration, a great Patron of good and solid Education.		
1873	The MacDonald Ministry, which existed since the establishment of the Confederation, is defeated by the party styled "liberal" headed by the Hon. McKenzie who becomes the chief of a new Ministry.	1873	Rt. Rev. E. C. Fabre, Coadjutor to the Bp. of Montreal.—Fifth Provincial Council of Quebec.—Erection of the Ecclesiastical Province of St. Boniface:—Most Rev. Taché, 1st Abp.

A.D.	THE CHURCH.	FRANCE.	U.-STS.
1865	General Assembly of the German Catholics at Triers.—Pontifical allocution on Free-Masonry.—Russia persecutes the Catholics in Poland.		
1866	Martyrdom, in Corea, of Bp. Daveluy and his companions.—St. Catharine of Sienna is declared the Patroness of Rome.—Farewell of Pius IX. to the officers of the French army of Rome.—Persecution in Russia.		
1867	Celebration of the 18th centenary anniversary of St. Peter. 44 Cardinals, Patriarchs, and Primates, 400 Bishops., and 10000 Priests thronged around the venerated Pius IX.—Garibaldian bands attack the little Pontifical army; the latter, aided by French troops, sweep them off completely at Mentana.		
1868	Bull for the convocation of the Œcumenical Council of the Vatican.—Arrival in Rome of the first detachment of the Canadian Pontifical Zouaves.		
1869	The Golden Wedding of Pius IX., April 10.—Opening of the Vatican Council, Dec. 8.	Louis Napoleon grants a new Constitution with a responsible Ministry.	Gen. Grant President.
1870	The dogmatic infallibility of the Pope, freely teaching a truth of faith, *ex cathedra*, in matter of faith, is proclaimed in the Œcumenical Council of the Vatican.—Victor Emmanual's government takes possession of Rome, Sept. 20, in direct violation of the pledged faith, and solemn obligations of International Treaties. The Pope is captive in the Vatican.	Louis Napoleon declares war against Prussia. Soon after, France is invaded, and Napoleon with his army taken prisoners at Sedan.—A Revolution breaks out in Paris: the Emperor is deposed and a Republic proclaimed.—Strasburg and Metz surrender to the Prussians.	
1871	Pius IX. attains the years of St. Peter's Roman Pontificate, Aug. 23.	After a siege of four months, Paris surrenders to the Prussians, Jan. 28.—Terms of Peace are ratified on the 1st of March. France cedes to Prussia, Alsace, one fifth of Lorraine, including Metz, and pays her £200,000,000 indemnity.	Gen. Grant is re-elected President.
1872	.....	.....	

CONTENTS

OF THE

COMPENDIUM

OF THE

HISTORY OF CANADA.

INTRODUCTION.—Early voyages, principal discoveries and conquests in America..... 9

FRENCH RULE.

FIRST PERIOD.

CHAPTER I.—From the arrival of Jacques Cartier in Canada, 1534, to the nomination of De Roberval, 1541..... 17

CHAPTER II.—From De Roberval, 1541, to the Marquis de la Roche, the second Viceroy, 1578. 22

CHAPTER III.—From the Marquis de la Roche, 1578, to the foundation of Quebec, 1608..... 25

SECOND PERIOD.

CHAPTER I.—From the foundation of Quebec, 1608, to the formation of the Montmorency Company, 1621..... 29

CHAPTER II.—From the formation of the Montmorency Company, 1621, to the restitution of Canada and Acadia to France, 1632.. 36

CHAPTER III.—From the restitution of Canada and Acadia to France, 1632, to the formation of the Montreal Company, 1640..... 41

CHAPTER IV.—From the formation of the Montreal Company, 1640, to the administration of De Lauzon, 1650..... 45

CHAPTER V.—From the administration of De Lauzon, 1650, to the formation of the Supreme Council, 1663..... 49

THIRD PERIOD.

CHAPTER I.—From the formation of the Supreme Council, 1663, to the first administration of De Frontenac, 1672..... 54

CHAPTER II.—From the first administration of De Frontenac, 1672, to that of De Denonville, 1685..... 59

CHAPTER III.—From the administration of De Denonville, 1685, to the second administration of De Frontenac, 1689..... 62

CHAPTER IV.—From the second administration of De Frontenac, 1689, to the peace of Ryswick, 1697..... 64

CHAPTER V.—From the peace of Ryswick, 1697, to that of Utrecht, 1713..... 68

CHAPTER VI.—From the Treaty of Utrecht, 1713, to that of Aix-la-Chapelle, 1748..... 71

CHAPTER VII.—From the Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, 1748, to the administration of De Vaudreuil, 1755..... 76

CHAPTER VIII.—From the administration of De Vaudreuil, 1755, to the capitulation of Montreal, 1760..... 79

ENGLISH RULE.

FIRST PERIOD.

CHAPTER I.—From the capitulation of Montreal, 1760, to the Quebec Act, 1774..... 86

CHAPTER II.—From the Quebec Act, 1774, to the Constitutional Act, 1791..... 89

SECOND PERIOD.

CHAPTER I.—From the Constitutional Act, 1791, to the arrival of Sir George Prevost, 1811... 94

CHAPTER II.—From the arrival of Sir George Prevost, 1811, to his departure, 1815..... 97

CHAPTER III.—From the departure of Sir George Prevost, 1815, to the arrival of the Royal Commissioner, 1835..... 102

CHAPTER IV.—From the arrival of the Royal Commissioner, 1835, to the Union of the two Canadas, 1841..... 107

THIRD PERIOD.

CHAPTER I.—From the Union, 1841, to the arrival of Lord Elgin, 1847..... 111

CHAPTER II.—From the arrival of Lord Elgin, 1847, to the Confederation, 1867..... 113